OPERATING SYSTEMS:
Design and Implementation

ANDREW S. TANENBAUM
Vrije Universiteit
Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Prentice-Hall International, Inc.
To Suzanne, Barbara, Marvin and the memory of Sweetie π
CONTENTS

PREFACE xiv

1 INTRODUCTION 1

1.1 WHAT IS AN OPERATING SYSTEM? 3
  1.1.1 The Operating System as an Extended Machine 3
  1.1.2 The Operating System as a Resource Manager 4

1.2 HISTORY OF OPERATING SYSTEMS 5
  1.2.1 The First Generation (1945-1955): Vacuum Tubes and Plugboards 5
  1.2.2 The Second Generation (1955-1965): Transistors and Batch Systems 6
  1.2.3 The Third Generation (1965-1980): ICs and Multiprogramming 8
  1.2.4 The Fourth Generation (1980-1990): Personal Computers 11
  1.2.5 History of MINIX 13

1.3 OPERATING SYSTEM CONCEPTS 14
  1.3.1 Processes 15
  1.3.2 Files 16
  1.3.3 The Shell 20

1.4 SYSTEM CALLS 21
  1.4.1 System Calls for Process Management 23
  1.4.2 System Calls for Signaling 25
  1.4.3 System Calls for File Management 27
  1.4.4 System Calls for Directory Management 32
  1.4.5 System Calls for Protection 34
  1.4.6 System Calls for Time Management 36

1.5 OPERATING SYSTEM STRUCTURE 36
  1.5.1 Monolithic Systems 36
  1.5.2 Layered Systems 37
  1.5.3 Virtual Machines 39
  1.5.4 Client-Server Model 40
CONTENTS

1.6 OUTLINE OF THE REST OF THIS BOOK  42

1.7 SUMMARY  42

2  PROCESSES  45

2.1 INTRODUCTION TO PROCESSES  45
   2.1.1 The Process Model  46
   2.1.2 Implementation of Processes  50

2.2 INTERPROCESS COMMUNICATION  51
   2.2.1 Race Conditions  51
   2.2.2 Critical Sections  53
   2.2.3 Mutual Exclusion with Busy Waiting  53
   2.2.4 Sleep and Wakeup  58
   2.2.5 Semaphores  60
   2.2.6 Event Counters  62
   2.2.7 Monitors  63
   2.2.8 Message Passing  67
   2.2.9 Equivalence of Primitives  72

2.3 CLASSICAL IPC PROBLEMS  75
   2.3.1 The Dining Philosophers Problem  75
   2.3.2 The Readers and Writers Problem  77

2.4 PROCESS SCHEDULING  80
   2.4.1 Round Robin Scheduling  81
   2.4.2 Priority Scheduling  82
   2.4.3 Multiple Queues  83
   2.4.4 Shortest Job First  84
   2.4.5 Policy-Driven Scheduling  85
   2.4.6 Two-level Scheduling  86

2.5 OVERVIEW OF PROCESSES IN MINIX  87
   2.5.1 The Internal Structure of MINIX  87
   2.5.2 Process Management in MINIX  88
   2.5.3 Interprocess Communication in MINIX  89
   2.5.4 Process Scheduling in MINIX  90

2.6 IMPLEMENTATION OF PROCESSES IN MINIX  90
   2.6.1 Organization of the MINIX Source Code  91
   2.6.2 The Common Header Files  92
   2.6.3 Process Data Structures and Header Files  95
   2.6.4 System Initialization  98
   2.6.5 Interrupt Handling in MINIX  99
   2.6.6 The Kernel's Assembly Code Utilities  101
   2.6.7 Interprocess Communication in MINIX  102
   2.6.8 Scheduling in MINIX  104

2.7 SUMMARY  105
3 INPUT/OUTPUT

3.1 PRINCIPLES OF I/O HARDWARE 111
   3.1.1 I/O Devices 111
   3.1.2 Device Controllers 112

3.2 PRINCIPLES OF I/O SOFTWARE 116
   3.2.1 Goals of the I/O Software 116
   3.2.2 Interrupt Handlers 117
   3.2.3 Device Drivers 118
   3.2.4 Device-Independent I/O Software 119
   3.2.5 User-Space I/O Software 121

3.3 DEADLOCKS 122
   3.3.1 Resources 123
   3.3.2 Deadlock Modeling 124
   3.3.3 The Ostrich Algorithm 127
   3.3.4 Detection and Recovery 128
   3.3.5 Deadlock Prevention 128
   3.3.6 Deadlock Avoidance 130

3.4 OVERVIEW OF I/O IN MINIX 135
   3.4.1 Interrupt Handlers in MINIX 135
   3.4.2 Device Drivers in MINIX 135
   3.4.3 Device-Independent I/O Software in MINIX 138
   3.4.4 User-level I/O Software in MINIX 139
   3.4.5 Deadlock Handling in MINIX 139

3.5 RAM DISKS 139
   3.5.1 RAM Disk Hardware and Software 140
   3.5.2 Overview of the RAM Disk Driver in MINIX 141
   3.5.3 Implementation of the RAM Disk Driver in MINIX 142

3.6 DISKS 143
   3.6.1 Disk Hardware 143
   3.6.2 Disk Software 144
   3.6.3 Overview of the Floppy Disk Driver in MINIX 149
   3.6.4 Implementation of the Floppy Disk Driver in MINIX 151

3.7 CLOCKS 154
   3.7.1 Clock Hardware 154
   3.7.2 Clock Software 155
   3.7.3 Overview of the Clock Driver in MINIX 158
   3.7.4 Implementation of the Clock Driver in MINIX 159

3.8 TERMINALS 160
   3.8.1 Terminal Hardware 160
   3.8.2 Terminal Software 164
   3.8.3 Overview of the Terminal Driver in MINIX 171
   3.8.4 Implementation of the Terminal Driver in MINIX 177

3.9 THE SYSTEM TASK IN MINIX 182

3.10 SUMMARY 186
4 MEMORY MANAGEMENT

4.1 MEMORY MANAGEMENT WITHOUT SWAPPING OR PAGING 191
  4.1.1 Monoprogramming without Swapping or Paging 192
  4.1.2 Multiprogramming and Memory Usage 193
  4.1.3 Multiprogramming with Fixed Partitions 196

4.2 SWAPPING 198
  4.2.1 Multiprogramming with Variable Partitions 198
  4.2.2 Memory Management with Bit Maps 200
  4.2.3 Memory Management with Linked Lists 201
  4.2.4 Memory Management with the Buddy System 203
  4.2.5 Allocation of Swap Space 205
  4.2.6 Analysis of Swapping Systems 205

4.3 VIRTUAL MEMORY 206
  4.3.1 Paging 207
  4.3.2 Segmentation 209

4.4 PAGE REPLACEMENT ALGORITHMS 213
  4.4.1 Optimal Page Replacement 213
  4.4.2 Not-Recently-Used Page Replacement 214
  4.4.3 First-In First-Out Page Replacement 215
  4.4.4 Least Recently Used Page Replacement 216
  4.4.5 Simulating LRU in Software 217

4.5 DESIGN ISSUES FOR PAGING SYSTEMS 219
  4.5.1 The Working Set Model 219
  4.5.2 Local versus Global Allocation Policies 221
  4.5.3 Page Size 222
  4.5.4 Implementation Issues 224

4.6 OVERVIEW OF MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN MINIX 226
  4.6.1 Memory Layout 227
  4.6.2 Message Handling 229
  4.6.3 Memory Manager Data Structures and Algorithms 230
  4.6.4 The FORK, EXIT, and WAIT System Calls 233
  4.6.5 The EXEC System Call 234
  4.6.6 The BRK System Call 237
  4.6.7 Signal Handling 237
  4.6.8 Other System Calls 239

4.7 IMPLEMENTATION OF MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN MINIX 239
  4.7.1 The Header Files 239
  4.7.2 The Main Program 240
  4.7.3 Implementation of FORK, EXIT, and WAIT 241
  4.7.4 Implementation of EXEC 242
  4.7.5 Implementation of BRK 243
  4.7.6 Implementation of Signal Handling 244
  4.7.7 Implementation of the Other System Calls 246
  4.7.8 Memory Manager Utilities 246

4.8 SUMMARY 247
5 FILE SYSTEMS

5.1 THE USER VIEW OF THE FILE SYSTEM 251
  5.1.1 File Basics 252
  5.1.2 Directories 254

5.2 FILE SYSTEM DESIGN 256
  5.2.1 Disk Space Management 256
  5.2.2 File Storage 258
  5.2.3 Directory Structure 261
  5.2.4 Shared Files 263
  5.2.5 File System Reliability 266
  5.2.6 File System Performance 270

5.3 FILE SERVERS 273
  5.3.1 Interface Level 273
  5.3.2 Atomic Update 274
  5.3.3 Concurrency Control 276
  5.3.4 Transactions 277
  5.3.5 Replicated Files 279

5.4 SECURITY 279
  5.4.1 The Security Environment 280
  5.4.2 Famous Security Flaws 281
  5.4.3 Generic Security Attacks 283
  5.4.4 Design Principles for Security 284
  5.4.5 User Authentication 285

5.5 PROTECTION MECHANISMS 289
  5.5.1 Protection Domains 289
  5.5.2 Access Control Lists 292
  5.5.3 Capabilities 293
  5.5.4 Protection Models 295
  5.5.5 Covert Channels 297

5.6 OVERVIEW OF THE MINIX FILE SYSTEM 299
  5.6.1 Messages 299
  5.6.2 File System Layout 300
  5.6.3 Bit Maps 302
  5.6.4 I-nodes 304
  5.6.5 The Block Cache 305
  5.6.6 Directories and Paths 306
  5.6.7 File Descriptors 308
  5.6.8 Pipes and Special Files 309
  5.6.9 An Example: The READ System Call 311

5.7 IMPLEMENTATION OF THE MINIX FILE SYSTEM 311
  5.7.1 The Header Files 312
  5.7.2 Table Management 313
  5.7.3 The Main Program 318
  5.7.4 Operations on Individual Files 319
CONTENTS

5.7.5 Directories and Paths 325
5.7.6 Other System Calls 328
5.7.7 The I/O Device Interface 331
5.7.8 General Utilities 332

5.8 SUMMARY 332

6 READING LIST AND BIBLIOGRAPHY 337

6.1 SUGGESTIONS FOR FURTHER READING 337
6.1.1 Introduction and General Works 337
6.1.2 Processes 339
6.1.3 Input/Output 340
6.1.4 Memory Management 340
6.1.5 File Systems 341

6.2 ALPHABETICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY 342

APPENDICES

A INTRODUCTION TO C 350

B INTRODUCTION TO THE IBM PC 363

C MINIX USERS’ GUIDE 371

D MINIX IMPLEMENTERS’ GUIDE 413

E MINIX SOURCE CODE LISTING 433

F MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING 687

INDEX 711
PREFACE

Most books on operating systems are strong on theory and weak on practice. This one aims to provide a better balance between the two. It covers all the fundamental principles in detail, including processes, interprocess communication, semaphores, monitors, message passing, remote procedure call, scheduling algorithms, input/output, deadlocks, device drivers, memory management, paging algorithms, file system design, network file servers, atomic transactions, security and protection mechanisms. But it also discusses one particular system—MINIX, a UNIX-compatible operating system—in detail, and even provides a complete source code listing for study. This arrangement allows the reader to not only learn the principles, but also to see how they are applied in a real operating system.

An operating system has four major components: process management, input/output, memory management, and the file system. After an introductory chapter, the book contains a chapter about each of these topics. Each chapter contains a lengthy discussion of the relevant principles, illustrated with examples taken from a variety of systems, including UNIX, MS-DOS, CP/M, MULTICS, and other operating systems.

Having taught operating systems courses for 15 years, and having been the principal architect of three different operating systems for three different computers (PDP-11, 68000, and IBM PC), I have come to realize that just studying the theory (deadlocks, scheduling algorithms, etc.) leaves the student with a very distorted view of the subject. Most books and courses devote an enormous amount
of time to scheduling algorithms, for example, which in practice are usually less than a page of code, while completely ignoring I/O, which is often 30 percent of the system, or more.

To correct this imbalance I have written a new operating system, MINIX, from scratch. MINIX has the same system calls as Version 7 UNIX (except for the omission of a small number of unimportant ones). I have also supplied a shell that is functionally identical to the UNIX shell, along with more than 60 other programs that are similar to their UNIX counterparts (e.g., cat, cc, cp, grep, ls, and make). In short, to the user, MINIX looks very much like UNIX.

On the inside, however, the system is completely new. I have taken great pains to structure the system carefully, to make it easy to understand, and easy for students to modify. The major pieces of the system are written as separate modules that communicate by message passing. Procedures are generally short, and structured programming practice is used throughout. The code contains more than 3000 separate comments.

Like all operating systems, MINIX is divided into four major parts: process management, input/output (device drivers), memory management, and the file system. As mentioned above, each of these topics is the subject of a whole chapter in the book. Each chapter first discusses the general principles, and then tells how the subject is handled in MINIX.

The complete MINIX source code is available in several forms and can be used in various ways. One version is for the IBM PC, XT, or AT (and true compatibles) and is distributed on diskette (binaries and sources). If a sufficient number of PCs are available for a course, each student can be given a copy of the software to modify and test on his own PC. A good configuration is 640K RAM and two 360K floppy disks, although smaller configurations are also possible. A hard disk is not necessary.

An alternative way to use the software is to give each student a copy of the MINIX sources on a VAX or other time-shared computer (the host machine). The student can then modify them and compile them on the host, producing a runnable binary image that can be downloaded to an IBM PC for testing. This arrangement has the advantage that only a few IBM PCs are needed, even for a large group of students. It does, however, require a C compiler for the IBM PC running on the host. Such a compiler, based on the Amsterdam Compiler Kit (see the article by Tanenbaum et al. in the Communications of the ACM, Sept. 1983, pp. 654-660) is available from the companies listed on page xvi.

The software can also be used for courses, even when no IBM PCs are available. Two possibilities have been provided. First, an IBM PC simulator is included on the magnetic tape available from Prentice-Hall. The simulator interprets the 8088 instructions one at a time, examining and executing them just as a real 8088 does. It also simulates those I/O devices needed to run MINIX.

The other possibility is to have the students work with only the file system. The MINIX file system is actually just a big C program that runs outside the operating system as a user program. It is really a UNIX-compatible remote file
server that communicates with the rest of MINIX by message passing on the same machine (although it is easy to set it up to run as a true network file server).

To have a student experiment with the file system on the host computer, the file system and the student's test program should be compiled separately. A main program is needed to set up pipes, fork, and execute the test program and file system, which communicate by passing messages over the pipes. The necessary software for doing all of this on a VAX running UNIX is on the Prentice-Hall tape. Since the file system, set up program, and IBM PC simulator are all written in C, porting them to non-VAX systems should be straightforward.

For those situations in which modifying and experimenting with MINIX is not possible (or not desired), students can still learn about MINIX by reading the source code listing provided in this book.

Finally, for those readers who are only interested in the principles and not at all interested in MINIX, the sections dealing with the MINIX implementation have been clearly marked as such, and can be skipped without loss of continuity. In this mode, the book can be used as a conventional operating systems text, without reference to MINIX at all.

Those readers having access to USENET and wishing to contribute more software, suggest improvements, etc., can do so in comp.os.minix.

For classroom use, a problem solutions manual is available. It can be ordered from Prentice-Hall.

I have been extremely fortunate in having the help of many people during the course of this project. I would especially like to thank Dick Grune, Wiebren de Jonge, Jan Looyen, Jim van Keulen, Hans van Staveren, Jennifer Steiner, and Peter Weinberger for reading parts of the manuscript and making many helpful suggestions. Special thanks also go to Brian Kernighan for 1.4 readings and constantly reminding me about rule 13.

Although I personally wrote the entire 12,000 lines of the operating system proper, a number of other people have contributed utility programs that are included in the distribution. Without their help, MINIX would have been far less useful. In particular, I would like to thank Martin Atkins, Erik Baalbergen, Charles Forsyth, Richard Gregg, Paul Polderman, and Robbert van Renesse. Paul Ogilvie ported the system to MS-DOS. Michiel Huisjes, Patrick van Kleef, and Adri Koppes provided immensely valuable help with many aspects of the software, far above and beyond the call of duty.

Finally, I would like to thank Suzanne for her endless patience while I spent untold hours hiding in front of my PC. Without her support and understanding I would never have made it. I also want to thank Barbara and Marvin for using Suzanne's computer, instead of mine, thus making this book possible. I am better at jove, but they are better at Donald Duck's Playground.

Andrew S. Tanenbaum
AVAILABILITY OF THE MINIX SOFTWARE

The following MINIX software is available from Prentice-Hall, 200 Old Tappan Road, Old Tappan, NJ 07675. It can be ordered by telephone: (201) 767-5049. The price per set is $79.95 (price subject to change).

1. A set of diskettes for the IBM PC (or true compatible) with 640K RAM. These diskettes contain a bootable system that can be inserted into the PC and run, as well as the system sources. The source diskettes contain the complete operating system sources, and the sources for all the utility programs except the C compiler, which is also available as described below. This package can also be used with 512K, although the user will have to adjust some program sizes. ISBN 0-13-583873-8

2. A set of diskettes for 256K IBM PCs. This package is the same as above, except that the C compiler is not included due to the limited memory and RAM disk space. Everything else, including all the sources, are the same as the 640K version. ISBN 0-13-583881-9

3. A set of diskettes for 512K IBM PC/ATs. This package is identical to the 640K PC package, except that the RAM disk is slightly smaller, and 1.2M instead of 360K diskettes are used. ISBN 0-13-583865-7

4. A nine-track, industry standard 1600 bpi magnetic tape in UNIX “tar” format. This version contains all the sources, as well as the IBM PC simulator and some libraries and programs that make it possible to run the MINIX file system on a VAX or other minicomputer running UNIX. Ports to other systems are up to the user, but since the file system and test programs are entirely written in C, this should not be difficult. ISBN 0-13-583899-1.

The only pieces of MINIX software not included in the distributions above are the compiler sources. These were made using the Amsterdam Compiler Kit (see *Communications of the ACM*, Sept. 1983, pp. 654-660), which has also been used to make compilers for many other languages and machines. The compiler sources can be ordered from the following companies:

In North and South America:  In Europe and elsewhere
UniPress Software Transmediair Utrecht BV
2025 Lincoln Highway Melkweg 3
Edison, NJ 08817 3721 RG Bilthoven
U.S.A. Holland
Telephone: (201) 985-8000 Telephone: (30) 78 18 20

Note: MINIX itself is available from Prentice-Hall, not the above companies.
INTRODUCTION

Without its software, a computer is basically a useless lump of metal. With its software, a computer can store, process, and retrieve information, find spelling errors in manuscripts, play adventure, and engage in many other valuable activities to earn its keep. Computer software can be roughly divided into two kinds: the system programs, which manage the operation of the computer itself, and the application programs, which solve problems for their users. The most fundamental of all the system programs is the operating system, which controls all the computer’s resources and provides the base upon which the application programs can be written.

A modern computer system consists of one or more processors, some main memory (often known as “core memory,” even though magnetic cores have not been used in memories for over a decade), clocks, terminals, disks, network interfaces, and other input/output devices. All in all, a complex system. Writing programs that keep track of all these components and use them correctly, let alone optimally, is an extremely difficult job. If every programmer had to be concerned with how disk drives work, and with all the dozens of things that could go wrong when reading a disk block, it is unlikely that many programs could be written at all.

Many years ago it became abundantly clear that some way had to be found to shield programmers from the complexity of the hardware. The way that has gradually evolved is to put a layer of software on top of the bare hardware, to manage all parts of the system, and present the user with an interface or virtual...
machine that is easier to understand and program. This layer of software is the operating system, and forms the subject of this book.

The situation is shown in Fig. 1-1. At the bottom is the hardware, which in many cases is itself composed of two or more layers. The lowest layer contains physical devices, consisting of integrated circuit chips, wires, power supplies, cathode ray tubes, and similar physical devices. How these are constructed and how they work is the province of the electrical engineer.

Next comes a layer of primitive software that directly controls these devices and provides a cleaner interface to the next layer. This software, called the microprogram, is usually located in read-only memory. It is actually an interpreter, fetching the machine language instructions such as ADD, MOVE, and JUMP, and carrying them out as a series of little steps. To carry out an ADD instruction, for example, the microprogram must determine where the numbers to be added are located, fetch them, add them, and store the result somewhere. The set of instructions that the microprogram interprets defines the machine language, which is not really part of the hard machine at all, but computer manufacturers always describe it in their manuals as such, so many people think of it as being the real ‘machine.’ On some machines the microprogram is implemented in hardware, and is not really a distinct layer.

The machine language typically has between 50 and 300 instructions, mostly for moving data around the machine, doing arithmetic, and comparing values. In this layer, the input/output devices are controlled by loading values into special device registers. For example, a disk could be commanded to read by loading the values of the disk address, main memory address, byte count, and direction (READ or WRITE) into its registers. In practice, many more parameters are needed, and the status returned by the drive after an operation is highly complex. Furthermore, for many I/O devices, timing plays an important role in the programming.

A major function of the operating system is to hide all this complexity and
give the programmer a more convenient set of instructions to work with. For example, READ BLOCK FROM FILE is conceptually simpler than having to worry about the details of moving disk heads, waiting for them to settle down, and so on.

On top of the operating system is the rest of the system software. Here we find the command interpreter (shell), compilers, editors and similar application-independent programs. It is important to realize that these programs are definitely not part of the operating system, even though they are typically supplied by the computer manufacturer. This is a crucial, but subtle, point. The operating system is that portion of the software that runs in **kernel mode** or **supervisor mode**. It is protected from user tampering by the hardware (ignoring for the moment some of the older microprocessors that do not have hardware protection at all). Compilers and editors run in **user mode**. If a user does not like a particular compiler, he† is free to write his own if he so chooses; he is not free to write his own disk interrupt handler, which is part of the operating system and protected by hardware against attempts by users to modify it.

Finally, above the system programs come the application programs. These programs are written by the users to solve their particular problems, such as commercial data processing, engineering calculations, or game playing.

### 1.1. WHAT IS AN OPERATING SYSTEM?

Most computer users have had some experience with an operating system, but it is difficult to pin down precisely what an operating system is. Part of the problem is that operating systems perform two basically unrelated functions, and depending on who is doing the talking, you hear mostly about one function or the other. Let us now look at both.

#### 1.1.1. The Operating System as an Extended Machine

As mentioned earlier, the **architecture** (instruction set, memory organization, I/O and bus structure) of most computers at the machine language level is primitive and awkward to program, especially for input/output. To make this point more concrete, let us briefly look at how floppy disk I/O is done using the NEC PD765 controller chip, which is used on the IBM PC and many other personal computers. (Throughout this book we will use the terms “floppy disk” and “diskette” interchangeably.) The PD765 has 16 commands, each specified by loading between 1 and 9 bytes into a device register. These commands are for reading and writing data, moving the disk arm, and formatting tracks, as well as initializing, sensing, resetting, and recalibrating the controller and the drives.

The most basic commands are READ and WRITE, each of which requires 13

---

† “He” should be read as “he or she” throughout the book.
parameters, packed into 9 bytes. These parameters specify such items as the address of the disk block to be read, the number of sectors per track, the recording mode used on the physical medium, the intersector gap spacing, and what to do with a deleted-data-address-mark. If you do not understand this mumbo jumbo, do not worry, that is precisely the point—it is rather esoteric. When the operation is completed, the controller chip returns 23 status and error fields packed into 7 bytes. As if this were not enough, the floppy disk programmer must also be constantly aware of whether the motor is on or off. If the motor is off, it must be turned on (with a long start-up delay) before data can be read or written. The motor cannot be left on too long, however, or the floppy disk will wear out. The programmer is thus forced to deal with the trade-off between long start-up delays versus wearing out floppy disks (and losing the data on them).

Without going into the real details, it should be clear that the average programmer probably does not want to get too intimately involved with the programming of floppy disks (or Winchester disks, which are just as complex and quite different). Instead, what the programmer wants is a simple, high-level abstraction to deal with. In the case of disks, a typical abstraction would be that the disk contains a collection of named files. Each file can be opened for reading or writing, then read or written, and finally closed. Details such as whether or not recording should use modified frequency modulation and what the current state of the motor is should not appear in the abstraction presented to the user.

The program that hides the truth about the hardware from the programmer and presents a nice, simple view of named files that can be read and written is, of course, the operating system. Just as the operating system shields the programmer from the disk hardware and presents a simple file-oriented interface, it also conceals a lot of unpleasant business concerning interrupts, timers, memory management, and other low-level features. In each case, the abstraction presented to the user of the operating system is simpler and easier to use than the underlying hardware.

In this view, the function of the operating system is to present the user with the equivalent of an extended machine or virtual machine that is easier to program than the underlying hardware. How the operating system achieves this goal is a long story, which we will study in detail throughout this book.

1.1.2. The Operating System as a Resource Manager

The concept of the operating system as primarily providing its users with a convenient interface is a top-down view. An alternative, bottom-up, view holds that the operating system is there to manage all the pieces of a complex system. Modern computers consist of processors, memories, timers, disks, terminals, magnetic tape drives, network interfaces, laser printers, and a wide variety of other devices. In the alternative view, the job of the operating system is to provide for an orderly and controlled allocation of the processors, memories, and I/O devices among the various programs competing for them.
Imagine what would happen if three programs running on some computer all tried to print their output simultaneously on the same printer. The first few lines of printout might be from program 1, the next few from program 2, then some from program 3, and so forth. The result would be chaos. The operating system can bring order to the potential chaos by buffering all the output destined for the printer on the disk. When one program is finished, the operating system can then copy its output from the disk file where it has been stored to the printer, while at the same time the other program can continue generating more output, oblivious to the fact that the output is not really going to the printer (yet).

When a computer has multiple users, the need for managing and protecting the memory, I/O devices, and other resources is even more apparent. This need arises because it is frequently necessary for users to share expensive resources such as tape drives and phototypesetters. Economic issues aside, it is also often necessary for users who are working together to share information. In short, this view of the operating system holds that its primary task is to keep track of who is using which resource, to grant resource requests, to account for usage, and to mediate conflicting requests from different programs and users.

1.2. HISTORY OF OPERATING SYSTEMS

Operating systems have been evolving through the years. In the following sections we will briefly look at this development. Since operating systems have historically been closely tied to the architecture of the computers on which they run, we will look at successive generations of computers to see what their operating systems were like. This mapping of operating system generations to computer generations is admittedly crude, but it does provide some structure where there would otherwise be none.

The first true digital computer was designed by the English mathematician Charles Babbage (1792-1871). Although Babbage spent most of his life and fortune trying to build his “analytical engine,” he never got it working properly because it was a purely mechanical design, and the technology of his day could not produce the wheels, gears, cogs and other mechanical parts to the high precision that he needed. Needless to say, the analytical engine did not have an operating system.

1.2.1. The First Generation (1945-1955): Vacuum Tubes and Plugboards

After Babbage’s unsuccessful efforts, little progress was made in constructing digital computers until World War II. Around the mid-1940s, Howard Aiken at Harvard, John von Neumann at the Institute for Advanced Study in Princeton, J. Presper Eckert and William Mauchley at the University of Pennsylvania, and Konrad Zuse in Germany, among others, all succeeded in building calculating engines using vacuum tubes. These machines were enormous, filling up entire
rooms with tens of thousands of vacuum tubes, but were much slower than even
the cheapest home computer available today.

In these early days, a single group of people designed, built, programmed,
operated, and maintained each machine. All programming was done in absolute
machine language, often by wiring up plugboards to control the machine’s basic
functions. Programming languages were unknown (not even assembly
language). Operating systems were unheard of. The usual mode of operation
was for the programmer to sign up for a block of time on the signup sheet on the
wall, then come down to the machine room, insert his or her plugboard into the
computer, and spend the next few hours hoping that none of the 20,000 or so
vacuum tubes would burn out during the run. Virtually all the problems were
straightforward numerical calculations, such as grinding out tables of sines and
cosines.

By the early 1950s, the routine had improved somewhat with the introduction
of punched cards. It was now possible to write programs on cards and read them
in, instead of using plugboards; otherwise the procedure was the same.

1.2.2. The Second Generation (1955-1965): Transistors and Batch Systems

The introduction of the transistor in the mid-1950s changed the picture radically. Computers became reliable enough that they could be manufactured and
sold to paying customers with the expectation that they would continue to func-
tion long enough to get some useful work done. For the first time, there was a
clear separation between designers, builders, operators, programmers, and
maintenance personnel.

These machines were locked away in specially air conditioned computer
rooms, with staffs of professional operators to run them. Only big corporations,
or major government agencies or universities could afford the multimillion dollar
price tag. To run a job (i.e., a program or set of programs), a programmer
would first write the program on paper (in FORTRAN or assembly language),
then punch it on cards. He would then bring the card deck down to the input
room and hand it to one of the operators.

When the computer finished whatever job it was currently running, an oper-
ator would go over to the printer and tear off the output and carry it over to the
output room, so that the programmer could collect it later. Then he would take
one of the card decks that had been brought from the input room and read it in.
If the FORTRAN compiler was needed, the operator would have to get it from a
file cabinet and read it in. Much computer time was wasted while operators were
walking around the machine room.

Given the high cost of the equipment, it is not surprising that people quickly
looked for ways to reduce the wasted time. The solution generally adopted was
the batch system. The idea behind it was to collect a tray full of jobs in the
input room, and then read them onto a magnetic tape using a small, (relatively)
inexpensive computer, such as the IBM 1401, which was very good at reading
cards, copying tapes, and printing output, but not at all good at numerical calculations. Other, much more expensive machines, such as the IBM 7094, were used for the real computing. This situation is shown in Fig. 1-2.

![Fig. 1-2. An early batch system. (a) Programmers bring cards to 1401. (b) 1401 reads batch of jobs onto tape. (c) Operator carries input tape to 7094. (d) 7094 does computing. (e) Operator carries output tape to 1401. (f) 1401 prints output.](image)

After about an hour of collecting a batch of jobs, the tape was rewound and brought into the machine room, where it was mounted on a tape drive. The operator then loaded a special program (the ancestor of today's operating system), which read the first job from tape and ran it. The output was written onto a second tape, instead of being printed. After each job finished, the operating system automatically read the next job from the tape and began running it. When the whole batch was done, the operator removed the input and output tapes, replaced the input tape with the next batch, and brought the output tape to a 1401 for printing off line (i.e., not connected to the main computer).

The structure of a typical input job is shown in Fig. 1-3. It started out with a $JOB$ card, specifying the maximum run time in minutes, the account number to be charged, and the programmer's name. Then came a $FORTRAN$ card, telling the operating system to load the FORTRAN compiler from the system tape. It was followed by the program to be compiled, and then a $LOAD$ card, directing the operating system to load the object program just compiled. (Compiled programs were often written on scratch tapes and had to be loaded explicitly.) Next came the $RUN$ card, telling the operating system to run the program with the data following it. Finally, the $SEND$ card marked the end of the job. These control cards, while primitive, were the forerunners of modern job control languages and command interpreters.

Large second generation computers were used mostly for scientific and engineering calculations, such as solving partial differential equations. They were largely programmed in FORTRAN and assembly language. Typical operating systems were FMS (the Fortran Monitor System) and IBSYS, IBM's operating system for the 7094.
1.2.3. The Third Generation (1965-1980): ICs and Multiprogramming

By the early 1960s most computer manufacturers had two distinct, and totally incompatible, product lines. On the one hand there were the word-oriented, large-scale scientific computers, such as the 7094, which were used for numerical calculations in science and engineering. On the other hand, there were the character-oriented, commercial computers, such as the 1401, which were widely used for tape sorting and printing by banks and insurance companies.

Developing and maintaining two completely different product lines was an expensive proposition for the manufacturers. In addition, many new computer customers initially needed a small machine, but later outgrew it and wanted a bigger machine that would run all their old programs, but faster.

IBM attempted to solve both of these problems at a single stroke by introducing the System/360. The 360 was a series of software-compatible machines ranging from 1401-sized to much more powerful than the 7094. The machines differed only in price and performance (maximum memory, processor speed, number of I/O devices permitted, and so forth.). Since all the machines had the same architecture and instruction set, at least in theory, programs written for one machine could run on all the others. Furthermore, the 360 was designed to handle both scientific and commercial computing. Thus a single family of machines could satisfy the needs of all customers. In subsequent years, IBM has come out with compatible successors to the 360 line, using more modern technology, known as the 370, 4300, 3080, and 3090 series.

The 360 was the first major computer line to use (small-scale) integrated
circuits (ICs), thus providing a major price/performance advantage over the second generation machines, which were built up from individual transistors. It was an immediate success, and the idea of a family of compatible computers was soon adopted by all the other major manufacturers. The descendants of these machines are still in use at large computer centers today.

The greatest strength of the "one family" idea was simultaneously its greatest weakness. The intention was that all software, including the operating system, had to work on all models. It had to run on small systems, which often just replaced 1401s for copying cards to tape, and on very large systems, which often replaced 7094s for doing weather forecasting and other heavy computing. It had to be good on systems with few peripherals and on systems with many peripherals. It had to work in commercial environments and in scientific environments. Above all, it had to be efficient for all of these different uses.

There was no way that IBM (or anybody else) could write a piece of software to meet all those conflicting requirements. The result was an enormous and extraordinarily complex operating system, probably two to three orders of magnitude larger than FMS. It consisted of millions of lines of assembly language written by thousands of programmers, and contained thousands upon thousands of bugs, which necessitated a continuous stream of new releases in an attempt to correct them. Each new release fixed some bugs and introduced new ones, so the number of bugs probably remained constant in time.

One of the designers of OS/360, Fred Brooks, subsequently wrote a witty and incisive book (Brooks, 1975) describing his experiences with OS/360. While it would be impossible to summarize the book here, suffice it to say that the cover shows a herd of prehistoric beasts stuck in a tar pit. The cover of Peterson and Silberschatz's book (1985) makes a similar point.

Despite its enormous size and problems, OS/360 and the similar third-generation operating systems produced by other computer manufacturers satisfied most of their customers reasonably well. They also popularized several key techniques absent in second generation operating systems. Probably the most important of these was multiprogramming. On the 7094, when the current job paused to wait for a tape or other I/O operation to complete, the CPU simply sat idle until the I/O finished. With heavily CPU-bound scientific calculations, I/O is infrequent, so this wasted time is not significant. With commercial data processing, the I/O wait time can often be 80 or 90 percent of the total time, so something had to be done about it.

The solution that evolved was to partition memory into several pieces, with a different job in each partition, as shown in Fig. 1-4. While one job was waiting for I/O to complete, another job could be using the CPU. If enough jobs could be held in main memory at once, the CPU could be kept busy nearly 100 percent of the time. Having multiple jobs in memory at once requires special hardware to protect each job against snooping and mischief by the other ones, but the 360 and other third generation systems were equipped with this hardware.

Another major feature present in third-generation operating systems was the
ability to read jobs from cards onto the disk as soon as they were brought to the computer room. Then, whenever a running job finished, the operating system could load a new job from the disk into the now-empty partition and run it. This technique is called spooling (from Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On Line) and was also used for output. With spooling, the 1401s were no longer needed, and much carrying of tapes disappeared.

Although third-generation operating systems were well-suited for big scientific calculations and massive commercial data processing runs, they were still basically batch systems. Many programmers pined for the first generation days when they had the machine all to themselves for a few hours, so they could debug their programs quickly. With third generation systems, the time between submitting a job and getting back the output was often several hours, so a single misplaced comma could cause a compilation to fail, and the programmer to waste half a day.

This desire for quick response time paved the way for time-sharing, a variant of multiprogramming, in which each user has an on-line terminal. In a time-sharing system, if 20 users are logged in and 17 of them are thinking or talking or drinking coffee, the CPU can be allocated in turn to the three jobs that want service. Since people debugging programs usually issue short commands (e.g., compile a five-page program) rather than long ones (e.g., sort a million-record tape), the computer can provide fast, interactive service to a number of users and perhaps also work on big batch jobs in the background when the CPU is otherwise idle. Although the first serious time-sharing system (CTSS) was developed at MIT on a specially modified 7094 (Corbato et al., 1962), it did not really become popular until the necessary protection hardware became widespread during the third generation.

After the success of the CTSS system, MIT, Bell Labs, and General Electric (then a major computer manufacturer) decided to embark on the development of a “computer utility,” a machine that would support hundreds of simultaneous time-sharing users. Their model was the electricity distribution system—when you need electric power, you just stick a plug in the wall, and within reason, as much power as you need will be there. The designers of this system, known as MULTICS (MULTIplexed Information and Computing Service), envisioned one huge machine providing computing power for everyone in Boston. The idea that
machines as powerful as their GE-645 would be sold as personal computers for a few thousand dollars only 20 years later was pure science fiction at the time.

To make a long story short, MULTICS introduced many seminal ideas into the computer literature, but building it was a lot harder than anyone had expected. Bell Labs dropped out of the project, and General Electric quit the computer business altogether. Eventually MULTICS ran well enough to be used in a production environment at MIT and a few dozen sites elsewhere, but the concept of a computer utility fizzled out. Still, MULTICS had an enormous influence on subsequent systems. It is described in (Corbato et al., 1972; Corbato and Vyssotsky, 1965; Daley and Dennis, 1968; Organick, 1972; Saltzer, 1974).

Another major development during the third generation was the phenomenal growth of minicomputers, starting with the DEC PDP-1 in 1961. The PDP-1 had only 4K of 18-bit words, but at 120,000 dollars per machine (less than 5 percent of the price of a 7094), they sold like hotcakes. For certain kinds of nonnumerical work, it was almost as fast as the 7094, and gave birth to a whole new industry. It was quickly followed by a series of other PDPs (unlike IBM's family, all incompatible) culminating in the PDP-11.

One of the computer scientists at Bell Labs who had worked on the MULTICS project, Ken Thompson, subsequently found a small PDP-7 that no one was using and set out to write a stripped-down, one-user version of MULTICS. Brian Kernighan somewhat jokingly dubbed this system "UNICS" (UNiplexed Information and Computing Service), but the spelling was later changed to UNIX†. It was later moved to a small PDP-11/20, where it worked well enough to convince Bell Labs' management to invest in a larger PDP-11/45 to continue the work.

Another Bell Labs computer scientist, Dennis Ritchie, then teamed up with Thompson to rewrite the system in a high-level language called C, designed and implemented by Ritchie. Bell Labs licensed UNIX to universities almost for free, and within a few years hundreds of them were using it. It soon spread to the Interdata 7/32, VAX, Motorola 68000, and many other computers. UNIX has been moved ("ported") to more computers than any other operating system in history, and its use is still rapidly increasing.


With the development of LSI (Large Scale Integration) circuits, chips containing thousands of transistors on a square centimeter of silicon, the age of the personal computer dawned. In terms of architecture, personal computers were not that different from minicomputers of the PDP-11 class, but in terms of price they certainly were different. Where the minicomputer made it possible for a department in a company or university to have its own computer, the microprocessor chip made it possible for a single individual to have his or her own personal computer.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.
The widespread availability of computing power, especially highly interactive computing power usually with excellent graphics, led to the growth of a major industry producing software for personal computers. Much of this software was user-friendly, meaning that it was intended for users who did not know anything about computers, and furthermore had absolutely no intention whatsoever of learning. This was certainly a major change from OS/360, whose job control language, JCL, was so arcane that entire books have been written about it (e.g., Cadow, 1970).

Two operating systems have dominated the personal computer scene: MS-DOS, written by Microsoft, Inc. for the IBM PC and other machines using the Intel 8088 CPU and its successors, and UNIX, which is dominant on the larger personal computers using the Motorola 68000 CPU family. It is perhaps ironic that the direct descendant of MULTICS, designed for a gigantic computer utility, has become so popular on personal computers, but mostly it shows how well thought out the basic ideas in MULTICS and UNIX were. Although the initial version of MS-DOS was relatively primitive, subsequent versions have included more and more features from UNIX, which is not entirely surprising given that Microsoft is a major UNIX supplier, using the trade name of XENIX†.

An interesting development that began taking place during the mid-1980s is the growth of networks of personal computers running network operating systems and distributed operating systems. In a network operating system, the users are aware of the existence of multiple computers, and can log in to remote machines and copy files from one machine to another. Each machine runs its own local operating system and has its own user (or users).

A distributed operating system, in contrast, is one that appears to its users as a traditional uniprocessor system, even though it is actually composed of multiple processors. In a true distributed system, users should not be aware of where their programs are being run or where their files are located; that should all be handled automatically and efficiently by the operating system.

Network operating systems are not fundamentally different from single-processor operating systems. They obviously need a network interface controller and some low-level software to drive it, as well as programs to achieve remote login and remote file access, but these additions do not change the essential structure of the operating system.

True distributed operating systems require more than just adding a little code to a uniprocessor operating system, because distributed and centralized systems differ in critical ways. Distributed systems, for example, often allow programs to run on several processors at the same time, thus requiring more complex processor scheduling algorithms in order to optimize the amount of parallelism achieved.

Communication delays within the network often mean that these (and other) algorithms must run with incomplete, outdated, or even incorrect information.

† XENIX is a trademark of Microsoft, Inc.
This situation is radically different from a single-processor system in which the operating system has complete information about the system state.

Fault-tolerance is another area in which distributed systems are different. It is common for a distributed system to be designed with the expectation that it will continue running, even if part of the hardware is currently broken. Needless to say, such an additional design requirement has enormous implications for the operating system. For a survey of current research about network and distributed operating systems, see the paper by Tanenbaum and van Renesse (1985).

1.2.5. History of MINIX

When UNIX was young (Version 6), the source code was widely available, under AT&T license, and frequently studied. John Lions, of the University of New South Wales in Australia, even wrote a little booklet describing its operation, line by line. This booklet was used (with permission of AT&T) as a text in many university operating system courses.

When AT&T released Version 7, it began to realize that UNIX was a valuable commercial product, so it issued Version 7 with a license that prohibited the source code from being studied in courses, in order to avoid endangering its status as a trade secret. Many universities complied by simply dropping the study of UNIX, and teaching only theory.

Unfortunately, teaching only theory leaves the student with a lopsided view of what an operating system is really like. The theoretical topics that are usually covered in great detail in courses and books on operating systems, such as scheduling algorithms, are in practice not really that important. Subjects that really are important, such as I/O and file systems, are generally neglected because there is little theory about them.

To remedy this situation, I decided to write a new operating system from scratch that would be compatible with UNIX from the user's point of view, but completely different on the inside. By not using even one line of AT&T code, this system avoids the licensing restrictions, so it can be used for class or individual study. In this manner, readers can dissect a real operating system to see what is inside, just as biology students dissect frogs. The name MINIX stands for mini-UNIX because it is small enough that even a nonguru can understand how it works.

In addition to the advantage of eliminating the legal problems, MINIX has another advantage over UNIX. It was written a decade after UNIX, and has been structured in a more modular way. The MINIX file system, for example, is not part of the operating system at all, but runs as a user program. Another difference is that UNIX was designed to be efficient; MINIX was designed to be readable (inasmuch as one can speak of any 12,649 line program as being readable). The MINIX code, for example, has over 3000 comments in it.

MINIX has been designed for compatibility with Version 7 (V7) UNIX. Version 7 was used as the model because of its simplicity and elegance. It is
sometimes said that Version 7 was not only an improvement over all its predecessors, but also over all its successors.

Like UNIX, MINIX is written in the C programming language, and is intended to be easy to port to various computers. The initial implementation was for the IBM PC, because this computer is in widespread use. In keeping with the "Small is Beautiful" philosophy, MINIX does not even require a hard disk to run, thus bringing it within range of many students' budgets.

To the average user sitting at an IBM PC, running MINIX is similar to using any UNIX system. Most of the usual programs, such as `cat`, `grep`, `ls`, `make`, and the shell are present and perform the same functions as their UNIX counterparts. Like the operating system itself, all these utility programs have been completely rewritten from scratch by the author, his students, and some other dedicated people. Even the C compiler is completely new, being based on the Amsterdam Compiler Kit (Tanenbaum et al., 1983), rather than on the AT&T portable C compiler.

Throughout this book MINIX will be used as an example. Nearly all the comments about MINIX, however, except those about the actual code, also apply to UNIX. Many of them also apply to other systems as well. This should be kept in mind when reading the text.

### 1.3. OPERATING SYSTEM CONCEPTS

The interface between the operating system and the user programs is defined by the set of "extended instructions" that the operating system provides. These extended instructions are known as **system calls**. To really understand what operating systems do, we must examine these calls closely. The system calls vary from operating system to operating system (although the underlying concepts tend to be similar).

We are thus forced to make a choice between (1) vague generalities ("operating systems have system calls for reading files") and (2) some specific system ("MINIX has a READ system call with three parameters: one to specify the file, one to tell where the data are to be put, and one to tell how many bytes to read").

We have chosen the latter approach. It's more work that way, but it gives more insight into what operating systems really do. In Sec. 1-4 we will look closely at the system calls present in both UNIX and MINIX. For simplicity's sake, we will refer only to MINIX, but the corresponding UNIX V7 system calls are identical (the corresponding system calls for other versions of UNIX, such as System V, 4.3BSD, and XENIX are very similar, although each of these has some additional system calls that we will not discuss). Before we look at the actual system calls, however, it is worth taking a bird's-eye view of MINIX, to get a general feel for what an operating system is all about. This overview applies equally well to UNIX.
The MINIX system calls fall roughly in two broad categories: those dealing with processes and those dealing with the file system. We will now examine each of these in turn.

1.3.1. Processes

A key concept in MINIX, and in all operating systems, is the process. A process is basically a program in execution. It consists of the executable program, the program's data and stack, its program counter, stack pointer, and other registers, and all the other information needed to run the program.

We will come back to the process concept in much more detail in Chap. 2, but for the time being, the easiest way to get a good intuitive feel for a process is to think about time-sharing systems. Periodically, the operating system decides to stop running one process and start running another, for example, because the first one has had more than its share of CPU time in the past second.

When a process is temporarily suspended like this, it must later be restarted in exactly the same state it had when it was stopped. This means that all information about the process must be explicitly saved somewhere during the suspension. For example, if the process has several files open, the exact position in the files where the process was must be recorded somewhere, so that a subsequent READ given after the process is restarted will read the proper data. In many operating systems, all the information about each process, other than the contents of its own address space, is stored in an operating system table called the process table, which is an array (or linked list) of structures, one for each process currently in existence.

Thus, a (suspended) process consists of its address space, usually called the core image (in honor of the magnetic core memories used in days of yore), and its process table entry, which contains its registers, among other things.

The key process management system calls are those dealing with the creation and termination of processes. Consider a typical example. A process called the command interpreter or shell reads commands from a terminal. The user has just typed a command requesting that a program be compiled. The shell must now create a new process that will run the compiler. When that process has finished the compilation, it executes a system call to terminate itself.

If a process can create one or more other processes (referred to as child processes) and these processes in turn can create child processes, we quickly arrive at the process tree structure of Fig. 1-5.

Other process system calls are available to request more memory (or release unused memory), wait for a child process to terminate, and overlay its program with a different one.

Occasionally, there is a need to convey information to a running process that is not sitting around waiting for it. For example, a process that is communicating with another process on a different computer does so by sending messages over a network. To guard against the possibility that a message or its reply is
lost, the sender may request that its own operating system notify it after a specified number of seconds, so that it can retransmit the message if no acknowledgement has been received yet. After setting this timer, the program may continue doing other work.

When the specified number of seconds has elapsed, the operating system sends a signal to the process. The signal causes the process to temporarily suspend whatever it was doing, save its registers on the stack, and start running a special signal handling procedure, for example, to retransmit a presumably lost message. When the signal handler is done, the running process is restarted in the state it was just before the signal. Signals are the software analog of hardware interrupts, and can be generated by a variety of causes in addition to timers expiring. Many traps detected by hardware, such as executing an illegal instruction or using an invalid address, are also converted into signals to the guilty process.

Each person authorized to use MINIX is assigned a uid (user identification) by the system administrator. Every process started in MINIX has the uid of the person who started it. A child process has the same uid as its parent. One uid, called the super-user, has special power, and may violate many of the protection rules. In large installations, only the system administrator knows the password needed to become super-user, but many of the ordinary users (especially students) devote considerable effort to trying to find flaws in the system that allow them to become super-user without the password.

1.3.2. Files

The other broad category of system calls relates to the file system. As noted before, a major function of the operating system is to hide the peculiarities of the disks and other I/O devices, and present the programmer with a nice, clean abstract model of device-independent files. System calls are obviously needed to create files, remove files, read files, and write files. Before a file can be read, it must be opened, and after it has been read it should be closed, so calls are provided to do these things.

In order to provide a place to keep files, MINIX has the concept of a
directory as a way of grouping files together. A student, for example, might have one directory for each course he was taking (for the programs needed for that course), another directory for his electronic mail, and still another directory for his computer games. System calls are then needed to create and remove directories. Calls are also provided to put an existing file in a directory, and to remove a file from a directory. Directory entries may be either files or other directories. This model also gives rise to a hierarchy—the file system, as shown in Fig. 1-6.

![Diagram of a file system for a university department.](image)

The process and file hierarchies both are organized as trees, but the similarity stops there. Process hierarchies usually are not very deep (more than three levels is unusual), whereas file hierarchies are commonly four, five, or even more levels deep. Process hierarchies are typically short-lived, generally a few minutes at most, whereas the directory hierarchy may exist for years. Ownership and protection also differ for processes and files. Typically, only a parent process may control or even access a child process, but mechanisms nearly always exist to allow files and directories to be read by a wider group than just the owner.

Every file within the directory hierarchy can be specified by giving its path name from the top of the directory hierarchy, the root directory. Such absolute path names consist of the list of directories that must be traversed from the root directory to get to the file, with slashes separating the components. In Fig. 1-6,
the path for file CS101 is /Faculty/Prof.Brown/Courses/CS101. The leading slash indicates that the path is absolute, that is, starting at the root directory.

At every instant, each process has a current working directory, in which path names not beginning with a slash are looked for. In Fig. 1-6, if /Faculty/Prof.Brown were the working directory, then use of the path name Courses/CS101 would yield the same file as the absolute path name given above. Processes can change their working directory by issuing a system call specifying the new working directory.

Files and directories in MINIX are protected by assigning each one a 9-bit binary protection code. The protection code consists of three 3-bit fields, one for the owner, one for other members of the owner’s group (users are divided into groups by the system administrator), and one for everyone else. Each field has a bit for read access, a bit for write access, and a bit for execute access. These 3 bits are known as the rwx bits. For example, the protection code rwxr-x--x means that the owner can read, write, or execute the file, other group members can read or execute (but not write) the file, and everyone else can execute (but not read or write) the file. For a directory, x indicates search permission. A dash means that the corresponding permission is absent.

Before a file can be read or written, it must be opened, at which time the permissions are checked. If the access is permitted, the system returns a small integer called a file descriptor to use in subsequent operations. If the access is prohibited, an error code is returned.

Another important concept in MINIX is the mounted file system. Nearly all microcomputers have one or more floppy disk drives into which floppy disks can be inserted and removed. To provide a clean way to deal with these removable media, MINIX allows the file system on a floppy disk to be attached to the main tree. Consider the situation of Fig. 1-7(a). Before the MOUNT call, the RAM disk (simulated disk in main memory) contains the primary, or root file system, and drive 0 contains a floppy disk containing another file system.

However, the file system on drive 0 cannot be used, because there is no way to specify path names on it. MINIX does not allow path names to be prefixed by a drive name or number; that would be precisely the kind of device dependence that operating systems ought to eliminate. Instead, the MOUNT system call allows the file system on drive 0 to be attached to the root file system wherever the program wants it to be. In Fig. 1-7(b) the file system on drive 0 has been mounted on directory b, thus allowing access to files /b/x and /b/y. If directory b had contained any files they would not be accessible while drive 0 was mounted, since /b would refer to the root directory of drive 0. (Not being able to access these files is not as serious as it at first seems: file systems are nearly always mounted on empty directories.)

Another important concept in MINIX is the special file. Special files are provided in order to make I/O devices look like files. That way, they can be read and written using the same system calls as are used for reading and writing files. Two kinds of special files exist: block special files and character special files.
Block special files are used to model devices that consist of a collection of randomly addressable blocks, such as disks. By opening a block special file and reading, say, block 4, a program can directly access the fourth block on the device, without regard to the structure of the file system contained on it. Programs that do system maintenance often need this facility. Access to special files is controlled by the same *rwx* bits used to protect all files, so the power to directly access I/O devices can be restricted to the system administrator, for example.

Character special files are used to model devices that consist of character streams, rather than fixed-size randomly addressable blocks. Terminals, line printers, and network interfaces are typical examples of character special devices. The normal way for a program to read and write on the user’s terminal is to read and write the corresponding character special file. When a process is started up, file descriptor 0, called **standard input**, is normally arranged to refer to the terminal for the purpose of reading. File descriptor 1, called **standard output**, refers to the terminal for writing. File descriptor 2, called **standard error**, also refers to the terminal for output, but normally is used only for writing error messages.

All special files have a **major device number** and a **minor device number**. The major device number specifies the device class, such as floppy disk, hard disk, or terminal. The minor device number specifies which of the devices in the class is being addressed, for example, which floppy disk drive. All devices with the same major device number share the same device driver code within the operating system. The minor device number is passed as a parameter to the device driver to tell it which device to read or write. The device numbers can be seen by listing `/dev`.

The last feature we will discuss in this overview is one that relates to both processes and files: pipes. A *pipe* is a sort of pseudo-file that can be used to connect two processes together, as shown in Fig. 1-8. When process *A* wants to send data to process *B*, it writes on the pipe as though it were an output file.
Process $B$ can read the data by reading from the pipe as though it were an input file. Thus, communication between processes in MINIX looks very much like ordinary file reads and writes. Stronger yet, the only way a process can discover that the output file it is writing on is not really a file, but a pipe, is by making a special system call.

![Fig. 1-8. Two processes connected by a pipe.](image)

1.3.3. The Shell

The MINIX operating system is the code that carries out the system calls. Editors, compilers, assemblers, linkers, and command interpreters are definitely not part of the operating system, even though they are important and useful. At the risk of confusing things somewhat, in this section we will look briefly at the MINIX command interpreter, called the shell, which, although not part of the operating system, makes heavy use of many operating system features and thus serves as a good example of how the system calls can be used. It is also the primary interface between a user sitting at his terminal and the operating system.

When any user logs in, a shell is started up. The shell has the terminal as standard input and standard output. It starts out by typing the prompt, a character such as a dollar sign, which tells the user that the shell is waiting to accept a command. If the user now types

date

for example, the shell creates a child process and runs the date program as the child. While the child process is running, the shell waits for it to terminate. When the child finishes, the shell types the prompt again and tries to read the next input line.

The user can specify that standard output be redirected to a file by typing, for example,

date > file

Similarly, standard input can be redirected, as in

sort < file1 > file2

which invokes the sort program with input taken from file1 and output sent to file2.

The output of one program can be used as the input for another program by connecting them with a pipe. Thus
cat file1 file2 file3 | sort >/dev/lp

invokes the cat program to concatenate three files and send the output to sort to arrange all the lines in alphabetical order. The output of sort is redirected to the file /dev/lp, which is a typical name for the special character file for the line printer. (By convention, all the special files are kept in the directory /dev.)

If a user puts an ampersand after a command, the shell does not wait for it to complete. Instead it just gives a prompt immediately. Consequently,

cat file1 file2 file3 | sort >/dev/lp &

starts up the sort as a background job, allowing the user to continue working normally while the sort is going on. The shell has a number of other interesting features that we do not have space to discuss here. See any of the suggested references on UNIX for more information about the shell.

1.4. SYSTEM CALLS

Armed with our general knowledge of how MINIX deals with processes and files, we can now begin to look at the system calls in detail. Again we emphasize that although we will constantly refer to MINIX here, the MINIX calls are identical to those of V7 UNIX, and almost identical to those in SYSTEM V, 4.3 BSD, XENIX and other versions of UNIX, although these systems also have additional system calls that are not discussed here. Furthermore, most other modern operating systems have system calls that perform the same functions as the MINIX calls, even if some of the details differ. Since the actual mechanics of issuing a system call are highly machine-dependent, and often must be expressed in assembly code, a procedure library is provided to make it possible to make system calls from C programs.

To make the system call mechanism clearer, let us take a quick look at READ. It has three parameters, the first one specifying the file, the second one specifying the buffer, and the third one specifying the number of bytes to read. A call to READ from a C program might look like this:

```c
count = read(file, buffer, nbytes);
```

The system call (and the library procedure) return the number of bytes actually read in count. This value is normally the same as nbytes, but may be smaller, if, for example, end-of-file is encountered while reading.

If the system call cannot be carried out, either due to an invalid parameter or a disk error, count is set to -1, and the error number is put in a global variable, errno. Programs should always check the results of a system call to see if an error occurred.

MINIX has a total of 41 system calls, all of them identical to UNIX V7 calls in
terms of name, function, and parameters. They are listed in Fig. 1-9, grouped for convenience in six categories. In the following sections we will briefly examine each call to see what it does. For more detail, see the UNIX manual or one of the books about UNIX that discusses the system calls. To a large extent, the services offered by these calls determine most of what the operating system has to do, since the resource management on personal computers is minimal (at least compared to big machines with many users).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pid = fork() — create a child process identical to the parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = wait(&amp;status) — wait for a child to terminate and get its exit status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = execl(name, argv, envp) — replace a process' core image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit(status) — terminate process execution and return exit status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size = brk(addr) — set the size of the data segment to &quot;addr&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pid = getpid() — return the caller's process id</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oldfunc = signal(sig, func) — arrange for some signal to be caught, ignored, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = kill(pid, sig) — send a signal to a process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>residual = alarm(seconds) — schedule a SIGALRM signal after a certain time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = pause() — suspend the caller until the next signal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fd = creat(name, mode) — create a new file or truncate an existing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fd = mkodf(name, mode, addr) — create a regular, special, or directory i-node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fd = open(file, how — open a file for reading, writing or both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = close(fd) — close an open file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n = read(fd, buffer, nbytes) — read data from a file into a buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n = write(fd, buffer, nbytes) — write data from a file into a buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos = lseek(fd, offset, whence) — move the file pointer somewhere in the file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = stat(name, &amp;buf) — read and return a file's status from its i-node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = fstat(fd, &amp;buf) — read and return a file's status from its i-node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fd = dup(fd) — allocate another file descriptor for an open file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = pipe(fd[0]) — create a pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = ioctl(fd, request, argp) — perform special operations on special files</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory and File System Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s = link(name1, name2) — create a new directory entry, name2 for file name1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = unlink(name) — remove a directory entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = mount(special, name, rwflag) — mount a file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = unmount(special) — unmount a file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = sync() — flush all disk blocks cached in memory to the disk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = chdir(dirname) — change the working directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = chroot(dirname) — change the root directory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s = chmod(name, mode) — change the protection bits associated with a file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uid = getuid() — get the caller's uid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gid = getgid() — get the caller's gid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = setuid(uid) — set the caller's uid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = setgid(gid) — set the caller's gid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = chown(name, owner, group) — change a file's owner and group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldmask = umask(complmode) — set a mask used to mask off protection bits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>seconds = time(&amp;seconds) — get the elapsed time in seconds since Jan. 1, 1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = stime(tp) — set the elapsed time since Jan. 1, 1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = utime(file, times) — set the &quot;last access&quot; time for the file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s = times(buffer) — get the user and system times used so far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 1-9. The MINIX system calls. The return code s is -1 if an error has occurred; fd is a file descriptor, n is a byte count. The other return codes are what the name suggests.
1.4.1. System Calls for Process Management

The first group of calls deals with process management. FORK is a good place to start the discussion. FORK is the only way to create a new process. It creates an exact duplicate of the original process, including all the file descriptors, registers—everything. After the FORK, the original process and the copy (the parent and child) go their separate ways. All the variables have identical values at the time of the FORK, but since the entire parent core image is copied to create the child, subsequent changes in one of them do not affect the other one. The FORK call returns a value, which is zero in the child, and equal to the child’s process identifier or pid in the parent. Using the returned pid, the two processes can see which is the parent and which is the child.

In most cases, after a FORK, the child will need to execute different code from the parent. Consider the case of the shell. It reads a command from the terminal, forks off a child process, waits for the child to execute the command and then reads the next command when the child terminates. To wait for the child to finish, the parent executes a WAIT system call, which just waits until the child terminates (any child if more than one exists). WAIT has one parameter, the address of a variable that will be set to the child’s exit status (normal or abnormal termination and exit value).

In the case of the shell, the child process must execute the command typed by the user. It does this by using the EXEC system call, which causes its entire core image to be replaced by the file named in its first parameter. A highly simplified shell illustrating the use of FORK, WAIT, and EXEC is shown in Fig. 1-10.

```c
while (TRUE) {
    read_command(command, parameters); /* read input from terminal */
    if (fork() != 0) {
        wait(&status); /* fork off child process */
        /* parent code */
    } else {
        execve(command, parameters, 0); /* child code */
    }
}
```

Fig. 1-10. A stripped-down shell. Throughout this book, TRUE is assumed to be defined as the constant 1, thus providing for an infinite loop.

In the most general case, EXEC has three parameters: the name of the file to be executed, a pointer to the argument array, and a pointer to the environment array. These will be described shortly. Various library routines, including execl, execv, execle, and execve are provided to allow the parameters to be omitted or specified in various ways. Throughout this book we will use the name EXEC to represent the system call invoked by all of these.

Let us consider the case of a command such as

cp file1 file2
used to copy file1 to file2. After the shell has forked, the child locates and executes the file cp and passes it information about the files to be copied.

The main program of cp (and many other programs) contains the declaration

\[ \text{main(argc, argv, envp)} \]

where \( \text{argc} \) is a count of the number of items on the command line, including the program name. For the example above, \( \text{argc} \) is 3.

The second parameter, \( \text{argv} \), is a pointer to an array. Element \( i \) of that array is a pointer to the \( i \)-th string on the command line. In our example, \( \text{argv}[0] \) would point to the string "cp." (As an aside, the string pointed to contains two characters, a "c" and a "p," although, if you look closely at the previous sentence you will also see a period inside the quotes. The period ends the sentence, but the rules of English punctuation require most punctuation marks to be inside the quotes, even though this is totally illogical. Hopefully, this will not cause any confusion.) Similarly, \( \text{argv}[1] \) would point to the 5-character string "file1" and \( \text{argv}[2] \) would point to the 5-character string "file2."

The third parameter of \( \text{main} \), \( \text{envp} \), is a pointer to the environment, an array of strings containing assignments of the form \( \text{name} = \text{value} \) used to pass information such as the terminal type and home directory name to a program. In Fig. 1-10, no environment is passed to the child, so the third parameter of \( \text{execve} \) is a zero.

If EXEC seems complicated, do not despair; it is the most complex system call. All the rest are much simpler. As an example of a simple one, consider EXIT, which processes should use when they are finished executing. It has one parameter, the exit status (0 to 255), which is returned to the parent in the variable \( \text{status} \) of the \( \text{WAIT} \) system call. The low-order byte of \( \text{status} \) contains the termination status, with 0 being normal termination and the other values being various error conditions. The high-order byte contains the child’s exit status (0 to 255). For example, if a parent process executes the statement

\[ n = \text{wait(&status)}; \]

it will be suspended until some child process terminates. If the child exits with, say, 4 as the parameter to \( \text{exit} \), the parent will be awakened with \( n \) set to the child’s pid and \( \text{status} \) set to 0x0400 (the C convention of prefixing hexadecimal constants with 0x will be used throughout this book).

Processes in MINIX have their memory divided up into three segments: the text segment (i.e., the program code), the data segment, and the stack segment. The data segment grows upward and the stack grows downward, as shown in Fig. 1-11. Between them is a gap of unused address space. The stack grows into the gap automatically, as needed, but expansion of the data segment is done explicitly by using the BRK system call. It has one parameter, giving the address where the data segment is to end. This address may be more than the current value (data segment is growing) or less than the current value (data segment is shrinking). The parameter must, of course, be less than the stack pointer
or the data and stack segments would overlap, something that is forbidden. MINIX supports separate instruction and data spaces, so a program on the IBM PC, for example, can have 64K bytes of text and another 64K bytes for the data and stack segments combined, for a total of 128K bytes for text, data, and stack, total.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address (hex)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 1-11. Processes have three segments: text, data, and stack. In this example, all three are in one address space, but separate instruction and data space is also supported.

As a convenience to the programmer, a library routine *sbrk* is provided that also changes the size of the data segment, only its parameter is the number of bytes to add to the data segment (negative parameters make the data segment smaller). It works by keeping track of the current size of the data segment, which is the value returned by *BRK*, computing the new size, and making a call asking for that number of bytes.

The last process system call is also the simplest, *GETPID*. It just returns the caller's pid. Remember that in *FORK*, only the parent was given the child's pid. If the child wants to find out its own pid, it must use *GETPID*.

### 1.4.2. System Calls for Signaling

Certain situations exist in which processes need to handle software interrupts. For example, if a user accidently tells a text editor to print the entire contents of a very long file, and then realizes the error, some way is needed to interrupt the editor. In MINIX, the user can hit the DEL key on the keyboard, which sends a signal to the editor. The editor catches the signal and stops the print-out. Signals can also be used to report certain traps detected by the hardware, such as illegal instruction or floating point overflow.

When a signal is sent to a process that has not announced its willingness to accept that signal, the process is simply killed without further ado. To avoid this fate, a process can use the *SIGNAL* system call to announce that it is prepared to accept some signal type, and to provide the address of the signal handling procedure. After a *SIGNAL* call, if a signal of the relevant type (e.g., the DEL key) is generated, the state of the process is pushed onto its own stack, and then the
signal handler is called. It may run for as long as it wants to and perform any system calls it wants to. In practice, though, signal handlers are usually fairly short. When the signal handling procedure is done, it just returns in the usual way. The run time system in the user’s address space then restores the process’ state from the stack and continues execution from the point where it was interrupted.

The signal types are shown in Fig. 1-12. The ones in parentheses are UNIX signals that are not supported by MINIX, mostly because they are not generated by the IBM PC hardware. They are easy to add, however, if the need arises in the future.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SIGHUP</td>
<td>Modern has detected broken phone connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SIGINT</td>
<td>DEL key has been hit on keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SIGQUIT</td>
<td>Quit signal from keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SIGILL</td>
<td>Illegal instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>SIGTRAP</td>
<td>Trace trap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>SIGIOT</td>
<td>IOT instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>SIGEMT</td>
<td>EMT instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>SIGFPE</td>
<td>Floating point overflow/underflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>SIGKILL</td>
<td>Kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>SIGBUS</td>
<td>Bus error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>SIGSEGV</td>
<td>Segmentation violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>SIGSYS</td>
<td>Bad argument to system call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>SIGPIPE</td>
<td>Write on pipe with no reader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>SIGALRM</td>
<td>Alarm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SIGTERM</td>
<td>Software generated termination signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>unassigned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 1-12. Signal types. The signals in parentheses are not supported by MINIX. The asterisks denote signals that cause core dumps if not caught or ignored.

After a signal has been caught, it is necessary to re-enable the signal catching with another `SIGNAL` call. If another signal of the same type arrives before the signal catching has been re-enabled, the default action is taken (i.e., the process is killed). If you try very hard, you may be able to hit DEL fast enough in succession to cause the shell to get a second signal before it has finished processing the first one, thus killing the shell (and logging yourself out).

Instead of providing a function to catch a signal, the program may also specify the constant `SIG_IGN` to have all subsequent signals of the specified type ignored, or `SIG_DFL` to restore the default action of killing the process when a signal occurs. As an example of how `SIG_IGN` is used, consider what happens when the shell forks off a background process as a result of

```
command &
```

It would be undesirable for a DEL signal from the keyboard to affect the background process, so after the `FORK` but before the `EXEC`, the shell does

```
signal(SIGINT, SIG_IGN);
```

and
signal(SIGQUIT, SIG_IGN);

to disable the DEL and quit signals. (The quit signal is generated by CTRL-\); it is the same as DEL except that if it is not caught or ignored, it makes a core dump of the process killed.) For foreground processes (no ampersand), these signals are not ignored.

Hitting the DEL key is not the only way to send a signal. The KILL system call allows a process to signal another process (provided they have the same uid—unrelated processes cannot signal each other). Getting back to the example of background processes used above, suppose a background process is started up, but later it is decided that the process should be terminated. SIGINT and SIGQUIT have been disabled, so something else is needed. The solution is to use the kill program, which uses the KILL system call to send a signal to any process. By sending signal 9 (SIGKILL), to a background process, that process can be killed. SIGKILL cannot be caught or ignored.

For many real-time applications, a process needs to be interrupted after a specific time interval to do something, such as to retransmit a potentially lost packet over an unreliable communication line. To handle this situation, the ALARM system call has been provided. The parameter specifies an interval, in seconds, after which a SIGALRM signal is sent to the process. A process may only have one alarm outstanding at any instant. If an ALARM call is made with a parameter of 10 seconds, and then 3 seconds later another ALARM call is made with a parameter of 20 seconds, only one signal will be generated, 20 seconds after the second call. The first signal is canceled by the second call to ALARM. If the parameter to ALARM is zero, any pending alarm signal is canceled. If an alarm signal is not caught, the default action is taken and the signaled process is killed. Technically, alarm signals may be ignored, but that is a pointless thing to do.

It sometimes occurs that a process has nothing to do until a signal arrives. For example, consider a computer aided instruction program that is testing reading speed and comprehension. It displays some text on the screen and then calls ALARM to signal it after 30 seconds. While the student is reading the text, the program has nothing to do. It could sit in a tight loop doing nothing, but that would waste CPU time that a background process or other user might need. A better solution is to use the PAUSE system call, which tells MINIX to suspend the process until the next signal arrives.

### 1.4.3. System Calls for File Management

Many system calls relate to files and the file system. In this section we will look at the system calls that operate on individual files; in the next one we will examine those that involve directories or the file system as a whole. To create a new file, the CREAT call is used (why the call is CREAT and not CREATE has been lost in the mists of time). Its parameters provide the name of the file and the protection mode. Thus
fd = creat("abc", 0751);

creates a file called abc with mode 0751 octal (in C, a leading zero means that a constant is in octal). The low-order 9 bits of 0751 specify the rwx bits for the owner (7 means read-write-execute permission), his group (5 means read-execute), and others (1 means execute only).

CREAT not only creates a new file, but also opens it for writing, regardless of the file’s mode. The file descriptor returned, fd, can be used to write the file. If a CREAT is done on an existing file, that file is truncated to length 0, provided, of course, that the permissions are all right.

Special files are created using MKNOD rather than CREAT. A typical call is

fd = mknod("/dev/tty2", 020744, 0x0402);

which creates a file named /dev/tty2 (the usual name for terminal 2), and gives it mode 020744 octal (a character special file with protection bits rwxr--r--). The third parameter contains the major device (4) in the high-order byte and the minor device (2) in the low-order byte. The major device could have been anything, but a file named /dev/tty2 ought to be minor device 2. Calls to MKNOD fail unless the caller is the super-user.

To read or write an existing file, the file must first be opened using OPEN. This call specifies the file name to be opened, either as an absolute path name or relative to the working directory, and a code of 0, 1, or 2, meaning open for reading, writing, or both. The file descriptor returned can then be used for reading or writing. Afterward, the file can be closed by CLOSE, which makes the file descriptor available for reuse on a subsequent CREAT or OPEN.

The most heavily used calls are undoubtedly READ and WRITE. We saw READ earlier. WRITE has the same parameters.

Although most programs read and write files sequentially, for some applications programs need to be able to access any part of a file at random. Associated with each file is a pointer that indicates the current position in the file. When reading (writing) sequentially, it normally points to the next byte to be read (written). The LSEEK call changes the value of the position pointer, so that subsequent calls to READ or WRITE can begin anywhere in the file, or even beyond the end of it.

LSEEK has three parameters: the first one is the file descriptor for the file, the second one is a file position, and the third one tells whether the file position is relative to the beginning of the file, the current position, or the end of the file. The value returned by LSEEK is the absolute position in the file after the file pointer was changed.

For each file, MINIX keeps track of the file mode (regular file, special file, directory, and so on), size, time of last modification, and other information. Programs can ask to see this information via the STAT and FSTAT system calls. These differ only in that the former specifies the file by name, whereas the latter takes a file descriptor, making it useful for inherited files whose names are not known. Both calls provide as the second parameter a pointer to a structure
where the information is to be put. The structure is shown in Fig. 1-13. In MINIX the three times are identical. Three of them are provided for compatibility with UNIX, where they are different.

```c
struct stat {
    short st_dev;            /* device where i-node belongs */
    unsigned short st_ino;  /* i-node number */
    unsigned short st_mode; /* mode word */
    short st_nlink;          /* number of links */
    short st_uid;            /* user id */
    short st_gid;            /* group id */
    short st_rdev;           /* major/minor device for special files */
    long st_size;            /* file size */
    long st_atime;           /* same as st_mtime */
    long st_mtime;           /* time of last modification */
    long st_ctime;           /* same as st_mtime */
};
```

**Fig. 1-13.** The structure used to return information for the `stat` and `fstat` system calls. Three times are present for UNIX compatibility.

When manipulating file descriptors, the `DUP` call is occasionally helpful. Consider, for example, a program that needs to close standard output (file descriptor 1), substitute another file as standard output, call a function that writes some output onto standard output, and then restore the original situation. Just closing file descriptor 1 and then opening a new file will make the new file standard output (assuming standard input, file descriptor 0, is in use), but it will be impossible to restore the original situation later.

The solution is first to execute the statement

```c
fd = dup(1);
```

which uses the `DUP` system call to allocate a new file descriptor, `fd`, and arrange for it to correspond to the same file as standard output. Then standard output can be closed and a new file opened and used. When it is time to restore the original situation, file descriptor 1 can be closed, and then

```c
n = dup(fd);
```

executed to assign the lowest file descriptor, namely, 1, to the same file as `fd`. Finally, `fd` can be closed and we are back where we started.

The `DUP` call has a variant that allows an arbitrary unassigned file descriptor to be made to refer to a given open file. It is called by

```c
dup2(fd, fd2);
```

where `fd` refers to an open file and `fd2` is the unassigned file descriptor that is to be made to refer to the same file as `fd`. Thus if `fd` refers to standard input (file descriptor 0) and `fd2` is 4, after the call, file descriptors 0 and 4 will both refer to standard input.
Interprocess communication in MINIX uses pipes, as described earlier. When a user types

```
cat file1 file2 | sort
```

the shell creates a pipe and arranges for standard output of the first process to write to the pipe, so standard input of the second process can read from it. The `PIPE` system call creates a pipe and returns two file descriptors, one for writing and one for reading. The call is

```
pipe(&fd[0]);
```

where `fd` is an array of two integers and `fd[0]` is the file descriptor for reading and `fd[1]` is the one for writing.

Figure 1-14 depicts a skeleton procedure that creates two processes, with the output of the first one piped into the second one. (A more realistic example would do error checking and handle arguments.) First a pipe is created, and then the procedure forks, with the parent eventually becoming the first process in the pipeline and the child process becoming the second one. Since the files to be executed, `process1` and `process2`, do not know that they are part of a pipeline, it is essential that the file descriptors be manipulated so that the first process’ standard output be the pipe and the second one’s standard input be the pipe. The parent first closes off the file descriptor for reading from the pipe. Then it closes standard output and does a `DUP` call that allows file descriptor 1 to write on the pipe. It is important to realize that `DUP` always returns the lowest available file descriptor, in this case, 1. Then the program closes the other pipe file descriptor.

After the `EXEC` call, the process started will have file descriptors 0 and 2 be unchanged, and file descriptor 1 for writing on the pipe. The child code is analogous. The parameter to `exect` is repeated because the first one is the file to be executed and the second one is the first parameter, which most programs expect to be the file name.

The last system call we will describe in this section, `IOCTL`, is applicable only to special character files, primarily terminals. It is used to change the characters used for correcting typing errors on the terminal, changing the terminal mode, and so forth. In `cooked mode`, the erase and kill characters work normally, `CTRL-S` and `CTRL-Q` can be used for stopping and starting terminal output, `CTRL-D` means end of file, `DEL` generates an interrupt signal, and `CTRL-\` generates a quit signal to force a core dump.

In `raw mode`, all of these functions are disabled; every character is passed directly to the program with no special processing. Furthermore, in raw mode, a read from the terminal will give the program any characters that have been typed, even a partial line, rather than waiting for a complete line as in cooked mode.

`Cbreak mode` is in between. The erase and kill characters for editing are disabled, as is `CTRL-D`, but `CTRL-S`, `CTRL-Q`, `DEL`, and `CTRL-\` are enabled.
#define STD_INPUT 0  /* file descriptor for standard input */
#define STD_OUTPUT 1  /* file descriptor for standard output */

pipeline(process1, process2)
  char *process1, *process2;
  /* pointers to program names */
  int fd[2];

pipe(&fd[0]);   /* create a pipe */
if (fork() != 0) {
  /* The parent process executes these statements. */
  close(fd[0]);    /* process 1 does not need to read from pipe */
  close(STD_OUTPUT);   /* set standard output to fd[1] */
  dup(fd[1]);
  close(fd[1]);   /* pipe not needed any more */
  execl(process1, process1, 0);
} else {
  /* The child process executes these statements. */
  close(fd[1]);   /* process 2 does not need to write to pipe */
  close(STD_INPUT);   /* prepare for new standard input */
  dup(fd[0]);
  close(fd[0]);  /* pipe not needed any more */
  execl(process2, process2, 0);
}

Fig. 1-14. A skeleton for setting up a two-process pipeline.

Like raw mode, partial lines can be returned to programs (if intraline editing is turned off, there is no need to wait until a whole line has been received—the user cannot change his mind and delete it, as he can in cooked mode).

IOCTL has three parameters, for example

ioctl(fd, TIOCSETP, &sgttyb);

The first parameter specifies a file, the second one specifies an operation, and the third one is the address of a structure containing various flags. MINIX supports the operation TIOCSETP for setting the terminal parameters to the values in the structure, and TIOCGETP for filling the structure with the current values. The structure is defined in the header file sgty.h, as shown in Fig. 1-15.

Bits in sg_flags can be set to enter raw or cbreak mode. The XTABLE bit should be turned on to have MINIX replace tabs on output with the proper number of spaces. It should be turned off only when using terminals that correctly interpret the tab character in hardware. CRMOD should normally be on to cause line feeds sent to the terminal to also produce carriage returns. Finally, ECHO should be turned on to have the terminal echo characters, except when passwords and other secrets are being typed in.

IOCTL also has another call with a data structure, tchars (analogous to sgttyb)
/* Data structures for IOCTL calls TIOCGETP/TIOCSETP calls. */

struct sgttyb {
    char sg_ispeed;     /* input speed (not used at present) */
    char sg_ospeed;     /* output speed (not used at present) */
    char sg_erase;      /* erase character */
    char sg_kill;       /* kill character */
    int sg_flags;       /* mode flags */
};

/* Fields in sg_flags. */
#define XTABS 0006000 /* set to cause tab expansion */
#define RAW 0000040  /* set to enable raw mode */
#define CRM0D 0000020 /* set to map lf to cr + lf */
#define ECHO 0000010 /* set to enable echoing of typed input */
#define CBREAK 0000002 /* set to enable cbreak mode */
#define COOKED 0000000 /* neither CBREAK nor RAW */

#define TIOCGETP ('t'<<8) 8
#define TIOCSETP ('t'<<8) 9

Fig. 1-15. The data structure used as the third parameter in IOCTL.

for changing the interrupt character, quit character, terminal start and stop characters, and terminal end-of-file character.

1.4.4. System Calls for Directory Management

In this section we will look at some system calls that relate more to directories or the file system as a whole, rather than just to one specific file as in the previous section. LINK is a good place to start. Although it only refers to one file, it does so under two path names. The purpose of LINK is to allow the same file to appear under two or more names, often in different directories. A typical use is to allow several members of the same programming team to share a common file, with each of them having the file appear in his own directory, possibly under different names. Sharing a file is not the same as giving every team member a private copy, because having a shared file means that changes that any member of the team makes are instantly visible to the other members—there is only one file. When copies are made of a file, subsequent changes made to one copy do not affect the other ones.

To see how LINK works, consider the situation of Fig. 1-16(a). Here are two users, ast and jim, each having their own directories with some files. If ast now executes a program containing the system call

link("/usr/jim/memo", "/usr/ast/note");
the file *memo* in *jim*'s directory is now entered into *astr*'s directory under the name *note*. Thereafter, */usr/jim/memo* and */usr/last/note* refer to the same file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/usr/ast</th>
<th>/usr/jim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mail</td>
<td>bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>games</td>
<td>memo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>.c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>prog1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/usr/ast</th>
<th>/usr/jim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mail</td>
<td>bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>games</td>
<td>memo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>.c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>prog1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) (b)

Fig. 1-16. (a) Two directories before linking */usr/jim/memo* to *ast*'s directory.
(b) The same directories after linking.

Understanding how LINK works will probably make it clearer what it does. Every file in MINIX has a unique number, its i-number, that identifies it. A directory is simply a file containing a set of (i-number, ASCII name) pairs. In Fig. 1-16, *mail* has i-number 16, and so on. What LINK does is simply create a new directory entry with a (possibly new) name, using the i-number of an existing file. In Fig. 1-16(b), two entries have the same i-number (70), and thus refer to the same file. If either one is later removed, using the UNLINK system call, the other one remains. If both are removed, MINIX sees that no entries to the file exist (a field in the i-node keeps track of the number of directory entries pointing to the file), so the file is removed from the disk.

As we have mentioned earlier, the MOUNT system call allows two file systems to be merged into one. A common situation is to have the root file system, containing the binary (executable) versions of the common commands and other heavily used files, on the RAM disk. The user can then insert a floppy disk, for example, containing user programs, into drive 0.

By executing the MOUNT system call, the drive 0 file system can be attached to the root file system, as shown in Fig. 1-17. A typical statement in C to perform the mount is

```c
mount("/dev/fd0", "/mnt", 0);
```

where the first parameter is the name of a block special file for drive 0 and the second parameter is the place in the tree where it is to be mounted.

After the MOUNT call, a file on drive 0 can be accessed by just using its path from the root directory or the working directory, without regard to which drive it is on. In fact, second, third and fourth drives can also be mounted anywhere in the tree. The MOUNT command makes it possible to integrate removable media into a single integrated file hierarchy, without having to worry about which device a file is on. Although this example involves floppy disks, hard disks or partitions of hard disks (often called partitions or minor devices) can also be mounted this way. When a file system is no longer needed, it can be unmounted with the U Mount system call.
MINIX maintains a cache of recently used blocks in main memory to avoid having to read them from the disk if they are used again quickly. If a block in the cache is modified (by a WRITE on a file) and the system crashes before the modified block is written out to disk, the file system will be damaged. To limit the potential damage, it is important to flush the cache periodically, so that the amount of data lost by a crash will be small. The system call SYNC tells MINIX to write out all the cache blocks that have been modified since being read in. When MINIX is started up, a program called update is started as a background process to do a SYNC every 30 seconds, to keep flushing the cache.

Two other calls that relate to directories are CHDIR and CHROOT. The former changes the working directory and the latter changes the root directory. After the call

```c
chdir("/usr/ast/test");
```

an open on the file xyz will open /usr/ast/test/xyz. CHROOT works in an analogous way. Once a process has told the system to change its root directory, all absolute path names (path names beginning with a "/") will start at the new root. Only super-users may execute CHROOT, and even super-users do not do it very often.

1.4.5. System Calls for Protection

In MINIX every file has an 11-bit mode used for protection. Nine of these bits are the read-write-execute bits for the owner, group and others. The CHMOD system call makes it possible to change the mode of a file. For example, to make a file read-only by everyone except the owner, one could execute

```c
chmod("file", 0644);
```

The other two protection bits, 02000 and 04000, are the SETGID (set-group-id) and SETUID (set-user-id) bits, respectively. When any user executes a program with the SETUID bit on, for the duration of that process the user's effective uid is changed to that of the file's owner. This feature is heavily used to allow users to execute programs that perform super-user only functions, such as creating directories. Creating a directory uses MKNOD, which is for the super-user
only. By arranging for the mkdir program to be owned by the superuser and have mode 04755, ordinary users can be given the power to execute MKNOD but in a highly restricted way.

When a process executes a file that has the SETUID or SETGID bit on in its mode, it acquires an effective uid or gid different from its real uid or gid. It is sometimes important for a process to find out what its real and effective uid or gid is. The system calls GETUID and GETGID have been provided to supply this information. Each call returns both the real and effective uid or gid, so four library routines are needed to extract the proper information: getuid, getgid, geteuid, and getegid. The first two get the real uid/gid, and the last two the effective ones.

Ordinary users cannot change their uid, except by executing programs with the SETUID bit on, but the super-user has another possibility: the SETUID system call, which sets both the effective and real uids. SETGID sets both gids. The super-user can also change the owner of a file with the CHOWN system call. In short, the super-user has plenty of opportunity for violating all the protection rules, which explains why so many students devote so much of their time to trying to become super-user.

The last two system calls in this category can be executed by ordinary user processes. The first one, UMASK, sets an internal bit mask within the system, which is used to mask off mode bits when a file is created. After the call

umask(022);

the mode supplied by CREAT and MKNOD will have the 022 bits masked off before being used. Thus the call

creat("file", 0777);

will set the mode to 0755 rather than 0777. Since the bit mask is inherited by child processes, if the shell does a UMASK just after login, none of the user’s processes in that session will accidently create files that other people can write on.

When a program owned by the root has the SETUID bit on, it can access any file, because its effective uid is the super-user. Frequently it is useful for the program to know if the person who called the program has permission to access a given file. If the program just tries the access, it will always succeed, and thus learn nothing.

What is needed is a way to see if the access is permitted for the real uid. The ACCESS system call provides a way to find out. The mode parameter is 4 to check for read access, 2 for write access, and 1 for execute access. Combinations are also allowed, for example, with mode equal to 6, the call returns 0 if both read and write access are allowed for the real uid; otherwise −1 is returned. With mode equal to 0, a check is made to see if the file exists and the directories leading up to it can be searched.
1.4.6. System Calls for Time Management

MINIX has four system calls that involve the time-of-day clock. TIME just returns the current time in seconds, with 0 corresponding to Jan. 1, 1970 at midnight (just as the day was starting, not ending). Of course the system clock must be set at some point in order to allow it to be read later, so STIME has been provided to let the clock be set (by the super-user). The third time call is UTIME, which allows the owner of a file (or the super-user) to change the time stored in a file's inode. Application of this system call is fairly limited, but a few programs need it, for example, touch, which sets the file's time to the current time. Finally, we have TIMES, which returns the accounting information to a process, so it can see how much CPU time it has used directly, and how much CPU time the system itself has expended on its behalf. The accumulated user and system times for its children are also returned.

1.5. OPERATING SYSTEM STRUCTURE

Now that we have seen what operating systems look like on the outside (i.e., the programmer's interface), it is time to take a look inside. In the following sections, we will examine four different structures that have been tried, in order to get some idea of the spectrum of possibilities.

1.5.1. Monolithic Systems

By far the most common organization, this approach might well be subtitled "The Big Mess." The structure is that there is no structure. The operating system is written as a collection of procedures, each of which can call any of the other ones whenever it needs to. When this technique is used, each procedure in the system has a well-defined interface in terms of parameters and results, and each one is free to call any other one, if the latter provides some useful computation that the former needs.

To construct the actual object program of the operating system when this approach is used, one compiles all the individual procedures, or files containing the procedures, and then binds them all together into a single object file with the linker. In terms of information hiding, there is essentially none—every procedure is visible to every other one (as opposed to a structure containing modules or packages, in which much of the information is local to a module, and only officially designated entry points can be called from outside the module).

Even in monolithic systems, however, it is possible to have at least a little structure. The services (system calls) provided by the operating system are requested by putting the parameters in well-defined places, such as in registers or on the stack, and then executing a special trap instruction known as a kernel call or supervisor call.
This instruction switches the machine from user mode to kernel mode (also known as supervisor mode), and transfers control to the operating system, shown as event (1) in Fig. 1-18. (Most CPUs have two modes: kernel mode, for the operating system, in which all instructions are allowed; and user mode, for user programs, in which I/O and certain other instructions are not allowed.)

![Diagram of system call process](image)

**Fig. 1-18.** How a system call can be made: (1) User program traps to the kernel. (2) Operating system determines service number required. (3) Operating system locates and calls service procedure. (4) Control is returned to user program.

The operating system then examines the parameters of the call to determine which system call is to be carried out, shown as (2) in Fig. 1-18. Next, the operating system indexes into a table that contains in slot $k$ a pointer to the procedure that carries out system call $k$. This operation, shown as (3) in Fig. 1-18, identifies the service procedure, which is then called. Finally, the system call is finished and control is given back to the user program.

This organization suggests a basic structure for the operating system:

1. A main program that invokes the requested service procedure.
2. A set of service procedures that carry out the system calls.
3. A set of utility procedures that help the service procedures.

In this model, for each system call there is one service procedure that takes care of it. The utility procedures do things that are needed by several service procedures, such as fetching data from user programs. This division of the procedures into three layers is shown in Fig. 1-19.

### 1.5.2. Layered Systems

A generalization of the approach of Fig. 1-19 is to organize the operating system as a hierarchy of layers, each one constructed upon the one below it. The first system constructed in this way was the THE system built at the Technische
Hogeschool Eindhoven in the Netherlands by E. W. Dijkstra (1968) and his students. The THE system was a simple batch system for a Dutch computer, the Electrologica X8, which had 32K of 27-bit words (bits were expensive in those days).

The system had 6 layers, as shown in Fig. 1-20. Layer 0 dealt with allocation of the processor, switching between processes when interrupts occurred or timers expired. Above layer 0, the system consisted of sequential processes, each of which could be programmed without having to worry about the fact that multiple processes were running on a single processor. In other words, layer 0 provided the basic multiprogramming of the CPU.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Layer</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Processor allocation and multiprogramming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Memory and drum management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Operator-process communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Input/output management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>User programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>The operator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Layer 1 did the memory management. It allocated space for processes in main memory and on a 512K word drum used for holding parts of processes (pages) for which there was no room in main memory. Above layer 1, processes did not have to worry about whether they were in memory or on the drum; the layer 1 software took care of making sure pages were brought into memory whenever they were needed.

Layer 2 handled communication between each process and the operator console. Above this layer each process effectively had its own operator console.

Layer 3 took care of managing the I/O devices and buffering the information streams to and from them. Above layer 3 each process could deal with abstract...
I/O devices with nice properties, instead of real devices with many peculiarities. Layer 4 was where the user programs were found. They did not have to worry about process, memory, console, or I/O management. The system operator process was located in layer 5.

A further generalization of the layering concept was present in the MULTICS system. Instead of layers, MULTICS was organized as a series of concentric rings, with the inner ones being more privileged than the outer ones. When a procedure in an outer ring wanted to call a procedure in an inner ring, it had to make the equivalent of a system call, that is, a TRAP instruction whose parameters were carefully checked for validity before allowing the call to proceed. Although the entire operating system was part of the address space of each user process in MULTICS, the hardware made it possible to designate individual procedures (memory segments, actually) as protected against reading, writing, or executing.

Whereas the THE layering scheme was really only a design aid, because all the parts of the system were ultimately linked together into a single object program, in MULTICS, the ring mechanism was very much present at run time and enforced by the hardware. The advantage of the ring mechanism is that it can easily be extended to structure user subsystems. For example, a professor could write a program to test and grade student programs and run this program in ring $n$, with the student programs running in ring $n+1$ so that they could not change their grades.

1.5.3. Virtual Machines

The initial releases of OS/360 were strictly batch systems. Nevertheless, many 360 users wanted to have time-sharing, so various groups, both inside and outside IBM decided to write time-sharing systems for it. The official IBM time-sharing system, TSS/360, was delivered late, and when it finally arrived it was so big and slow that few sites converted over to it. It was eventually abandoned after its development had consumed some 50 million dollars (Graham, 1970). But a group at IBM's Scientific Center in Cambridge, MA, produced a radically different system that IBM eventually accepted as a product, and which is now widely used.

![Fig. 1-21. The structure of VM/370 with CMS.](image-url)
This system, originally called CP/CMS and now called VM/370 (Meyer and Seawright, 1970; Seawright and MacKinnon, 1979), was based on an astute observation: a time-sharing system provides (1) multiprogramming and (2) an extended machine with a more convenient interface than the bare hardware. The essence of VM/370 is to completely separate these two functions.

The heart of the system, known as the virtual machine monitor, runs on the bare hardware and does the multiprogramming, providing not one, but several virtual machines to the next layer up, as shown in Fig. 1-21. However, unlike all other operating systems, these virtual machines are not extended machines, with files and other nice features. Instead, they are exact copies of the bare hardware, including kernel/user mode, I/O, interrupts, and everything else the real machine has.

Because each virtual machine is identical to the true hardware, each one can run any operating system that will run directly on the hardware. In fact, different virtual machines can, and usually do, run different operating systems. Some run one of the descendants of OS/360 for batch processing, while other ones run a simple, single-user, interactive system called CMS (Conversational Monitor System) for time-sharing users.

When a CMS program executes a system call, the call is trapped to the operating system in its own virtual machine, not to VM/370, just as it would if it were running on a real machine instead of a virtual one. CMS then issues the normal hardware I/O instructions for reading its virtual disk or whatever is needed to carry out the call. These I/O instructions are trapped by VM/370, which then performs them as part of its simulation of the real hardware. By making a complete separation of the functions of multiprogramming and providing an extended machine, each of the pieces can be much simpler and more flexible.

1.5.4. Client-Server Model

VM/370 gains much in simplicity by moving a large part of the traditional operating system code (implementing the extended machine) into a higher layer, CMS. Nevertheless, VM/370 itself is still a complex program because simulating a number of virtual 370s is not that simple (especially if you want to do it efficiently).

A trend in modern operating systems is to take this idea of moving code up into higher layers even further, and remove as much as possible from the operating system, leaving a minimal kernel. The usual approach is to implement most of the operating system functions in user processes. To request a service, such as reading a block of a file, a user process (now known as the client process) sends the request to a server process, which then does the work and sends back the answer.

In this model, shown in Fig. 1-22, all the kernel does is handle the communication between clients and servers. By splitting the operating system up into parts, each of which only handles one facet of the system, such as file service,
process service, terminal service, or memory service, each part becomes small and manageable. Furthermore, because all the servers run as user-mode processes, and not in kernel mode, they do not have direct access to the hardware. As a consequence, if a bug in the file server is triggered, the file service may crash, but this will not usually bring the whole machine down.

Another advantage of the client-server model is its adaptability to use in distributed systems (see Fig. 1-23). If a client communicates with a server by sending it messages, the client need not know whether the message is handled locally in its own machine, or whether it was sent across a network to a server on a remote machine. As far as the client is concerned, the same thing happens in both cases: a request was sent and a reply came back.

The picture painted above of a kernel that handles only the transport of messages from clients to servers and back is not completely realistic. Some operating system functions (such as loading commands into the physical I/O device registers) are difficult, if not impossible, to do from user-space programs. There are two ways of dealing with this problem. One way is to have some critical server processes (e.g., I/O device drivers) actually run in kernel mode, with complete access to all the hardware, but still communicate with other processes using the normal message mechanism.

The other way is to build a minimal amount of mechanism into the kernel, but leave the policy decisions up to servers in user space. For example, the kernel might recognize that a message sent to a certain special address means to take the contents of that message and load it into the I/O device registers for some disk, to start a disk read. In this example, the kernel would not even inspect the
bytes in the message to see if they were valid or meaningful; it would just blindly copy them into the disk's device registers. (Obviously some scheme for limiting such messages to authorized processes only must be used.) The split between mechanism and policy is an important concept; it occurs again and again in operating systems in various contexts.

1.6. OUTLINE OF THE REST OF THIS BOOK

Operating systems typically have four major components: process management, I/O device management, memory management and file management. MINIX is also divided into these four parts. The next four chapters deal with these four topics, one topic per chapter. Chap. 6 is a list of suggested readings and a bibliography. The appendices provide an introduction to the C programming language, an introduction to the IBM PC, guides to using and maintaining MINIX, a complete listing of the MINIX source code, and a cross reference map.

The chapters on processes, I/O, memory management, and file systems have the same general structure. First the general principles of the subject are laid out. Then comes an overview of the corresponding area of MINIX (which also applies to UNIX). Finally, the MINIX implementation is discussed in detail.

The implementation section may be skimmed or skipped without loss of continuity by readers just interested in the principles of operating systems and not interested in the MINIX code. Readers who are interested in finding out how a real operating system (MINIX) works, and who are not familiar with C or the IBM PC, should read Appendices A and B before starting with Chap. 2.

Although the book does not contain a separate chapter on distributed operating systems, it contains material on distributed systems throughout. For example, the section on interprocess communication discusses message passing and remote procedure calls, and the chapter on file systems has sections on file servers and atomic transactions. More information about distributed operating systems can be found in Tanenbaum and van Renesse (1985).

1.7. SUMMARY

In this chapter we started out by looking at operating systems from two viewpoints: resource managers and extended machines. In the resource manager view, the operating system's job is to efficiently manage the different parts of the system. In the extended machine view, the job of the system is to provide the users with a virtual machine that is more convenient to use than the actual machine.

We then briefly glanced back at the history of computers and their operating systems, to see how we got where we are now. Then we took a close look at MINIX and its system calls, to see what an operating system really does. We saw
a group of system calls relating to processes and another group relating to files. This information will be important later in the book when it is time to see how the system calls are implemented.

Finally, we examined different ways of structuring an operating system: as a monolithic system, as a hierarchy of layers, as a virtual machine system and as a client-server model.

PROBLEMS

1. What are the two main functions of an operating system?
2. What is multiprogramming?
3. What is spooling? Do you think that advanced personal computers will have spooling as a standard feature in the future?
4. On early computers, every byte of data read or written was directly handled by the CPU (i.e., there was no DMA—Direct Memory Access). What implications does this organization have for multiprogramming?
5. Why was time-sharing not widespread on second generation computers?
6. Which of the following instructions should be allowed only in kernel mode?
   (a) Disable all interrupts.
   (b) Read the time-of-day clock.
   (c) Set the time-of-day clock.
   (d) Change the memory map.
7. List some differences between personal computer operating systems and mainframe operating systems.
8. A MINIX file whose owner has uid = 12 and gid = 1 has mode rwxr-x--. Another user with uid = 6, gid = 1 tries to execute the file. What will happen?
9. In view of the fact that the mere existence of a super-user can lead to all kinds of security problems, why does such a concept exist?
10. The client-server model is popular in distributed systems. Can it also be used in a single-computer system?
11. Why is the process table needed in a time-sharing system? Is it also needed in personal computer systems in which only one process exists, that process taking over the entire machine until it is finished?
12. What is the essential difference between a block special file and a character special file?
13. If you hit DEL (sometimes called RUBOUT) often and fast enough, you may kill the shell. Explain.
14. In MINIX, if user 2 links to a file owned by user 1, then user 1 removes the file, what happens when user 2 tries to read the file?

15. Why is the CHROOT system call limited to the super-user? (Hint: think about protection problems.)

16. Why does MINIX have the program update running in the background all the time?

17. Write a program (or series of programs) to test all the MINIX system calls. For each call, try various sets of parameters, including some incorrect ones, to see if they are detected.

18. Write a shell that is similar to Fig. 1-10, but contains enough code that it actually works so you can test it. You might also add some features such as redirection of input and output, pipes, and background jobs.
We are now about to embark on a detailed study of how operating systems in general and MINIX in particular are designed and constructed. The most central concept in any operating system is the process: an abstraction of a running program. Everything else hinges on this concept, and it is important that the operating system designer (and student) know what a process is as early as possible.

2.1. INTRODUCTION TO PROCESSES

All modern computers can do several things at the same time. While running a user program, a computer can also be reading from a disk and printing on a terminal or printer. In a multiprogramming system, the CPU also switches from program to program, running each for tens or hundreds of milliseconds. While, strictly speaking, at any instant of time, the CPU is running only one program, in the course of 1 second, it may work on several programs, thus giving the users the illusion of parallelism. Sometimes people speak of pseudoparallelism to mean this rapid switching back and forth of the CPU between programs, to contrast it with the true hardware parallelism of the CPU computing while one or more I/O devices are running. Keeping track of multiple, parallel activities is hard to do. Therefore, operating system designers over the years have evolved a model that makes parallelism easier to deal with. That model is the subject of this chapter.
2.1.1. The Process Model

In this model, all the runnable software on the computer, often including the operating system, is organized into a number of sequential processes, or just processes for short. A process is just an executing program, including the current values of the program counter, registers, and variables. Conceptually, each process has its own virtual CPU. In reality, of course, the real CPU switches back and forth from process to process, but to understand the system, it is much easier to think about a collection of processes running in (pseudo) parallel, than to try to keep track of how the CPU switches from program to program. This rapid switching back and forth is called multiprogramming, as we saw in the previous chapter. In Fig. 2-1(a) we see a computer multiprogramming four programs in memory.

In Fig. 2-1(b) we see how this is abstracted into four processes, each with its own flow of control (i.e., its own program counter), and each one running independent of the other ones. In Fig. 2-1(c) we see that viewed over a long enough time interval, all the processes have made progress, but at any given instant only one process is actually running.

With the CPU switching back and forth among the processes, the rate at which a process performs its computation will not be uniform, and probably not even reproducible if the same processes are run again. Thus, processes must not be programmed with built-in assumptions about timing. Consider, for example, an I/O process that starts a magnetic tape in motion, executes an idle loop 1000 times to let the tape get up to speed, and then issues a command to read the first record. If the CPU decides to switch to another process during the idle loop, the tape process might not run again until after the first record was already past the read head. When a process has critical real-time requirements like this, that is, certain events absolutely must occur within a specified number of milliseconds, special measures must be taken to ensure that they do occur. Normally,
however, most processes are not affected by the underlying multiprogramming of the CPU or the relative speeds of different processes.

The difference between a process and a program is subtle, but crucial. An analogy may help make this point clearer. Consider a culinary-minded computer scientist who is baking a birthday cake for his daughter. He has a birthday cake recipe and a kitchen well-stocked with the necessary input: flour, eggs, sugar, and so on. In this analogy, the recipe is the program (i.e., an algorithm expressed in some suitable notation), the computer scientist is the processor (CPU), and the cake ingredients are the input data. The process is the activity consisting of our baker reading the recipe, fetching the ingredients, and baking the cake.

Now imagine that the computer scientist’s son comes running in crying, saying that he has been stung by a bee. The computer scientist records where he was in the recipe (the state of the current process is saved), gets out a first aid book, and begins following the directions in it. Here we see the processor being switched from one process (baking) to a higher priority process (administering medical care), each having a different program (recipe vs. first aid book). When the bee sting has been taken care of, the computer scientist goes back to his cake, continuing at the point where he left off.

The key idea here is that a process is an activity of some kind. It has a program, input, output, and a state. A single processor may be shared among several processes, with some scheduling algorithm being used to determine when to stop work on one process and service a different one.

### Process Hierarchies

Operating systems that support the process concept must provide some way to create all the processes needed. In very simple systems, or in systems designed for running only a single application, it may be possible to have all the processes that will ever be needed be present when the system comes up. In most systems, however, some way is needed to create and destroy processes as needed during operation. In MINIX, processes are created by the FORK system call, which creates an identical copy of the calling process. The child process can also execute FORK, so it is possible to get a whole tree of processes. In other operating systems, system calls exist to create a process, load its memory, and start it running. Whatever the exact nature of the system call, processes need a way to create other processes. Note that each process has one parent but zero, one, two, or more children.

As a simple example of how process trees are used, let us look at how MINIX initializes itself when it is started. A special process, called *init*, is present on the boot diskette. When it starts running, it reads a file telling how many terminals there are. Then it forks off one new process per terminal. These processes wait for someone to log in. If a login is successful, the login process executes a shell to accept commands. These commands may start up more processes, and so
forth. Thus, all the processes in the whole system belong to a single tree, with init at the root. (Init is not listed in the book; neither is the shell. The line had to be drawn somewhere.)

Process States

Although each process is an independent entity, with its own program counter and internal state, processes often need to interact with other processes. One process may generate some output that another process uses as input. In the shell command

```
cat chapter1 chapter2 chapter3 | grep tree
```

the first process, running cat, concatenates and outputs three files. The second process, running grep, selects all lines containing the word “tree.” Depending on the relative speeds of the two processes (which depends on both the relative complexity of the programs and how much CPU time each one has had), it may happen that grep is ready to run, but there is no input waiting for it. It must then block until some input is available.

When a process blocks, it does so because logically it cannot continue, typically because it is waiting for input that is not yet available. It is also possible for a process that is conceptually ready and able to run to be stopped because the operating system has decided to allocate the CPU to another process for a while. These two conditions are completely different. In Fig. 2-2 we see a state diagram showing the three states a process may be in:

1. Running (actually using the CPU at that instant).
2. Blocked (unable to run until some external event happens).
3. Ready (Runnable; temporarily stopped to let another process run).

![State Diagram](image)

Fig. 2-2. A process can be in running, blocked or ready (also called runnable) state.

Four transitions are possible among these three states, as shown. Transition 1 occurs when a process discovers that it cannot continue. In some systems the process must execute a system call, BLOCK, to get into blocked state. In other systems, including MINIX, when a process reads from a pipe or special file (e.g., a terminal) and there is no input available, the process is automatically blocked.
Transitions 2 and 3 are caused by the process scheduler, a part of the operating system, without the process even knowing about them. Transition 2 occurs when the scheduler decides that the running process has run long enough, and it is time to let another process have some CPU time. Transition 3 occurs when all the other processes have had their share and it is time for the first process to run again. The subject of scheduling, that is, deciding which process should run when and for how long, is an important one; we will look at it later in this chapter. Many algorithms have been devised to try to balance the competing demands of efficiency for the system as a whole and fairness to individual processes.

Transition 4 occurs when the external event for which a process was waiting (such as the arrival of some input) happens. If no other process is running at that instant, transition 3 will be triggered immediately, and the process will start running. Otherwise it may have to wait in ready state for a little while until the CPU is available.

Using the process model, it becomes much easier to think about what is going on inside the system. Some of the processes run programs that carry out commands typed in by a user. Other processes are part of the system and handle tasks such as carrying out requests for file services or managing the details of running a disk or a tape drive. When a disk interrupt occurs, the system makes a decision to stop running the current process and run the disk process, which was blocked waiting for that interrupt. Thus, instead of thinking about interrupts, we can think about user processes, disk processes, terminal processes, and so on, which block when they are waiting for something to happen. When the disk block has been read or the character typed, the process waiting for it is unblocked and is eligible to run again.

This view gives rise to the model shown in Fig. 2-3. Here the lowest level of the operating system is the scheduler, with a variety of processes on top of it. All the interrupt handling and details of actually starting and stopping processes are hidden away in the scheduler, which is actually quite small. The rest of the operating system is nicely structured in process form. The model of Fig. 2-3 is used in MINIX, with the understanding that "scheduler" really means not just process scheduling, but also interrupt handling and all the interprocess communication as well.

![Fig. 2-3](image-url)
2.1.2. Implementation of Processes

To implement the process model, the operating system maintains a table (an array of structures), called the process table, with one entry per process. This entry contains information about the process’ state, its program counter, stack pointer, memory allocation, the status of its open files, its accounting and scheduling information, and everything else about the process that must be saved when the process is switched from running to ready state so that it can be restarted later as if it had never been stopped.

In MINIX the process management, memory management, and file management are each handled by separate modules within the system, so the process table is partitioned, with each module maintaining the fields that it needs. Figure 2-4 shows some of the more important fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process management</th>
<th>Memory management</th>
<th>File management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Registers</td>
<td>Pointer to text segment</td>
<td>UMASK mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program counter</td>
<td>Pointer to data segment</td>
<td>Root directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program status word</td>
<td>Pointer to bss segment</td>
<td>Working directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stack pointer</td>
<td>Exit status</td>
<td>File descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process state</td>
<td>Signal status</td>
<td>Effective uid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time when process started</td>
<td>Process id</td>
<td>Effective gid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU time used</td>
<td>Parent process</td>
<td>System call parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children’s CPU time</td>
<td>Process group</td>
<td>Various flag bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of next alarm</td>
<td>Real uid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message queue pointers</td>
<td>Effective uid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pending signal bits</td>
<td>Real gid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process id</td>
<td>Effective gid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various flag bits</td>
<td>Bit maps for signals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Various flag bits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 2-4. Some of the fields in the MINIX process table.

Now that we have looked at the process table, it is possible to explain a little more about how the illusion of multiple sequential processes is maintained on a machine with one CPU and many I/O devices. What follows is technically a description of how the “scheduler” of Fig. 2-3 works in MINIX but most modern operating systems work essentially the same way. Associated with each I/O device class (e.g., floppy disks, hard disks, timers, terminals) is a location near the bottom of memory called the interrupt vector. It contains the address of the interrupt service procedure. Suppose user process 3 is running when a disk interrupt occurs. The program counter, program status word, and possibly one or more registers are pushed onto the stack by the interrupt hardware. The computer then jumps to the address specified in the disk interrupt vector. That is all the hardware does. From here on, it is up to the software.

The interrupt service procedure starts out by saving all the registers in the process table entry for the current process. The current process number and a pointer to its entry are kept in global variables so they can be found quickly. Then the information deposited by the interrupt is removed from the stack, and
the stack pointer is set to a temporary stack used by the process handler. Actions such as saving the registers and setting the stack pointer cannot even be expressed in C, so they are performed by a small assembly language routine. When this routine is finished, it calls a C procedure to do the rest of the work.

Interprocess communication in MINIX is via messages, so the next step is to build a message to be sent to the disk process, which will be blocked waiting for it. The message says that an interrupt occurred, to distinguish it from messages from user processes requesting disk blocks to be read and things like that. The state of the disk process is now changed from blocked to ready and the scheduler is called. In MINIX, different processes have different priorities, to give better service to I/O device handlers than to user processes. If the disk process is now the highest priority runnable process, it will be scheduled to run. If the process that was interrupted is just as important or more so, then it will be scheduled to run again, and the disk process will have to wait a little while.

Either way, the C procedure called by the assembly language interrupt code now returns, and the assembly language code loads up the registers and memory map for the now-current process and starts it running. The interrupt handling and scheduling are summarized in Fig. 2-5.

1. Hardware stacks program counter, etc.
2. Hardware loads new program counter from interrupt vector.
3. Assembly language procedure saves registers.
4. Assembly language procedure sets up new stack.
5. C procedure marks service process as ready.
6. Scheduler decides which process to run next.
7. C procedure returns to the assembly code.
8. Assembly language procedure starts up current process.

Fig. 2-5. Skeleton of what the lowest level of the operating system does when an interrupt occurs.

2.2. INTERPROCESS COMMUNICATION

Processes frequently need to communicate with other processes. When a user process wants to read from a file, it must tell the file process what it wants. Then the file process has to tell the disk process to read the required block. In a shell pipeline, the output of the first process must be passed to the second process. In short, there is a need for communication between processes, preferably in a well-structured way not using interrupts. In the following sections we will look at some of the pitfalls and issues related to this InterProcess Communication or IPC.

2.2.1. Race Conditions

In some operating systems, processes that are working together often share some common storage that each one can read and write. The shared storage may
be in main memory or it may be a shared file; the location of the shared memory does not change the nature of the communication or the problems that arise. To see how interprocess communication works in practice, let us consider a simple but common example, a print spooler. When a process wants to print a file, it enters the file name in a special spooler directory. Another process, the printer daemon, periodically checks to see if there are any files to be printed, and if there are it prints them and then removes their names from the directory.

Imagine that our spooler directory has a large (potentially infinite) number of slots, numbered 0, 1, 2, ..., each one capable of holding a file name. Also imagine that there are two shared variables, out, which points to the next file to be printed, and in, which points to the next free slot in the directory. These two variables might well be kept on a two-word file available to all processes. At a certain instant, slots 0 to 3 are empty (the files have already been printed) and slots 4 to 6 are full (with the names of files queued for printing). More or less simultaneously, processes A and B decide they want to queue a file for printing. This situation is shown in Fig. 2-6.

![Diagram](image_url)

**Fig. 2-6.** Two processes want to access shared memory at the same time.

In jurisdictions where Murphy's law is applicable, the following might happen. Process A reads in and stores the value, 7, in a local variable called next_free_slot. Just then a clock interrupt occurs and the CPU decides that process A has run long enough, so it switches to process B. Process B also reads in, and also gets a 7, so it stores the name of its file in slot 7 and updates in to be an 8. Then it goes off and does other things.

Eventually process A runs again, starting from the place it left off. It looks at next_free_slot, finds a 7 there, and writes its file name in slot 7, erasing the name that process B just put there. Then it computes next_free_slot + 1, which is 8, and sets in to 8. The spooler directory is now internally consistent, so the printer daemon will not notice anything wrong, but process B will never get any output. Situations like this, where two or more processes are reading or writing some shared data and the final result depends on who runs precisely when, are called
race conditions. Debugging programs containing race conditions is no fun at all. The results of most test runs are usually fine, but once in a rare while something weird and unexplained happens.

2.2.2. Critical Sections

How do we avoid race conditions? The key to preventing trouble here and in many other situations involving shared memory, shared files, and shared everything else, is to find some way to prohibit more than one process from reading and writing the shared data at the same time. Put in other words, what we need is mutual exclusion—some way of making sure that if one process is using a shared variable or file, the other processes will be excluded from doing the same thing. The difficulty above occurred because process B started using one of the shared variables before process A was finished with it. The choice of appropriate primitive operations for achieving mutual exclusion is a major design issue in any operating system, and a subject that we will examine in great detail in the following sections.

The problem of avoiding race conditions can also be formulated in an abstract way. Part of the time, a process is busy doing internal computations and other things that do not lead to race conditions. However, sometimes a process may be accessing shared memory or files, or doing other critical things that can lead to races. That part of the program where the shared memory is accessed is called the critical section. If we could arrange matters such that no two processes were ever in their critical sections at the same time, we could avoid race conditions.

Although this requirement avoids race conditions, this is not sufficient for having parallel processes cooperate correctly and efficiently using shared data. We need four conditions to hold to have a good solution:

1. No two processes may be simultaneously inside their critical sections.
2. No assumptions are made about relative process speeds or number of CPUs.
3. No process running outside its critical section should block other processes.
4. No process should wait arbitrarily long to enter its critical section.

2.2.3. Mutual Exclusion with Busy Waiting

In this section we will examine various proposals for achieving mutual exclusion, so that while one process is busy updating shared memory in its critical region, no other process will enter its critical region and cause trouble.
Disabling Interrupts

The simplest solution is to have each process disable all interrupts just after entering its critical region and re-enable them just before leaving it. With interrupts disabled, no clock interrupts can occur. The CPU is only switched from process to process as a result of clock or other interrupts, after all, and with interrupts turned off the CPU will not be switched to another process. Thus, once a process has disabled interrupts, it can examine and update the shared memory without fear that any other process will intervene.

This approach is generally unattractive because it is unwise to give user processes the power to turn off interrupts. Suppose one of them did it, and never turned them on again? That would be the end of the system. Furthermore, if the computer has two or more CPUs, disabling interrupts affects only the CPU that executed the disable instruction. The other ones will continue to run normally and may well access the shared memory.

On the other hand, it is frequently convenient for the kernel itself to disable interrupts for a few instructions while it is updating variables or lists. If an interrupt occurred while the list of ready processes, for example, was in an inconsistent state, race conditions could occur. The conclusion is: disabling interrupts is sometimes a useful technique within the kernel, but is not appropriate as a general mutual exclusion mechanism for user processes.

Lock Variables

As a second attempt, let us look for a software solution. Consider having a single, shared, (lock) variable, initially 0. When a process wants to enter its critical region, it first tests the lock. If the lock is 0, the process sets it to 1 and enters the critical region. If the lock is already 1, the process just waits until it becomes 0. Thus, a 0 means that no process is in its critical region, and a 1 means that some process is in its critical region.

Unfortunately, this idea contains exactly the same fatal flaw that we saw in the spooler directory. Suppose one process reads the lock and sees that it is 0. Before it can set the lock to 1, another process is scheduled, runs, and sets the lock to 1. When the first process runs again, it will also set the lock to 1, and two processes will be in their critical regions at the same time.

Now you might think that we could get around this problem by first reading out the lock value, then checking it again just before storing into it, but that really does not help. The race now occurs if the second process modifies the lock just after the first process has finished its second check.

Strict Alternation

A third approach to the mutual exclusion problem is shown in Fig. 2-7. In this proposed solution, the integer variable turn, initially 0, keeps track of whose
turn it is to enter the critical region and examine or update the shared memory. Initially, process 0 inspects `turn`, finds it to be 0, and enters its critical region. Process 1 also finds it to be 0, and therefore sits in a tight loop continually testing `turn` to see when it becomes 1. Continuously testing a variable waiting for some value to appear is called **busy waiting**. It should usually be avoided, since it wastes CPU time.

```plaintext
while (TRUE) {
    while (turn != 0) /* wait */;
    critical_section();
    turn = 1;
    noncritical_section();
}
```

```
while (TRUE) {
    while (turn != 1) /* wait */;
    critical_section();
    turn = 0;
    noncritical_section();
}
```

(a)  
(b)  

**Fig. 2-7.** A proposed solution to the critical section problem.

When process 0 leaves the critical section, it sets `turn` to 1, to allow process 1 to enter its critical section. Suppose process 1 finishes its critical section quickly, so both processes are in their noncritical sections, with `turn` set to 0. Now process 0 executes its whole loop quickly, coming back to its noncritical section with `turn` set to 1. At this point, process 0 finishes its noncritical section and goes back to the top of its loop. Unfortunately, it is not permitted to enter its critical section now, because `turn` is 1 and process 1 is busy with its noncritical section. Put in a different way, taking turns is not a good idea when one of the processes is much slower than the other.

This situation violates condition 3 set out above: process 0 is being blocked by a process not in its critical section. Going back to the spooler directory earlier, if we now associate the critical section with reading and writing the spooler directory, process 0 would not be allowed to print another file because process 1 was doing something else.

In fact, this solution requires that the two processes strictly alternate in entering their critical regions, for example, in spooling files. Neither one would be permitted to spool two in a row. While this algorithm does avoid all races, it is not really a serious candidate as a solution.

**Peterson's Solution**

By combining the idea of taking turns with the idea of lock variables and warning variables, the Dutch mathematician T. Dekker was the first one to devise a software solution to the mutual exclusion problem that does not require strict alternation. Unfortunately, his solution is quite complicated, so in practice it is never used. For a discussion of Dekker's algorithm, see Dijkstra (1965).
In 1981, Peterson discovered a much simpler way to achieve mutual exclusion. It is shown in Fig. 2-8.

```c
#define FALSE 0
#define TRUE 1
#define N 2  /* number of processes */

int turn;  /* whose turn is it? */
int interested[N]; /* all values initially 0 (FALSE) */

void enter_region(int process) { /* process number: 0 or 1 */
    int other; /* number of the other process */
    other = 1 - process; /* the opposite of process */
    interested[process] = TRUE; /* show that you are interested */
    turn = process; /* set flag */
    while (turn == process && interested[other] == TRUE) /* null statement */;
}

void leave_region(int process) { /* process leaving critical region */
    interested[process] = FALSE; /* indicate departure from critical region */
}
```

Fig. 2-8. Peterson’s solution for achieving mutual exclusion.

Before using the shared variables (i.e., before entering its critical region), each process calls `enter_region` with its own process number, 0 or 1, as parameter. This call will cause it to wait, if need be, until it is safe to enter. After it has finished with the shared variables, the process calls `leave_region` to indicate that it is done and to allow the other process to enter, if it so desires.

Let us see how this solution works. Initially neither process is in its critical region. Now process 0 calls `enter_region`. It indicates its interest by setting its array element, and sets `turn` to 0. Since process 1 is not interested, `enter_region` returns immediately. If process 1 now calls `enter_region`, it will hang there until `interested[0]` goes to `FALSE`, an event that only happens when process 0 calls `leave_region`.

Now consider the case that both processes call `enter_region` almost simultaneously. Both will store their process number in `turn`. Whichever store is done last is the one that has a lasting result; the first one is lost. Suppose process 1 stores last, so `turn` is 1. When both processes come to the while statement, process 0 executes it zero times, and enters its critical region. Process 1 loops and does not enter its critical region.
The TSL Instruction

Now let us look at a proposal that requires a little help from the hardware. Many computers, especially those designed with multiple processors in mind, have an instruction TEST AND SET LOCK (TSL) that works as follows. It reads the contents of the memory word into a register and then stores a nonzero value at that memory address. The operations of reading the word and storing into it are guaranteed to be indivisible—no other processor can access the word until the instruction is finished. The CPU executing the TSL instruction locks the memory bus to prohibit other CPUs from accessing memory until it is done.

To use the TSL instruction, we will use a shared variable, flag, to coordinate access to shared memory. When flag is 0, any process may set it to 1 using the TSL instruction and then read or write the shared memory. When it is done, the process sets flag back to 0 using an ordinary MOVE instruction.

How can this instruction be used to prevent two processes from simultaneously entering their critical regions? The solution is given in Fig. 2-9. There a four-instruction subroutine in a fictitious (but typical) assembly language is shown. The first instruction copies the old value of flag to a register and then sets flag to 1. Then the old value is compared with 0. If it is nonzero, the lock was already set, so the program just goes back to the beginning and tests it again. Sooner or later it will become 0 (when the process currently in its critical section is done with its critical section), and the subroutine returns, with the lock set. Clearing the lock is simple. The program just stores a 0 in flag. No special instructions are needed.

\[
\text{enter\_region:} \\
\quad \text{tsl register,flag} \\
\quad \text{cmp register,#0} \\
\quad \text{jnz enter\_region} \\
\quad \text{ret} \\
\hline
\text{leave\_region:} \\
\quad \text{mov flag,#0} \\
\quad \text{ret}
\]

| \text{copy flag to register and set flag to 1} |
| \text{was flag zero?} |
| \text{if it was non zero, lock was set, so loop} |
| \text{return to caller; critical region entered} |
| \text{store a 0 in flag} |
| \text{return to caller} |

Fig. 2-9. Setting and clearing locks using TSL.

One solution to the critical section problem is now straightforward. Before entering its critical section, a process calls enter\_region, which does busy waiting until the lock is free, then it acquires the lock and returns. After the critical section the process calls leave\_region, which stores a 0 in flag. As with all solutions based on critical regions, the processes must call enter\_region and leave\_region at the correct times for the method to work. If a process cheats, the mutual exclusion will fail.
2.2.4. Sleep and Wakeup

Both Peterson’s solution and the solution using TSL are correct, but both have the defect of requiring busy waiting. In essence, what these solutions do is this: when a process wants to enter its critical section, it checks to see if the entry is allowed. If it is not, the process just sits in a tight loop waiting until it is.

Not only does this approach waste CPU time, but it can also have unexpected effects. Consider a computer with two processes, $H$, with high priority and $L$, with low priority. The scheduling rules are such that $H$ is run whenever it is in ready state. At a certain moment, with $L$ in its critical region, $H$ becomes ready to run (e.g., an I/O operation completes). $H$ now begins busy waiting, but since $L$ is never scheduled while $H$ is running, $L$ never gets the chance to leave its critical region, so $H$ loops forever.

Now let us look at some interprocess communication primitives that block instead of wasting CPU time when they are not allowed to enter their critical sections. One of the simplest is the pair SLEEP and WAKEUP. SLEEP is a system call that causes the caller to block, that is, be suspended until another process wakes it up. The WAKEUP call has one parameter, the process to be awakened. Alternatively, both SLEEP and WAKEUP each have one parameter, a memory address used to match up SLEEPs with WAKEUPS.

As an example of how these primitives are used, let us consider the producer-consumer problem (also known as the bounded buffer problem). Two processes share a common, fixed-size buffer. One of them, the producer, puts information into the buffer, and the other one, the consumer, takes it out.

Trouble arises when the producer wants to put a new item in the buffer, but it is already full. The solution is for the producer to go to sleep, to be awakened when the consumer has removed one or more items. Similarly, if the consumer wants to remove an item from the buffer and sees that the buffer is empty, it goes to sleep until the producer puts something in the buffer and wakes it up.

This approach sounds simple enough, but it leads to the same kinds of race conditions we saw earlier with the spooler directory. To keep track of the number of items in the buffer, we will need a variable, count. If the maximum number of items the buffer can hold is $N$, the producer’s code will first test to see if count is $N$. If it is, the producer will go to sleep; if it is not, the producer will add an item and increment count.

The consumer’s code is similar: first test count to see if it is 0. If it is, go to sleep; if it is nonzero, remove an item and decrement the counter. Each of the processes also tests to see if the other should be sleeping, and if not, wakes it up.

The code for both producer and consumer is shown in Fig. 2-10.

To express system calls such as SLEEP and WAKEUP in C, we will show them as calls to library routines. They are not part of the standard C library, but presumably would be available on any system that actually had these system calls. The procedures enter_item and remove_item, which are not shown, handle the bookkeeping of putting items into and taking items out of the buffer.
\#define N 100 /* number of slots in the buffer */
int count = 0; /* number of items in the buffer */

producer()
{
    while (TRUE) { /* repeat forever */
        produce_item(); /* generate next item */
        if (count == N) sleep(); /* if buffer is full, go to sleep */
        enter_item(); /* put item in buffer */
        count = count + 1; /* increment count of items in buffer */
        if (count == 1) wakeup(consumer); /* was buffer empty? */
    }
}

c consumer()
{
    while (TRUE) { /* repeat forever */
        if (count == 0) sleep(); /* if buffer is empty, got to sleep */
        remove_item(); /* take item out of buffer */
        count = count - 1; /* decrement count of items in buffer */
        if (count == N-1) wakeup(producer); /* was buffer full? */
        consume_item(); /* print item */
    }
}

Fig. 2-10. The producer-consumer problem with a fatal race condition.

Now let us get back to the race condition. It can occur because access to count is unconstrained. The following situation could possibly occur. The buffer is empty and the consumer has just read count to see if it is 0. At that instant, the scheduler decides to stop running the consumer temporarily and start running the producer. The producer enters an item in the buffer, increments count, and notices that it is now 1. Reasoning that count was just 0, and thus the consumer must be sleeping, the producer calls wakeup to wake the consumer up.

Unfortunately, the consumer is not yet logically asleep, so the wakeup signal is lost. When the consumer next runs, it will test the value of count it previously read, find it to be 0, and go to sleep. Sooner or later the producer will fill up the buffer and also go to sleep. Both will sleep forever.

The essence of the problem here is that a wakeup sent to a process that is not (yet) sleeping is lost. If it were not lost, everything would be all right. The obvious quick fix is to modify the rules to add a wakeup waiting bit to the picture. When a wakeup is sent to a process that is already awake, this bit is set. Later, when the process tries to go to sleep, if the wakeup waiting bit is on, it will be turned off, but the process will stay awake. The wakeup waiting bit is really a piggy bank for wakeup signals.

While the wakeup waiting bit saves the day in this simple example, it is easy
to construct examples with three or more processes in which one wakeup waiting bit is insufficient. We could make another patch, and add a second wakeup waiting bit, or maybe 8 or 32 of them, but in principle the problem is still there.

2.2.5. Semaphores

This was the situation in 1965, when E. W. Dijkstra (1965) suggested using an integer variable to count the number of wakeups saved for future use. In his proposal, a new variable type, called a semaphore, was introduced. A semaphore could have the value 0, indicating that no wakeups were saved, or some positive value if one or more wakeups were pending.

Dijkstra proposed having two operations, DOWN and UP (generalizations of SLEEP and WAKEUP, respectively). The DOWN operation on a semaphore checks to see if the value is greater than 0. If so, it decrements the value (i.e., uses up one stored wakeup) and just continues. If the value is 0, the process is put to sleep. Checking the value, changing it, and possibly going to sleep is all done as a single, indivisible, **atomic action**. It is guaranteed that once a semaphore operation has started, no other process can access the semaphore until the operation has completed or blocked.

The UP operation increments the value of the semaphore addressed. If one or more processes were sleeping on that semaphore, unable to complete an earlier DOWN operation, one of them is chosen by the system (e.g., at random), and is allowed to complete its DOWN. Thus, after an UP on a semaphore with processes sleeping on it, the semaphore will still be 0, but there will be one fewer process sleeping on it. The operation of incrementing the semaphore and waking up one process is also indivisible. No process ever blocks doing an UP, just as no process ever blocks doing a WAKEUP in the earlier model.

As an aside, in Dijkstra's original paper, he used the names P and V instead of DOWN and UP, respectively, but since these have no mnemonic significance to people who do not speak Dutch (and only marginal significance to those who do), we will use the terms DOWN and UP instead. These were first introduced in Algol 68.

Semaphores solve the lost-wakeup problem, as shown in Fig. 2-11. It is essential that they be implemented in an indivisible way. The normal way is to implement UP and DOWN as system calls, with the operating system briefly disabling all interrupts while it is testing the semaphore, updating it, and putting the process to sleep, if necessary. As all of these actions take only a few instructions, no harm is done in disabling interrupts. If multiple CPUs are being used, each semaphore should be protected by a lock variable, with the TSL instruction used to make sure that only one CPU at a time examines the semaphore. Be sure you understand that using TSL to prevent several CPUs from accessing the semaphore at the same time is quite different from busy waiting by the producer or consumer waiting for the other to empty or fill the buffer.

This solution uses three semaphores, one called **full** for counting the number
#define N 100
typedef int semaphore;
semaphore mutex = 1;  /* controls access to critical region */
semaphore empty = N;  /* counts empty buffer slots */
semaphore full = 0;  /* counts full buffer slots */

producer()
{
    int item;

    while (TRUE) /* TRUE is the constant 1 */{
        produce_item(&item); /* generate something to put in buffer */
        down(&empty); /* decrement empty count */
        down(&mutex); /* enter critical region */
        enter_item(item); /* put new item in buffer */
        up(&mutex); /* leave critical region */
        up(&full); /* increment count of full slots */
    }
}

customer()
{
    int item;

    while (TRUE) /* infinite loop */{
        down(&full); /* decrement full count */
        down(&mutex); /* enter critical region */
        remove_item(&item); /* take item from buffer */
        up(&mutex); /* leave critical region */
        up(&empty); /* increment count of empty slots */
        consume_item(item); /* do something with the item */
    }
}

Fig. 2-11. The producer-consumer problem using semaphores.

of slots that are full, one called empty for counting the number of slots that are
empty and one called mutex to make sure the producer and consumer do not
access the buffer at the same time. Full is initially 0, empty is initially equal to
the number of slots in the buffer, and mutex is initially 1. Semaphores that are
initialized to 1 and used by two or more processes to ensure that only one of
them can enter its critical region at the same time are called binary semaphores.
If each process does a DOWN just before entering its critical region and an UP just
after leaving it, mutual exclusion is guaranteed.

Now that we have a good interprocess communication primitive at our disposal,
let us go back and look at the interrupt sequence of Fig. 2-5 again. In a system
using semaphores, the natural way to hide interrupts is to have a semaphore,
initially set to 0, associated with each I/O device. Just after starting an I/O device, the managing process does a \textsc{down} on the associated semaphore, thus blocking immediately. When the interrupt comes in, the interrupt handler then does an \textsc{up} on the associated semaphore, which makes the relevant process ready to run again. In this model, step 5 in Fig. 2.5 consists of doing an \textsc{up} on the device's semaphore, so that in step 6 the scheduler will be able to run the device manager. Of course, if several processes are now ready, the scheduler may choose to run an even more important process next. We will look at how scheduling is done later in this chapter.

2.2.6. Event Counters

The solution to the producer-consumer problem using semaphores relied on mutual exclusion to avoid race conditions. It is also possible to program a solution without requiring mutual exclusion. In this section we will describe such a method. It uses a special kind of variable called an \textbf{event counter} (Reed and Kanodia, 1979).

Three operations are defined on an event counter $E$:

1. $\text{Read}(E)$: Return the current value of $E$.
2. $\text{Advance}(E)$: Atomically increment $E$ by 1.
3. $\text{Await}(E, v)$: Wait until $E$ has a value of $v$ or more.

The producer-consumer problem does not use \textsc{read}, but it is needed for other synchronization problems.

Notice that event counters only increase, never decrease. They always start at 0. Figure 2.12 shows the producer-consumer problem once more, this time using event counters.

Two event counters are used. The first one, $\text{in}$, counts the cumulative number of items that the producer has put into the buffer since the program started running. The other one, $\text{out}$, counts the cumulative number of items that the consumer has removed from the buffer so far. It is clear that $\text{in}$ must be greater than or equal to $\text{out}$, but not by more than the size of the buffer.

When the producer has computed a new item, it checks to see if there is room in the buffer, using the \textsc{await} system call. Initially, $\text{out}$ will be 0 and sequence $- N$ will be negative, so the producer does not block. If the producer manages to generate $N + 1$ items before the consumer has run at all, the \textsc{await} statement will wait until $\text{out}$ becomes 1, something that will only happen after the consumer has removed one item.

The consumer's logic is even simpler. Before trying to remove the $k$-th item, it just waits until $\text{in}$ has reached $k$, that is, until the producer has put $k$ items into the buffer.
SEC. 2.2 | INTERPROCESS COMMUNICATION

#define N 100 /* number of slots in the buffer */
typedef int event_counter; /* event_counters are a special kind of int */
event_counter in = 0; /* counts items inserted into buffer */
event_counter out = 0; /* counts items removed from buffer */

producer()
{
    int item, sequence = 0;
    while (TRUE) {
        produce_item(&item); /* infinite loop */
        sequence = sequence + 1; /* generate something to put in buffer */
        count_items_produced(sequence); /* count items produced so far */
        sequence = sequence - N; /* wait until there is room in buffer */
        enter_item(item); /* put item in slot (sequence-1) % N */
        advance(&in); /* let consumer know about another item */
    }
}

customer()
{
    int item, sequence = 0;
    while (TRUE) {
        sequence = sequence + 1; /* infinite loop */
        sequence = sequence + 1; /* number of item to remove from buffer */
        await(in, sequence); /* wait until required item is present */
        remove_item(&item); /* take item from slot (sequence-1) % N */
        advance(&out); /* let producer know that item is gone */
        consume_item(item); /* do something with the item */
    }
}

Fig. 2-12. The producer-consumer problem using event counters.

2.2.7. Monitors

With semaphores and event counters, interprocess communication looks easy, doesn’t it? Forget it. Look closely at the order of the DOWNS before entering or removing items from the buffer in Fig. 2-11. Suppose the two DOWNS in the producer’s code were reversed in order, so mutex was decremented before empty instead of after it. If the buffer were completely full, the producer would block, with mutex set to 0. Consequently, the next time the consumer tried to access the buffer, it would do a DOWN on mutex, now 0, and block too. Both processes would stay blocked forever and no more work would ever be done. This unfortunate situation is called a deadlock. We will study deadlocks in detail in Chap. 3.

This problem is pointed out to show how careful you must be when using semaphores. One subtle error and everything comes to a grinding halt. It is like
programming in assembly language, only worse, because the errors are race conditions, deadlocks, and other forms of unpredictable and irreproducible behavior.

To make it easier to write correct programs, Hoare (1974) and Brinch Hansen (1975) proposed a higher level synchronization primitive called a **monitor**. Their proposals differed slightly, as described below. A monitor is a collection of procedures, variables, and data structures that are all grouped together in a special kind of module or package. Processes may call the procedures in a monitor whenever they want to, but they cannot directly access the monitor's internal data structures from procedures declared outside the monitor. Figure 2-13 illustrates a monitor written in an imaginary language, pidgin Pascal.

```
monitor example
  integer i;
  condition c;

  procedure producer(x);
    ...
  end;

  procedure consumer(x);
    ...
  end;
end monitor;          Fig. 2-13. A monitor.
```

Monitors have an important property that makes them useful for achieving mutual exclusion: only one process can be active in a monitor at any instant. Monitors are a programming language construct, so the compiler knows they are special and can handle calls to monitor procedures differently from other procedure calls. Typically, when a process calls a monitor procedure, the first few instructions of the procedure will check to see if any other process is currently active within the monitor. If so, the calling process will be suspended until the other process has left the monitor. If no other process is using the monitor, the calling process may enter.

It is up to the compiler to implement the mutual exclusion on monitor entries, but a common way is to use a binary semaphore. Because the compiler, not the programmer, is arranging for the mutual exclusion, it is much less likely that something will go wrong. In any event, the person writing the monitor does not have to be aware of how the compiler arranges for mutual exclusion. It is sufficient to know that by turning all the critical sections into monitor procedures, no two processes will ever execute their critical sections at the same time.

Although monitors provide an easy way to achieve mutual exclusion, as we
have seen above, that is not enough. We also need a way for processes to block when they cannot proceed. In the producer-consumer problem, it is easy enough to put all the tests for buffer-full and buffer-empty in monitor procedures, but how should the producer block when it finds the buffer full?

The solution lies in the introduction of condition variables, along with two operations on them, WAIT and SIGNAL. When a monitor procedure discovers that it cannot continue (e.g., the producer finds the buffer full), it does a WAIT on some condition variable, say, full. This action causes the calling process to block. It also allows another process that had been previously prohibited from entering the monitor to enter now.

This other process, for example, the consumer, can wake up its sleeping partner by doing a SIGNAL on the condition variable that its partner is waiting on. To avoid having two active processes in the monitor at the same time, we need a rule telling what happens after a SIGNAL. Hoare proposed to let the newly awakened process run, suspending the other one. Brinch Hansen proposed finessing the problem by requiring that a process doing a SIGNAL must exit the monitor immediately. In other words, a SIGNAL statement may appear only as the final statement in a monitor procedure. We will use Brinch Hansen's proposal because it is conceptually simpler and is also easier to implement. If a SIGNAL is done on a condition variable on which several processes are waiting, only one of them, determined by the system scheduler, is revived.

A skeleton of the producer-consumer problem with monitors is given in Fig. 2-14 in pidgin Pascal.

You may be thinking that the operations WAIT and SIGNAL look similar to SLEEP and WAKEUP, which we saw earlier had fatal race conditions. They are very similar, but with one crucial difference: SLEEP and WAKEUP failed because while one process was trying to go to sleep, the other one was trying to wake it up. With monitors, that cannot happen. The automatic mutual exclusion on monitor procedures guarantees that if, say, the producer inside a monitor procedure discovers that the buffer is full, it will be able to complete the WAIT operation without having to worry about the possibility that the scheduler may switch to the consumer just before the WAIT completes. The consumer will not even be let into the monitor at all until the WAIT is finished and the producer has been marked as no longer runnable.

By making the mutual exclusion of critical regions automatic, monitors make parallel programming much less error-prone than with semaphores. Still, they too have some drawbacks. It is not for nothing that Fig. 2-14 is written in a strange kind of pidgin Pascal rather than in C, as are the other examples in this book. As we said earlier, monitors are a programming language concept. The compiler must recognize them and arrange for the mutual exclusion somehow. C, Pascal, and most other languages do not have monitors, so it is unreasonable to expect their compilers to enforce any mutual exclusion rules. In fact, how could the compiler even know which procedures were in monitors and which were not?
monitor ProducerConsumer
condition full, empty;
integer count;

procedure enter;
begin
  if count = N then wait(full);
  enter_item;
  count := count + 1;
  if count = 1 then signal(empty);
end;

procedure remove;
begin
  if count = 0 then wait(empty);
  remove_item;
  count := count - 1;
  if count = N - 1 then signal(full);
end;

count := 0;
end monitor;

procedure producer;
begin
  while true do
  begin
    produce_item;
    ProducerConsumer.enter;
  end
end;

procedure consumer;
begin
  while true do
  begin
    ProducerConsumer.remove;
    consume_item;
  end
end;

Fig. 2-14. The producer-consumer problem with monitors. The buffer has \( N \) slots.
These same languages do not have semaphores either, but adding semaphores is easy: all you need to do is add two short assembly language routines to the library to issue the UP and DOWN system calls. The compilers do not even have to know that they exist. Of course, the operating systems have to know about the semaphores, but at least if you have decided to write a semaphore-based operating system, you can write the user programs for it in C or Pascal or even BASIC if you are masochistic enough. With monitors, you need a language that has them built in. A few languages, such as Concurrent Euclid (Holt, 1983) have them, but they are rare.

Another problem with monitors, and also with semaphores, is that they were designed for solving the mutual exclusion problem on one or more CPUs that all have access to a common memory. By putting the semaphores (or event counters) in the shared memory and protecting them with TSL instructions, we can avoid races. When we go to a distributed system consisting of multiple CPUs, each with its own private memory, connected by a local area network, these primitives become inapplicable. The conclusion is that semaphores are too low level and monitors are not usable except in a few programming languages. Furthermore, none of the primitives provide for information exchange between machines. Something else is needed.

2.2.8. Message Passing

That something else is message passing. This method of interprocess communication uses two primitives SEND and RECEIVE, which, like semaphores and unlike monitors, are system calls rather than language constructs. As such, they can easily be put into library procedures, such as

\[
\text{send}(\text{destination, } \&\text{message});
\]

and

\[
\text{receive}(\text{source, } \&\text{message});
\]

The former sends a message to a given destination and the latter receives a message from a given source (or from \textit{ANY}, if the receiver does not care). If no message is available, the receiver could block until one arrives.

Design Issues for Message Passing Systems

Message passing systems have many interesting problems and design issues that do not arise with semaphores or monitors, especially if the communicating processes are on different machines connected by a network. For example, messages can be lost by the network. To guard against lost messages, the sender and receiver can agree that as soon as a message has been received, the receiver will send back a special acknowledgement message. If the sender has not received the acknowledgement within a certain time interval, it retransmits the message.
Now consider what happens if the message itself is received correctly, but the acknowledgement is lost. The sender will retransmit the message, so the receiver will get it twice. It is essential that the receiver can distinguish a new message from the retransmission of an old one. Usually this problem is solved by putting consecutive sequence numbers in each original message. If the receiver gets a message bearing the same sequence number as the previous message, it knows that the message is a duplicate that can be ignored.

Message systems also have to deal with the question of how processes are named, so that the process specified in a SEND or RECEIVE call is unambiguous. Often a naming scheme of process@machine is used.

If the number of machines is very large, and there is no central authority that allocates machine names, it may happen that two organizations give their machine the same name. The problem of conflicts can be reduced considerably by grouping machines into domains, and then addressing processes as process@machine.domain. In this scheme there is no problem if two machines have the same name, provided that they are in different domains. The domain names must also be unique, of course.

Authentication is also an issue in message systems: how can the client tell that he is communicating with the real file server, and not with an imposter? How can the file server tell which client has requested a file? Encrypting the messages with a key known only to authorized users can often be helpful here.

At the other end of the spectrum, there are also design issues that are important when the sender and receiver are on the same machine. One of these is performance. Copying messages from one process to another is always slower than doing a semaphore operation or entering a monitor. Much work has gone into making message passing efficient. Cheriton (1984), for example, has suggested limiting message size to what will fit in the machine's registers, and then doing message passing using the registers.

Remote Procedure Call

Some message passing systems are structured with all message traffic taking the form of a request message from a client to a server, followed by a reply message from the server back to the client. From the client's point of view, sending a message to a server and then waiting for a reply looks very much like calling a procedure and then waiting for it to finish. In both cases, the caller provides some parameters, starts the operation, blocks until it completes, and then gets some result values.

Some distributed operating systems (e.g., Birrell and Nelson, 1984) exploit this similarity by having interprocess communication take the form of remote procedure calls. When a client process wants to read a block from a remote file, for example, it calls a procedure (called a stub procedure) read on its own machine using the normal procedure call instruction, as shown in Fig. 2-15. Read then sends a request message to the file server and waits for the reply.
On the server’s machine, the message is accepted by the server stub procedure, which then calls the server using the standard procedure call instruction. When the server procedure has done the work, it returns to its caller, the stub, in the usual way. The server stub then sends a reply message back to the client stub. When the reply arrives, the client stub returns the results to the client procedure in the usual way.

The beauty of this scheme is that neither the client procedure nor the server procedure has to know that messages are being used. They just see ordinary procedure calls to local procedures. Only the stubs have to know about messages. The stubs are usually library procedures or are compiler generated.

Although the goal is to make remote procedure calls as much like local procedure calls as possible, it is a difficult goal to achieve. One problem is parameter passing. Passing parameters by value is not difficult, but passing them by reference is much harder. Furthermore, if the client and server machines have different representations for information, such as floating point numbers, much time may be wasted converting to and from a standard network format.

On some machines (e.g., 68000) the high-order byte of an integer has the lowest-numbered address and on other machines (e.g., 8088) it has the highest-numbered address. As a consequence, when an integer is sent from a 68000 to an 8088 a byte at a time, the integer will be byte-swapped when it arrives. This difference in architecture causes enormous problems and inefficiencies.

Another problem specific to remote procedure call is that of its failure semantics. Suppose the server crashes when executing a remote procedure call. What should be reported back to the client? It is not enough to merely report the crash, because the server may actually have finished the call just before crashing. If the client thinks the server crashed before executing the call, it will try again, which may not always be desirable.

As an example of this problem, consider an automated chocolate factory in which a remote procedure call is made to set a bit that causes a valve to open just long enough to fill a vat with chocolate. If the chocolate server crashes at approximately the time it was going to set the hardware bit, the client can never learn whether it crashed a microsecond before or after setting the bit. If the
client repeats the call later, we may end up with a sticky brown floor. If the client does not repeat the call later, we may end up with an empty vat.

Depending on their implementations, remote procedure call systems can be divided into three categories based on their failure semantics. At least once systems guarantee that on a server crash the call will be executed one or more times (by simply timing out and repeating it until it is acknowledged). At most once systems guarantee that no call will ever be executed more than one time (no time out), but cannot guarantee that a call in progress during a crash will be executed at all. Maybe systems do not guarantee anything, but they are the easiest to implement.

The Producer-Consumer Problem with Message Passing

Now let us see how the producer-consumer problem can be solved with message passing and no shared memory. A solution is given in Fig. 2-16. We assume that all messages are the same size and that messages sent but not yet received are buffered automatically by the operating system. In this solution, a total of N messages is used, analogous to the N slots in a shared memory buffer. The consumer starts out by sending N empty messages to the producer. Whenever the producer has an item to give to the consumer, it takes an empty message and sends back a full one. In this way, the total number of messages in the system remains constant in time, so they can be stored in a given amount of memory.

If the producer works faster than the consumer, all the messages will end up full, waiting for the consumer; the producer will be blocked, waiting for an empty to come back. If the consumer works faster, then the reverse happens: all the messages will be empty, waiting for the producer to fill them up; the consumer will be blocked, waiting for a full message.

Many variants are possible with message passing. For starters, let us look at how messages are addressed. One way is to assign each process a unique address and have messages be addressed to processes. An alternative way is to invent a new data structure, called a mailbox. A mailbox is a place to buffer a certain number of messages, typically specified when the mailbox is created. When mailboxes are used, the address parameters in the SEND and RECEIVE calls are mailboxes, not processes. When a process tries to send to a mailbox that is full, it is suspended until a message is removed from that mailbox.

For the producer-consumer problem, both the producer and consumer would create mailboxes large enough to hold N messages. The producer would send messages containing data to the consumer’s mailbox, and the consumer would send empty messages to the producer’s mailbox. When mailboxes are used, the buffering mechanism is clear: the destination mailbox holds messages that have been sent to the destination process but have not yet been accepted.

The other extreme from having mailboxes is to eliminate all buffering. When this approach is followed, if the SEND is done before the RECEIVE, the sending
# define N 100
/* number of slots in the buffer */

producer()
{
    int item;
    message m; /* message buffer */
    while (TRUE) {
        produce_item(&item); /* generate something to put in buffer */
        receive(consumer, &m); /* wait for an empty to arrive */
        build_message(&m, item); /* construct a message to send */
        send(consumer, &m); /* send item to consumer */
    }
}

counter()
{
    int item, i;
    message m;
    for (i = 0; i < N; i++) send(producer, &m); /* send N empties */
    while (TRUE) {
        receive(producer, &m); /* get message containing item */
        extract_item(&m, &item); /* extract item from message */
        send(producer, &m); /* send back empty reply */
        consume_item(item); /* do something with the item */
    }
}

Fig. 2-16. The producer-consumer problem with $N$ messages.

process is blocked until the RECEIVE happens, at which time the message can be copied directly from the sender to the receiver, with no intermediate buffering. Similarly, if the RECEIVE is done first, the receiver is blocked until a SEND happens. This strategy is often known as a rendezvous. It is easier to implement than a buffered message scheme but is less flexible since the sender and receiver are forced to run in lockstep.

The interprocess communication between user processes in MINIX (and UNIX) is via pipes, which are effectively mailboxes. The only real difference between a message system with mailboxes and the pipe mechanism is that pipes do not preserve message boundaries. In other words, if one process writes 10 messages of 100 bytes to a pipe and another process reads 1000 bytes from that pipe, the reader will get all 10 messages at once. With a true message system, each READ should return only one message. Of course, if the processes agree always to read and write fixed-size messages from the pipe, or to end each message with a special character (e.g., line feed), no problems arise. The processes that make up the MINIX operating system itself use a true message scheme with fixed size messages for communication among themselves.
2.2.9. Equivalence of Primitives

Reed and Kanodia (1979) described a different interprocess communication method called sequencers. Campbell and Habermann (1974) discussed a method called path expressions. Atkinson and Hewitt (1979) introduced serializers. While the list of different methods is not endless, it is certainly pretty long, with new ones being dreamed up all the time. Fortunately, space limitations prevent us from looking at all of them. Furthermore, many of the proposed schemes are similar to other ones.

In the previous sections we have studied four different interprocess communication primitives. Over the years, each one has accumulated supporters who maintain that their favorite way is the best way. The truth of the matter is that all these methods are essentially semantically equivalent (at least as far as single CPU systems are concerned). Using any of them, you can build the other ones.

We will now show the essential equivalence of semaphores, monitors, and messages. Not only is this interesting in its own right, but it also provides more insight and understanding about how the primitives work and how they can be implemented. Lack of space prevents us from dealing with event counters as well, but the general approach should be clear from the other examples.

Using Semaphores to Implement Monitors and Messages

Let us first see how we can build monitors and messages using semaphores. If the operating system provides semaphores as a basic feature, any compiler writer can easily implement monitors in his language as follows. Associated with each monitor is a binary semaphore, mutex, initially 1, to control entry to the monitor, and an additional semaphore, initially 0, per condition variable. When a monitor procedure is called, the first thing it does is a DOWN on its mutex. If the monitor is currently in use, the process will block. When leaving a monitor, a process does an UP on mutex to permit a waiting process to enter.

WAIT on a condition variable, c, is compiled into a sequence of three semaphore operations: UP mutex, then DOWN c, and finally DOWN mutex. The SIGNAL operation on a condition variable is translated into an UP on the corresponding semaphore.

To see why this mapping works, consider the producer-consumer problem again. The mutex semaphore guarantees that each process has exclusive access to the monitor for its critical section. Suppose the consumer starts first and discovers that there is no work for it in the buffer. It does a WAIT empty, which causes an UP on mutex and a DOWN on empty. The consumer goes to sleep, and the producer is allowed to enter as soon as it wants to. When the producer discovers that count (see Fig. 2-14) is 1, it will do SIGNAL empty to wake up the consumer. At this point both producer and consumer are active in the monitor, but since one of our rules of programming with monitors is that after doing SIGNAL a process must leave the monitor immediately, no harm is done.
Note that if the producer does its UP on *mutex* and leaves the monitor before the consumer has done its DOWN on *mutex*, it is possible that the producer could enter the monitor again before the consumer does its DOWN. Again, no harm is done, because the consumer cannot inspect or update any of the shared variables until after it has done the DOWN on *mutex*. If the producer is in the monitor at that moment, *mutex* will be 0 and the consumer will block until the producer leaves the monitor and does an UP on *mutex*.

Now let us look at how to implement message passing with semaphores. Associated with each process is a semaphore, initially 0, on which it will block when a SEND or RECEIVE must wait for completion. A shared buffer area will be used to hold mailboxes, each one containing an array of message slots. The slots in each mailbox are chained together in a linked list, so messages are delivered in the order received. Each mailbox has integer variables telling how many slots are full and how many are empty. Finally, each mailbox also contains the start of two queues, one queue for processes that are unable to send to the mailbox and one queue for processes that are unable to receive from the mailbox. These queues need to supply only the process numbers of the waiting processes so an UP can be done on the relevant semaphore. The whole shared buffer is protected by a binary semaphore, *mutex*, to make sure that only one process can inspect or update the shared data structures at once. It is shown in Fig. 2-17.

![Fig. 2-17. The shared buffer for implementing message passing with semaphores.](image)

When a SEND or RECEIVE is done on a mailbox containing at least one empty or full slot, respectively, the operation inserts or removes a message, updates the counters and links, and exits normally. The use of *mutex* at the start and end of the critical region ensures that only one process at a time can use the counters and pointers, in order to avoid race conditions.

When a RECEIVE is done on an empty mailbox, the process trying to receive a message first enters itself on the receive queue for the mailbox and then does an UP on *mutex* and a DOWN on its own semaphore, thus putting itself to sleep.
Later, when it is awakened, it will immediately do a DOWN on mutex just as in the case of using semaphores to construct monitors.

When a SEND is done, if room exists in the destination mailbox, the message is put there and the sender checks to see if the receiving queue for that mailbox has any waiting processes. If so, the first one is removed from the queue, and the sender does an UP on its semaphore. The sender then exits the critical region and the newly awakened receiver can continue. Their respective DOWN and UP on mutex cancel (in whatever order they occur) and no problems occur, provided that just as with monitors, a process that wakes up another process always does the WAKEUP as the very last thing before leaving the critical region.

When a SEND cannot complete due to a full mailbox, the sender first queues itself on the destination mailbox, then does an UP on mutex and a DOWN on its own semaphore. Later, when a receiver removes a message from the full mailbox and notices that someone is queued trying to send to that mailbox, the sender will be awakened.

Using Monitors to Implement Semaphores and Messages

Implementing semaphores and messages using monitors follows roughly the same pattern as what we have just described, but is simpler, because monitors are a higher level construct than semaphores. To implement semaphores, we need a counter and a linked list for each semaphore to be implemented, as well as a condition variable per process. When a DOWN is done, the caller checks (inside the monitor) to see if the counter for that semaphore is greater than zero. If it is, the counter is decremented and the caller simply exits the monitor. If the counter is zero, the caller adds its own process number to the linked list for that semaphore and does a WAIT on its condition variable.

When an UP is done on a semaphore, the calling process increments the counter (inside the monitor, of course) and then checks to see if the linked list for that semaphore has any entries. If the list has entries, the calling process removes one of them and does a SIGNAL on the condition variable for that process. Note that the calling process is not required to choose the first process on the linked list. In a more sophisticated implementation, each process could put its priority on the list along with its process number, so that the highest priority process would be awakened first.

Implementing messages using monitors is essentially the same as with semaphores, except that instead of a semaphore per process we have a condition variable per process. The mailbox structures are the same for both implementations.

Using Messages to Implement Semaphores and Monitors

If a message system is available, it is possible to implement semaphores and monitors using a little trick. The trick is to introduce a new process, the synchronization process. Let us first look at how this process can be used to
implement semaphores. The synchronization process maintains a counter and a linked list of waiting processes for each semaphore. To do an UP or DOWN, a process calls the corresponding (library) procedure, up or down, which sends a message to the synchronization process specifying both the operation desired and the semaphore to be used. The library procedure then does a RECEIVE to get the reply from the synchronization process.

When the message arrives, the synchronization process checks the counter to see if the required operation can be completed. UPS can always complete, but DOWNs will block if the value of the semaphore is 0. If the operation is allowed, the synchronization process sends back an empty message, thus unblocking the caller. If, however, the operation is a DOWN and the semaphore is 0, the synchronization process enters the caller onto the queue and does not send a reply. The result is that the process doing the DOWN is blocked, just as it should be. Later, when an UP is done, the synchronization process picks one of the processes blocked on the semaphore, either in first-come-first-served order, priority order, or some other order, and sends it a reply. Race conditions are avoided here because the synchronization process handles only one request at a time.

Monitors can be implemented using messages using the same trick. We showed earlier how monitors can be implemented using semaphores. Now we have shown how semaphores can be implemented using messages. By combining the two, we get monitors from messages. One way to achieve this goal is to have the compiler implement the monitor procedures by calling the library procedures up and down for the mutex and per-process semaphores, as described at the beginning of this section. These procedures would then be implemented by sending messages to the synchronization process. Other implementations are also possible.

2.3. CLASSICAL IPC PROBLEMS

The operating systems literature is full of interesting problems that have been widely discussed and analyzed. In the following sections we will examine two of the better-known problems.

2.3.1. The Dining Philosophers Problem

In 1965, Dijkstra posed and solved a synchronization problem called the dining philosophers problem. Since that time, everyone inventing yet another synchronization primitive has tried to demonstrate how wonderful the new primitive is by showing how elegantly it solves the dining philosophers problem. The problem can be stated as follows. Five philosophers are seated around a circular table. Each philosopher has a plate of especially slippery spaghetti. The spaghetti is so slippery that a philosopher needs two forks to eat it. Between each plate is a fork. The table is shown in Fig. 2-18.
The life of a philosopher consists of alternate periods of eating and thinking. (This is something of an abstraction, even for philosophers, but the other activities are irrelevant here.) When a philosopher gets hungry, she tries to acquire her left and right fork, one at a time, in either order. If successful in acquiring two forks, she eats for a while, then puts down the forks and continues to think. The key question is: can you write a program for each philosopher that does what it is supposed to do and never gets stuck? (It has been pointed out that the two-fork requirement is somewhat artificial; perhaps we should switch from Italian to Chinese food, substituting rice for spaghetti and chopsticks for forks.)

Figure 2-19 shows the obvious solution. The procedure take_fork waits until the specified fork is available and then seizes it. Unfortunately, the obvious solution is wrong. Suppose that all five philosophers take their left forks simultaneously. None will be able to take their right forks, and there will be a deadlock.

We could modify the program so that after taking the left fork, the program checks to see if the right fork is available. If it is not, the philosopher puts down the left one, waits for some time, and then repeats the whole process. This proposal too, fails, although for a different reason. With a little of bad luck, all the philosophers could start the algorithm simultaneously, picking up their left forks, seeing that their right forks were not available, putting down their left forks, waiting, picking up their left forks again simultaneously, and so on, forever. A situation like this, in which all the programs continue to run indefinitely but fail to make any progress is called starvation. (It is called starvation even when the problem does not occur in an Italian or a Chinese restaurant.)
#define N 5

philosopher(i)

int i; /* philosopher number, 0-4 */
{
    while (TRUE) {
        think(); /* philosopher is thinking */
        take_fork(i); /* take left fork */
        take_fork((i+1) % N); /* take right fork; % is modulo operator */
        eat(); /* yum-yum, spaghetti */
        put_fork(i); /* put left fork back on the table */
        put_fork((i+1) % N); /* put right fork back on the table */
    }
}

Fig. 2-19. A nonsolution to the dining philosophers problem.

Now you might think, "If the philosophers would just wait a random time instead of the same time after failing to acquire the right-hand fork, the chance that everything would continue in lockstep for even an hour is very small." Of course this is true, but in some applications one would prefer a solution that always works and cannot fail due to an unlikely series of random numbers. (Think about safety control in a nuclear power plant.)

One improvement to Fig. 2-19 that has no deadlock and no starvation is to protect the five statements following the call to think by a binary semaphore. Before starting to acquire forks, a philosopher would do a DOWN on mutex. After replacing the forks, she would do an UP on mutex. From a theoretical viewpoint, this solution is adequate. From a practical one, it has a performance bug: only one philosopher can be eating at any instant. With five forks available, we should be able to allow two philosophers to eat at the same time.

The solution presented in Fig. 2-20 is correct and also allows the maximum parallelism for an arbitrary number of philosophers. It uses an array, state, to keep track of whether a philosopher is eating, thinking, or hungry (trying to acquire forks). A philosopher may move only into eating state if neither neighbor is eating. Philosopher i's neighbors are defined by the macros LEFT and RIGHT. In other words, if i is 2, LEFT is 1 and RIGHT is 3.

The program uses an array of semaphores, one per philosopher, so hungry philosophers can block if the needed forks are busy. By now you should have enough background to understand this solution without any more help.

2.3.2. The Readers and Writers Problem

The dining philosophers problem is useful for modeling processes that are competing for exclusive access to a limited number of resources, such as tape drives or other I/O devices. Another famous problem is the readers and writers problem (Courtois et al., 1971), which models access to a data base. Imagine a
#define N 5
#define LEFT (i-1) % N
#define RIGHT (i+1) % N
#define THINKING 0
#define HUNGRY 1
#define EATING 2
typedef int semaphore;
int state[N];
semaphore mutex = 1;
semaphore s[N];

philosopher(i)
int i;
{
    while (TRUE) {
        think();
        take_forks(i);
        eat();
        put_forks(i);
    }
}

take_forks(i)
int i;
{
    down(&mutex);
    state[i] = HUNGRY;
    test(i);
    up(&mutex);
    down(&s[i]);
}

put_forks(i)
int i;
{
    down(&mutex);
    state[i] = THINKING;
    test(LEFT);
    test(RIGHT);
    up(&mutex);
}

test(i)
int i;
{
    if (state[i] == HUNGRY && state[LEFT] != EATING && state[RIGHT] != EATING) {
        state[i] = EATING;
        up(&s[i]);
    }
}

/* number of philosophers */
/* number of i's left neighbor */
/* number of i's right neighbor */
/* philosopher is thinking */
/* philosopher is trying to get forks */
/* philosopher is eating */
/* semaphores are a special kind of int */
/* array to keep track of everyone's state */
/* mutual exclusion for critical regions */
/* one semaphore per philosopher */
/* philosopher number, 0 to N-1 */
/* repeat forever */
/* philosopher is thinking */
/* acquire two forks or block */
/* yum-yum, spaghetti */
/* put both forks back on table */
/* philosopher number, 0 to N-1 */
/* enter critical region */
/* record fact that philosopher i is hungry */
/* try to acquire 2 forks */
/* exit critical region */
/* block if forks were not acquired */
/* philosopher number, 0 to N-1 */
/* philosopher has finished eating */
/* see if left neighbor can now eat */
/* see if right neighbor can now eat */
/* exit critical region */
/* philosopher number, 0 to N-1 */
/* see if left neighbor can now eat */
/* see if right neighbor can now eat */
/* exit critical region */
/* philosopher number, 0 to N-1 */
/* see if left neighbor can now eat */
/* see if right neighbor can now eat */
/* exit critical region */
big data base, such as an airline reservation system, with many competing processes wishing to read and write it. It is acceptable to have multiple processes reading the data base at the same time, but if one process is writing (i.e., changing) the data base, no other processes may have access to the data base, not even readers. The question is how do you program the readers and the writers? One solution of Courtois et al. is shown in Fig. 2-21.

typedef int semaphore; /* use your imagination */
semaphore mutex = 1; /* controls access to 'rc' */
semaphore db = 1; /* controls access to the data base */
int rc = 0; /* # of processes reading or wanting to */

reader()
{
    while (TRUE) { /* repeat forever */
        down(&mutex); /* get exclusive access to 'rc' */
        rc = rc + 1; /* one reader more now */
        if (rc == 1) down(&db); /* if this is the first reader ... */
        up(&mutex); /* release exclusive access to 'rc' */
        read_data_base(); /* access the data */
        down(&mutex); /* get exclusive access to 'rc' */
        rc = rc - 1; /* one reader fewer now */
        if (rc == 0) up(&db); /* if this is the last reader ... */
        up(&mutex); /* release exclusive access to 'rc' */
        use_data_read(); /* noncritical section */
    }
}

writer()
{
    while (TRUE) { /* repeat forever */
        think_up_data(); /* noncritical section */
        down(&db); /* get exclusive access */
        write_data_base(); /* update the data */
        up(&db); /* release exclusive access */
    }
}

Fig. 2-21. A solution to the readers and writers problem.

In this solution, the first reader to get access to the data base does a DOWN on the semaphore db. Subsequent readers merely increment a counter, rc. As readers leave, they decrement the counter and the last one out does an UP on the semaphore, allowing a blocked writer, if there is one, to get in.

Implicit in this solution is that readers have priority over writers. If a writer appears while several readers are in the data base, the writer must wait. If new readers keep appearing, so that there is always at least one reader in the data base, the writer must keep waiting until no more readers are interested in the
data base. Courtois et al. also presented a solution that gives priority to writers. For details, we refer you to their paper.

2.4. PROCESS SCHEDULING

In the examples of the previous sections, we have often had situations in which two or more processes (e.g., producer and consumer) were logically runnable. When more than one process is runnable, the operating system must decide which one to run first. That part of the operating system concerned with this decision is called the scheduler, and the algorithm it uses is called the scheduling algorithm. Back in the old days of batch systems with input in the form of card images on a magnetic tape, the scheduling algorithm was simple: just run the next job on the tape. With multi-user time-sharing systems, often combined with batch jobs in the background, the scheduling algorithm is more complex.

Before looking at specific scheduling algorithms, we should think about what the scheduler is trying to achieve. Various criteria come to mind as to what constitutes a good scheduling algorithm, among them:

1. Fairness: make sure each process gets its fair share of the CPU.
2. Efficiency: keep the CPU busy 100 percent of the time.
4. Turnaround: minimize the time batch users must wait for output.
5. Throughput: maximize the number of jobs processed per hour.

A little thought will show that some of these goals are contradictory. To minimize response time for interactive users, the scheduler should not run any batch jobs at all (except maybe between 3 A.M. and 6 A.M., when all the interactive users are snug in their beds). The batch users probably will not like this algorithm, however; it violates criterion 4. It can be shown (Kleinrock, 1975) that any scheduling algorithm that favors some class of jobs hurts another class of jobs. The amount of CPU time available is finite, after all. To give one user more you have to give another user less.

A complication that schedulers have to deal with is that every process is unique and unpredictable. Some spend a lot of time waiting for file I/O, while others would use the CPU for hours at a time if given the chance. When the scheduler starts running some process, it never knows for sure how long it will be until that process blocks, either for I/O, or on a semaphore, or for some other reason. To make sure that no process runs too long, nearly all computers have an electronic timer or clock built in, which causes an interrupt periodically. A frequency of 50 or 60 times a second (called 50 or 60 Hertz and abbreviated Hz) is common, but on many computers the operating system can set the timer
frequency to anything it wants. At each clock interrupt, the operating system gets to run and decide whether the currently running process should be allowed to continue, or whether it has had enough CPU time for the moment and should be suspended to give another process the CPU.

The strategy of allowing processes that are logically runnable to be temporarily suspended is called **preemptive scheduling**, and is in contrast to the **run to completion** method of the early batch systems. As we have seen throughout this chapter, a process can be suspended at an arbitrary instant, without warning, so another process can be run. This leads to race conditions and necessitates semaphores, event counters, monitors, messages, or some other sophisticated method for preventing them. On the other hand, a policy of letting a process run as long as it wanted to would mean that somebody computing \( \pi \) to a billion places could deny service to all other users for weeks or months.

**2.4.1. Round Robin Scheduling**

Now let us look at some specific scheduling algorithms. One of the oldest, simplest, fairest, and most widely used algorithms is **round robin**. Each process is assigned a time interval, called its **quantum**, which it is allowed to run. If the process is still running at the end of the quantum, the CPU is preempted and given to another process. If the process has blocked or finished before the quantum has elapsed, the CPU switching is done when the process blocks, of course. Round robin is easy to implement. All the scheduler needs to do is maintain a list of runnable processes, as shown in Fig. 2-22(a). When the quantum runs out on a process, it is put on the end of the list, as shown in Fig. 2-22(b).

![Diagram](image)

**Fig. 2-22.** Round robin scheduling. (a) The list of runnable processes. (b) The list of runnable processes after B's quantum runs out.

The only interesting issue with round robin is the length of the quantum. Switching from one process to another requires a certain amount of time for doing the administration—saving and loading registers and memory maps, updating various tables and lists, etc. Suppose this **process switch** or **context switch**, as it is sometimes called, takes 5 msec. Also suppose that the quantum is set at 20 msec. With these parameters, after doing 20 msec of useful work, the CPU will have to spend 5 msec on process switching. Twenty percent of the CPU time will be wasted on administrative overhead.

To improve the CPU efficiency, we could set the quantum to, say, 500 msec. Now the wasted time is less than 1 percent. But consider what happens if ten
interactive users hit the carriage return key at roughly the same time. Ten processes will be put on the list of runnable processes. If the CPU is idle, the first one will start immediately, the second one may not start until about 1/2 sec later, and so on. The unlucky last one may have to wait 5 sec before getting a chance, assuming all the others use their full quanta. Most users will perceive a 5-sec response to a short command as terrible.

Conclusion: setting the quantum too short causes too many process switches and lowers the CPU efficiency, but setting it too long may cause poor response to short interactive requests. A quantum around 100 msec is often a reasonable compromise.

2.4.2. Priority Scheduling

Round robin scheduling makes the implicit assumption that all processes are equally important. Frequently, the people who own and operate computer centers have different ideas on that subject. At a university computer center, the pecking order may be deans first, then professors, secretaries, janitors, and finally students. The need to take external factors into account leads to **priority scheduling**. The basic idea is straightforward: each process is assigned a priority, and the runnable process with the highest priority is allowed to run.

To prevent high-priority processes from running indefinitely, the scheduler may decrease the priority of the currently running process at each clock tick (i.e., at each clock interrupt). If this action causes its priority to drop below that of the next highest process, a process switch occurs.

Priorities can be assigned to processes statically or dynamically. On a military computer, processes started by generals might begin at priority 100, processes started by colonels at 90, majors at 80, captains at 70, lieutenants at 60, and so on. Alternatively, at a commercial computer center, high-priority jobs might cost 100 dollars an hour, medium priority 75 dollars an hour, and low priority 50 dollars an hour. The UNIX system has a command, *nice*, which allows a user to voluntarily reduce the priority of his process, in order to be nice to the other users. Nobody ever uses it.

Priorities can also be assigned dynamically by the system to achieve certain system goals. For example, some processes are highly I/O bound and spend most of their time waiting for I/O to complete. Whenever such a process wants the CPU, it should be given the CPU immediately, to let it start its next I/O request, which can then proceed in parallel with another process actually computing. Making the I/O bound process wait a long time for the CPU will just mean having it around occupying memory for an unnecessarily long time. A simple algorithm for giving good service to I/O bound processes is to set the priority to $1/f$, where $f$ is the fraction of the last quantum that a process used. A process that used only 2 msec of its 100 msec quantum would get priority 50, while a process that ran 50 msec before blocking would get priority 2, and a process that used the whole quantum would get priority 1.
It is often convenient to group processes into priority classes and use priority scheduling among the classes but round robin scheduling within each class. Figure 2-23 shows a system with four priority classes. The scheduling algorithm is as follows: as long as there are runnable processes in priority class 4, just run each one for one quantum, round robin fashion, and never bother with lower priority classes. If priority class 4 is empty, then run the class 3 processes round robin. If classes 4 and 3 are both empty, then run class 2 round robin, and so on. If priorities are not adjusted from time to time, lower priority classes may all starve to death.

![Fig. 2-23. A scheduling algorithm with four priority classes.](image)

### 2.4.3. Multiple Queues

One of the earliest priority schedulers was in CTSS (Corbato et al., 1962). CTSS had the problem that process switching was very slow because the 7094 could hold only one process in memory. Each switch meant swapping the current process to disk and reading in a new one from disk. The CTSS designers quickly realized that it was more efficient to give CPU-bound processes a large quantum once in a while, rather than giving them small quanta frequently (to reduce swapping). On the other hand, giving all processes a large quantum would mean poor response time, as we have already seen. Their solution was to set up priority classes. Processes in the highest class were run for one quantum. Processes in the next highest class were run for two quanta. Processes in the next class were run for four quanta, and so on. Whenever a process used up all the quanta allocated to it, it was moved down one class.

As an example, consider a process that needed to compute continuously for 100 quanta. It would initially be given one quantum, then swapped out. Next time it would get two quanta before being swapped out. On succeeding runs it would get 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64 quanta, although it would have used only 37 of the final 64 quanta to complete its work. Only 7 swaps would be needed (including the initial load) instead of 100 with a pure round robin algorithm. Furthermore, as the process sank deeper and deeper into the priority queues, it would be run less and less frequently, saving the CPU for short, interactive processes.

The following policy was adopted to prevent a process that needed to run for
a long time when it first started, but became interactive later, from being punished forever. Whenever a carriage return was typed at a terminal, the process belonging to that terminal was moved to the highest priority class, on the assumption that it was about to become interactive. One fine day some user with a heavily CPU-bound process discovered that just sitting at the terminal and typing carriage returns at random every few seconds did wonders for his response time. He told all his friends. Moral of the story: getting it right in practice is much harder than getting it right in principle.

Many other algorithms have been used for assigning processes to priority classes. For example, the influential XDS 940 system (Lampson, 1968), built at Berkeley, had four priority classes, called terminal, I/O, short quantum, and long quantum. When a process that was waiting for terminal input was finally awakened, it went into the highest priority class (terminal). When a process waiting for a disk block became ready, it went into the second class. When a process was still running when its quantum ran out, it was initially placed in the third class. However, if a process used up its quantum too many times in a row without blocking for terminal or other I/O, it was moved down to the bottom queue. Many other systems use something similar to favor interactive users.

2.4.4. Shortest Job First

Most of the above algorithms were designed for interactive systems. Now let us look at one that is especially appropriate for batch jobs for which the run times are known in advance. In an insurance company, for example, people can predict quite accurately how long it will take to run a batch of 1000 claims, since similar work is done every day. When several equally important jobs are sitting in the input queue waiting to be started, the scheduler should use shortest job first. Look at Fig. 2-24. Here we find four jobs A, B, C, and D, with run times of 8, 4, 4, and 4 minutes, respectively. By running them in that order, the turnaround time for A is 8 minutes, for B is 12 minutes, for C is 16 minutes, and for D is 20 minutes, for an average of 14 minutes.

![Diagram](image)

**Fig. 2-24.** An example of shortest job first scheduling.

Now let us consider running these four jobs using shortest job first, as shown in Fig. 2-24(b). The turnaround times are now 4, 8, 12, and 20 minutes, for an average of 11 minutes. Shortest job first is provably optimal. Consider the case of four jobs, with run times of $a$, $b$, $c$, and $d$, respectively. The first job finishes at time $a$, the second finishes at time $a+b$, and so on. The mean turnaround time is $(4a + 3b + 2c + d)/4$. It is clear that $a$ contributes more to the
average than the other times, so it should be the shortest job, with \( b \) next, then \( c \) and finally \( d \) as the longest as it affects only its own turnaround time. The same argument applies equally well to any number of jobs.

Because shortest job first always produces the minimum average response time, it would be nice if it could be used for interactive processes as well. To a certain extent, it can be. Interactive processes generally follow the pattern of wait for command, execute command, wait for command, execute command, and so on. If we regard the execution of each command as a separate "job," then we could minimize overall response time by running the shortest one first. The only problem is figuring out which of the currently runnable processes is the shortest one.

One approach is to make estimates based on past behavior and run the process with the shortest estimated running time. Suppose the estimated time per command for some terminal is \( T_0 \). Now suppose its next run is measured to be \( T_1 \). We could update our estimate by taking a weighted sum of these two numbers, that is, \( aT_0 + (1 - a)T_1 \). Through the choice of \( a \) we can decide to have the estimation process forget old runs quickly, or remember them for a long time. With \( a = 1/2 \), we get successive estimates of:

\[
T_0, \ T_0/2 + T_1/2, \ T_0/4 + T_1/4 + T_2/2, \ T_0/8 + T_1/8 + T_2/4 + T_3/2
\]

Thus, after three new runs, the weight of \( T_0 \) in the new estimate has dropped to \( 1/8 \).

The technique of estimating the next value in a series by taking the weighted average of the current measured value and the previous estimate is sometimes called aging. It is applicable to many situations where a prediction must be made based on previous values. Aging is especially easy to implement when \( a = 1/2 \). All that is needed is to add the new value to the current estimate and divide the sum by 2 (by shifting it right 1 bit).

It is worth pointing out that shortest job first is only optimal when all the jobs are available simultaneously. As a counterexample, consider five jobs, \( A \) through \( E \), with run times of 2, 4, 1, 1, and 1, respectively. Their arrival times are 0, 0, 3, 3, and 3.

Initially, only \( A \) or \( B \) can be chosen, since the other three jobs have not arrived yet. Using shortest job first we will run the jobs in the order \( A, B, C, D, E \), for an average wait of 4.6. However, running them in the order \( B, C, D, E, A \) has an average wait of 4.4.

2.4.5. Policy-Driven Scheduling

A completely different approach to scheduling is to make real promises to the user about performance and then live up to them. One promise that is realistic to make and easy to live up to is this: If there are \( n \) users logged in while you are working, you will receive about \( 1/n \) of the CPU power.

To make good on this promise, the system must keep track of how much
CPU time a user has had for all his processes since login, and also how long each user has been logged in. It then computes the amount of CPU each user is entitled to, namely the time since login divided by \( n \). Since the amount of CPU time each user has actually had is also known, it is straightforward to compute the ratio of actual CPU had to CPU time entitled. A ratio of 0.5 means that a process has only had half of what it should have had, and a ratio of 2.0 means that a process has had twice as much as it was entitled to. The algorithm is then to run the process with the lowest ratio until its ratio has moved above its closest competitor.

A similar idea can be applied to real-time systems, in which there are absolute deadlines that must be met. Here one looks for the process in greatest danger of missing its deadline, and runs it first. A process that must finish in 10 seconds gets priority over one that must finish in 10 minutes.

### 2.4.6. Two-level Scheduling

Up until now we have more or less assumed that all runnable processes are in main memory. If insufficient main memory is available, some of the runnable processes will have to be kept on the disk. This situation has major implications for scheduling, since the process switching time to bring in and run a process from disk is one or two orders of magnitude more than switching to a process already in main memory.

![Fig. 2-25. A two-level scheduler must move processes between disk and memory, and also choose processes to run from among those in memory. Three different instants of time are represented by (a), (b), and (c).](image)

A more practical way of dealing with swapped out processes is to use a two-level scheduler. Some subset of the runnable processes is first loaded into main memory, as shown in Fig. 2-25(a). The scheduler then restricts itself to only choosing processes from this subset for a while. Periodically, a higher-level scheduler is invoked to remove processes that have been in memory long enough and to load processes that have been on disk too long. Once the change has been made, as in Fig. 2-25(b), the lower-level scheduler again restricts itself to only running processes that are actually in memory. Thus, the lower-level scheduler is concerned with making a choice among the runnable processes that
are in memory at that moment, while the higher-level scheduler is concerned with shuttling processes back and forth between memory and disk.

Among the criteria that the higher-level scheduler could use to make its decisions are:

1. How long has it been since the process was swapped in or out?
2. How much CPU time has the process had recently?
3. How big is the process? (Small ones do not get in the way).
4. How high is the priority of the process?

Again here we could use round robin, priority scheduling, or various other methods.

2.5. OVERVIEW OF PROCESSES IN MINIX

Having completed our study of the principles of process management and interprocess communication, we can now take a look at how they are applied in MINIX. Unlike UNIX, whose kernel is a monolithic program not split up into modules, MINIX itself is a collection of processes that communicate with each other and with user processes using a single interprocess communication primitive—message passing. This design gives a more modular and flexible structure, making it easy, for example, to replace the entire file system by a completely different one.

2.5.1. The Internal Structure of MINIX

Let us begin our study of MINIX by taking a bird's-eye view of the system. MINIX is structured in four layers, with each layer performing a well-defined function. The four layers are illustrated in Fig. 2-26.

![Fig. 2-26. MINIX is structured in four layers.](image)

The bottom layer catches all interrupts and traps, and provides higher layers with a model of independent sequential processes that communicate using
messages. The code in this layer has two major activities. The first is catching the traps and interrupts, saving and restoring registers, and the general nuts and bolts of actually making the process abstraction provided to the higher layers work. The second is handling the mechanics of messages; checking for legal destinations, locating send and receive buffers in physical memory, and copying bytes from sender to receiver. That part of the layer dealing with the lowest level of interrupt handling is written in assembly language. The rest of the layer and all of the higher layers, are written in C.

Layer 2 contains the I/O processes, one per device type. To distinguish them from ordinary user processes, we will call them tasks, but the differences between tasks and processes are minimal. In many systems the I/O tasks are called device drivers; we will use the terms "task" and "device driver" interchangeably. A task is needed for each device type, including disk, printer, terminal, and clock. If other I/O devices are present, a task is needed for each one of those too. One task, the system task, is a little different, since it does not correspond to any I/O device. We will discuss the tasks in the next chapter.

All the tasks in layer 2 and all the code in layer 1 are linked together into a single binary program called the kernel. On a machine with kernel mode and user mode, the kernel would run in kernel mode. Despite being linked together in the same object program, the tasks in layer 2 are all completely independent from one another, are scheduled independently, and communicate using messages. They are linked together into a single binary to make it easier to port MINIX to machines with two modes where only the kernel is allowed to do I/O.

Layer 3 contains two processes that provide useful services to the user processes. The memory manager (MM) carries out all the MINIX system calls that involve memory management, such as FORK, EXEC, and BRK. The file system (FS) carries out all the file system calls, such as READ, MOUNT, and CHDIR.

As we noted at the start of Chap. 1, operating systems do two things: manage resources and provide an extended machine by implementing system calls. In MINIX the resource management is largely in the kernel (layers 1 and 2), and system call interpretation is in layer 3. The file system has been designed as a file "server" and can be moved to a remote machine with almost no changes. This also holds for the memory manager, although remote memory servers are not as useful as remote file servers.

Finally, layer 4 contains all the user processes—shells, editors, compilers, and user-written a.out programs.

2.5.2. Process Management in MINIX

Processes in MINIX follow the general process model given in this chapter. Processes can create subprocesses, which in turn can create more subprocesses, yielding a tree of processes. In fact, all the user processes in the whole system are part of a single tree with init (see Fig. 2-26) at the root.

To see how this situation comes about, we have to take a look at how MINIX
is booted from floppy disk. When the computer is turned on, the hardware reads
the first sector of the first track into memory and jumps to it. This sector con-
tains a bootstrap program that loads the entire operating system (and the file sys-
tem checker) into memory and starts it running. After the kernel, memory
manager, and file system have run and initialized themselves, control is passed to
init.

_init_ starts out by reading the file _/etc/tyts_, to see how many terminals are
currently installed (in the standard distribution, just the console). It then forks
off a child process for each terminal. Each of these children executes _/bin/login_
to wait until someone logs in.

After a successful login, _/bin/login_ executes the user's shell (specified in
_/etc/passwd_, normally _/bin/sh_). The shell waits for commands to be typed and
then forks off a new process for each command. In this way, the shells are the
children of _init_, the user processes are the grandchildren, and all the processes in
the system are part of a single tree.

The two principal system calls in MINIX for process management are FORK
and EXEC. FORK, as we have seen, is the only way to create a new process.
EXEC allows a process to execute a specified program. When a program is ex-
cuted, it is allocated a portion of memory whose size is specified in the program
file's header. It retains this memory allocation throughout its execution, although
the distribution among data segment, stack segment, and unused can vary as the
process runs.

All the information about a process is kept in the process table, which is
divided up among the kernel, memory manager, and file system, with each one
having those fields that it needs. When a new process comes into existence, by
FORK, or an old process terminates, by EXIT or a signal, the memory manager
first updates its part of the process table and then sends messages to the file sys-
tem and kernel telling them to do likewise.

### 2.5.3. Interprocess Communication in MINIX

Interprocess communication within MINIX itself is done by exchanging fixed-
size messages. The size of the messages is determined by the size of a structure
called _message_. On the 8088 it is 24 bytes, but if MINIX were moved to a CPU
with 4-byte integers, the struct would become larger. Three primitives are pro-
vided for sending and receiving messages. They are called by the C library pro-
cedures

```c
send(dest, &message);
```
to send a message to process _dest_,

```c
receive(source, &message);
```
to receive a message from process _source_ (or _ANY_), and

```c
send_rec(src_dst, &message);
```
to send a message and wait for a reply from the same process. The reply overwrites the original message. Each process or task can send and receive messages from processes and tasks in its own layer, and from those in the layer directly below it. User processes may not communicate directly with the I/O tasks. The system enforces this restriction.

When a process (which also includes the tasks as a special case) sends a message to a process that is not currently waiting for a message, the sender blocks until the destination does a RECEIVE. In other words, MINIX uses the rendezvous method to avoid the problems of buffering sent, but not yet received, messages. Although less flexible than a scheme with buffering, it turns out to be adequate for this system, and much simpler because no buffer management is needed.

2.5.4. Process Scheduling in MINIX

The MINIX scheduler uses a multilevel queueing system with three levels, corresponding to layers 2, 3, and 4 in Fig. 2-26. Within each level, round robin is used. Tasks have the highest priority, the memory manager and file server are next, and user processes are last.

When picking a process to run, the scheduler checks to see if any tasks are ready. If one or more are ready, the one at the head of the queue is run. If no tasks are ready, a server (MM or FS) is chosen, if possible, otherwise a user is run. If no process is ready, the system sits in an idle loop waiting for the next interrupt.

At each clock tick, a check is made to see if the current process is a user process that has run more than 100 msec. If it is, the scheduler is called to see if another user process is waiting for the CPU. If one is found, the current process is moved to the end of its scheduling queue, and the process now at the head is run. Tasks, the memory manager, and the file system are never preempted by the clock, no matter how long they have been running.

2.6. IMPLEMENTATION OF PROCESSES IN MINIX

We are now moving closer to looking at the actual code, so a few words about the notation we will use to describe it are in order. The terms "procedure," "function," and "routine" will be used interchangeably. Variable names will be written in italics, as in rw_flag. When a variable or procedure name starts a sentence it will be capitalized, but the actual names all begin with lower case letters. System calls will be in small caps, for example, READ.

The book and the software, both of which are continuously evolving, did not "go to press" on the same day, so there may be minor discrepancies between the references to the code, the listing, and the disk or tape version. Such differences generally only affect a line or two, however.
2.6.1. Organization of the MINIX Source Code

Logically, the source code is organized as a single directory, minix, containing a few files and ten subdirectories:

1. h - header files used by the operating system
2. kernel - layers 1 and 2 (processes, messages, drivers)
3. mm - the code for the memory manager
4. fs - the code for the file system
5. lib - the library procedures (e.g., open, read)
6. tools - a collection of special programs needed to build MINIX
7. commands - the utility programs (e.g., cat, cp, date, ls, pwd)
8. include - header files used by the commands
9. test - programs to give MINIX a thorough testing
10. doc - documentation and manuals

The code for layers 1 and 2 is contained in the directory kernel. In this chapter we will study two key files, mpx88.s and proc.c, which handle the process management and message passing, respectively. In Chap. 3 we will look at the rest of the files in this directory, which are structured with one file per task. In this way, all the data and code for each I/O device are together in one place. In Chap. 4 we will look at the memory manager. In Chap. 5 we will study the file system.

When MINIX is compiled, all the source code files in kernel, mm, and fs are compiled to object files. Then all the object files in kernel are linked together to form a single executable program, kernel. The object files in mm are also linked together to form a single executable program, mm. The same holds for fs. A fourth executable program, init, is built in tools. The program build (also in tools) strips these four programs of their headers, pads each one out so that each is a multiple of 16 bytes, and concatenates them onto a new file. This new file is the binary of the operating system that is copied onto the boot diskette, and later loaded into memory and executed. Fig. 2-27 shows what memory looks like after the four concatenated programs are loaded into it.

It is important to realize that MINIX consists of four totally independent programs that communicate only by passing messages. A procedure called panic in fs does not conflict with a procedure called panic in mm because they ultimately are linked into different executable files. The only procedures that the four pieces of the operating system have in common are a few of the library routines.
Fig. 2-27. Memory layout after MINIX has been loaded from the disk into memory. The four independently compiled and linked parts are clearly distinct. The sizes are approximate, depending on the configuration.

in *lib*. This modular structure makes it very easy to modify, say, the file system, without having these changes affect the memory manager. It also makes it straightforward to remove the file system altogether, and put it on a different machine as a remote file server, communicating with the user machines by sending messages over a network.

As an aside, throughout this book we will be referring frequently to specific procedures in the code. As an aid to finding procedures quickly, a cross reference listing of procedure names and macros is provided in Appendix F. We suggest that you color the edge of the first page of the appendix with a felt-tipped marking pen, so that it can be located quickly when the book is closed.

### 2.6.2. The Common Header Files

The directory *h* contains a collection of files defining constants, types, and macros used in more than one of the four pieces of MINIX. Let us take a brief look at these files, starting with *const.h* (line 0000). In this file we find a variety of constant definitions. Definitions that are used only in the kernel are included in the file *kernel/const.h*. Definitions that are used only in the file system are included in the file *fs/const.h*. The memory manager also has a file *mm/const.h* for its local definitions. Those definitions that are used in more than one of the directories are included in *h/const.h*.
A few of the definitions in const.h are especially noteworthy. EXTERN is defined as a macro expanding into extern. All global variables that are declared in header files and included in two or more files are declared EXTERN, as in

EXTERN int who;

If the variable were declared just as

int who;

and included in two or more files, some linkers would complain about a multiply defined variable. Furthermore, the C reference manual (Kernighan and Ritchie, 1978) explicitly forbids this construction.

To avoid this problem, it is necessary to have the declaration read

extern int who;

in all places but one. Using EXTERN prevents this problem by having it expand into extern everywhere except in the file table.c where it is redefined as the null string on lines 5129 and 5130. When the header files are included and expanded as part of the compilation of table.c, extern is not inserted anywhere (because EXTERN is now defined as the null string). Thus, storage for the global variables is actually reserved only in one place, in the object file table.o. The same trick is used in the file system and memory manager.

The file table.c is also used for the declaration of the array task, which contains the mapping between task numbers and the associated procedures. It has been put here because the trick used above to prevent multiple declarations does not work with variables that are initialized; that is, you may not say

extern int x = 3;

anywhere.

If you are new to C programming and do not quite understand what is going on here, fear not; the details are really not important. C allows something, include files, that almost no other language allows. This feature can cause problems for some linkers because it can lead to multiple declarations for included variables. The EXTERN business is simply a way to make MINIX more portable so it can be linked on machines whose linkers will not accept multiply defined variables.

PRIVATE is defined as a synonym for static. Procedures and data that are not referenced outside the file in which they are declared are always declared as PRIVATE to prevent their names from being visible outside the file in which they are declared. As a general rule, all variables and procedures should be declared with as local a scope as possible. PUBLIC is defined as the null string. Thus, the declaration

PUBLIC free_zone();

comes out of the C preprocessor as
free_zone()}

which, according to the C scope rules, means that the name free_zone is exported from the file and can be used in other files. PRIVATE and PUBLIC are not necessary, but are attempts to undo the damage caused by the C scope rules (default is that names are exported outside the file; it should be just the reverse). The rest of const.h defines numerical constants used throughout the system.

Now let us examine the file callnr.h (line 0100). Processes execute the MINIX system calls by sending messages to the memory manager (MM for short) or the file system (FS for short). Each message contains the number of the system call desired. These numbers are defined in callnr.h.

The file com.h (line 0150) mostly contains common definitions used in messages from MM and FS to the I/O tasks. The task numbers are also defined. To distinguish them from process numbers, task numbers are negative. The header file also defines the message types (function codes) that can be sent to each task. For example, the clock task accepts codes SET_ALARM (to set a timer), CLOCK_TICK (when a clock interrupt has occurred), GET_TIME (request for the real time), and SET_TIME (to set the current time of day). The value REAL_TIME is the message type for the reply to the GET_TIME request.

The next file is error.h (line 0250). It contains the error messages that are returned to user programs in errno when a system call fails, as well as some internal errors, such as trying to send to a nonexistent task. They are negative to mark them as error codes. The values are made positive before being returned to user programs.

The file sgtty.h (line 0350) defines two structures used in the IOCTL system call, along with some constants also used in IOCTL.

The file signal.h (line 0400) defines the standard signal names. The file stat.h (line 0450) contains the structure returned by the STAT and FSTAT system calls. All three files, sgtty.h, signal.h, and stat.h are used not only by the operating system itself, but also by some of the commands. They are duplicated in the directory include.

The last of the common header files is type.h (line 0500). It contains a number of key type definitions, along with related numerical values. It also contains the macros MAX and MIN, so we can say

\[
z = \text{MAX}(x, y);
\]

to assign the larger of \(x\) and \(y\) to \(z\).

The most important definition in this file is message on lines 0554 to 0565. While we could have defined message to be an array of some number of bytes, it is better programming practice to have it be a structure containing union of the various message types that are possible. Six message formats, mess_1 through mess_6, are defined. A message is a structure containing a field m_source, telling who sent the message, a field m_type, telling what the message type is (e.g., GET_TIME to the clock task) and the data fields. The six message types are shown in Fig. 2-28.
When it is necessary to send a message containing, say, three integers and three pointers (or three integers and two pointers), then the first format in Fig. 2-28 is the one to use. The same applies to the other formats. How does one assign a value to the first integer in the first format? Suppose the message is called \( x \). Then \( x.m_u \) refers to the union portion of the message struct. To refer to the first of the six alternatives in the union, we use \( x.m_u.m_ml \). Finally, to get at the first integer in this struct we say \( x.m_u.m_ml.ml.mll \). This is quite a mouthful, so somewhat shorter field names are defined as macros after the definition of message itself. Thus \( x.ml_lll \) can be used instead of \( x.m_u.m_ml.ml.lll \). The short names all have the form of the letter \( m \), the format number, an underscore, one or two letters indicating whether the field is an integer, pointer, long, character, character array, or function, and a sequence number to distinguish multiple instances of the same type within a message.

### 2.6.3. Process Data Structures and Header Files

The ideas described above are straightforward, so let us dive in and see what the code looks like. Just as we have files `const.h` and `type.h` in the common header directory `minix/h`, we also have files `const.h` and `type.h` in `minix/kernel`. The file `const.h` (line 0650) contains a number of machine dependent values, that is, values that apply to the Intel 8088, but are likely to be different if MINIX is moved to a different machine. These values are enclosed between

```c
#define i8088

and

#define
```

statements. (See lines 0652 to 0681).
When compiling MINIX the compiler is called with

```
cc -c -Di8088 file.c
```

to force the symbol i8088 to be defined, and the machine dependent code to be compiled. If MINIX is ported to, say, a Motorola 68000, the people doing the port will probably add sections of code bracketed by

```
#ifdef m68000
and
#endif
```

and call the compiler with

```
cc -c -Dm68000 file.c
```

to select out the 68000-dependent code. In this way, MINIX can deal with constants and code that are specific to one particular system. This construction does not especially enhance readability, so it should be used as little as possible.

A few of the definitions in `const.h` deserve special mention. The important interrupt vectors are defined here, as are some field values used for resetting the interrupt controller chip after each interrupt.

Each task within the kernel has its own stack, of size `TASK_STACKgetBytes`. While handling interrupts, a special stack of size `K_STACKBYTES` is used.

The MINIX scheduler has `NQ` (3) priority queues, named `TASK_Q` (highest priority), `SERVER_Q` (middle priority), and `USER_Q` (lowest priority).

In the file `glo.h` (line 0700) we find the kernel’s global variables. `Realtime` is the number of clock ticks since the system was booted. It is incremented 60 times a second by a crystal oscillator, independent of the line frequency. `Lost_ticks` is a counter that keeps track of how many clock ticks have been lost because the clock task was not waiting for a message when a clock interrupt occurred. The interrupt is just ignored and `lost_ticks` incremented so that the time of day can be corrected later.

`Cur_proc` is the number of the currently scheduled process. `Prev_proc` is the number of the previous process. It is needed for accounting purposes. `Sig_procs` counts the number of processes that have signals pending that have not yet been sent to the memory manager for processing.

When an interrupt occurs, a message is sent to the task associated with the interrupt. The message is built in the message buffer `int_mess`. Finally, we have the stacks. Each task has its own stack, in the array `t_stack`. During interrupt handling, the kernel uses a temporary stack, `k_stack`.

The final kernel header file, `proc.h` (line 0750), contains the process table. It contains storage for the process’ registers, stack pointer, state, memory map, stack limit, process id, accounting, alarm time, and message information. When a process cannot complete a `SEND` because the destination is not waiting, the sender is put onto a queue pointed to by the destination’s `p_callerq` field. That
way, when the destination finally does a RECEIVE, it is easy to find all the processes wanting to send to it. The p_sendlink field is used to link the members of the queue together.

When a process does a RECEIVE and there is no message waiting for it, it blocks and the number of the process it wants to RECEIVE from is stored in p_getfrom. The address of the message buffer is stored in p_messbuf.

The last two fields are p_nextready and p_pending. The former is used to link processes together on the scheduler queues, and the latter is a bit map used to keep track of signals that have not yet been passed to the memory manager (because the memory manager is not waiting for a message).

The flag bits in p_flags define the state of each table entry. If any of the bits is set, the process cannot be run. If the slot is not in use, P_SLOT_FREE is set. After a FORK, NO_MAP is set to prevent the child process from running until its memory map has been set up. The other two flags indicate that the process is blocked trying to send or receive a message.

The macro proc_addr is provided because it is not possible to have negative subscripts in C. Logically, the array proc should go from -NR_TASKS to +NR_PROCS. Unfortunately, it must start at 0, so proc[0] refers to the most negative task, and so forth. To make it easier to keep track of which slot goes with which process, we can write

\[ rp = \text{proc_addr}(n); \]

to assign to \( rp \) the address of the process slot for process \( n \), either positive or negative.

The variable proc_ptr points to the process table entry for the current process. When a system call or interrupt occurs, it tells where to store the registers and processor state. Bill_ptr points to the process being charged for the CPU. When a user process calls the file system, and the file system is running, proc_ptr will point to the file system process. However bill_ptr will point to the user making the call, since CPU time used by the file system is charged as system time to the caller.

The two arrays rdy_head and rdy_tail are used to maintain the scheduling queues. The first process on, say, the task queue is pointed to by rdy_head[TASK_Q]. Finally, busy_map and task_msg are used for handling interrupt messages to tasks that are busy when the message arrives and cannot accept them.

The file type.h (line 0800) contains only two type definitions, both machine dependent and both relating to interrupts. The struct pc_psw represents the three words, PSW (Program Status Word), CS (Code Segment register), and PC (Program Counter) pushed onto the stack by the interrupt hardware. The struct sig_info is the data structure pushed onto the stack of a user process when it catches a signal. It contains the same three words that the hardware pushes, and also the signal number.
2.6.4. System Initialization

Now it is time to start looking at the executable code. Let us begin at the beginning. When the PC is booted, the hardware reads the first sector of the floppy disk in drive 0 into memory and executes it. This bootstrap program loads the operating system and jumps to it. The operating system begins at the label MINIX in assembly code, sets up a few registers, and then calls main on line 0880 in main.c.

Main is responsible for initializing the system and then starting it up. It initializes the process table so that when the first tasks and processes are scheduled, their memory maps and registers will be set correctly. Part of the information for initialization comes from the array sizes, which contains the text and data sizes in clicks (a click is 16 bytes) for the kernel, memory manager, file system, and init. This information is patched into the system binary by a program called build, which concatenates the various system pieces to make the boot diskette. The first two elements of sizes are the kernel’s text and data sizes; the next two are the memory manager’s, and so on. If any of the four programs does not use separate 1 and D space, the text size is 0 and the text and data are lumped together as data.

Main also saves all the interrupt vectors, so if CTRL-ALT-DEL is ever typed, it will be possible to reboot the system with the vectors restored to their original situation.

The interrupt vectors are then changed to point to the MINIX interrupt handling routines. The vectors that are not used by MINIX are set to invoke the procedures unexpected_int (vectors below 16) or trap (vectors at or above 16). The unused vectors are sometimes trapped to by accident. The handling routines just print a message and then continue.

Part of the initialization done by main consists of calling ready (line 0915) to put all the tasks, the memory manager, and the file system onto their respective scheduling queues. When main exits, the task queued first (the one using slot 0 of the process table, i.e., the one with the most negative number) is run until it blocks trying to receive a message. Then the next task is run until it, too, blocks trying to receive a message. Eventually all the tasks are blocked, so the memory manager and file system can run, and also block. Finally init runs to fork off a login process for each terminal. These processes block until input is typed at some terminal, at which point the first user can log in and get the show on the road.

The procedure panic (line 1012) in the file main.c is called when the system has discovered a condition that makes it impossible to continue. Typical panic conditions are a critical disk block being unreadable, an inconsistent internal state being detected, or one part of the system calling another part with invalid parameters.

The last procedure in main.c is set_vec (line 1036). It takes care of the mechanics of setting interrupt vectors.
2.6.5. Interrupt Handling in MINIX

Running processes may be interrupted by clock interrupts, disk interrupts, terminal interrupts, or other interrupts. It is the job of the lowest layer of MINIX to hide these interrupts by turning them into messages. As far as the processes are concerned, when an I/O device completes an operation, it sends a message to some process, waking it up and making it runnable. Only a tiny part of the MINIX kernel actually sees hardware interrupts.

That code is in the file mpx88.s. Typical interrupt procedures are try_int (line 1187), lpr_int (line 1196), disk_int (line 1203), and clock_int (line 1217). (The leading underscores present in the assembly code are due to the convention that all variable and procedure names generated by the C compiler begin with an underscore so that library procedures in assembly language not starting with an underscore will never conflict with user-chosen names.)

These procedures are structurally similar. Each begins by calling save to store all the registers (including the segment registers) in the process table slot belonging to the currently running process. The variable proc_ptr makes this slot easy to find. The actual code of save is a bit tricky because all the segment registers except CS have unknown values when the procedure starts. When it is finished, they all have been set to point to the start of the kernel.

Disk_int and clock_int build a message and call interrupt in file proc.c to take care of sending the message and calling the scheduler. Keyboard interrupts require more processing before interrupt is called, so try_int calls a C procedure keyboard to do the initial processing and then calls interrupt if necessary. Keyboard interrupts are generated both when a key is struck and when it is released. The processing needed when most keys are released is so simple that keyboard can do it directly, without the overhead of switching to the terminal task.

For clock interrupts, disk interrupts, and some keyboard and line printer interrupts, the next step in the interrupt processing is the procedure interrupt on line 1878. This procedure has two parameters passed to it by the assembly code: the task to send to and a pointer to the message. It starts off by reenabling the interrupt controller chip. This chip must be explicitly reenabled to allow subsequent interrupts after the interrupt processing is finished. Any interrupts that occur before processing is finished are kept pending by the interrupt controller chip. They are not lost.

After taking care of the interrupt controller, interrupt calls mini_send to actually send the message. If the send is successful (i.e., the task was waiting for a message), the corresponding bit in busy_map is turned off. If the send is unsuccessful, the corresponding bit in busy_map is turned on, to indicate that a message to that task is pending. The pointer to the message is stored in task_mess.

Either way, a check is now made (line 1909) to see if any tasks with pending messages are now ready to accept their messages. For example, if two keyboard interrupts happen in rapid succession, on the second one the terminal task may not yet be done with the first one, so a bit is set in busy_map. If the next
interrupt is for the clock or disk, a check will be made to see if the terminal task is now ready to accept a message. If it is, the message is sent on line 1914.

This code is needed because the message system does not provide any buffering: you cannot send a message to someone unless he is waiting for it (rendezvous principle). For normal processes, the unsuccessful sender is just suspended for a while. With interrupts this strategy is impossible. In effect, the use of busy_map and task_mess forms a limited kind of buffering to avoid losing messages. For most devices, such as disks, it is technically impossible for the device to generate a second interrupt until the task has run and issued another command. For the clock, lost interrupts do not matter because they are counted on line 1897 and are compensated for later. Only the keyboard can give multiple unexpected interrupts, but the characters typed are recorded in a buffer before interrupt is called. The same message pointer is used for each keyboard interrupt, so lost keyboard interrupts do not result in lost characters. When the terminal task is finally called, it gets a message containing a pointer to the buffer where keyboard has safely stored all the characters.

When the message processing has been finished, a check is made on line 1921 to see if a higher priority process is now runnable. If so, pick_proc is called to schedule that process. Either way, when interrupt returns to its assembly code caller, cur_proc and proc_ptr will be set up for the process to be run.

The assembly language interrupt procedures all call restart to reload the current process’ registers and start it running.

We make no claim that interrupt processing is easy to fully understand. It requires a little study. In fact, the whole concept of the process abstraction was invented precisely to hide all the messy details of interrupt handling in a very thin layer at the bottom of the system.

Now a quick word or two about s_call (line 1173). When a process wants to send or receive a message, it calls a little assembly language library procedure to put the source or destination number in AX, the message pointer in BX, and the SEND or RECEIVE code in CX, followed by a trap instruction. The trap is treated by the hardware the same as an interrupt, and is vectored to s_call. This procedure calls save and builds a message, just as the interrupt procedures do.

Instead of calling interrupt, s_call calls sys_call to do the work, starting by checking for invalid parameters, illegal calls and destinations, and so on. If everything is all right, it does the send on line 1957 or the receive on line 1963. If the operation can be done immediately, the status code OK is returned in RET_REG (AX) and control is returned to the assembly code to restart the caller. If the operation cannot complete, the process is blocked in mini_send or mini_rec and a new process is designated as the next one to run. When control passes back to the assembly code, the new process will be started. If no process is now runnable, the idle routine (line 1319) runs.

It is important to realize that the value of cur_proc may be different on exit from sys_call from what it was on entry. The same is true for interrupt. After save has run in the assembly code, all of the current process’ state has been
safely stored away, so cur_proc can be changed with no ill effects. In essence, after a trap or interrupt, the current process is stopped, and the operating system itself is run with its own stack. When the operating system is finished, it does not matter whether the next process is the same one as the previous one. The work to be done is identical: load the registers and start it off.

Study mpx88.s carefully. It is important. The only other comments we will make here concern surprise and trp. Programs can (but should not) execute the INT instruction to cause any interrupt. These are caught by surprise or trp, depending on the number of the vector.

2.6.6. The Kernel's Assembly Code Utilities

While we are on the subject of assembly code routines, let us briefly look at the file klib88.s. This file contains about a dozen utility routines that are in assembly code, either for efficiency or because they cannot be written in C at all. The first one is phys_copy (line 1387). It is called in C by

```c
phys_copy(source_address, destination_address, bytes);
```

and copies a block of data from anywhere in physical memory to anywhere else. Both addresses are absolute, that is, address 0 really means the first interrupt vector, and all three parameters are longs.

Although phys_copy could have been used for copying messages, a faster, specialized procedure has been provided for that purpose (line 1490). It is called by

```c
cp_mess(source, src_clicks, src_offset, dest_clicks, dest_offset);
```

where source is the sender's process number, which is copied into the m_source field of the receiver's buffer. Both the source and destination addresses are specified by giving a click number, typically the base of the segment containing the buffer, and an offset from that click. (A click is a multiple of 16 bytes on the IBM PC. Clicks are important because the PC hardware requires all segments to begin at a click.) This form of specifying the source and destination is more efficient than the 32-bit addresses used by phys_copy.

Values are output to I/O ports in C using the assembly language procedure port_out (line 1529). For example,

```c
port_out(0x3F2, 0x1C);
```

writes the byte 0x1C to port 0x3F2 to set floppy disk motors on and off. Values are read from I/O ports by the analogous procedure, port_in (line 1547). The call

```c
port_in(0x60, &code);
```

for example, reads the number of the key just struck on the keyboard and stores it in the variable code.
Occasionally it is necessary for a task to disable interrupts temporarily. It does this by calling lock (line 1567). When interrupts can be reenabled, the task can call either unlock (line 1578) to enable interrupts or restore (line 1587) to put them back the way they were before lock was called.

Build_sig (line 1612) is a highly specialized procedure that is used only to simulate an interrupt when sending a process a signal.

The next two procedures, csv (line 1638) and cret (line 1660), are highly compiler dependent and may have to be modified when any compiler other than the PC-IX compiler is used. Some compilers do not use them at all. When a procedure compiled by the PC-IX compiler (and many other compilers) starts running, the first thing it does is put the number of bytes of local variables in AX. Then it calls csv to save BP, SI, DI, and advance the stack by the number of bytes of locals. While doing this work, csv also checks to see if the stack has grown beyond the memory allocated for it. When a procedure wants to return, it calls cret to reset the stack pointer and restore the registers. The csv and cret routines provided in the compiler’s library cannot be used because they check for stack overflow and make non-MINIX system calls to report them. The purpose of rewriting them is to get rid of the calls to printf.

The last two assembly code procedures shown are get_color (line 1673) and vid_copy (line 1701). The former makes a BIOS call to see whether the console screen is monochrome or color. It matters because they are programmed slightly differently. It returns 1 for color, 0 for monochrome. Vid_copy takes care of the actual mechanics of displaying text on the console. We will see how it is used in the next chapter.

2.6.7. Interprocess Communication in MINIX

Processes (including tasks) in MINIX communicate by messages using the rendezvous principle. When a process does a SEND, the lowest layer of the kernel checks to see if the destination is waiting for a message from the sender (or from ANY sender). If so, the message is copied from the sender’s buffer to the receiver’s buffer, and both processes are marked as runnable. If the destination is not waiting for a message from the sender, the sender is marked as blocked and put onto a queue of processes waiting to send to the receiver.

When a process does a RECEIVE, the kernel checks to see if any process is queued trying to send to it. If so, the message is copied from the blocked sender to the receiver, and both are marked as runnable. If no process is queued trying to send to it, the receiver blocks until a message arrives.

The implementation of SEND and RECEIVE, as well as SENDREC, which is just a SEND to some process followed immediately by a RECEIVE from the same process, is handled in the file proc.c. Let us start with the implementation of SEND, which is done by mini_send (line 1971). It has three parameters: the caller, the process to be sent to, and a pointer to the buffer where the message is. It starts out by making sure that user processes cannot send messages to tasks. The
parameter caller, supplied by the assembly code routine via interrupt or sys_call, is greater than or equal to LOW_USER if the caller is a user. For a hardware interrupt it is HARDWARE (-1). For a task it is less than -1.

After checking the destination address, mini_send checks to see if the message falls entirely within the user's data segment. If not, an error code is returned.

The key test in mini_send is on lines 2001 and 2002. Here a check is made to see if the destination is blocked on a RECEIVE, as shown by the RECEIVING bit in the p_flags field of its process table entry. If it is waiting, then the next question is: "Who is it waiting for?" If it is waiting for the sender, or for ANY, the code on lines 2004 to 2007 is executed to copy the message and ready the receiver (put it on the scheduling queues as runnable).

If, on the other hand, the receiver is not blocked, or is blocked but waiting for a message from someone else, the code on lines 2010 to 2023 is executed to block and queue the sender (except for sends done by interrupts). All processes wanting to send to a given destination are strung together on a linked list, with the destination's p_callerq field pointing to the process table entry of the process at the head of the queue. The example of Fig. 2-29(a) shows what happens when process 3 is unable to send to process 0. If process 4 is subsequently also unable to send to process 0, we get the situation of Fig. 2-29(b).

![Fig. 2-29. Queueing of processes trying to send to process 0.](image)

The RECEIVE call is carried out by mini_rec. The loop on line 2051 searches through all the processes queued waiting to send to the receiver to see if any are acceptable. If one is found, the message is copied from sender to receiver, then the sender is unblocked, made ready to run, and removed from the queue of processes trying to send to the receiver.

If no suitable sender is found, the source and buffer address are saved in its process table entry, and the receiver is marked as blocked on a RECEIVE call. The call to unready on line 2073 removes the receiver from the scheduler's queue of runnable processes.

The statement on line 2078 has to do with how kernel-generated signals (SIGINT, SIGQUIT, and SIGALRM) are handled. When one of these occurs, a message is sent to the memory manager, if it is waiting for a message from ANY. If not, the signal is remembered in the kernel until the memory manager finally tries to receive from ANY. Then it is informed of pending signals.
2.6.8. Scheduling in MINIX

MINIX uses a multilevel scheduling algorithm that closely follows the structure shown in Fig. 2-26. In that figure we see I/O tasks in layer 2, server processes in layer 3, and user processes in layer 4. The scheduler maintains three queues of runnable processes, one for each layer, as shown in Fig. 2-30. The array \textit{rdy\_head} has one entry for each queue, with that entry pointing to the process at the head of the queue. Similarly, \textit{rdy\_tail} is an array whose entries point to the last process on each queue.

![Fig. 2-30. The scheduler maintains three queues, one per priority level.](image)

Whenever a blocked process is awakened, it is put on the end of its queue. The array \textit{rdy\_tail} makes adding a process at the end of a queue efficient. Whenever a running process becomes blocked, or a runnable process is killed by a signal, that process is removed from the scheduler’s queues. Only runnable processes are queued.

Given the queue structures just described, the scheduling algorithm is simple: find the highest priority queue that is not empty and pick the process at the head of that queue. If all the queues are empty, the idle routine is run. In Fig. 2-30 \textit{TASK\_Q} has the highest priority. The queue is chosen in \textit{pick\_proc}, on lines 2092 to 2094. The process chosen to run next is not removed from its queue merely because it has been selected.

The procedures \textit{ready} (line 2122) and \textit{unready} (line 2153) are called to enter a runnable process on its queue and remove a no-longer runnable process from its queue, respectively. Any change to the queues that might affect the choice of which process to run next requires \textit{pick\_proc} to be called to set \textit{cur\_proc} again. Whenever the current process blocks on a \textit{SEND} or a \textit{RECEIVE}, \textit{pick\_proc} is called to reschedule the CPU. Also, after every interrupt, a check is made on line 1921 to see if a newly awakened task should now be scheduled. If a task was running at the time of the interrupt, then it continues to run after the interrupt processing is finished. All tasks are of equal priority, so the new one does not get preference over the old one.

Although most scheduling decisions are made when a process blocks or unblocks, there is one other situation in which scheduling is also done. When the clock task notices that the current user process has exceeded its quantum, it calls \textit{sched} (line 2186) to move the process at the head of \textit{USER\_Q} to the end of
that queue. This algorithm results in running the user processes in a straight round-robin fashion. The file system, memory manager, and I/O tasks are never put on the end of their queues because they have been running too long. They are trusted to work properly, and to block after having finished their work.

In summary, the scheduling algorithm maintains three priority queues, one for I/O tasks, one for the two server processes, and one for the user processes. The first process on the highest priority queue is always run next. If a user process uses up its quantum, it is put at the end of its queue, thus achieving a simple round-robin scheduling among the competing user processes.

2.7. SUMMARY

To hide the effects of interrupts, operating systems provide a conceptual model consisting of sequential processes running in parallel. Processes can communicate with each other using interprocess communication primitives, such as semaphores, monitors, or messages. These primitives are used to ensure that no two processes are ever in their critical sections at the same time. A process can be running, runnable, or blocked, and can change state when it or another process executes one of the interprocess communication primitives.

Interprocess communication primitives can be used to solve such problems as the producer-consumer, dining philosophers, and reader-writer problem. Even with these primitives, care has to be taken to avoid errors and deadlocks. Many scheduling algorithms are known, including round robin, priority scheduling, multilevel queues, and policy-driven schedulers.

MINIX supports the process concept, and provides messages for interprocess communication. Messages are not buffered, so a SEND succeeds only when the receiver is waiting for it. Similarly, a RECEIVE succeeds only when a message is already available. If either operation does not succeed, the caller is blocked.

When an interrupt occurs, the lowest level of the kernel creates and sends a message to the task associated with the interrupting device. The major steps needed to convert a disk interrupt to a message are listed below, with the numbers in parentheses telling where in the code it happens. (We assume the message succeeds and the disk task is scheduled to run next.)

1. The hardware jumps to the interrupt routine (line 1203).
2. The registers are saved in the process table (line 1249).
3. Interrupt is called to oversee sending the message (line 1878).
4. The actual copying is invoked in mini_send (line 2004).
5. The destination task is made runnable (line 2007).
6. The disk task is chosen to run next (lines 1921 and 1922).
7. The disk task’s registers are loaded and it is started (line 1288).
The MINIX scheduling algorithm uses three priority queues, the highest one
for tasks, the next one for the file system and memory manager, and the lowest
one for user processes. User processes are run round robin for one quantum at a
time. All the others are run until they block or are preempted by a higher priori-
ity process.

PROBLEMS

1. Suppose you were to design an advanced computer architecture that did process
switching in hardware, instead of having interrupts. What information would the
CPU need? Describe how the hardware process switching might work.

2. What is a race condition?

3. Does the busy waiting solution using the turn variable (Fig. 2-7) work when the
two processes are running on two CPUs, sharing a common memory?

4. Consider a computer that does not have a TEST AND SET LOCK instruction, but
does have an instruction to swap the contents of a register and a memory word in a
single indivisible action. Can that be used to write a routine enter_region such as
the one found in Fig. 2-9?

5. Give a sketch of how an operating system that can disable interrupts could imple-
ment semaphores.

6. Show how counting semaphores (i.e., semaphores that can hold an arbitrarily large
value) can be implemented using only binary semaphores and ordinary machine
instructions.

7. In Sec. 2.2.4, a situation with a high-priority process, H, and a low-priority process
L was described, which led to H looping forever. Does the same problem occur if
round robin scheduling is used instead of priority scheduling? Discuss.

8. Synchronization within monitors uses condition variables and two special opera-
tions, WAIT and SIGNAL. A more general form of synchronization would be to
have a single primitive, WAITUNTIL that had an arbitrary Boolean predicate as
parameter. Thus, one could say, for example,

\[ \text{WAITUNTIL } x < 0 \text{ or } y + z < n \]

The SIGNAL primitive would no longer be needed. This scheme is clearly more
general than that of Hoare or Brinch Hansen, but it is not used. Why not? (Hint: 
think about the implementation.)

9. A fast food restaurant has four kinds of employees: (1) order takers, who take
customer’s orders; (2) cooks, who prepare the food; (3) packaging specialists, who
stuff the food into bags; and (4) cashiers, who give the bags to customers and take
their money. Each employee can be regarded as a communicating sequential pro-
cess. What form of interprocess communication do they use? Relate this model to
processes in MINIX.
10. Suppose we have a message-passing system using mailboxes. When sending to a full mailbox or trying to receive from an empty one, a process does not block. Instead, it gets an error code back. The process responds to the error code by just trying again, over and over, until it succeeds. Does this scheme lead to race conditions?

11. The implementation of monitors using semaphores did not use an explicit linked list of blocked processes, whereas the implementation of semaphores using monitors did. Explain. (Hint: think about the differences between semaphores and condition variables.)

12. In the solution to the dining philosophers problem (Fig. 2-20), why is the state variable set to HUNGRY in the procedure take_forks?

13. Consider the procedure put_forks in Fig. 2-20. Suppose the variable state[i] was set to THINKING after the two calls to test, rather than before. How would this change affect the solution for the case of 3 philosophers? For 100 philosophers?

14. The readers and writers problem can be formulated in several ways with regard to which category of processes can be started when. Carefully describe three different variations of the problem, each one favoring (or not favoring) some category of processes. For each variation, specify what happens when a reader or a writer becomes ready to access the data base, and what happens when a process is finished using the data base.

15. The CDC 6600 computers could handle up to 10 I/O processes simultaneously using an interesting form of round robin scheduling called processor sharing. A process switch occurred after each instruction, so instruction 1 came from process 1, instruction 2 came from process 2, etc. The process switching was done by special hardware, and the overhead was zero. If a process needed T sec to complete in the absence of competition, how much time would it need if processor sharing was used with n processes?

16. Round robin schedulers normally maintain a list of all runnable processes, with each process occurring exactly once in the list. What would happen if a process occurred twice in the list? Can you think of any reason for allowing this?

17. Measurements of a certain system have shown that the average process runs for a time T before blocking on I/O. A process switch requires a time S, which is effectively wasted (overhead). For round robin scheduling with quantum Q, give a formula for the CPU efficiency for each of the following.

(a) \( Q = \infty \)
(b) \( Q > T \)
(c) \( S < Q < T \)
(d) \( Q = S \)
(e) \( Q \) nearly 0

18. Five batch jobs A through E, arrive at a computer center at almost the same time. They have estimated running times of 10, 6, 2, 4, and 8 minutes. Their (externally determined) priorities are 3, 5, 2, 1, and 4, respectively, with 5 being the highest
priority. For each of the following scheduling algorithms, determine the mean process turnaround time. Ignore process switching overhead.

(a) Round robin.
(b) Priority scheduling.
(c) First-come, first served (run in order 10, 6, 2, 4, 8).
(d) Shortest job first.

For (a), assume that the system is multiprogrammed, and that each job gets its fair share of the CPU. For (b) through (d) assume that only one job at a time runs, until it finishes. All jobs are completely CPU bound.

19. A process running on CTSS needs 30 quanta to complete. How many times must it be swapped in, including the very first time (before it has run at all)?

20. Five jobs are waiting to be run. Their expected run times are 9, 6, 3, 5, and X. In what order should they be run to minimize average response time? (Your answer will depend on X.)

21. The aging algorithm with \( a = 1/2 \) is being used to predict run times. The previous four runs, from oldest to most recent are 40, 20, 40, and 15 msec. What is the prediction of the next time?

22. Explain why two-level scheduling is commonly used.

23. During execution, MINIX maintains a variable \( \text{proc\_ptr} \) that points to the process table entry for the current process. Why?

24. MINIX does not buffer messages. Explain how this design decision causes problems with clock and keyboard interrupts.

25. When a message is sent to a sleeping process in MINIX, the procedure \( \text{ready} \) is called to put that process on the proper scheduling queue. This procedure starts out by disabling interrupts. Explain.

26. The MINIX procedure \( \text{mini\_rec} \) contains a loop. Explain what it is for.

27. Assume that you have an operating system that provides semaphores. Implement a message system. Write the procedures for sending and receiving messages.

28. A student majoring in anthropology and minoring in computer science has embarked on a research project to see if African baboons can be taught about deadlocks. He locates a deep canyon and fastens a rope across it, so the baboons can cross hand-over-hand. Several baboons can cross at the same time, provided that they are all going in the same direction. If eastward moving and westward moving baboons ever get onto the rope at the same time, a deadlock will result (the baboons will get stuck in the middle) because it is impossible for one baboon to climb over another one while suspended over the canyon. If a baboon wants to cross the canyon, he must check to see that no other baboon is currently crossing in the opposite direction. Write a program using semaphores that avoids deadlock. Do not worry about a series of eastward moving baboons holding up the westward moving baboons indefinitely.

29. Repeat the previous problem, but now avoid starvation. When a baboon that wants to cross to the east arrives at the rope and finds baboons crossing to the west, he
waits until the rope is empty, but no more westward moving baboons are allowed to start until at least one baboon has crossed the other way.

30. Solve the dining philosophers problem using monitors instead of semaphores.

31. Add code to the MINIX kernel to keep track of the number of messages sent from process (or task) \( i \) to process (or task) \( j \). Print this matrix when the F4 key is hit.

32. Modify the MINIX scheduler to keep track of how much CPU time each user process has had recently. When no task or server wants to run, pick the user process that has had the smallest share of the CPU.
One of the main functions of an operating system is to control all the computer's input/output devices. It must issue commands to the devices, catch interrupts, and handle errors. It should also provide an interface between the devices and the rest of the system that is simple and easy to use. To the extent possible, the interface should be the same for all devices (device independence). The I/O code represents a significant fraction of the total operating system. How the operating system manages I/O is the subject of this chapter.

An outline of the chapter is as follows. First we will look briefly at some of the principles of I/O hardware, and then we will look at I/O software in general. I/O software can be structured in layers, with each layer having a well-defined task to perform. We will look at these layers to see what they do and how they fit together.

After that comes a section on deadlocks. We will define deadlocks precisely, show how they are caused, give two models for analyzing them, and discuss some algorithms for preventing their occurrence.

Then we will take a bird's-eye view of I/O in MINIX. Following that introduction, we will look at four I/O devices in detail—the RAM disk, the floppy disk, the clock, and the terminal. For each device we will look at its hardware, software, and implementation in MINIX. Finally, the chapter closes with a short discussion of a little piece of MINIX that is located in the same layer as the I/O tasks, but is itself not an I/O task. It provides some services to the memory manager and file system, such as fetching blocks of data from a user process.
3.1. PRINCIPLES OF I/O HARDWARE

Different people look at I/O hardware in different ways. Electrical engineers look at it in terms of chips, wires, power supplies, motors and all the other physical components that make up the hardware. Programmers look at the interface presented to the software—the commands the hardware accepts, the functions it carries out, and the errors that can be reported back. In this book we are concerned with programming I/O devices, not designing, building, or maintaining them, so our interest will be restricted to how the hardware is programmed, not how it works inside. Nevertheless, the programming of many I/O devices is often intimately connected with their internal operation. In the next two sections we will provide a little general background on I/O hardware as it relates to programming.

3.1.1. I/O Devices

I/O devices can be roughly divided into two categories: block devices and character devices. A block device is one that stores information in fixed-size blocks, each one with its own address. Common block sizes range from 128 bytes to 1024 bytes. The essential property of a block device is that it is possible to read or write each block independently of all the other ones. In other words, at any instant, the program can read or write any of the blocks. Disks are block devices.

If you look closely, the boundary between devices that are block addressable and those that are not is not well defined. Everyone agrees that a disk is a block addressable device because no matter where the arm currently is, it is always possible to seek to another cylinder and then wait for the required block to rotate under the head. Now consider a magnetic tape containing blocks of 1K bytes. If the tape drive is given a command to read block N, it can always rewind the tape and go forward until it comes to block N. This operation is analogous to a disk doing a seek, except that it takes much longer. Also, it may or may not be possible to rewrite one block in the middle of a tape. Even if it were possible to use magnetic tapes as block devices, that is stretching the point somewhat: they are normally not used that way.

The other type of I/O device is the character device. A character device delivers or accepts a stream of characters, without regard to any block structure. It is not addressable and does not have any seek operation. Terminals, line printers, paper tapes, punched cards, network interfaces, mice (for pointing), rats (for psychology lab experiments), and most other devices that are not disk-like can be seen as character devices.

This classification scheme is not perfect. Some devices just do not fit in. Clocks, for example, are not block addressable. Nor do they generate or accept character streams. All they do is cause interrupts at well-defined intervals. Still, the model of block and character devices is general enough that it can be used as
a basis for making some of the operating system software dealing with I/O device independent. The file system, for example, deals just with abstract block devices, and leaves the device-dependent part to lower-level software called device drivers.

3.1.2. Device Controllers

I/O units typically consist of a mechanical component and an electronic component. It is often possible to separate the two portions to provide a more modular and general design. The electronic component is called the device controller or adapter. On mini- and microcomputers, it often takes the form of a printed circuit card that can be inserted into the computer. The mechanical component is the device itself.

The controller card usually has a connector on it, into which a cable leading to the device itself can be plugged. Many controllers can handle two, four, or even eight identical devices. If the interface between the controller and device is a standard interface, either an official standard such as ANSI, IEEE or ISO, or a defacto one, then companies can make controllers or devices that fit that interface. Many companies, for example, make disk drives that match the IBM disk controller interface.

We mention this distinction between controller and device because the operating system nearly always deals with the controller, not the device. Nearly all microcomputers and minicomputers use the single bus model of Fig. 3-1 for communication between the CPU and the controllers. Large mainframes often use a different model, with multiple buses and specialized I/O computers called I/O channels taking some of the load off the main CPU.

![Fig. 3-1. A model for connecting the CPU, memory, controllers, and I/O devices.](image)

The interface between the controller and the device is often a very low-level interface. A disk, for example, might be formatted with 8 sectors of 512 bytes per track. What actually comes off the drive, however, is a serial bit stream, starting with a preamble, then the 4096 bits in a sector, and finally a checksum or error-correcting code (ECC). The preamble is written when the disk is formatted, and contains the cylinder and sector number, the sector size, and similar data.

The controller's job is to convert the serial bit stream into a block of bytes
and perform any error correction necessary. The block of bytes is typically first assembled, bit by bit, in a buffer inside the controller. After its checksum has been verified and the block declared to be error free, it can then be copied to main memory.

The controller for a CRT terminal also works as a bit serial device at an equally low level. It reads bytes containing the characters to be displayed from memory, and generates the signals used to modulate the CRT beam to cause it to write on the screen. The controller also generates the signals for making the CRT beam do a horizontal retrace after it has finished a scan line, as well as the signals for making it do a vertical retrace after the entire screen has been scanned. If it were not for the CRT controller, the operating system programmer would have to explicitly program the analog scanning of the tube. With the controller, the operating system initializes the controller with a few parameters, such as the number of characters per line and number of lines per screen, and lets the controller take care of actually driving the beam.

Each controller has a few registers that are used for communicating with the CPU. On some computers, these registers are part of the regular memory address space. The PDP-11, for example, reserves addresses 0160000 to 0177777 for device registers. Other computers, including the IBM PC, use a special address space for I/O, with each controller allocated a certain portion of it. Figure 3-2 shows the I/O addresses and interrupt vectors allocated to some of the controllers on the IBM PC. The assignment of I/O addresses to devices is made by bus decoding logic associated with the controller. Some manufacturers of so-called IBM PC compatibles use different I/O addresses from what IBM uses. Programs that actually use I/O addresses (including MINIX) must be modified to run on these machines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/O Controller</th>
<th>I/O Addresses</th>
<th>Interrupt vector</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>040 - 043</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyboard</td>
<td>060 - 063</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary RS232</td>
<td>2F8 - 2FF</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard disk</td>
<td>320 - 32F</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printer</td>
<td>378 - 37F</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monochrome display</td>
<td>380 - 3BF</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color display</td>
<td>3D0 - 3DF</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floppy disk</td>
<td>3F0 - 3F7</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary RS232</td>
<td>3F8 - 3FF</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3-2. Some examples of controllers, their I/O addresses and their interrupt vectors on the IBM PC.

The operating system performs I/O by writing commands into the controllers’ registers. The IBM PC floppy disk controller, for example, accepts 15 different commands, such as READ, WRITE, SEEK, FORMAT, and RECALIBRATE. Many of
the commands have parameters, which are also loaded into the controller’s registers. When a command has been accepted, the CPU can leave the controller alone and go off to do other work. When the command has been completed, the controller causes an interrupt in order to allow the operating system to gain control of the CPU and test the results of the operation. The CPU gets the results and device status by reading one or more bytes of information from the controller’s registers.

**Direct Memory Access (DMA)**

Many controllers, especially those for block devices, support direct memory access or DMA. To explain how DMA works, let us first look at how disk reads occur when DMA is not used. First the controller reads the block (one or more sectors) from the drive serially, bit by bit, until the entire block is in the controller’s internal buffer. Next, it performs the checksum computation to verify that no read errors have occurred. The checksum can be computed only after the entire block has been read. Then the controller causes an interrupt. When the operating system starts running, it can read the disk block from the controller’s buffer a byte or a word at a time by executing a loop, with each iteration reading one byte or word from a controller device register and storing it in memory.

Naturally, a programmed CPU loop to read the bytes one at a time from the controller wastes CPU time. DMA was invented to free the CPU from this low-level work. When it is used, the CPU gives the controller two items of information, in addition to the disk address of the block: the memory address where the block is to go, and the number of bytes to transfer, as shown in Fig. 3-3.

![Fig. 3-3. A DMA transfer is done entirely by the controller.](image)

After the controller has read the entire block from the device into its buffer and verified the checksum, it copies the first byte or word into the main memory at the address specified by the DMA memory address. Then it increments the DMA address and decrements the DMA count by the number of bytes just transferred. This process is repeated until the DMA count becomes zero, at
which time the controller causes an interrupt. When the operating system starts up, it does not have to copy the block to memory: it is already there.

You may be wondering why the controller does not just store the bytes in main memory as soon as it gets them from the disk. In other words, why does it need an internal buffer? The reason is that once a disk transfer has started, the bits keep arriving from the disk at a constant rate, whether the controller is ready for them or not. If the controller tried to write data directly to memory, it would have to go over the system bus for each word transferred. If the bus were busy due to some other device using it, the controller would have to wait. If the next disk word arrived before the previous one had been stored, the controller would have to store it somewhere. If the bus were very busy, the controller might end up storing quite a few words and having a lot of administration to do as well. When the block is buffered internally, the bus is not needed until the DMA begins, so the design of the controller is much simpler because the DMA transfer to memory is not time critical. (Some controllers do, in fact, go directly to memory with only a small amount of internal buffering, but if the bus is very busy, a transfer may have to be terminated with an overrun error.)

The two-step buffering process described above has important implications for I/O performance. While the data are being transferred from the controller to the memory, either by the CPU or by the controller, the next sector will be passing under the disk head and the bits arriving in the controller. Simple controllers just cannot cope with doing input and output at the same time, so while a memory transfer is taking place, the sector passing under the disk head is lost.

As a result, the controller will be able to read only every other block. Reading a complete track will then require two full rotations, one for the even blocks and one for the odd blocks. If the time to transfer a block from the controller to memory over the bus is longer than the time to read a block from the disk, it may be necessary to read one block and then skip two (or more) blocks.

Skipping blocks to give the controller time to transfer data to memory is called 

**interleaving.** When the disk is formatted, the blocks are numbered to take account of the interleave factor. In Fig. 3-4(a) we see a disk with 8 blocks per track and no interleave. In Fig. 3-4(b) we see the same disk with single interleaving. In Fig. 3-4(c) double interleaving is shown.

**Fig. 3-4.** (a) No interleaving. (b) Single interleaving. (c) Double interleaving.
The idea of numbering the blocks this way is to allow the operating system to read consecutively numbered blocks and still achieve the maximum speed the hardware is capable of. If the blocks were numbered as in Fig. 3-4(a) but the controller could read only alternate blocks, an operating system that allocated an 8-block file in consecutive disk blocks would require eight disk rotations to read blocks 0 through 7 in order. (Of course, if the operating system knew about the problem and allocated its blocks differently, it could solve the problem in software, but it is better to have the controller worry about the interleaving.)

3.2. PRINCIPLES OF I/O SOFTWARE

Let’s turn away from the hardware and now look at how the I/O software is structured. The general goals of the I/O software are easy to state. The basic idea is to organize the software as a series of layers, with the lower ones concerned with hiding the peculiarities of the hardware from the upper ones, and the upper ones concerned with presenting a nice, clean, regular interface to the users. In the following sections we will look at these goals and how they are achieved.

3.2.1. Goals of the I/O Software

A key concept in the design of I/O software is device independence. It should be possible to write programs that can be used with files on a floppy disk or a hard disk, without having to modify the programs for each device type. In fact, it should be possible to move the program without even recompiling it. One should be able to type the command

```
sort <input >output
```

and have it work with input and output on floppy disk or on hard disk or even coming from, or going to, the terminal. It is up to the operating system to take care of the problems caused by the fact that these devices really are different and require very different device drivers.

Closely related to device independence is the goal of uniform naming. The name of a file or a device should simply be a string or an integer and not depend on the device in any way. In MINIX, floppy disks, hard disks and all other block devices can be mounted in the file system hierarchy in arbitrary places, so the user need not be aware of which name corresponds to which device. All files and devices are addressed the same way: by a path name.

Another important issue for I/O software is error handling. In general, errors should be handled as close to the hardware as possible. If the controller discovers a read error, it should try to correct the error itself if it can. If it cannot, then the device driver should handle it, perhaps by just trying to read the block again. Many errors are transient, such as read errors caused by specks of
dust on the read head, and will go away if the operation is repeated. Only if the lower layers are not able to deal with the problem should the upper layers be told about it.

Still another key issue is synchronous (blocking) versus asynchronous (interrupt-driven) transfers. Most physical I/O is asynchronous—the CPU starts the transfer and goes off to do something else until the interrupt arrives. User programs are much easier to write if the I/O operations are blocking—after a READ command the program is automatically suspended until the data are available in the buffer. It is up to the operating system to make operations that are actually interrupt-driven look blocking to the user programs.

The final concept that we will deal with here is sharable versus dedicated devices. Some I/O devices, such as disks, can be used by many users at the same time. No problems are caused by multiple users having open files on the same disk at the same time. Other devices, such as printers, have to be dedicated to a single user until that user is finished. Having five users printing lines intermixed at random on the printer just would not work. Introducing dedicated devices also introduces a variety of problems, including deadlock. Again, the operating system must handle both shared and dedicated devices in a way that avoids problems.

These goals can be achieved in a comprehensible and efficient way by structuring the I/O software in four layers:

1. Interrupt handlers.
2. Device drivers.
3. Device-independent operating system software.
4. User level software.

These four layers are (not accidentally) the same four layers that we saw in Fig. 2-26. In the following sections we will look at each one in turn, starting at the bottom. The emphasis in this chapter is on the device drivers (layer 2), but we will summarize the rest of the I/O software to show how the various pieces of the I/O system fit together.

3.2.2. Interrupt Handlers

Interrupts are an unpleasant fact of life. They should be hidden away, deep in the bowels of the system, so that as little of the system as possible knows about them. The way to hide them is to have a process, typically a device driver (an I/O task in MINIX terms), be blocked whenever an I/O command has been issued and an interrupt is expected.

When the interrupt happens, the interrupt procedure does whatever it has to in order to unblock the driver. In some systems it will do an UP on a semaphore. In others it will do a SIGNAL on a condition variable in a monitor. In still others,
it will send a message to the blocked process. In all cases the net effect of the interrupt will be that a process that was previously blocked will now be able to run. Having studied the implementation of interrupt handling in detail in the previous chapter, let us now proceed with the device drivers themselves.

3.2.3. Device Drivers

All the device-dependent code goes in the device drivers. Each device driver handles one device type, or at most, one class of closely related devices. For example, it would probably be a good idea to have a single terminal driver, even if the system supported several different brands of terminals, all slightly different. On the other hand, a dumb, mechanical hardcopy terminal and an intelligent bit map graphics terminal with a mouse are so different that different drivers should be used.

Earlier in this chapter we looked at what device controllers do. We saw that each controller has one or more device registers used to give it commands. The device drivers issue these commands and check that they are carried out properly. Thus, the disk driver is the only part of the operating system that knows how many registers that disk controller has and what they are used for. It alone knows about sectors, tracks, cylinders, heads, arm motion, interleave factors, motor drives, head settling times, and all the other mechanics of making the disk work properly.

In general terms, the job of a device driver is to accept abstract requests from the device-independent software above it, and see to it that the request is carried out. A typical request is to read block n. If the driver is idle at the time a request comes in, it starts carrying out the request immediately. If, however, it is already busy with a request, it will normally enter the new request into a queue of pending requests to be dealt with as soon as possible.

The first step in actually carrying out an I/O request, say, for a disk, is to translate it from abstract to concrete terms. For a disk driver, this means figuring out where on the disk the requested block actually is, checking to see if the drive’s motor is running, determining if the arm is positioned on the proper cylinder, and so on. In short, it must decide which controller operations are required and in what sequence.

Once it has determined which commands to issue to the controller, it starts issuing them by writing into the controller’s device registers. Some controllers can handle only one command at a time. Other controllers are willing to accept a linked list of commands, which they then carry out by themselves without further help from the operating system.

After the command or commands have been issued, one of two situations will apply. In many cases the device driver must wait until the controller does some work for it, so it blocks itself until the interrupt comes in to unblock it. In other cases, however, the operation finishes without delay, so the driver need not block. As an example of the latter situation, scrolling the screen on some
3.2.4. Device-Independent I/O Software

Although some of the I/O software is device specific, a large fraction of it is device-independent. The exact boundary between the drivers and the device-independent software is system dependent, because some functions that could be done in a device-independent way may actually be done in the drivers, for efficiency or other reasons. The functions shown in Fig. 3-5 are typically done in the device-independent software. In MINIX, most of the device-independent software is part of the file system, in layer 3 (Fig. 2-26). Although we will study the file system in Chap. 5, we will take a quick look at the device-independent software here, to provide some perspective on I/O and show better where the drivers fit in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uniform interfacing for the device drivers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device naming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providing a device-independent block size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage allocation on block devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allocating and releasing dedicated devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error reporting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3-5. Functions of the device-independent I/O software.

The basic function of the device-independent software is to perform the I/O functions that are common to all devices, and to provide a uniform interface to the user-level software.

A major issue in an operating system is how objects such as files and I/O devices are named. The device independent software takes care of mapping symbolic device names onto the proper driver. In MINIX a device name, such as /dev/tty0, uniquely specifies the i-node for a special file, and this i-node contains the major device number, which is used to locate the appropriate driver. The i-node also contains the minor device number, which is passed as a parameter to the driver to specify the unit to be read or written.
Closely related to naming is protection. How does the system prevent users from accessing devices that they are not entitled to access? In most microcomputer systems, there is no protection at all. Any process can do anything it wants to. In most mainframe systems, access to I/O devices by user processes is completely forbidden. In MINIX, a more flexible scheme is used. The special files corresponding to I/O devices are protected by the usual rwx bits. The system administrator can then set the proper permissions for each device.

Different disks may have different sector sizes. It is up to the device-independent software to hide this fact and provide a uniform block size to higher layers, for example, by treating several sectors as a single logical block. In this way, the higher layers only deal with abstract devices that all use the same logical block size, independent of the physical sector size. Similarly, some character devices deliver their data one byte at a time (e.g., paper tape readers), while others deliver theirs in larger units (e.g., card readers). These differences must also be hidden.

Buffering is also an issue, both for block and character devices. For block devices, the hardware generally insists upon reading and writing entire blocks at once, but user processes are free to read and write in arbitrary units. If a user process writes half a block, the operating system will normally keep the data around internally until the rest of the data are written, at which time the block can go out to the disk. For character devices, users can write data to the system faster than it can be output, necessitating buffering. Keyboard input can also arrive before it is needed, also requiring buffering.

When a file is created and filled with data, new disk blocks have to be allocated to the file. To perform this allocation, the operating system needs a list or bit map of free blocks per disk, but the algorithm for locating a free block is device independent and can be done above the level of the driver.

Some devices, such as magnetic tape drives, can be used only by a single process at any given moment. It is up to the operating system to examine requests for device usage and accept or reject them, depending on whether the requested device is available or not. A simple way to handle these requests is to require processes to perform OPENS on the special files for devices directly. If the device is unavailable, the OPEN will fail. Closing such a dedicated device would then release it.

Error handling, by and large, is done by the drivers. Most errors are highly device-dependent, so only the driver knows what to do (e.g., retry, ignore it, panic). A typical error is caused by a disk block that has been damaged and cannot be read any more. After the driver has tried to read the block a certain number of times, it gives up and informs the device-independent software. How the error is treated from here on is device independent. If the error occurred while reading a user file, it may be sufficient to report the error back to the caller. However, if it occurred while reading a critical system data structure such as the block containing the bit map showing which blocks are free, the operating system may have no choice but to print an error message and terminate.
3.2.5. User-Space I/O Software

Although most of the I/O software is within the operating system, a small portion of it consists of libraries linked together with user programs, and even whole programs running outside the kernel. System calls, including the I/O system calls, are normally made by library procedures. When a C program contains the call

\[
\text{bytes_read} = \text{read}(\text{file_descriptor}, \text{buffer}, \text{bytes\_wanted});
\]

the library procedure \text{read} will be linked with the program and contained in the binary program present in memory at run time. The collection of all these library procedures is clearly part of the I/O system.

While these procedures do little more than put their parameters in the appropriate place for the system call, there are other I/O procedures that actually do real work. In particular, formatting of input and output is done by library procedures. One example from C is \text{printf}, which takes a format string and possibly some variables as input, builds an ASCII string, and then calls \text{WRITE} to output the string. An example of a similar procedure for input is \text{atoi} (Ascii TO Integer), which takes a string containing a decimal integer in ASCII and returns the binary value of that integer. The standard I/O library contains a number of procedures that involve I/O and all run as part of user programs.

Not all user-level I/O software consists of library procedures. Another important category is the spooling system. Spooling is a way of dealing with dedicated I/O devices in a multiprogramming system. Consider a typical spooled device: the line printer. Although it would be technically easy to let any user process open the character special file for the printer, suppose a process opened it and then did nothing for hours. No other process could print anything.

Instead what is done is to create a special process, called a daemon, and a special directory, called a spooling directory. To print a file, a process first generates the entire file to be printed and puts it in the spooling directory. It is up to the daemon, which is the only process having permission to use the printer's special file, to print the files in the directory. By protecting the special file against direct use by users, the problem of having someone keeping it open unnecessarily long is eliminated.

Spooling is not only used for printers. It is also used in other situations. For example, file transfer over a network often uses a network daemon. To send a file somewhere, a user puts it in a network spooling directory. Later on, the network daemon takes it out and transmits it. One particular use of spooled file transmission is the USENET network, which is primarily used as an electronic mail system. This network consists of thousands of machines around the world communicating by dial-up telephone lines and many computer networks. To send mail to someone on USENET, you call a program such as \text{send}, which accepts the letter to be sent and then deposits it in a spooling directory for transmission later. The entire mail system runs outside the operating system.
Figure 3-6 summarizes the I/O system, showing all the layers and the principal functions of each layer.

![Diagram of I/O system layers and functions](image)

Fig. 3-6. Layers of the I/O system and the main functions of each layer.

### 3.3. DEADLOCKS

One problem with spooling is that the entire file to be output must be written to the disk before the output can be started. (What would happen if a daemon began printing a file before it had been fully generated and the process generating it stopped for a few hours before finishing its output?) Sometimes the output is so large that not enough disk space is available to hold it all. A program generating output for a magnetic tape might produce 50 megabytes of data. The only way to handle this situation is not to use spooling for the device, but to allow user processes to request, and be granted, exclusive access for as long as needed.

Unfortunately, allowing exclusive access to magnetic tape drives or any other kind of resource can lead to serious problems. Suppose a computer has one tape drive and one plotter, neither of them spooled. Process A requests the tape drive and process B requests the plotter. Both requests are granted. Now A requests the plotter (without giving up the tape drive) and B requests the tape drive (without giving up the plotter). Neither request can be granted, so both processes are put to sleep. They will remain asleep forever. This situation is called a **deadlock**.

Deadlocks can occur in many situations besides requesting dedicated I/O devices. In a data base system, a program may have to lock several records it is using, to avoid race conditions. If process A locks record R1 and process B locks record R2, and then each process tries to lock the other one’s record, we also have a deadlock.

Almost any situation in which processes can be granted exclusive access to
devices, files, records, or other objects has the potential for deadlock. Thus the
discussion of deadlocks could have gone in almost any chapter of this book. We
put it here for pedagogical reasons: it is obvious that tape drives, plotters, and
card punches can only be used by one process at a time. With records in a data
base, for example, the need for exclusive access may be equally valid, but the
reasoning is much more subtle.

In the following sections we will look at deadlocks more closely, see how
they arise, and study some ways of preventing them. A great deal has been writ-
ten about deadlocks. Two bibliographies on the subject have appeared in
Operating Systems Review and should be consulted for references (Newton,
1979; Zobel, 1983).

3.3.1. Resources

Deadlocks can occur when processes have been granted exclusive access to
devices, files, and so forth. To make the discussion of deadlocks as general as
possible, we will refer to the objects granted as resources. A resource can be a
hardware device (e.g., a tape drive) or a piece of information (e.g., a locked
record in a data base). A computer will normally have many different resources
that can be acquired. For some resources, several identical instances may be
available, such as three tape drives. When several copies of a resource are avail-
able, any one of them can be used to satisfy any request for the resource. In
short, a resource is anything that can only be used by a single process at any
instant of time.

The sequence of events required to use a resource is:

1. Request the resource.
2. Use the resource.
3. Release the resource.

If the resource is not available when it is requested, the requesting process is
forced to wait. In some operating systems, the process is automatically blocked
when a resource request fails, and awakened when it becomes available. In
other systems, the request fails with an error code, and it is up to the calling pro-
cess to wait a little while and try again.

The exact nature of requesting a resource is highly system dependent. In
some systems, a REQUEST system call is provided to allow processes to ask for
resources. In MINIX the only resources that the operating system (potentially)
knows about are special files that only one process can have open at a time.
These are opened by the usual OPEN call. If the file is already in use, an error
code could be returned; what to do next would be up to the user.
3.3.2. Deadlock Modeling

Deadlock can be defined formally as follows. A set of processes is deadlocked if each process in the set is waiting for an event that only another process in the set can cause. Because all the processes are waiting, none of them will ever cause any of the events that could wake up any of the other members of the set, and all the processes continue to wait forever.

In most cases, the event that each process is waiting for is the release of some resource currently possessed by another member of the set. In other words, each member of the set of deadlocked processes is waiting for a resource that can be released only by a deadlocked process. None of the processes can run, none of them can release any resources, and none of them can be awakened. The number of processes and the number and kind of resources possessed and requested are unimportant.

Coffman et al. (1971) showed that four conditions must hold for there to be a deadlock:

1. Mutual exclusion condition. Each resource is either currently assigned to exactly one process or is available.

2. Hold and wait condition. Processes currently holding resources granted earlier can request new resources.

3. No preemption condition. Resources previously granted cannot be forcibly taken away from a process. They must be explicitly released by the process holding them.

4. Circular wait condition. There must be a circular chain of two or more processes, each of which is waiting for a resource held by the next member of the chain.

Holt (1972) showed how these four conditions can be modeled using directed graphs. The graphs have two kinds of nodes: processes, shown as circles, and resources, shown as squares. An arc from a resource node (square) to a process node (circle) means that the resource previously has been requested by, granted to, and is currently held by that process. In Fig. 3-7(a), resource $R$ is currently assigned to process $A$.

An arc from a process to a resource means that the process is currently blocked waiting for that resource. In Fig. 3-7(b), process $B$ is waiting for resource $S$. In Fig. 3-7(c) we see a deadlock: process $C$ is waiting for resource $T$, which is currently held by process $D$. Process $D$ is not about to release resource $T$ because it is waiting for resource $U$, held by $C$. Both processes will wait forever. A cycle in the graph means that there is a deadlock involving the processes and resources in the cycle. In this example, the cycle is $C - T - D - U - C$.

Now let us look at an example of how resource graphs can be used. Imagine
that we have three processes, $A$, $B$, and $C$, and three resources, $R$, $S$, and $T$. The requests and releases of the three processes are given in Fig. 3-8(a)-(c). The operating system is free to run any unblocked process at any instant, so it could decide to run $A$ until $A$ finished all its work, then run $B$ to completion, and finally run $C$.

This ordering does not lead to any deadlocks (because there is no competition for resources) but it also has no parallelism at all. In addition to requesting and releasing resources, processes compute and do I/O. When the processes are run sequentially, there is no possibility that while one process is waiting for I/O, another can use the CPU. Thus running the processes strictly sequentially may not be optimal. On the other hand, if none of the processes do any I/O at all, shortest job first is better than round robin, so under some circumstances running all processes sequentially may be the best way.

Let us now suppose that the processes do both I/O and computing, so that round robin is a reasonable scheduling algorithm. The resource requests might occur in the order of Fig. 3-8(d). If these six requests are carried out in that order, the six resulting resource graphs are shown in Fig. 3-8(e)-(j). After request 4 has been made, $A$ blocks waiting for $S$, as shown in Fig. 3-8(h). In the next two steps $B$ and $C$ also block, ultimately leading to a cycle and the deadlock of Fig. 3-8(j).

However, as we have already mentioned, the operating system is not required to run the processes in any special order. In particular, if granting a particular request might lead to deadlock, the operating system can simply suspend the process without granting the request (i.e., just not schedule the process) until it is safe. In Fig. 3-8, if the operating system knew about the impending deadlock, it could suspend $B$ instead of granting it $S$. By running only $A$ and $C$, we would get the requests and releases of Fig. 3-8(k) instead of Fig. 3-8(d). This sequence leads to the resource graphs of Fig. 3-8(l)-(q), which do not lead to deadlock.

After step (q), process $B$ can be granted $S$ because $A$ is finished and $C$ has everything it needs. Even if $B$ should eventually block when requesting $T$, no deadlock can occur. $B$ will just wait until $C$ is finished.

Later in this chapter we will study a detailed algorithm for making allocation
Fig. 3-8. An example of how deadlock occurs and how it can be avoided.
decisions that do not lead to deadlock. The point to understand now is that resource graphs are a tool that let us see if a given request/release sequence leads to deadlock. We just carry out the requests and releases step by step, and after every step check the graph to see if it contains any cycles. If so, we have a deadlock; if not, there is no deadlock. Resource graphs can also be generalized to handle multiple resources of the same type (Holt, 1972).

In general, four strategies are used for dealing with deadlocks.

1. Just ignore the problem altogether.
2. Detection and recovery.
3. Prevention, by negating one of the four necessary conditions.
4. Dynamic avoidance by careful resource allocation.

We will examine each of these methods in turn in the next four sections.

3.3.3. The Ostrich Algorithm

The simplest approach is the ostrich algorithm: stick your head in the sand and pretend there is no problem at all. Different people react to this strategy in different ways. Mathematicians find it totally unacceptable and say that deadlocks must be prevented at all costs. Engineers ask how often the problem is expected, how often the system crashes for other reasons, and how serious a deadlock is. If deadlocks occur on the average once every five years, but system crashes due to hardware failures, compiler errors, and operating system bugs occur once a month, most engineers would not be willing to pay a large penalty in performance or convenience to eliminate deadlocks.

To make this contrast more specific, UNIX (and MINIX) potentially suffer from deadlocks that are not even detected, let alone automatically broken. The total number of processes in the system is determined by the number of entries in the process table. Thus process table slots are finite resources. If a FORK fails because the table is full, a reasonable approach for the program doing the FORK is to wait a random time and try again.

Now suppose that a UNIX system has 100 process slots. Ten programs are running, each of which needs to create 12 (sub)processes. After each process has created 9 processes, the 10 original processes and the 90 new processes have exhausted the table. Each of the 10 original processes now sits in an endless loop forking and failing—a deadlock. The probability of this happening is minuscule, but it could happen. Should we abandon processes and the FORK call to eliminate the problem?

The maximum number of open files is similarly restricted by the size of the i-node table, so a similar problem occurs when it fills up. Swap space on the disk is another limited resource. In fact, almost every table in the operating system represents a finite resource. Should we abolish all of these because it might
happen that a collection of \( n \) processes might each claim \( 1/n \) of the total, and then each try to claim another one?

The UNIX approach is just to ignore the problem on the assumption that most users would prefer an occasional deadlock to a rule restricting all users to one process, one open file, and one of everything. If deadlocks could be eliminated for free, there would not be much discussion. The problem is that the price is high, mostly in terms of putting inconvenient restrictions on processes, as we will see shortly. Thus we are faced with an unpleasant tradeoff between convenience and correctness, and a great deal of discussion about which is more important, and to whom.

3.3.4. Detection and Recovery

A second technique is detection and recovery. When this technique is used, the system does not do anything except monitor the requests and releases of resources. Every time a resource is requested or released, the resource graph is updated, and a check is made to see if any cycles exist. If a cycle exists, one of the processes in the cycle is killed. If this does not break the deadlock, another process is killed, and so on until the cycle is broken.

A somewhat cruder method is to not even maintain the resource graph, but instead periodically check to see if there are any processes that have been continuously blocked for more than say, 1 hour. Such processes are then killed.

Detection and recovery is the strategy often used on large mainframe computers, especially batch systems in which killing a process and then restarting it later is usually acceptable. Care must be taken to restore any modified files to their original state, however.

3.3.5. Deadlock Prevention

The third deadlock strategy is to impose suitable restrictions on processes so that deadlocks are structurally impossible. The four conditions stated by Coffman et al. (1971) provide a clue to some possible solutions. If we can ensure that at least one of these conditions is never satisfied, then deadlocks will be impossible (Havender, 1968).

First let us attack the mutual exclusion condition. If no resource was ever assigned exclusively to a single process, we would never have deadlocks. However, it is equally clear that allowing two processes to write on the printer at the same time will lead to chaos. By spooling printer output, several processes can generate output at the same time. In this model, the only process that actually requests the physical printer is the printer daemon. Since the daemon never requests any other resources, we can eliminate deadlock for the printer.

Unfortunately, not all devices can be spooled (the process table does not lend itself well to being spooled). Furthermore, competition for disk space for spooling can itself lead to deadlock. What would happen if two processes each filled
up half of the available spooling space with output and neither was finished? If the daemon was programmed to begin printing even before all the output was spooled, the printer might lie idle if an output process decided to wait several hours after the first burst of output. For this reason, daemons are normally programmed to print only after the complete output file is available. Neither process will ever finish, so we have a deadlock on the disk.

The second of the conditions stated by Coffman et al. looks more promising. If we can prevent processes that hold resources from waiting for more resources we can eliminate deadlocks. One way to achieve this goal is to require all processes to request all their resources before starting execution. If everything was available, the process would be allocated whatever it needed and could run to completion. If one or more resources were busy, nothing would be allocated and the process would just wait.

An immediate problem with this approach is that many processes do not know how many resources they will need until they have started running. Another problem is that resources will not be used optimally with this approach. Take, as an example, a process that reads data from an input tape, analyzes it for an hour, and then writes an output tape as well as plotting the results. If all resources must be requested in advance, the process will tie up the output tape drive and the plotter for an hour.

A slightly different way to break the hold-and-wait condition is to require a process requesting a resource to first temporarily release all the resources it currently holds. Only if the request is successful can it get the original resources back.

Attacking the third condition (no preemption) is even less promising than attacking the second one. If a process has been assigned the printer and is in the middle of printing its output, forcibly taking away the printer because a needed plotter is not available will lead to a mess.

Only one condition is left. The circular wait can be eliminated in several ways. One way is simply to have a rule saying that a process is entitled only to a single resource at any moment. If it needs a second one, it must release the first one. For a process that needs to copy a huge file from a tape to a printer, this restriction is unacceptable.

Another way to avoid the circular wait is to provide a global numbering of all the resources, as shown in Fig. 3-9(a). Now the rule is this: processes can request resources whenever they want to, but all requests must be made in numerical order. A process may request first a printer and then a tape drive, but it may not request first a plotter and then a printer.

With this rule, the resource allocation graph can never have cycles. Let us see why this is true for the case of two processes, in Fig. 3-9(b). We can get a deadlock only if $A$ requests resource $j$ and $B$ requests resource $i$. Assuming $i$ and $j$ are distinct resources, they will have different numbers. If $i > j$ then $A$ is not allowed to request $j$. If $i < j$ then $B$ is not allowed to request $i$. Either way, deadlock is impossible.
130

INPUT/OUTPUT

Fig. 3-9. (a) Numerically ordered resources. (b) A resource graph.

With multiple processes the same logic holds. At every instant, one of the assigned resources will be highest. The process holding that resource will never ask for a resource already assigned. It will either finish, or at worst, request even higher numbered resources, all of which are available. Eventually it will finish and free its resources. At this point, some other process will hold the highest resource and can also finish. In short, there exists a scenario in which all processes finish, so no deadlock is present.

A minor variation of this algorithm is to drop the requirement that resources be acquired in strictly increasing sequence, and merely insist that no process request a resource lower than what it is already holding. If a process initially requests 9 and 10, and then releases both of them, it is effectively starting all over, so there is no reason to prohibit it from now requesting resource 1.

Although numerically ordering the resources eliminates the problem of deadlocks, it may be impossible to find an ordering that satisfies everyone. When the resources include process table slots, disk spooler space, locked database records, and other abstract resources, the number of potential resources and different uses may be so large that no ordering could possibly work.

The various approaches to deadlock prevention are summarized in Fig. 3-10.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Approach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mutual exclusion</td>
<td>Spool everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold and wait</td>
<td>Request all resources initially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No preemption</td>
<td>Take resources away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circular wait</td>
<td>Order resources numerically</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3-10. Summary of approaches to deadlock prevention.

3.3.6. Deadlock Avoidance

In Fig. 3-8 we saw that deadlock was avoided not by imposing arbitrary rules on processes, but by carefully analyzing each resource request to see if could be safely granted. The question arises: is there an algorithm that can always avoid deadlock by making the right choice all the time? The answer is a qualified yes—we can avoid deadlocks, but only if certain information is available in
available in advance. In this section we examine ways to avoid deadlock by careful resource allocation.

The Banker's Algorithm for a Single Resource

A scheduling algorithm that can avoid deadlocks is due to Dijkstra (1965) and is known as the banker's algorithm. It is modeled on the way a small-town banker might deal with a group of customers to whom he has granted lines of credit. In Fig. 3-11(a) we see four customers, each of whom has been granted a certain number of credit units (e.g., 1 unit is 1K dollars). The banker knows that not all customers will need their maximum credit immediately, so he has only reserved 10 units rather than 22 to service them. (In this analogy, customers are processes, units are, say, tape drives, and the banker is the operating system.)

![Resource Allocation States](image)

Fig. 3-11. Three resource allocation states: (a) Safe. (b) Safe. (c) Unsafe.

The customers go about their respective businesses, making loan requests from time to time. At a certain moment, the situation is as shown in Fig. 3-11(b). A list of customers showing the money already loaned (tape drives already assigned) and the maximum credit available (maximum number of tape drives needed at once later) is called the state of the system with respect to resource allocation.

A state is said to be a safe state if there exists a sequence of other states that leads to all the customers getting loans up to their credit limits (all the processes getting all their resources and terminating). The state of Fig. 3-11(b) is safe because with two units left, the banker can delay any requests except Marvin's, thus letting Marvin finish and release all four of his resources. With four units in hand, the banker can let either Suzanne or Barbara have the necessary units, and so on.

Consider what would happen if a request from Barbara for one more unit were granted in Fig. 3-11(b). We would have situation Fig. 3-11(c), which is unsafe. If all the customers suddenly asked for their maximum loans, the banker could not satisfy any of them, and we would have a deadlock. An unsafe state does not have to lead to deadlock, since a customer might not need the entire credit line available, but the banker cannot count on this behavior.
The banker's algorithm is thus to consider each request as it occurs, and see if granting it leads to a safe state. If it does, the request is granted, otherwise, it is postponed until later. To see if a state is safe, the banker checks to see if he has enough resources to satisfy the customer closest to his or her maximum. If so, those loans are assumed to be repaid, and the customer now closest to his or her limit is checked, and so on. If all loans can eventually be repaid, the state is safe and the initial request can be granted.

Resource Trajectories

The above algorithm was described in terms of a single resource class (e.g., only tape drives or only printers, but not some of each). In Fig. 3-12 we see a model for dealing with two processes and two resources, for example, a printer and a plotter. The horizontal axis represents the number of instructions executed by process A. The vertical axis represents the number of instructions executed by process B. At $I_1$ A requests a printer; at $I_2$ it needs a plotter. The printer and plotter are released at $I_3$ and $I_4$, respectively. Process B needs the plotter from $I_5$ to $I_7$ and the printer from $I_6$ to $I_8$.

![Diagram](image)

**Fig. 3-12.** Two process resource trajectories.

Every point in the diagram represents a joint state of the two processes. Initially, the state is at $p$, with neither process having executed any instructions. If the scheduler chooses to run A first, we get to the point $q$, in which A has executed some number of instructions, but B has executed none. At point $q$ the trajectory becomes vertical, indicating that the scheduler has chosen to run B. With a single processor, all paths must be horizontal or vertical, never diagonal. Furthermore, motion is always to the north or east, never to the south or west (processes cannot run backwards).

When A crosses the $I_1$ line on the path from $r$ to $s$, it requests and is granted the printer. When B reaches point $t$, it requests the plotter.

The regions that are shaded are especially interesting. The region with lines
slanting from southwest to northeast represents both processes having the printer. The mutual exclusion rule makes it impossible to enter this region. Similarly, the region shaded the other way represents both processes having the plotter, and is equally impossible.

If the system ever enters the box bounded by \( I_1 \) and \( I_2 \) on the sides and \( I_5 \) and \( I_6 \) top and bottom, it will eventually deadlock when it gets to the intersection of \( I_2 \) and \( I_6 \). At this point, \( A \) is requesting the plotter and \( B \) is requesting the printer, and both are already assigned. The entire box is unsafe and must not be entered. At point \( t \) the only safe thing to do is run process \( A \) until it gets to \( I_4 \). Beyond that, any trajectory to \( u \) will do.

**The Banker’s Algorithm for Multiple Resources**

This graphical model is difficult to apply to the general case of an arbitrary number of processes and an arbitrary number of resource classes, each with multiple instances (e.g., two plotters, three tape drives). However, the banker’s algorithm can be generalized to do the job. Figure 3-13 shows how it works.

![Fig. 3-13. The banker’s algorithm with multiple resources.](image)

In Fig. 3-13 we see two matrices. The one on the left shows how many of each resource is currently assigned to each of the five processes. The matrix on the right shows how many resources each process still needs in order to complete. As in the single resource case, processes must state their total resource needs before executing, so that the system can compute the right-hand matrix at each instant.

The three vectors at the right of the figure show the existing resources, \( E \), the possessed resources, \( P \), and the available resources, \( A \), respectively. From \( E \) we see that the system has six tape drives, three plotters, four printers, and two punches. Of these, five tape drives, three plotters, two printers, and two punches are currently assigned. This fact can be seen by adding up the four resource columns in the left-hand matrix. The available resource vector is simply the difference between what the system has and what is currently in use.

The algorithm for checking to see if a state is safe can now be stated.
1. Look for a row, \( R \), whose unmet resource needs are all smaller than or equal to \( A \). If no such row exists, the system will eventually deadlock since no process can run to completion.

2. Assume the process of the row chosen requests all the resources it needs (which is guaranteed to be possible) and finishes. Mark that process as terminated and add all its resources to the \( A \) vector.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until either all processes are marked terminated, in which case the initial state was safe, or until a deadlock occurs, in which case it was not.

If several processes are eligible to be chosen in step 1, it does not matter which one is selected: the pool of available resources either gets larger, or at worst, stays the same.

Now let us get back to the example of Fig. 3-13. The current state is safe. Suppose process \( B \) now requests a printer. This request can be granted because the resulting state is still safe (process \( D \) can finish, and then processes \( A \) or \( E \), followed by the rest).

Now imagine that after giving \( B \) one of the two remaining printers, \( E \) wants the last printer. Granting that request would reduce the vector of available resources to \((1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0)\), which leads to deadlock. Clearly \( E \)'s request must be deferred for a while.

This algorithm was first published by Dijkstra in 1965. Since that time, nearly every book on operating systems has described it in detail. Innumerable papers have been written about various aspects of it. Unfortunately, few authors have had the audacity to point out that although in theory the algorithm is wonderful, in practice it is essentially useless because processes rarely know what their maximum resource needs will be in advance. In addition, the number of processes is not fixed, but dynamically varying as new users log in and out. Furthermore, resources that were thought to be available can suddenly vanish (tape drives can break).

In summary, the schemes described earlier under the name “prevention” are overly restrictive, and the algorithm described here as “avoidance” requires information that is usually not available. If you can think of a general-purpose algorithm that does the job in practice as well as in theory, write it up and send it to your local computer science journal.

For specific applications, many excellent special-purpose algorithms are known. As an example, in many data base systems, an operation that occurs frequently is requesting locks on several records and then updating all the locked records. When multiple processes are running at the same time, there is a real danger of deadlock.

The approach often used is called **two-phase locking**. In the first phase, the process tries to lock all the records it needs, one at a time. If it succeeds, it performs its updates and releases the locks. If some record is already locked, it releases the locks it already has and just starts all over. In a certain sense, this
approach is similar to requesting all the resources needed in advance, or at least before anything irreversible is done.

However, this strategy is not applicable in general. In real time systems and process control systems, for example, it is not acceptable to just terminate a process partway through because a resource is not available and start all over again. Neither is it acceptable to start over if the process has read or written messages to the network, updated files or anything else that cannot be safely repeated. The algorithm works only in those situations where the programmer has very carefully arranged things so that the program can be stopped at any point during the first phase and restarted. Many applications cannot be structured this way.

3.4. OVERVIEW OF I/O IN MINIX

MINIX I/O is structured as shown in Fig. 3-6. In the following sections we will look briefly at each of the layers, with the emphasis on the device drivers. Interrupt handling was covered in the previous chapter, and the device-independent I/O will be discussed when we come to the file system, in Chap. 5.

3.4.1. Interrupt Handlers in MINIX

Many of the device drivers start some I/O device and then block, waiting for a message to arrive. That message is generated by the interrupt handler, as we have seen. Other device drivers do not start any physical I/O (e.g., reading from RAM disk), and do not wait for a message from an I/O device. Since, as we have mentioned, the subject of interrupts has been gone over in great detail in the previous chapter, we will say no more about it here.

3.4.2. Device Drivers in MINIX

For each class of I/O device present in a MINIX system, a separate I/O task (device driver) is present. These drivers are full-fledged processes, each with its own state, registers, memory map, and so on. Device drivers communicate with each other (where necessary) and with the file system using the standard message passing mechanism used by all MINIX processes. Furthermore, each device driver is written as a single source file, such as clock.c or floppy.c. The only difference between device drivers and other processes is that the device drivers are linked together in the kernel, and thus all share a common address space.

This design is highly modular and moderately efficient. It is also one of the few places where MINIX differs from UNIX in an essential way. In MINIX a process reads a file by sending a message to the file system process. The file system, in turn, may send a message to the disk driver asking it to read the needed block. This sequence (slightly simplified from reality) is shown in Fig. 3-14(a). By making these interactions via the message mechanism, we force various parts of
the system to interface in standard ways with other parts. Nevertheless, by putting all the device drivers in the kernel address space, they have easy access to the process table and other key data structures when needed.

![Diagram](image)

**Fig. 3-14.** Two ways of structuring user-system communication.

In UNIX all processes have two parts: a user-space part and a kernel-space part, as shown in Fig. 3-14(b). When a system call is made, the operating system switches from the user-space part to the kernel-space part in a somewhat magical way. This structure is a remnant of the MULTICS design, in which the switch was just an ordinary procedure call, rather than a trap followed by saving the state of the user-part, as it is in UNIX.

Device drivers in UNIX are simply kernel procedures that are called by the kernel-space part of the process. When a driver needs to wait for an interrupt, it calls a kernel procedure that puts it to sleep until some interrupt handler wakes it up. Note that it is the user process itself that is being put to sleep here, because the kernel and user parts are really different parts of the same process.

Among operating system designers, arguments about the merits of monolithic systems, as in UNIX, versus process-structured systems, as in MINIX, are endless. The MINIX approach is better structured (more modular), has cleaner interfaces between the pieces, and extends easily to distributed systems in which the various processes run on different computers. The UNIX approach is more efficient, because procedure calls are much faster than sending messages. MINIX was split into many processes because I believe that with increasingly powerful microcomputers available, cleaner software structure was worth making the system somewhat slower. Be warned that many operating systems designers do not share this belief.
The MINIX configuration described in this book contains drivers for RAM disk, floppy disk, clock, and terminal. (The MINIX software distribution contains additional drivers, such as printer and hard disk.) The request messages sent to these tasks contain a variety of fields used to hold the operation code (e.g., READ or WRITE) and its parameters.

For block devices, the fields of the request and reply messages are shown in Fig. 3-15. The fields for the character devices are basically similar but can vary slightly from task to task. Messages to the clock task, for example, contain times, and messages to the terminal task specify the characters to use for the intraline editing functions erase-character and kill-line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m.m_type</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>Operation requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.DEVICE</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>Minor device to use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.POSITION</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>Position on the minor device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.PROC_NR</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>User process requesting the I/O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.ADDRESS</td>
<td>char*</td>
<td>Address within PROC_NR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.COUNT</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>Bytes to transfer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Fig. 3-15. Fields of the message m, sent to and by block device drivers.](image)

The function of each task is to accept requests from other processes, normally the file system, and carry them out. All tasks have been written to get a message, carry it out, and send a reply. Among other things, this decision means that tasks are strictly sequential and do not contain any internal multiprogramming, to keep them simple. When a hardware request has been issued, the task does a RECEIVE operation specifying that it is interested only in accepting interrupt messages, not new requests for work. Any new request messages are just kept waiting until the current work has been done (rendezvous principle).

The main program for each driver is structurally the same and is outlined in Fig. 3-16. When the system first comes up, each of the drivers is started up in turn to give them a chance to initialize internal tables and similar things. Then each one blocks by trying to get a message. When a message comes in, the identity of the caller is saved, and a procedure is called to carry out the work, with a different procedure invoked for each operation available. After the work has been finished, a reply is sent back to the caller, and the task then goes back to the top of the loop to wait for the next request.
message mess;        /* message buffer */

io_task()
{
    int r, caller;

    initialize();   /* only done once, during system init. */

    while (TRUE) {
        receiveANY, &mess); /* wait for a request for work */
        caller = mess.m_source; /* process from whom message came */

        switch(mess.m_type) { /* handle each possible request type */
            case READ:  r = do_read(); break;
            case WRITE: r = do_write(); break;
            case OTHER: r = do_other(); break;
            default:    r = ERROR;
        }

        mess.m_type = TASK_REPLY;
        mess.REP_STATUS = r; /* result code */
        send(caller, &mess); /* send reply message back to caller */
    }
}

Fig. 3-16. Outline of the main procedure of an I/O task.

Each of the do_xxx procedures handles one of the operations of which the driver is capable. It returns a status code telling what happened. The status code, which is included in the reply message as the field REP_STATUS, is the count of bytes transferred (zero or positive) if all went well, or the error number (negative) if something went wrong. This count may differ from the number of bytes requested. On terminals, for example, at most one line is returned, even if the count requested is larger.

3.4.3. Device-Independent I/O Software in MINIX

The MINIX file system process contains all the device-independent I/O code. The I/O system is so closely related to the file system that they were merged into one process. The functions performed by the file system are those shown in Fig. 3-5, except for requesting and releasing dedicated devices, which do not exist in MINIX as it is presently configured, but which could easily be added to the relevant device drivers should the need arise in the future.

In addition to handling the interface with the drivers, buffering, block allocation and the like, the file system also handles protection and the management of i-nodes, directories, and mounted file systems. The file system will be covered in detail in Chap. 5.
3.4.4. User-level I/O Software in MINIX

The general model outlined earlier in this chapter also applies here. Library procedures are available for making system calls and for converting from binary to ASCII and ASCII to binary. The standard MINIX configuration does not contain any spooler daemons, but since they are just user processes, it is easy to add them as needed later.

3.4.5. Deadlock Handling in MINIX

True to its heritage, MINIX follows the same path as UNIX with respect to deadlocks: it just ignores the problem altogether. MINIX contains no dedicated I/O devices, although if someone wanted to hang an industry standard 9-track magnetic tape drive on an IBM PC, making the software for it would not pose any special problems. In short, the only place deadlocks can occur are with the implicit shared resources, such as process table slots, i-node table slots, and so on. None of the known deadlock algorithms can deal with resources like these that are not requested explicitly.

Actually, the above is not strictly true. A few places do exist where considerable care has been taken to avoid problems. The main one is the interaction between the file system and the memory manager. The memory manager sends messages to the file system to read the binary file (executable program) during an EXEC system call, as well as in other contexts. If the file system is not idle when the memory manager is trying to send to it, the memory manager will be blocked. If the file system should then try to send a message to the memory manager, it too would discover that the rendezvous fails, and would block, leading to a deadlock.

This problem has been avoided by constructing the system in such a way that the file system never sends request messages to the memory manager, just replies, with one minor exception. The one exception is that upon starting up, the file system reports its size to the memory manager, which is guaranteed to be waiting for it.

3.5. RAM DISKS

In the following sections we will get back to the device drivers, the main topic of this chapter, and study several of them in detail. The drivers to be covered are the RAM disk, floppy disk, clock, and terminal. Each of these is interesting for a different reason. The RAM disk is a good example to study because it has all the properties of block devices in general—except the actual I/O (because the “disk” is actually just a portion of memory). This simplicity makes it a good place to start. The floppy disk shows what a real disk driver
looks like, warts and all. The clock is important because every system has one, and because it is completely different from all the other drivers. The terminal driver is important in its own right, and furthermore, is a good example of a character device driver.

Each of these sections describes the relevant hardware, the software principles behind the driver, an overview of the implementation, and the code itself. This structure makes the sections useful reading even for those readers who are not interested in the details of the code itself.

3.5.1. RAM Disk Hardware and Software

The idea behind a RAM disk is simple. A block device is a storage medium with two commands: write a block and read a block. Normally these blocks are stored on rotating memories, such as floppy disks or hard disks. A RAM disk is simpler. It just uses a preallocated portion of the main memory for storing the blocks. A RAM disk has the advantage of having instant access (no seek or rotational delay), making it suitable for storing programs or data that are frequently accessed.

In a system such as MINIX, which was designed to work even on computers with only one floppy disk, the RAM disk has another advantage. By putting the root device on the RAM disk, the one floppy disk can be mounted and unmounted at will, allowing for removable media. Putting the root device on the floppy disk would make it impossible to save files on floppies, since the root device (the only floppy) cannot be unmounted. In addition, having the root device on the RAM disk makes the system highly flexible: any combination of floppy disks or hard disks can be mounted on it.

As an aside, it is worth briefly pointing out a difference between systems that support mounted file systems and those that do not (e.g., MS-DOS). With mounted file systems, the root device is always present and in a fixed location, and removable file systems (i.e., disks) can be mounted in the file tree to form an integrated file system. Once everything has been mounted, the user need not worry at all about which device a file is on.

In contrast, with systems like MS-DOS, the user must specify the location of each file, either explicitly as in B:FILE or using certain defaults (current device, current directory, and so on). With only one or two floppy disks, this burden is manageable, but on a large computer system, with dozens of disks, having to keep track of devices all the time would be unbearable. Remember that UNIX runs on systems ranging from an IBM PC, through 68000s and VAXes to the Cray-2; MS-DOS runs only on very small systems.

Figure 3.17 shows the idea behind a RAM disk. The RAM disk is split up into \( n \) blocks, depending on how much memory has been allocated for it. Each block is the same size as the block size used on the real disks. When the driver receives a message to read or write a block, it just computes where in the RAM disk memory the requested block lies, and reads or writes from it, instead of
from a floppy or hard disk. Normally the transfer will be done by calling an assembly language procedure that copies to or from the user program at the maximum speed of which the hardware is capable.

Fig. 3-17. A RAM disk.

A RAM disk driver may support several areas of memory used as RAM disk, each distinguished by a different minor device number. Usually these areas will be distinct, but in some situations it may be convenient to have them overlap, as we shall see in the next section.

3.5.2. Overview of the RAM Disk Driver in MINIX

The RAM disk driver is actually four closely related drivers in one. Each message to it specifies a minor device as follows:

0: /dev/ram  1: /dev/mem  2: /dev/kmem  3: /dev/null

The first special file listed above, /dev/ram, is a true RAM disk. Neither its size nor its origin is built into the driver. They are determined by the file system by booting the root file system when MINIX is booted. This strategy makes it possible to increase or reduce the amount of RAM disk present without having to recompile the operating system. All one needs to do is use a different root file system diskette.

The next two minor devices are used to read and write physical memory and kernel memory, respectively. When /dev/mem is opened and read, it yields the contents of physical memory locations starting at absolute 0 (the interrupt vectors). Ordinary user programs will never do this, but a system program concerned with debugging the system might need this facility. Opening /dev/mem and writing on it will change the interrupt vectors. Needless to say, this should only be done with the greatest of caution by an experienced user who knows exactly what he is doing.

The special file /dev/kmem is like /dev/mem, except that byte 0 of this file is
byte 0 of the kernel's memory (physical address 0x600 or 1536 decimal in MINIX). It too is used mostly for debugging and very special programs. Note that the RAM disk areas covered by these two minor devices overlap. Opening /dev/mem and seeking to 1536 is the same as reading from /dev/kmem, except that the latter will continue to work even if in a subsequent version of MINIX the kernel is moved somewhere else in memory. Both of these special files are protected to prevent everyone except the super-user from using them. The last file in this group, /dev/null, is a special file that accepts data and throws them away. It is commonly used in shell commands when the program being called generates output that is not needed. For example,

```
a.out >/dev/null
```

runs the program `a.out`, but discards its output. The RAM disk driver effectively treats this minor device as having zero size, so no data are ever copied to or from it.

The overall structure of the RAM disk driver follows the model of Fig. 3-16. The main loop accepts messages and dispatches to either `do_mem` for reading and writing, or to `do_setup` for the special message telling the driver where the RAM disk is located. When MINIX is booted, the kernel runs, then the memory manager, and then the file system. One of the first things the file system does is to see how far up in memory the operating system extends. Then it reads the super-block of the root file system to see how big it is (and thus how big the RAM disk must be to hold it). Once the file system knows where the operating system ends and how much memory the RAM disk needs, it sends the message to the RAM disk driver telling it the lower and upper limits of the RAM disk.

The code for handling `/dev/ram`, `/dev/mem`, and `/dev/kmem` is identical. The only difference among them is that each one corresponds to a different portion of memory, indicated by the arrays `ram_origin` and `ram_limit`, each indexed by minor device number.

### 3.5.3. Implementation of the RAM Disk Driver in MINIX

The implementation is straightforward and requires little comment. The main procedure, on line 2292, gets messages, dispatches to the appropriate procedure, and sends the replies. The procedure `do_mem` (line 2337) computes two key variables: `mem_phys`, the physical location in memory of the RAM disk block to be read or written, and `user_phys`, the physical location where the block is to go to or come from. Both of these absolute addresses are 32-bit quantities. The procedure `unmap` (line 5021) computes the physical address corresponding to a given virtual address within a given process' address space. It is used throughout the kernel for this purpose.

Once `mem_phys` and `user_phys` have been computed, the only thing left to do is call `phys_copy`, the assembly code copy routine to move the block from RAM
disk to the caller or vice versa. Normally, the only process to send messages to the RAM disk driver is the file system, which requests blocks to be copied to or from its buffer cache, not directly to user processes.

The procedure do_setup (line 2377) takes the parameters in the message and sets up the starting and ending points of the RAM disk, so they can be used in subsequent calls. The limits of the other minor devices are fixed and cannot be set.

3.6. DISKS

The RAM disk is a good introduction to disk drivers (because it is so simple), but real disks have a number of issues that we have not touched on yet. In the following sections we will first say a few words about disk hardware, and then take a look at disk drivers in general and the MINIX floppy disk driver in particular. We will not examine the hard disk driver because it is structurally similar, and besides, not every IBM PC has a hard disk.

3.6.1. Disk Hardware

All real disks are organized into cylinders, each one containing as many tracks as there are heads stacked vertically. The tracks are divided into sectors, with the number of sectors around the circumference typically being 8 to 32. All sectors contain the same number of bytes, although a little thought will make it clear that sectors close to the outer rim of the disk will be physically longer than those close to the hub. The extra space is not used.

A device feature that has important implications for the disk driver is the possibility of a controller doing seeks on two or more drives at the same time. These are known as overlapped seeks. While the controller and software are waiting for a seek to complete on one drive, the controller can initiate a seek on another drive. Many controllers can also read or write on one drive while seeking on one or more other drives, but none can read or write on two drives at the same time. (Reading or writing requires the controller to move bits on a microsecond time scale, so one transfer uses up most of its computing power.) The ability to perform two or more seeks at the same time can reduce the average access time considerably.

The parameters of the IBM PC floppy disks are shown in Fig. 3-18. These are the parameters of the standard double-sided, double-density diskettes as used by MINIX. Some other operating systems also support single-sided diskettes, 8 sectors per track, and other configurations. MINIX uses 1K blocks, so the blocks used by the software consist of two consecutive sectors, which are always read or written together as a unit.
3.6.2. Disk Software

In this section we will look at some of the issues related to disk drivers in general. The time to read or write a disk block is determined by three factors: the seek time (the time to move the arm to the proper cylinder), the rotational delay (the time for the proper sector to rotate under the head), and the actual transfer time. For most disks, the seek time dominates, so reducing the mean seek time can improve system performance substantially.

Disk Arm Scheduling Algorithms

If the disk driver accepts requests one at a time and carries them out in that order, that is, First-Come, First-Served (FCFS), little can be done to optimize seek time. However, another strategy is possible when the disk is heavily loaded. It is likely that while the arm is seeking on behalf of one request, other disk requests may be generated by other processes. Many disk drivers maintain a table, indexed by cylinder number, with all the pending requests for each cylinder chained together in a linked list headed by the table entries.

Given this kind of data structure, we can improve upon the First-Come, First-Served scheduling algorithm. To see how, consider a disk with 40 cylinders. A request comes in to read a block on cylinder 11. While the seek to cylinder 11 is in progress, new requests come in for cylinders 1, 36, 16, 34, 9, and 12, in that order. They are entered into the table of pending requests, with a separate linked list for each cylinder. The requests are shown in Fig. 3-19.

When the current request (for cylinder 11) is finished, the disk driver has a choice of which request to handle next. Using FCFS, it would go next to cylinder 1, then to 36, and so on. This algorithm would require arm motions of 10, 35, 20, 18, 25, and 3, respectively, for a total of 111 cylinders.

Alternatively, it could always handle the closest request next, to minimize seek time. Given the requests of Fig. 3-19, the sequence is 12, 9, 16, 1, 34, and 36, as shown as the jagged line at the bottom of Fig. 3-19. With this sequence, the arm motions are 1, 3, 7, 15, 33, and 2, for a total of 61 cylinders. This algorithm, shortest seek first (SSF), cuts the total arm motion almost in half compared to FCFS.

Unfortunately, SSF has a problem. Suppose more requests keep coming in while the requests of Fig. 3-19 are being processed. For example, if, after going

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of cylinders: 40</th>
<th>Seek time (adjacent cylinders) 6 msec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tracks per cylinder: 2</td>
<td>Seek time (average case) 77 msec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sectors per track: 9</td>
<td>Rotation time 200 msec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sectors per diskette: 720</td>
<td>Motor start/stop time 250 msec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bytes per sector: 512</td>
<td>Time to transfer 1 sector 22 msec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bytes per diskette: 368640</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3-18. Parameters of the IBM PC floppy disks.
to cylinder 16, a new request for cylinder 8 is present, that request will have priority over cylinder 1. If a request for cylinder 13 then comes in, the arm will next go to 13, instead of 1. With a heavily loaded disk, the arm will tend to stay in the middle of the disk most of the time, so requests at either extreme will have to wait until a statistical fluctuation in the load causes there to be no requests near the middle. Requests far from the middle may get poor service. The goals of minimal response time and fairness are in conflict here.

Tall buildings also have to deal with this tradeoff. The problem of scheduling an elevator in a tall building is similar to that of scheduling a disk arm. Requests come in continuously calling the elevator to floors (cylinders) at random. The microprocessor running the elevator could easily keep track of the sequence in which customers pushed the call button, and service them using FCFS. It could also use SSF.

However, most elevators use a different algorithm to reconcile the conflicting goals of efficiency and fairness. They keep moving in the same direction until there are no more outstanding requests in that direction, then they switch directions. This algorithm, known both in the disk world and the elevator world as the **elevator algorithm**, requires the software to maintain 1 bit: the current direction bit, *UP* or *DOWN*. When a request finishes, the disk or elevator driver checks the bit. If it is *UP*, the arm or cabin is moved to the next highest pending request, if any. If no requests are pending at higher positions, the direction bit is reversed. When the bit is set to *DOWN*, the move is to the next lowest requested position, if any.

Figure 3-20 shows the elevator algorithm using the same seven requests as Fig. 3-20, assuming the direction bit was initially *UP*. The order in which the cylinders are serviced is 12, 16, 34, 36, 9, and 1, which yields arm motions of 1, 4, 18, 2, 27, and 8, for a total of 60 cylinders. In this case the elevator algorithm is slightly better than SSF, although it is usually worse. One nice property that the elevator algorithm has is that given any collection of requests, the upper bound on the total motion is fixed: it is just twice the number of cylinders.
A slight modification of this algorithm that has a smaller variance in response times (Teory, 1972) is to always scan in the same direction. When the highest numbered cylinder with a pending request has been serviced, the arm goes to the lowest-numbered cylinder with a pending request and then continues moving in an upward direction. In effect, the lowest-numbered cylinder is thought of as being just above the highest-numbered cylinder.

Some disk controllers provide a way for the software to inspect the current sector number under the head. With one of these controllers, another optimization is possible. If two or more requests for the same cylinder are pending, the driver can issue a request for the sector that will pass under the head next. Note that when multiple tracks are present in a cylinder, consecutive requests can be for different tracks with no penalty. The controller can select any of its heads instantaneously, because head selection involves neither arm motion nor rotational delay.

When several drives are present a pending request table should be kept for each drive separately. Whenever any drive is idle, a seek should be issued to move its arm to the cylinder where it will be needed next (assuming the controller allows overlapped seeks). When the current transfer finishes, a check can be made to see if any drives are positioned on the correct cylinder. If one or more are, the next transfer can be started on a drive that is already on the right cylinder. If none of the arms is in the right place, the driver should issue a new seek on the drive that just completed a transfer, and wait until the next interrupt to see which arm gets to its destination first.

**Error Handling**

RAM disks do not have to worry about seek or rotational optimization: at any instant all blocks can be read or written without any physical motion. Another area in which RAM disks are considerably simpler than real disks is error handling. Real disks are subject to a wide variety of errors. Some of the more common ones are:
1. Programming error (e.g., request for nonexistent sector).
2. Transient checksum error (e.g., caused by dust on the head).
3. Permanent checksum error (e.g., disk block physically damaged).
4. Seek error (e.g., the arm sent to cylinder 6 but it went to 7).
5. Controller error (e.g., controller refuses to accept commands).

It is up to the disk driver to handle each of these as best it can.

Programming errors occur when the driver tells the controller to seek to a nonexistent cylinder, read from a nonexistent sector, use a nonexistent head, or transfer to or from nonexistent memory. Most controllers check the parameters given to them and complain if they are invalid. In theory, these errors should never occur, but what should the driver do if the controller indicates that one has happened? For a home-grown system, the best thing to do is stop and print a message like “Call the programmer” so the error can be tracked down and fixed. For a commercial software product in use at thousands of sites around the world, this approach is less attractive. Probably the only thing to do is terminate the current disk request with an error and hope it will not recur too often.

Transient checksum errors are caused by specks of dust in the air that get between the head and the disk surface. Most of the time they can be eliminated by just repeating the operation a few times. If the error persists, the block has to be marked as a bad block and avoided.

One way to avoid bad blocks is to write a very special program that takes a list of bad blocks as input, and carefully hand crafts a file containing all the bad blocks. Once this file has been made, the disk allocator will think these blocks are occupied and never allocate them. As long as no one ever tries to read the bad block file, no problems will occur.

Not reading the bad block file is easier said than done. Many disks are backed up by copying their contents a track at a time to a backup tape or disk drive. If this procedure is followed, the bad blocks will cause trouble. Backing up the disk one file at a time is slower, but will solve the problem, provided that the backup program knows the name of the bad block file and refrains from copying it.

Some “intelligent” controllers reserve a few tracks not normally available to user programs. When a disk drive is formatted, the controller determines which blocks are bad and automatically substitutes one of the spare tracks for the bad one. The table that maps bad tracks to spare tracks is kept in the controller's internal memory and on the disk. This substitution is transparent (invisible) to the driver, except that its carefully worked out elevator algorithm may perform poorly if the controller is secretly using cylinder 800 whenever cylinder 3 is requested.

Seek errors are caused by mechanical problems in the arm. The controller keeps track of the arm position internally. To perform a seek, it issues a series of pulses to the arm motor, one pulse per cylinder, to move the arm to the new
cylinder. When the arm gets to its destination, the controller reads the actual cylinder number (written when the drive was formatted). If the arm is in the wrong place, a seek error has occurred.

Some controllers correct seek errors automatically, but others (including the IBM PC's) just set an error bit and leave the rest to the driver. The driver handles this error by issuing a RECALIBRATE command, to move the arm as far out as it will go, and reset the controller's internal idea of the current cylinder to 0. Usually this solves the problem. If it does not, the drive must be repaired.

As we have seen, the controller is really a specialized little computer, complete with software, variables, buffers, and occasionally, bugs. Sometimes an unusual sequence of events such as an interrupt on one drive occurring simultaneously with a RECALIBRATE command for another drive will trigger a bug and cause the controller to go into a loop or lose track of what it was doing. Controller designers usually plan for the worst and provide a pin on the chip or board, which, when set high, forces the controller to forget whatever it was doing and reset itself. If all else fails, the disk driver can set a bit to invoke this signal and reset the controller. If that does not help, all the driver can do is print a message and give up.

**Track-at-a-Time Caching**

The time required to seek to a new cylinder is usually much more than the rotation or transfer time. In other words, once the drive has gone to the trouble of moving the arm somewhere, it hardly matters whether it reads one sector or a whole track. This effect is especially true if the controller provides rotational sensing, so the driver can see which sector is currently under the head and issue a request for the next sector, thereby making it possible to read a track in one rotation time. (Normally it takes half a rotation plus one sector time just to read a single sector, on the average.)

Some disk drivers take advantage of this property by maintaining a secret track-at-a-time cache, unknown to the device-independent software. If a sector that is in the cache is needed, no disk transfer is required. A disadvantage of track-at-a-time caching (in addition to the software complexity and buffer space needed) is that transfers from the cache to the calling program will have to be done by the CPU using a programmed loop, rather than letting the DMA hardware do the job.

Some controllers take this process a step further, and do track-at-a-time caching in their own internal memory, transparent to the driver, so that transfer between the controller and memory can use DMA. If the controller works this way, there is little point in having the disk driver do it as well. Note that both the controller and the driver are in a good position to read and write entire tracks in one command, but that the device-independent software cannot, because it regards a disk as a linear sequence of blocks, without regard to how they are divided up into tracks and cylinders.
3.6.3. Overview of the Floppy Disk Driver in MINIX

The floppy disk driver accepts and processes two messages: for reading a block and for writing a block. A block is of size \textit{BLOCK\_SIZE}, which is defined in \textit{h/type.h}, and is 1024 bytes in the standard distribution, although it can be easily changed. The sector size on the disk is 512 bytes, so two consecutive sectors are always read or written together. The advantage of the larger block size is a reduction in the number of disk accesses required, and thus an improvement in performance. The price paid is that a file of only 1 character nevertheless ties up 1024 bytes of disk space.

The messages accepted by the floppy disk driver use the format of Fig. 3-15. These messages are normally sent by the file system, and request data to be transferred to or from buffers internal to the file system. The file system takes care of the transfer to or from the address space of the process making the system call. The reply messages also follow the form of Fig. 3-15, with the \textit{REP\_STATUS} field containing the number of bytes actually transferred or an error code if the request could not be carried out (e.g., disk error, invalid buffer address supplied).

The floppy disk driver does not use SSF or the elevator algorithm. It is strictly sequential, accepting a request and carrying it out before even accepting the next request (FCFS). The reason for using this simple strategy has to do with the environment for which MINIX was intended—a personal computer. On a personal computer, most of the time only one process is active; once in a while there are one or two background processes. Having five processes running at once is highly unusual. With only a small number of processes, the chance that a disk request will come in while another disk request is being carried out is slight, so the potential gain from reordering requests is small. This small gain is not enough to offset the considerable increase in software complexity required for queueing requests. A driver for a large time-sharing system would undoubtedly be written differently.

The main procedure of the floppy disk driver, \textit{floppy\_task}, is similar to that of the RAM disk driver and also that of Fig. 3-16. It accepts messages, calls procedures to do the work, and sends replies, all in an endless loop. The work that needs to be done for reading and writing is virtually identical, so both are handled by the same procedure, \textit{do\_rdwt}.

Figure 3-21 shows the relation between the major procedures within the driver. Under normal conditions (i.e., no errors), \textit{do\_rdwt} calls five other procedures, each of which does part of the work of a transfer. The first one, \textit{dma\_setup}, sets up the registers of the DMA chip so that on a read, after the controller has read the data into its internal buffer, the DMA chip will take care of requesting bus cycles to transfer the data to memory without bothering the CPU.

The next procedure, \textit{start\_motor}, checks to see if the motor is running. If it is, the procedure just returns. If it is off, the motor is turned on.
Seek checks to see if the drive happens to be positioned on the right cylinder already. If it is not, it commands the controller to seek, and then does a RECEIVE to wait for the interrupt message sent when the seek has been completed.

The actual command to read or write the disk is issued by transfer. It too, does a RECEIVE after issuing the command to wait for it to complete. When the command has completed, transfer inspects the controller's status registers to see if any errors occurred. If a checksum error occurred, the procedure returns an error code to do_rdwt, so the transfer can be tried again.

The final procedure in Fig. 3-21 sends a message to the clock task asking it to call a certain procedure (part of the disk driver) in 3 sec. This mechanism is needed for motor control. Floppy disks cannot be read or written unless their motors are on. Turning the motors on or off is slow. Leaving the motors on all the time causes the drive and diskette to wear out very quickly. The compromise chosen for MINIX is to leave a drive motor on for 3 sec after a drive is used. If the drive is used again within 3 sec, the timer is extended for another 3 sec. If the drive is not used in this interval, the motor is turned off.

Some subsidiary procedures used in the disk driver are listed below:

1. stop_motor- stop a drive motor.
2. fdc_out- issue a command to the controller.
3. fdc_results- extract the results of command from the controller.
4. recalibrate- recalibrate a drive after a seek error.
5. reset- reset the controller after a serious error.
6. send_mess- take care of actually sending a message.
3.6.4. Implementation of the Floppy Disk Driver in MINIX

The floppy disk driver is 13 pages long, despite the fact that conceptually it is hardly any more complicated than the RAM disk driver. It simply must manage a lot of detail. The first two pages contain a large number of definitions for constants. These could be removed to shorten the driver, but the resulting shorter driver would be much harder to understand than the present one.

The main data structure used in the floppy disk driver is floppy (line 2508), which is an array of structures, one per drive. Each structure holds information about the state of its drive and the command currently pending. It contains the disk address, memory address, controller status information and calibration state of the drive. On lines 2525 to 2530 we find the declarations for several variables global to the whole disk driver.

The main procedure is on line 2540. It is completely straightforward, basically the same as Fig. 3-16, with the addition of a little bit of error checking.

The procedure that controls the real work is do_rdwt on line 2576. It has one parameter, a pointer to the message just received. The first thing the procedure does (lines 2585 to 2587) is compute *fp*, the pointer to the floppy slot of the drive to be used. Then it dissects the message and converts the block number into cylinder, track, sector, and head positions, storing all the pieces in the floppy array. From this point on, *fp* is used to refer to the drive, since it now contains all the relevant information. The array *interleave* is provided to allow software interleave, if desired; at present this feature is not used.

The loop starting on line 2604 is used to allow the operation now stored in *fp* to be repeated if checksum errors occur. The code on lines 2610 to 2617 is not strictly necessary, but makes the driver more robust. If the standard double-density MINIX diskette should be run on a machine containing a quad-density drive, this code notices that many errors are occurring right at the start of operation. It then adjusts *steps_per_cyl* to have the controller issue more pulses to the arm when seeking, so that the arm takes larger steps, thus allowing the coarser double-density diskettes to be read and written anyway. In effect, the driver discovers empirically whether the drive is double- or quad-density, and adjusts its parameters accordingly.

On line 2620 a check is made to see if the flag need_reset is set. If it is, reset is called to reset the controller. If any of the procedures called by do_rdwt discover that the controller is no longer responding, they set need_reset so that next time through the loop it will be reset.

Now the DMA chip is set up with the user buffer address and count taken from the message and put in floppy. Next, the motor is started, if necessary, and the seek command issued, again, if necessary. If the seek fails, for example, due to a controller that is not responding, the current attempt is cut off on line 2631, and the whole process started again. The next time through the loop the controller will be reset by the call on line 2620, if that is needed.
The actual data transfer is initiated by the call on line 2633. If it succeeds, the loop is exited. The loop is also exited if a write fails because the diskette is write protected (retries will not help here).

The code following the loop (lines 2640 and 2641) sets the watchdog timer by sending a message to the clock task, asking it to call the procedure stop\_motor in 3 sec to stop the motor. If the timer runs out, the variable motor\_goal tells stop\_motor what status to set the motors to.

The rest of the driver contains procedures that allow do\_rdwt to function as described above. Dma\_setup loads the memory address and count into the DMA chip. The only thing peculiar about it is the check to make sure that a DMA buffer does not cross a 64K boundary. That is, a 1K DMA buffer may begin at 64510, but not at 64514 because the latter extends just beyond the 64K boundary at 65536.

This annoying rule occurs because the IBM PC uses an old DMA chip, the Intel 8237A, which contains a 16-bit counter, whereas a counter of at least 20 bits is needed because DMA uses absolute addresses, not addresses relative to a segment register. The low-order 16 bits of the DMA address are loaded into the 8237A, and the high-order 4 bits are loaded into a 4-bit latch. When the 8237A goes from 0xFFFF to 0x0000 it does not generate a carry into the 4-bit latch, so the DMA address suddenly jumps down by 64K in memory. Unexpected hardware "features" like this can cause weeks of time spent looking for exceedingly obscure bugs (all the more so when, like this one, the technical reference manual says nary a word about them).

Start\_motor (line 2703) manages the motors. It calls lock to disable interrupts temporarily while checking the motor status, and computes the new motor goal. The 2 low-order bits of motor\_goal contain the drive being selected. The next 2 bits set the controller in normal (interrupt enabled) mode. The high-order 4 bits control the motors for the four drives the controller can handle, 1 meaning motor on and 0 meaning motor off.

If the motor is off, it is necessary to delay while it is starting up. This delay is achieved on line 2732 by sending the clock a message, requesting that it call the function send\_mess after 250 msec. That function (line 3003) sends the message received on line 2733.

Stopping the motor works a little differently. When the timer runs out for killing the motor, the procedure stop\_motor (line 2740) is called by the clock task. Instead of going to the trouble of sending a message to the disk task, it just outputs the desired motor status to the hardware directly.

The procedure seek (line 2757) first checks to see if the drive is uncalibrated, a condition that happens when a seek error occurs. If it is uncalibrated, it is first recalibrated. If the current cylinder is the one needed (line 2769), seek just returns immediately. Otherwise it issues a seek and waits for the interrupt message on line 2776. The test on line 2775 is needed because if the controller refused to accept the seek command, waiting for the interrupt would be fatal; it would never happen.
After the interrupt comes in, seek checks the status reported by calling \texttt{fdc\_results} on line 2780 to ask the floppy disk controller (FDC) to report back what happened. Unfortunately, even the status reporting may fail, since asking for the status is itself a command that the controller may refuse to accept. If the status is reported back properly, but indicates that there was a seek error, then the drive must be recalibrated.

For someone used to ordinary application programs, it may appear that an inordinate amount of the code in the driver deals with balky controllers and drives that refuse to go where they are told to go. In truth, the controller and drives are fairly reliable, but not having all this checking would mean that every once in a while MINIX would just crash for no apparent reason. To spare the user from this unpleasantery, the driver must be on guard against all kinds of unlikely, but theoretically possible events. It is also worth mentioning that the IBM PC's floppy disk controller, the NEC PD765 (a single chip costing less than 10 dollars), is about as simple as they come. More sophisticated (and expensive) controllers do much more of the error handling themselves.

The procedure \texttt{transfer} actually issues the command to the controller to initiate the read or write. Issuing the command consists of successively outputting 9 bytes of information (lines 2805 to 2813). After the command has been issued, \texttt{transfer} waits for the interrupt message, gets the results, and checks for errors.

Getting the results from the controller is not just a matter of reading a register or two. It requires a complex negotiation protocol with the controller in \texttt{fdc\_results} (line 2843). All kinds of things may go wrong and must be checked for. As if this were not enough, the timing of the negotiation protocol is also important.

Even outputting a byte to the controller is complicated and requires a whole procedure, \texttt{fdc\_out} (line 2872). The problem is that the controller has a mind of its own. You cannot force it to accept a command. There has to be a complex negotiation to determine whether it is in the mood or not. Recalibrating a drive and resetting the controller are handled by \texttt{recalibrate} (line 2903) and \texttt{reset} (line 2945), respectively.

The final two procedures in \texttt{floppy\_c} take care of sending messages. \texttt{Clock\_mess} (line 2986) sends a message to the clock task requesting a time out. \texttt{Send\_mess} (line 3003) is called by the clock task itself when the motor has gotten up to speed. The message sent here is received on line 2733 to wake up the disk task.

All in all, the disk task is conceptually simple but full of detail, some of it inherent in running a real I/O device and some of it due to the fact that the PD765 is a very primitive controller. (On the other hand, a look \textit{inside} the PD765 will quickly reveal how complex it is and how many things it does do by itself.) We will not study any more block devices in this book. Conceptually, they are all the same, differing only in the gory details, which, as we have seen, are plentiful.
3.7. CLOCKS

Clocks (also called timers) are essential to the operation of any time-sharing system for a variety of reasons. They maintain the time of day and prevent one process from monopolizing the CPU, among other things. The clock software generally takes the form of a device driver, even though a clock is neither a block device, like a disk, nor a character device, like a terminal. Our examination of clocks will follow the same pattern as in the previous sections: first a look at clock hardware and software in general, and then a closer look at how these ideas are applied in MINIX.

3.7.1. Clock Hardware

Two types of clocks are commonly used in computers, and both are quite different from the clocks and watches used by people. The simpler clocks are tied to the 110 or 220 volt power line, and cause an interrupt on every voltage cycle, at 50 or 60 Hz.

The other kind of clock is built out of three components: a crystal oscillator, a counter, and a holding register, as shown in Fig. 3-22. When a piece of quartz crystal is properly cut and mounted under tension, it can be made to generate a periodic signal of very high accuracy, typically in the range of 1 to 20 MHz, depending on the crystal chosen. This signal is fed into the counter to make it count down to zero. When the counter gets to zero, it causes a CPU interrupt.

Programmable clocks typically have several modes of operation. In one-shot mode, when the clock is started, it copies the value of the holding register into the counter, and then decrements the counter at each pulse from the crystal. When the counter gets to zero, it causes an interrupt and stops until it is explicitly started again by the software. In square-wave mode, after getting to zero and causing the interrupt, the holding register is automatically copied into the counter, and the whole process is repeated again indefinitely. These periodic interrupts are called clock ticks.

The advantage of the programmable clock is that its interrupt frequency can be controlled by software. If a 1 MHz crystal is used, then the counter will be
pulsed every microsecond. With 16-bit registers, interrupts can be programmed to occur at rates from 1 microsec to 65.535 msec. Programmable clock chips usually contain two or three independently programmable clocks and have many other options as well (e.g., counting up instead of down, interrupts disabled, and more).

To implement a time-of-day clock, the software asks the user for the current time, which is then translated into the number of clock ticks since 12 A.M on Jan. 1, 1970, as UNIX and MINIX do, or since some other benchmark. At every clock tick, the real time is incremented by one count. To prevent the current time from being lost when the computer's power is turned off, some computers store the real time in a special register powered by a battery (battery backup).

3.7.2. Clock Software

All the clock hardware does is generate interrupts at known intervals. Everything else involving time must be done by the software, the clock driver. The exact duties of the clock driver vary among operating systems, but usually include most of the following:

1. Maintaining the time of day.
2. Preventing processes from running longer than they are allowed to.
3. Accounting for CPU usage.
4. Handling the ALARM system call made by user processes.
5. Providing watchdog timers for parts of the system itself.

The first clock function, maintaining the time of day (also called the real time) is not difficult. It just requires incrementing a counter at each clock tick, as mentioned before. The only thing to watch out for is the number of bits in the time-of-day counter. With a clock rate of 60 Hz, a 32-bit counter will overflow in just over 2 years. Clearly the system cannot store the real time as the number of ticks since Jan. 1, 1970 in 32 bits.

Three approaches can be taken to solve this problem. The first way is to use a 64-bit counter, although doing so makes adding one to the counter a more expensive operation since it will have to be done many times a second. The second way is to maintain the time of day in seconds, rather than in ticks, using a subsidiary counter to count ticks until a whole second has been accumulated. Because $2^{32}$ seconds is more than 136 years, this method will work until well into the twenty-second century.

The third approach is to count in ticks, but do that relative to the time the system was booted, rather than relative to a fixed external moment. When the user types in the real time, the system boot time is calculated from the current
time-of-day value and stored in memory in any convenient form. Later, when
the time of day is requested, the stored time of day is added to the counter to get
the current time of day. All three approaches are shown in Fig. 3-23.

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 3-23. Three ways to maintain the time of day.

The second clock function is preventing processes from running too long.
Whenever a process is started, the scheduler should initialize a counter to the
value of that process' quantum in clock ticks. At every clock interrupt, the clock
driver decrements the quantum counter by 1. When it gets to zero, the clock
driver calls the scheduler to set up another process.

The third clock function is doing CPU accounting. The most accurate way to
do it is to start a second timer, distinct from the main system timer, whenever a
process is started. When that process is stopped, the timer can be read out to tell
how long the process has run. To do things right, the second timer should be
saved when an interrupt occurs and restored afterward.

A less accurate, but much simpler, way to do accounting is to maintain a
pointer to the process table entry for the currently running process in a global
variable. At every clock tick, a field in the current process's entry is incre-
mented. In this way, every clock tick is "charged" to the process running at the
time of the tick. A minor problem with this strategy is that if many interrupts
occur during a process's run, it will still be charged for a full tick, even though it
did not get much work done. Properly accounting for the CPU during interrupts
is too expensive and is never done.

In MINIX and many other systems, a process can request the operating system
to give it a warning after a certain interval. The warning is usually a signal,
interrupt, message, or something similar. One application requiring such warn-
ings is networking, in which a packet not acknowledged within a certain time
interval is retransmitted. Another application is computer aided instruction,
where a student not providing a response within a certain time is told the answer.

If the clock driver had enough clocks, it could set a separate clock for each
request. This not being the case, it must simulate multiple virtual clocks with a
single physical clock. One way is to maintain a table in which the signal time for
all pending timers is kept, as well as a variable giving the time of the next one.
Whenever the time of day is updated, the driver checks to see if the closest signal
has occurred. If it has, the table is searched for the next one to occur.

If many signals are expected, it is more efficient to simulate multiple clocks
by chaining all the pending clock requests together, sorted on time, in a linked list, as shown in Fig. 3-24. Each entry on the list tells how many clock ticks following the previous one to wait before causing a signal. In this example, signals are pending for 4203, 4207, 4213, 4215, and 4216.

![Fig. 3-24. Simulating multiple timers with a single clock.](image)

In Fig. 3-24, the next interrupt occurs in 3 ticks. On each tick, Next signal is decremented. When it gets to 0, the signal corresponding to the first item on the list is caused, and that item is removed from the list. Then Next signal is reset to the value in the entry now at the head of the list, in this example, 4.

Note that during a clock interrupt, the clock driver has several things to do—increment the real time, decrement the quantum and check for 0, do CPU accounting, and decrement the alarm counter. However, each of these operations has been carefully arranged to be very fast because they have to be repeated many times a second.

Parts of the system also need to set timers. These are called watchdog timers. When studying the floppy disk driver we saw that after starting a drive motor the disk driver has to wait 250 msec before proceeding. Similarly, if no activity occurs on a drive for 3 sec after its last use, the motor has to be stopped. Some hardcopy terminals can print at 120 characters/sec (83 msec/character), but cannot return the print head to the left margin in 83 msec, so the terminal driver must delay after typing a carriage return.

The mechanism used by the clock driver to handle watchdog timers is the same as for user signals. The only difference is that when a timer goes off, instead of causing a signal, the clock driver calls a procedure supplied by the caller. The procedure is part of the caller’s code, but since all the drivers are in the same address space, the clock driver can call it anyway. The called procedure can do whatever is necessary, even causing an interrupt, although within the kernel interrupts are often inconvenient and signals do not exist. That is why the watchdog mechanism is provided.

The last thing in our list is profiling. Some operating systems provide a mechanism by which a user program can have the system build up a histogram of its program counter, so it can see where it is spending its time. When profiling is a possibility, at every tick the driver checks to see if the current process is being profiled, and if so, computes the bin number (a range of addresses) corresponding to the current program counter. It then increments that bin by one. This mechanism can also be used to profile the system itself.
3.7.3. Overview of the Clock Driver in MINIX

The MINIX clock driver is contained in the file clock.c. It accepts these four message types, with the parameters shown:

1. SET_ALARM(process number, procedure to call, delay)
2. GET_TIME
3. SET_TIME(new time in seconds)
4. CLOCK_TICK

SET_ALARM allows a process to set a timer that goes off in a specified number of clock ticks. When a user process does an ALARM call, it sends a message to the memory manager, which then sends a message to the clock driver. When the alarm goes off, the clock driver sends a message back to the memory manager, which then takes care of making the signal happen.

SET_ALARM is also used by tasks that need to start a watchdog timer. When the timer goes off, the procedure provided is simply called. The clock driver has no knowledge of what the procedure does.

GET_TIME just returns the current real time as the number of seconds elapsed since Jan. 1, 1970 at 12:00 A.M.. SET_TIME, sets the real time. It can only be invoked by the super-user. Internal to the clock driver, the time is kept track of using the method of Fig. 3-23(c). When the time is set, the driver computes when the system was booted. It can make this computation because it has the current real time and it also knows how many ticks the system has been running. The system stores the real time of the boot in a variable. Later, when GET_TIME is called, it converts the current value of the tick counter to seconds and adds it to the stored boot time. This method is the same as that of Fig. 3-23(c).

CLOCK_TICK is the message sent to the driver when a clock interrupt occurs. It has no parameters. When the driver receives this message, it updates the real time, checks to see if it is time for the next signal or watchdog call, charges the current tick to some process, and checks to see if the quantum is up. MINIX does not currently support profiling.

The driver has a few global variables, but no major data structures. The variable realtime (line 0703) is a counter incremented at every clock tick. Together with the variable boot_time (line 3099) it allows the current time of day to be computed. Next_alarm records the time when the next signal or watchdog call may happen. The driver has to be careful here, because the process requesting the signal may exit or be killed before the signal happens. When it is time for the signal, a check is made to see if it is still needed. If it is not needed, it is not carried out. Sched_ticks keeps track of the number of ticks left until the scheduler is called. When it becomes zero, it is time to schedule a new process.

Each user process is allowed to have only one outstanding alarm timer.
Executing an ALARM call while a timer is still running cancels the first timer. Therefore, a convenient way to store the timers is to reserve one word in the process table entry for each process for its timer, if any. For tasks, the function to be called must also be stored somewhere, so an array, watch_dog, has been provided for this purpose.

The overall logic of the clock driver follows the same pattern as the disk drivers. The main program is an endless loop that gets messages, dispatches on the message type, and then sends a reply (except for CLOCK_TICK). Each message type is handled by a separate procedure, following our standard naming convention of naming all the procedures called from the main loop do_xxx, where xxx is different for each one, of course. As an aside, many linkers truncate procedure names to seven or eight characters, so the names do_set_time and do_set_alarm are potentially in conflict. The latter has been renamed do_setalarm. This problem occurs throughout MINIX, and is usually solved by mangling one of the names.

3.7.4. Implementation of the Clock Driver in MINIX

When MINIX starts up, all the drivers are called. Most of them just try to get a message and block. The clock driver does that too, but first it calls init_clock (line 3117) to initialize the programmable clock frequency to 60 Hz. Then it enters the main loop. The the main loop of the clock driver is essentially the same as the other drivers, so we will not comment on it further.

The procedure do_setalarm (line 3142) extracts the parameters from the message and stores the alarm time in the process table on line 3161. After setting the alarm, it scans the entire process table to find the next one.

Do_get_time (line 3175) is only two lines. It computes the current real time from the two variables boot_time (the system boot time in seconds) and realtime (the number of ticks since boot).

The procedure do_set_time (line 3187) is even simpler—just one line. It computes the boot time based on the given current real time and number of ticks since booting.

The procedure do_clocktick (line 3199) is more interesting. It first updates the real time. Remember that if a clock interrupt occurs and the clock task is not waiting for a message, the procedure interrupt adds one to lost_ticks and forgets the whole thing, knowing that another interrupt will occur soon. It is here that these lost ticks are compensated for.

Next a check is made to see if a signal or watchdog timer has gone off. If one has, all the alarm entries are inspected. Because lost ticks are compensated for all at once, several alarms may go off in one pass over the table. The procedure cause_sig checks to see if the memory manager is currently waiting for a message. If so, it sends a message telling about the alarm. If the memory manager is busy, a note is made to inform it at the first opportunity. For tasks, the watchdog procedure is just called directly on line 3228.
After taking care of the alarms, accounting is called to charge someone one clock tick.

Finally a check is made to see if it is time to call the scheduler. The variable sched_ticks is not reset whenever a new process is scheduled (because the file system and memory manager are allowed to run to completion). Instead it is just reset after every SCHED_RATE ticks. The comparison on line 3243 is to make sure that the current process has actually run at least one full scheduler tick before taking the CPU away from it.

Accounting in MINIX keeps track of both user time and system time. User time is charged against a process if it is running when the clock ticks. System time is charged if the file system or memory manager is running. The variable bill_ptr always points to the last user process scheduled (the two servers do not count), so the procedure accounting (line 3253) will know whom to charge.

3.8. TERMINALS

Every computer has one or more terminals used to communicate with it. Terminals come in an extremely large number of different forms. It is up to the terminal driver to hide all these differences, so that the device-independent part of the operating system and the user programs do not have to be rewritten for each kind of terminal. In the following sections we will follow our now-standard approach of first discussing terminal hardware and software in general, and then discussing the MINIX software.

3.8.1. Terminal Hardware

From the operating system’s point of view, terminals can be divided into two broad categories based on how the operating system communicates with them. The first category consists of terminals that interface via the RS-232 standard; the second category consists of memory-mapped terminals. Each category can be further subdivided, as shown in Fig. 3-25.

RS-232 terminals are devices containing a keyboard and a display that communicate using a serial interface, one bit at a time. These terminals use a 25-pin connector, of which one pin is used for transmitting data, one pin is for receiving data, and one pin is ground. The other 22 pins are for various control functions, most of which are generally not used. To send a character to an RS-232 terminal, the computer must transmit it 1 bit at a time, prefixed by a start bit, and followed by 1 or 2 stop bits to delimit the character. Common transmission rates are 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, and 9600 bps.

Since both computers and terminals work internally with whole characters, but must communicate over a serial line a bit at a time, chips have been developed to do the character-to-serial and serial-to-character conversions. They
are called UARTs (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitters). UARTs are attached to the computer by plugging RS-232 interface cards into the bus as illustrated in Fig. 3-26.

To print a character, the terminal driver writes the character to the interface card, where it is buffered and then shifted out over the serial line one bit at a time by the UART. Even at 9600 bps, it takes just over 1 msec to send a character. As a result of this slow transmission rate, the driver will generally output a character to the RS-232 card and block, waiting for the interrupt generated by the interface when the character has been transmitted and the UART is able to accept another character. Some interface cards have a CPU and memory and can handle multiple lines, taking over much of the I/O load from the main CPU.

RS-232 terminals can be subdivided into several categories, as mentioned above. The simplest ones are hardcopy (printing) terminals. Characters typed on the keyboard are transmitted to the computer. Characters sent by the computer are typed on the paper. That's all there is.

Dumb CRT terminals work the same way, only with a screen instead of paper. These are often called "glass ttys" because they are functionally the same
as hardcopy ttys. (The term “tty” is an abbreviation for Teletype†, an AT&T subsidiary that pioneered in the computer terminal business; “tty” has come to mean any terminal.)

Intelligent CRT terminals are in fact miniature computers. They have a CPU and memory, and contain complex programs, usually in EPROM or ROM. From the operating system’s viewpoint, the main difference between a glass tty and an intelligent terminal is that the latter understands certain escape sequences. For example, by sending the ASCII ESC character (033), followed by various other characters, it may be possible to move the cursor to any position on the screen, insert text in the middle of the screen, and so forth.

The ultimate in intelligent terminals is a terminal that contains a CPU as powerful as the main computer, along with a megabyte or so of memory that can be downloaded from the computer to contain any program at all. The Blit (Pike et al., 1985) is an example of a terminal with a powerful microprocessor and a screen containing 800 by 1024 points, but still communicating with the computer over an RS-232 line. The advantage of the RS-232 interface is that every computer in the world has one. The disadvantage is that downloading the Blit is slow, even at 19.2 kbps.

Memory-Mapped Terminals

The other broad category of terminals named in Fig. 3-25 consists of memory-mapped terminals. These do not communicate with the computer over a serial line. They are an integral part of the computers themselves. Memory-mapped terminals are interfaced via a special memory called a video RAM, which forms part of the computer’s address space and is addressed by the CPU the same way as the rest of memory (see Fig. 3-27).

Also on the video RAM card is a chip called a video controller. This chip pulls bytes out of the video RAM and generates the video signal used to drive the display (monitor). The monitor generates a beam of electrons that scans horizontally across the screen, painting lines on it. Typically the screen has 200 to

† Teletype is a Registered Trademark of Teletype Corp.
1200 lines from top to bottom, with 200 to 1200 points per line. These points are called **pixels**. The video controller signal modulates the electron beam, determining whether a given pixel will be light or dark. Color monitors have three beams, for red, green and blue, which are independently modulated.

A typical monochrome display might fit each character in a box 9 pixels wide by 14 pixels high (including the space between characters), and have 25 lines of 80 characters. The display would then have 350 scan lines of 720 pixels each. Each of these frames is redrawn 45 to 70 times a second. The video controller could be set up to fetch the first 80 characters from the video RAM, generate 14 scan lines, fetch another 80 characters from the video RAM, generate the following 14 scan lines, and so on. Since the first scan line contains parts of 80 characters, all 80 must be fetched into the video controller before starting the first scan line. The 9-by-14 bit patterns for the characters are kept in a ROM used by the video controller.

The IBM PC uses a character-mapped display for the console. In Fig. 3-28(a) we see a portion of the video RAM, which starts at address 0xB0000 for the monochrome display and 0xB8000 for the color display. Each character on the screen of Fig. 3-28(b) occupies two characters in the RAM. The low-order character is the ASCII code for the character to be displayed. The high-order character is the attribute byte, which is used to specify color, reverse video, blinking, and so on. The full screen of 25 by 80 characters requires 4000 bytes of video RAM.

![Fig. 3-28. (a) A video RAM image for the IBM monochrome display. (b) The corresponding screen. The x's are attribute bytes.](image)

When a character is written into the video RAM by the CPU, it appears on the screen within one screen display time (1/50 sec for monochrome, 1/60 sec for color). The CPU can load a 4K precomputed screen image to the video RAM in 12 msec. At 9600 bps, writing 2000 characters to an RS-232 terminal takes 2083 msec, which is 174 times slower. Thus memory-mapped terminals allow for extremely fast interaction, which is why they are used.

Bit-map terminals use the same principle, except that every bit in the video RAM directly controls a single pixel on the screen. A screen of 800 by 1024
pixels requires 100K bytes of RAM (more for color), but provides complete flexibility in character fonts and sizes, allows multiple windows, and makes arbitrary graphics possible.

With a memory-mapped display, the keyboard is completely decoupled from the screen. It is usually interfaced via a parallel port, although keyboards with RS-232 interfaces also exist. On every keystroke the CPU is interrupted, and the keyboard driver extracts the character typed by reading an I/O port. On the IBM PC, interrupts are generated when every key is struck and also when it is released.

Furthermore, all that the keyboard hardware provides is the key number, not the ASCII code. When the A key is struck, the key code (30) is put in an I/O register. It is up to the driver to determine whether it is lower case, upper case, CTRL-A, ALT-A, CTRL-ALT-A, or some other combination. Since the driver can tell which keys have been struck but not yet released (e.g., shift), it has enough information to do the job. Although this keyboard interface puts the full burden on the software, it is extremely flexible. For example, user programs may be interested in whether a digit just typed came from the top row of keys or the numeric key pad on the side. In principle, the driver can provide this information.

3.8.2. Terminal Software

The keyboard and display are almost independent devices, so we will treat them separately here. (They are not quite independent, since typed characters must be displayed on the screen.) In MINIX the keyboard and screen drivers are part of the same task; in other systems they may be split into distinct drivers.

Input Software

The basic job of the keyboard driver is to collect input from the keyboard and pass it to user programs when they read from the terminal. Two possible philosophies can be adopted for the driver. In the first one, the driver's job is just to accept input and pass it upward unmodified. A program reading from the terminal gets a raw sequence of ASCII codes. (Giving user programs the key numbers is too primitive, as well as being highly machine dependent.)

This philosophy is well suited to the needs of sophisticated screen editors such as Emacs, which allow the user to bind an arbitrary action to any character or sequence of characters. It does, however, mean that if the user types dste instead of date, and then corrects the error by typing three backspaces and ate, followed by a line feed, the user program will be given all 11 ASCII codes typed.

Most programs do not want this much detail. They just want the corrected input, not the exact sequence of how it was produced. This observation leads to the second philosophy: the driver handles all the intraline editing, and just
delivers corrected lines to the user programs. The first philosophy is character-oriented; the second one is line-oriented. They are sometimes referred to as raw mode and cooked mode, respectively. Some systems (including MINIX) provide both, with a system call available to select one or the other.

The first task of the keyboard driver is to collect characters. If every keystroke causes an interrupt, the driver can acquire the character during the interrupt. If interrupts are turned into messages by the low-level software, it is possible to put the newly acquired character in the message. Alternatively, it can be put in a small buffer in memory and the message used to tell the driver that something has arrived. The latter approach is actually safer if a message can be sent only to a waiting process and there is some chance that the keyboard driver might still be busy with the previous character.

Once the driver has received the character it must begin processing it. If the keyboard delivers key numbers rather than ASCII codes, then the driver must map the key numbers onto ASCII codes using some tables. It is worth noting that some IBM "compatibles" use nonstandard key numbering (e.g., Olivetti M24), so if the driver wants to support these machines, it must map different keyboards with different tables.

If the terminal is in cooked mode, characters must be stored until an entire line has been accumulated, because the user may subsequently decide to erase part of it. Even if the terminal is in raw mode, the program may not yet have requested input, so the characters must be buffered to allow type ahead. (System designers who do not allow users to type ahead ought to be tarred and feathered, or worse yet, be forced to use their own system.)

Two approaches to character buffering are common. In the first one, the driver contains a central pool of buffers, each buffer holding perhaps 10 characters. Associated with each terminal is a data structure, which contains, among other items, a pointer to the chain of buffers for input collected from that terminal. As more characters are typed, more buffers are acquired and hung on the chain. When the characters are passed to a user program, the buffers are removed and put back in the central pool.

The other approach is to do the buffering directly in the terminal data structure itself, with no central pool of buffers. Since it is common for users to type a command that will take a little while (say, a compilation), and then type a few lines ahead, to be safe the driver should allocate something like 200 characters per terminal. In a large-scale time-sharing system with 100 terminals, allocating 20K all the time for type ahead is clearly overkill, so a central buffer pool with space for perhaps 5K is probably enough. On the other hand, a dedicated buffer per terminal makes the driver simpler (no linked list management), and is to be preferred on personal computers with only one or two terminals. Figure 3-29 shows the difference between these two methods.

Although the keyboard and display are logically separate devices, many users have grown accustomed to seeing the characters they have just typed appear on the screen. Some terminals oblige by automatically displaying (in hardware)
Fig. 3-29. (a) Central buffer pool. (b) Dedicated buffer for each terminal.

whatever has just been typed, which is not only a nuisance when passwords are being entered, but greatly limits the flexibility of sophisticated editors and other programs. Fortunately, most terminals display nothing when keys are typed. It is therefore up to the software to display the input. This process is called **echoing**.

Echoing is complicated by the fact that a program may be writing to the screen while the user is typing. At the very least, the keyboard driver will have to figure out where to put the new input without it being overwritten by program output.

Echoing also gets complicated when more than 80 characters are typed on a terminal with 80 character lines. Depending on the application, wrapping around to the next line may be appropriate. Some drivers just truncate lines to 80 characters.

Another problem is tab handling. Most terminals have a tab key, but few can handle tab on output. It is up to the driver to compute where the cursor is currently located, taking into account both output from programs and output from echoing, and compute the proper number of spaces to be echoed.

Now we come to the problem of device equivalence. Logically, at the end of a line of text one wants a carriage return, to move the cursor back to column 1, and a line feed, to advance to the next line. Requiring users to type both at the end of each line would not sell well (although some terminals have a key which generates both, with a 50 percent chance of doing so in the order that the software wants them). It is up to the driver to convert whatever comes in to the standard internal format used by the operating system.

If the standard form is just to store a line feed (the MINIX convention), then carriage returns should be turned into line feeds. If the internal format is to store both, then the driver should generate a line feed when it gets a carriage return and a carriage return when it gets a line feed. No matter what the internal
convention, the terminal may require both a line feed and a carriage return to be echoed in order to get the screen updated properly. Since a large computer may well have a wide variety of different terminals connected to it, it is up to the keyboard driver to get all the different carriage return/line feed combinations converted to the internal system standard and arrange for all echoing to be done right.

A related problem is the timing of carriage return and line feeds. On some terminals, it takes longer to display a carriage return or line feed than a letter or number. If the microprocessor inside the terminal actually has to copy a large block of text to achieve scrolling, then line feeds may be slow. If a mechanical print head has to be returned to the left margin of the paper, carriage returns may be slow. In both cases it is up to the driver to insert filler characters (dummy null characters) into the output stream or just stop outputting long enough for the terminal to catch up. The amount of time to delay is often related to the terminal speed, for example, at 4800 bps or slower, no delays are needed, but at 9600 bps one filler character is required. Terminals with hardware tabs, especially hardcopy ones, may also require a delay after a tab.

When operating in cooked mode, a number of input characters have special meanings. Figure 3-30 shows these special characters for MINIX as an example. The erase character allows the user to rub out the character just typed. In MINIX it is the backspace (CTRL-H). It is not added to the character queue, but instead removes the previous character from the queue. It should be echoed as a sequence of three characters, backspace, space, and backspace, in order to remove the previous character from the screen. If the previous character was a tab, erasing it requires keeping track of where the cursor was prior to the tab. In most systems, backspacing will only erase characters on the current line. It will not erase a carriage return and back up into the previous line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Backspace</td>
<td>Back up and erase 1 character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>Erase current line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\</td>
<td>Escape - accept next character literally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tab</td>
<td>Possibly expand to spaces on output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL-S</td>
<td>Stop output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL-Q</td>
<td>Start output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Interrupt process (SIGINT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL-\</td>
<td>Force core dump (SIGQUIT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL-D</td>
<td>End of file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3-30. Characters that are handled specially in cooked mode.

When the user notices an error at the start of the line being typed in, it is often convenient to erase the entire line and start again. The kill character (in MINIX the @ sign) erases the entire line. It usually is echoed as itself plus a carriage return and line feed, so the user can begin typing at the left-hand margin
again. (Some systems make the erased line vanish from the screen, but many users like to see the old line, so how to echo the kill character is a matter of taste.) As with the erase character, it is usually not possible to go further back than the current line. When a block of characters is killed, it may or may not be worth the trouble for the driver to return buffers to the pool, if one is used.

Sometimes the erase or kill characters must be entered as data. For example, the USENET mail system uses addresses of the form john@harvard. To make it possible to enter the local editing and other control characters, an escape character should be provided. In MINIX backslash is used. To enter an @ sign, one types \@. To enter a backslash, one types \\.

After seeing a backslash, the driver sets a flag saying that the next character is exempt from special processing. The backslash itself is not entered in the character queue.

To allow users to stop a screen image from scrolling out of view, control codes are sometimes provided to freeze the screen and restart it later. In MINIX these are CTRL-S and CTRL-Q, respectively. They are not stored, but are used to set and clear a flag in the terminal data structure. Whenever output is attempted, the flag is inspected. If it is set, no output occurs. Whether echoing should also be suppressed along with program output is also a matter of the designer's taste and implementation convenience.

It is often necessary to kill a runaway program being debugged. The DEL, BREAK, or RUBOUT keys can be used for this purpose. In MINIX, DEL sends the SIGINT signal to all the processes started up from the terminal. Implementing DEL can be quite tricky. The hard part is getting the information from the driver to the part of the system that handles signals, which, after all, has not asked for this information. CTRL-\ is similar to DEL, except that it sends the SIGQUIT signal, which forces a core dump if not caught or ignored. When either of these keys is struck, the driver should echo a carriage return and line feed and discard all accumulated input to allow for a fresh start.

Another special character is CTRL-D, which in MINIX causes any pending read requests for the terminal to be satisfied with whatever is available in the buffer, even if the buffer is empty. Typing CTRL-D at the start of a line causes the program to get a read of 0 bytes, which is conventionally interpreted as end-of-file, and causes most programs to act the same way as they would upon seeing end-of-file on an input file.

Some terminal drivers allow much fancier intraline editing than we have sketched here. They have special control characters to erase a word, skip backward or forward characters or words, go to the beginning or end of the line being typed, and so forth. Adding all these functions to the terminal driver makes it much larger and, furthermore, is wasted when using fancy screen editors that work in raw mode anyway.

To allow programs to specify if they want raw mode or cooked mode input (and control other terminal parameters), MINIX provides a system call IOCTL called by

```
ioctl(file_descriptor, request, argp);
```
The variable \textit{request} is used to specify whether the terminal parameters are to be read or changed, and which ones. The variable \textit{argp} is a pointer to the \textit{sgttyb} or \textit{tchars} struct defined in \textit{h/sgtty.h} (line 0350). It includes the erase and kill characters, which are user settable, and the terminal mode word, shown in Fig. 3-31. This particular choice of communication between program and driver was chosen for its UNIX compatibility, rather than for its inherent beauty.

![Diagram of terminal mode word](image)

**Fig. 3-31.** The terminal mode word. The shaded bits are not used.

A few quick notes about the mode word are in order. Cbreak mode is a compromise between raw and cooked mode. Characters are passed to the program without waiting for a full line (as in raw mode), but DEL, CTRL-\textasciicircum, CTRL-S, and CTRL-Q are processed as in cooked mode. If neither raw mode nor cbreak mode is enabled, then cooked mode is the default. Echoing, carriage return generation and tab expansion can all be turned on or off independently.

**Output Software**

Output is simpler than input, but drivers for RS-232 terminals are radically different from drivers for memory-mapped terminals. The method that is commonly used for RS-232 terminals is to have output buffers associated with each terminal. The buffers can come from the same pool as the input buffers, or be dedicated, as with input. When programs write to the terminal, the output is first copied to the buffers. Similarly, output from echoing is also copied to the buffers. After all the output has been copied to the buffers (or the buffers are full), the first character is output, and the driver goes to sleep. When the interrupt comes in, the next character is output, and so on.

With memory-mapped terminals, a simpler scheme is possible. Characters to be printed are extracted one at a time from user space and put directly in the video RAM. With RS-232 terminals, each character to be output is just sent across the line to the terminal. With memory mapping, some characters require special treatment, among them, backspace, carriage return, line feed, and the bell (CTRL-G). A driver for a memory-mapped terminal must keep track in software of the current position in the video RAM, so that printable characters can be put there and the current position advanced. Backspace, carriage return, and line feed all require this position to be updated appropriately.

In particular, when a line feed is output on the bottom line of the screen, the
screen must be scrolled. To see how scrolling works, look at Fig. 3-28. If the video controller always began reading the RAM at 0xB0000, the only way to scroll the screen would be to copy $24 \times 160$ characters from 0xB00A0 to 0xB0000, a time-consuming proposition.

Fortunately, the hardware usually provides some help here. Most video controllers contain a register that determines where in the video RAM to begin fetching bytes for the top line on the screen. By setting this register to point to 0xB00A0 instead of 0xB0000, the line that was previously number two will move to the top, and the whole screen will scroll up one line. The only other thing the driver must do is copy whatever is needed to the new bottom line. When the video controller gets to the top of the RAM, it just wraps around and continues fetching bytes starting at the lowest address.

Another issue that the driver must deal with on a memory mapped terminal is cursor positioning. Again, the hardware usually provides some assistance in the form of a register that tells where the cursor is to go. Finally, there is the problem of the bell. It is sounded by outputting a sine or square wave to the loudspeaker, a part of the computer quite separate from the video RAM.

It is worth noting that many of the issues faced by the terminal driver for a memory-mapped display (scrolling, bell, and so on) are also faced by the microprocessor inside an RS-232 terminal. From the viewpoint of the microprocessor, it is the main processor in a system with a memory-mapped display.

Screen editors and many other sophisticated programs need to be able to update the screen in more complex ways than just scrolling text onto the bottom of the display. To accommodate them, many terminal drivers support a variety of escape sequences. Some of the more common ones are:

1. Move cursor up, down, left, or right one position.
2. Move cursor to $(x, y)$.
3. Insert character or line at cursor.
4. Delete character or line at cursor.
5. Scroll screen up or down $n$ lines.
6. Clear screen from cursor to end of line or end of screen.
7. Enter reverse video, underlining, blinking, or normal mode.
8. Create, destroy, move, or otherwise manage windows.

When the driver sees the character that starts the escape sequences, it sets a flag and waits until the rest of the escape sequence comes in. When everything has arrived, the driver must carry it out in software. Inserting and deleting text requires moving blocks of characters around the video RAM. The hardware is of no help with anything except scrolling and displaying the cursor.
3.8.3. Overview of the Terminal Driver in MINIX

The terminal driver is far and away the largest source file in MINIX, being almost twice as long as the floppy disk driver, which is the second largest. The size of the terminal driver is partly explained by the observation that the driver handles both the keyboard and the display, each of which is a complicated device in its own right. Still, it comes as a surprise to most people to learn that terminal I/O requires thirty times as much code as the scheduler. (This feeling is reinforced by looking at the numerous books on operating systems that devote thirty times as much space to scheduling as to all I/O combined.)

The terminal driver accepts five messages:

1. Read characters from the terminal (from the file system on behalf of a user process).
2. Write characters to the terminal (from the file system on behalf of a user process).
3. Set terminal parameters for IOCTL (from the file system on behalf of a user process).
4. Character available (from the interrupt procedure).
5. Cancel previous read request (from the file system when a signal occurs).

(In the code a sixth message is mentioned, for signaling that output is completed; it is intended for future terminals whose output is interrupt driven. It is provided as an aid to future modifications of the driver.) The messages for reading and writing have the same format as shown in Fig. 3-15, except that no POSITION field is needed. With a disk, the program has to specify which block it wants to read. With a terminal, there is no choice: the program always gets the next character typed in. Terminals do not support seeks and random access.

The message sent to the driver when the IOCTL system call is made contains a function code (are the terminal parameters to be read or to be written?), the mode word shown in Fig. 3-31, and a long that may contain up to four characters. For one of the request types, TIOCSETP, only two of the characters are used: erase and kill. For another, TIOCSETC, all four characters are used: the SIGINT and SIGQUIT characters (DEL and CTRL-\)), and the stop and start characters (CTRL-S and CTRL-Q). The message used to cancel requests specifies the terminal and process involved, and the message used for character arrival interrupts points to the input.

The terminal driver uses one main data structure, tty_struct, which is an array of structures, one per terminal. Even though the IBM PC generally has only one keyboard and display, the driver has been written to make it easy to add additional terminals, which is especially important if MINIX is ever ported to larger systems.
TTY_struct keeps track of both input and output. For input, it holds all characters that have been typed but not yet read by the program, requests to read characters that have not yet been typed, and the erase, kill, interrupt, quit, start, and stop characters. For output, it holds the parameters of write requests that are not yet finished, the current position on the screen and in the video RAM, the current attribute byte for the display, and information about escape sequences currently being processed. It also holds various general variables, such as the terminal mode and the I/O port, if any, corresponding to the terminal.

Terminal Input

To better understand how the driver works, let us first look at how characters typed in on the terminal work their way through the system to the program that wants them.

When a user logs in (e.g., on terminal 0), a shell is created for him with /dev/tty0 as standard input, standard output, and standard error. The shell starts up by trying to read from standard input by calling the library procedure read. This procedure sends a message that contains the file descriptor, buffer address and count to the file system. This message is shown as (1) in Fig. 3-32. After sending the message, the shell blocks, waiting for the reply. (User processes execute only the SEND_REC primitive, which combines a SEND with a RECEIVE from the process sent to.)

![Fig. 3-32. Read request from terminal when no characters are pending. FS is the file system. TTY is the terminal task. Interrupt is the interrupt routine.](image)

The file system gets the message and locates the i-node corresponding to the specified file descriptor. This i-node is for the character special file /dev/tty0, and contains the major and minor device numbers for the terminal. The major
device type for terminals in the standard distribution is 4; for terminal 0, the minor device number is 0.

The file system indexes into its device map, \( dmap \), to find the number of the terminal task. Then it sends a message to the terminal task, shown as (2) in Fig. 3-32. Normally, the user will not have typed anything yet, so the terminal driver will be unable to satisfy the request. It sends a reply back immediately to unblock the file system and report that no characters are available, shown as (3). The file system records the fact that a process is waiting for terminal input in its tables, and then goes off to get the next request for work. The shell remains blocked, of course.

When a character is finally typed, it causes two interrupts, one when the key is depressed and one when it is released. This rule also applies to keys such as CTRL and SHIFT, which do not transmit any data by themselves, but still cause two interrupts per key hit. The interrupt routine in the assembly code file \( mpx88.s \) calls a C procedure, \( keyboard \) (line 4113) to extract the character from the keyboard hardware and put it in an array called \( tty_driver_buf \) along with the number of the line it came in on. \( Keyboard \) then calls \( interrupt \), which, as we have seen in the previous chapter, then sends a message to the terminal task (4) in Fig. 3-32.

When enough characters have come in (meaning one character in raw or cbreak mode, or a line feed or CTRL-D in cooked mode), the terminal task calls the assembly language procedure \( phys_copy \) to copy the data to the address requested by the shell. This operation is not message passing and is shown by the dashed line in Fig. 3-32. Then the terminal driver sends a true message to the file system telling it that the work has been done (6). The file system reacts to this message by sending a message back to the shell to unblock it (7).

Note that the terminal driver copies the actual characters directly from its own address space to that of the shell. It does not first go through the file system. With block I/O, data do pass through the file system to allow it to maintain a buffer cache of the most recently used blocks. If a requested block happens to be in the cache, the request can be satisfied directly by the file system, without doing any disk I/O.

For terminal I/O, a cache makes no sense. Furthermore, a request from the file system to a disk driver can always be satisfied in at most a few hundred milliseconds, so there is no real harm in having the file system just wait. Terminal I/O may take hours to complete (it waits until something is typed in), so it is unacceptable to have the file system block that long.

Later on, it may happen that the user has typed ahead, and the characters are available before they have been requested. In that case, events 1, 2, 5, 6, and 7 all happen in quick succession after the read request; 3 and 4 do not occur.

When characters are typed in, they are put in the array \( tty_driver_buf \) as mentioned above. If the terminal task happens to be running at the time of the interrupt, no message can be sent to it because it is not waiting for one. Instead, a bit is set in the kernel variable \( busy_map \) in \( interrupt \).
When the terminal task finally blocks, the bit is checked, and the message is sent then. If two or more terminal interrupts occur before the terminal driver finishes what it is doing, all the characters are stored in tty\_driver\_buf, and the bit in busy\_map is repeatedly set. Ultimately, the terminal task gets one message; the rest are lost. But since all the characters are safely stored in tty\_driver\_buf, no typed input is lost.

The problem of what to do in an unbuffered message system (rendezvous principle) when an interrupt routine wants to send a message to a process that is busy is inherent in this kind of design. For most devices, such as disks, interrupts occur only in response to commands issued by the driver, so only one interrupt can be pending at any instant. The only devices that generate interrupts on their own are the clock and the terminal. The clock is handled by just counting lost interrupts, so they can be exactly compensated for later. The terminal is handled by having the interrupt routine accumulate the characters in a fixed buffer, so losing the second, third, and subsequent messages in a series is unimportant, as long as the first one is not lost. In MINIX the bit in busy\_map guarantees that the first one is never lost.

In all fairness, this is not a part of the system that we are most proud of, but it does the job without too much additional software complexity and no loss in performance. The obvious alternative, to throw away the rendezvous principle and have the system buffer all messages sent to destinations not waiting for them, is much more complicated and also slower.

While it was not our primary purpose to air our dirty linen in public, real system designers are often faced with a tradeoff between using the general case, which is elegant all the time but slow, and using a simpler technique, which is usually fast but in one or two cases requires a trick to make it work properly. Experience is really the only guide to which approach is better under given circumstances. A considerable amount of experience on designing operating systems is summarized by Lampson (1984) and Brooks (1975).

When a message comes into the terminal task requesting characters, the main procedure, tty\_task (line 3500) calls do\_read (line 3784) to handle the request (see Fig. 3-33). Do\_read stores the parameters of the call in tty\_struct, just in case there are insufficient characters already buffered to satisfy the request now.

Then it calls rd\_chars (line 3813) to check to see if enough input is available. If it is, the input is copied to the user. If no input is available, nothing is copied. In both cases, rd\_chars returns a code to do\_read reporting what happened, so that do\_read can tell the file system.

When a character is typed, the interrupt procedure sends a message to the terminal driver telling it that one or more characters are now available in tty\_driver\_buf. Upon receiving this message, tty\_task calls do\_charint (line 3528) to loop on the characters accumulated in tty\_driver\_buf (almost always just one, but in theory, two or more are also possible) and call in\_char (line 3581) for each character found (see Fig. 3-33).

Before doing any processing, in\_char converts the key codes (scan codes)
generated by the hardware into ASCII characters by calling `make_break` to look them up in the appropriate table. After that, `in_char` distinguishes between cooked mode, cbreak mode, and raw mode, and handles all the characters that need special processing. These are shown in Fig. 3-30. It also calls `echo` (line 3746) to have the characters displayed on the screen.

Terminal Output

Terminal output in MINIX is simpler than terminal input because the display is memory mapped. When a process wants to print something, it generally calls `printf` to format a line. `Printf` calls `WRITE` to send a message to the file system. The message contains a pointer to the characters to be printed (not the characters themselves). The file system then sends a message to the terminal driver, which fetches them and copies them to the video RAM.

When a message comes in to the terminal task to write on the screen, `do_write` (line 3905) is called to store the parameters in `tty_struct`. It then calls the output procedure for memory-mapped displays. (If RS-232 terminals are added later, a different procedure will be called for them.) This output procedure, called `console` (line 4178), consists mainly of a loop that fetches one byte directly from the user process and calls `out_char` (line 4217) to print it. Figure 3-34 shows the main procedures involved in output.

Logically, the bytes fetched from the user process could be written into the video RAM one per loop iteration. Unfortunately, writing into the video RAM while the 6845 is fetching characters from it interferes with the 6845's critical timing and may generate visual garbage all over the screen. Only during vertical retrace of the CRT beam is it always safe to write in the video RAM. Vertical
retrace periods occur 50 or 60 times a second, each one lasting a few msec. To deal with this problem, \texttt{out\_char} accumulates characters in \texttt{tty\_ramqueue} rather than writing them directly into the video RAM.

When this buffer fills up, or a character involving cursor motion has to be printed, \texttt{flush} (line 4326) is called to output the buffer to the screen. \texttt{Flush} calls the assembly language procedure \texttt{vid\_copy} to wait until the vertical retrace bit comes on, and then it quickly copies the buffer to the screen.

\texttt{Out\_char} also checks for characters that need special handling, such as the bell, line feed, carriage return, tab, backspace, some cursor motion keys, and the escape sequences. If one of these is found, it is processed directly.

The current cursor position is stored in \texttt{tty\_struct} in the fields \texttt{tty\_row} and \texttt{tty\_column}. The coordinate (0, 0) is in the lower left-hand corner of the screen, even though the hardware fills the screen starting in the upper left-hand corner. Each video scan begins at the address given by \texttt{tty\_org} and continues for \(160 \times 25 = 4000\) bytes, wrapping around the video RAM, if necessary.

In other words, the 6845 chip pulls the word at offset \texttt{tty\_org} from the video RAM, and displays the character in the upper left-hand corner using the attribute byte to control color, blinking, and so forth. Then it fetches the next word and displays the character at coordinate (0, 24). This process continues until it gets to (79, 0), at which time it begins again. Adding 160 to \texttt{tty\_org} and then loading it into the 6845 causes the screen to scroll upward by one line.

The position of the cursor relative to the start of the video RAM can be derived from \texttt{tty\_row} and \texttt{tty\_column}, but it is faster to store it explicitly, which is done in the field \texttt{tty\_vid}. When a character is to be printed, it is put into the video RAM at location \texttt{tty\_vid}, which is then updated, as is \texttt{tty\_column}. Figure 3-35 summarizes the fields of \texttt{tty\_struct} that affect the current position and the display origin.
### Fig. 3-35. Fields of the tty structure that relate to the current screen position.

The characters that affect the cursor position (e.g., line feed, backspace) are handled by simply adjusting the values of `tty_row`, `tty_column`, and `tty_vid`. This work is done by `move_to` (line 4343). When a line feed is to be printed on the bottom line of the screen, `scroll_screen` (line 4304) is called to add 160 to `tty_org` and scroll the screen. It must also copy a row of blanks to the video RAM to ensure that the new line that suddenly appears at the bottom of the screen is empty.

The terminal driver supports a few escape sequences to allow screen editors and other interactive programs to update the screen in a flexible way. These escape sequences are all 3 bytes long and are shown in Fig. 3-36. By having ESC 32 32 correspond to moving to (0, 0), we have arranged that the parameters for cursor motion are printable characters. (When output to the screen, the escape sequences are not printed, but when they appear in programs they can be seen.)

### Fig. 3-36. The escape sequences accepted by the terminal driver on output.
ESC denotes the ASCII escape character (033).

#### 3.8.4. Implementation of the Terminal Driver in MINIX

In this section we will inspect the actual code of the terminal driver in detail, first doing the input part and then doing the output part. The main loop of the driver (line 3508) is similar to that of the other drivers, except that the replies are sent by the procedures that are called here, rather than in `tty_task` itself.

**Terminal Input**

After our study of the other drivers, the only part of the terminal driver that is genuinely new is the way characters are processed as they are typed. When a key is struck or released, the CPU interrupts to line 1187, which saves the
registers and calls the C procedure \textit{keyboard} on line 4113. This procedure first
plucks the key code (scan code) from the hardware and acknowledges this fact to
the keyboard hardware. If the high-order bit of the key code is set, the key in
question was released; otherwise, it was struck. Key releases, other than case
shifts such as SHIFT, CTRL, and ALT, are just ignored and do not cause mes-
sages to be sent to the terminal task. This optimization reduces the message
traffic within the system.

On lines 4144 to 4150 a check is made to see if the character is CTRL-S,
which freezes the display. If it is, the \textit{tty_inhibited} field is set to \textit{STOPPED},
which causes the output loop in \textit{console} (line 4196) to stop, if it is running.

On line 4154 a check is made to see if CTRL-ALT-DEL has been typed. If
it has, the computer is rebooted. The code for \textit{reboot} is in \textit{klib88.s}. The rest of
\textit{keyboard} deals with storing the key code in the array \textit{tty_driver_buf} and sending
a message to the terminal task to have it process the stored characters.

When that message is received later, it is handled in \textit{do_charint} (line 3528),
which is mostly concerned with looping over the characters in \textit{tty_driver_buf} and
passing them to \textit{in_char} one at a time. After each character is processed, a
check is made to see if a previously incomplete read request can now be
satisfied. In cooked mode this happens when a line feed is processed. In the
other modes it happens on any character. If the read request can be completed
now, \textit{rd_chars} is called on line 3566 to copy the data to the user process.

The basic processing of each character typed in is done by \textit{in_char} (line
3581). Early on it calls \textit{make_break} (line 3695) to convert the key code received
from the keyboard to an ASCII code by table lookup. Four tables are used,
corresponding to lower and upper case for the IBM PC and for the Olivetti M24.
The flag \textit{olivetti} is set when the system is initialized, depending on which key
code was typed in when the system asked for an equal sign.

\textit{Make_break} keeps track of the state of five different case shifts in software.
These shifts are SHIFT, CTRL, ALT, CAPS LOCK, and NUM LOCK. The
entries above 0200 in the tables are used to indicate that the key code is for one
of these shifts. Because the code output for each key is completely determined
by software, we have been able to use a more flexible approach than most key-
board drivers. The basic idea is simple: each key outputs a unique code, so, for
example, the software can distinguish between the “+” in the numeric pad and
the “+” in the top row of keys, if it so desires. All the values between 1 and
255 are used.

Getting back to \textit{in_char}, the tests on lines 3607 to 3653 check for the charac-
ters that are handled specially in cooked mode. The tests on lines 3655 to 3678
process those characters that are special in both cooked and cbreak mode. In
raw mode, all of these characters are passed through to the user without any spe-
cial processing. The actual queueing of characters is done at the end of \textit{in_char}.

When a key is struck, neither the hardware nor the interrupt routine puts the
character just typed on the display. It is up to the terminal driver to display it.
The last thing \textit{in_char} does before finishing up is call \textit{echo} (line 3746) to print
the character on the screen. All echo does is check to see if ECHO mode is enabled and the character is displayable. If so, it calls out_char to have it copied to tty_ramqueue, and then it calls flush to have that queue actually copied to the screen.

The procedure chuck (line 3761) is used for the erase and kill local editing characters to remove characters already typed from the input queue. We have now finished the story of how input characters are processed.

The procedure do_read (line 3784), as we have already seen, is concerned with handling read requests from user programs. It stores the message parameters in tty_struct because it may not be possible to satisfy the request now. When enough characters finally come in, the driver needs to have the information about the request so it can carry it out then.

The actual transfer of data from the driver to user space is done by rd_chars. It computes the physical address within user space where the data are to go, user_phys, by calling umap. It also computes the physical address of the input buffer, tty_phys. Given these two addresses, the two nested loops starting on line 3841 perform the actual copying, one buffer at a time. The inner loop fills up one buffer, a character at a time, and copies it to user space. The outer loop repeats this process, copying as many buffer loads as necessary to satisfy the request. When it is finished, rd_chars returns cum, which is the number of characters actually transferred. Note that a read from a terminal never returns more than one line, no matter how many characters are requested, so it is important to report how many characters have been put in the user's buffer.

The next procedure, finish (line 3884), is used to terminate output and reply to the file system. It is used for normal output termination, but also when a DEL or CTRL-\ is typed, to stop all output immediately and tell the file system that output has been completed.

**Terminal Output**

Having finished looking at how input works, let us look at output. The procedure do_write is called from tty_task, just as do_read is, and like do_read, does little more than store the message parameters in tty_struct. It also computes the physical address within user space of the data to be printed.

On line 3934 do_write calls a device-dependent procedure to perform the output. For terminal 0, this procedure is console (line 4178), but if RS-232 terminals are added later, it will call a different procedure for them. The device-dependent code is listed at the end of tty.c, starting at line 4050.

The heart of console is the loop on lines 4196 to 4201. Each iteration of that loop uses the assembly code procedure get_byte to fetch one byte from the user’s output buffer into the local variable c. The byte is then output by calling out_char, specifying the terminal and the character. Finally, the pointer is advanced to the next character and the count of remaining bytes is decremented.

The output loop terminates either when the entire buffer has been printed, or
when *tty_inhibited* comes on. Normally, this flag is off, but when CTRL-S is typed, the interrupt handler sets it (line 4147). This strategy has been chosen because once the driver starts doing output, it does not accept any more messages until it has finished its work. If the CTRL-S character were to be sent to the driver in a message, it would always have to wait until the current output was finished. With the implementation actually used, CTRL-S stops the output instantly. When CTRL-Q is typed, *console* is called (line 3676) to pick up where it left off.

Every character printed on the screen passes through *out_char*, including characters being echoed (line 3753). It contains a simple finite state machine to handle escape sequences, all of which are exactly three characters long, to keep things simple. The finite state machine, shown in Fig. 3-37, has three states, depending on whether the field *tty_esc_state* is 0, 1, or 2.

![Diagram](image_url)

**Fig. 3-37.** Escape sequences are three characters long.

Normally, *tty_esc_state* is 0. When an ASCII ESC character (033) is output, the state switches to 1. After another character arrives, the character is saved in *tty_echar* and the state switches to 2. When the next character arrives, *escape* (line 4362) is called with both characters to handle it, and the state is reset to 0.

If the character being output is not part of an escape sequence, a check is made on line 4241 to see if it is a printable character or something special. The bell (CTRL-G) is handled by *beep* (line 4427), which generates a tone by directing one of the clock channels to the built-in loudspeaker. The characters involving cursor motion, such as carriage return, backspace, and line feed, all call *move_to* (line 4343) to update the current row, column, and position within the video RAM.

Printable characters are handled on lines 4291 to 4296. As discussed earlier, they are stored in the buffer *tty_ramqueue* along with their attribute byte so that the number of times the video RAM has to be accessed can be reduced. In this manner, each vertical retrace interval can be used to deposit perhaps tens of characters in the video RAM, instead of just a few.

*Scroll_screen* (line 4304) can scroll the screen one line in either direction, depending on *dir*. Scrolling is accomplished by adding or subtracting 160 bytes from *tty_org* and then updating the 6845. The 6845's registers that are used by MINIX are shown in Fig. 3-38.
Each register is 8 bits wide, but they work in pairs to form 16-bit registers. All of them address the video RAM in words, rather than bytes. For this reason, \texttt{tty\_org} (which is in bytes) is shifted right to convert it to words on line 4319. The 6845 registers not shown in Fig. 3-38 control the sync pulses that determine the width, height, and offset of the displayable area on the screen. They are set by the ROM when the IBM PC is booted and not touched by MINIX.

\textit{Flush} (line 4326) calls \texttt{vid\_copy} to copy the accumulated characters from the queue to the screen. Then it moves the cursor and clears the queue.

\textit{Move\_to} (line 4343) updates the row, column, and video RAM position, and moves the cursor. It is called whenever the cursor is explicitly moved. Before doing its work it flushes the buffer, to prevent the queued characters from being eventually displayed in the wrong place.

Escape sequences are detected in \textit{out\_char} but processed by \textit{escape} (line 4362). Each of the four possibilities of Fig. 3-36 is checked for and handled.

The 6845 registers shown in Fig. 3-38 are set by calls to \textit{set\_6845} (line 4403). A 16-bit value is output as two 8-bit values, to consecutive registers. A value is loaded into a register by first loading the register number into an I/O port, and then loading the value into another I/O port.

Ringing the bell for CTRL-G is done in \textit{beep} (line 4427). It is accomplished by programming channel 2 of the timer chip. Interrupts are disabled on line 4438 because it sounds funny otherwise. The frequency and duration of the beep tone are completely programmable, and can be changed by modifying the constants \texttt{BEEP\_FREQ} and \texttt{B\_TIME}.

When MINIX starts up, each task is called to give it the opportunity to initialize itself. On line 3507, the terminal task calls \textit{tty\_init} (line 4453) to do the initialization. First it sets up the default mode and special characters, such as erase, kill, and interrupt. Then it sets some of the 6845 display parameters, which differ for color and monochrome displays.

The global variable \texttt{color} used on line 4474 is set in \texttt{main.c} by calling the assembly language procedure \textit{get\_chrome}, which makes a BIOS call to find out. The BIOS finds out by reading an I/O port connected to the DIP switches on the PC's motherboard. This call is the only place in MINIX that the BIOS is used.

The cursor shape is set on line 4487. As you can see, the IBM PC is extremely flexible: the meaning of each key, the sound of the bell, the shape of the cursor, and many other things are all programmable. The keyboard type is set on line 4495 by looking at the number corresponding to the equals sign typed to start MINIX. It is different on the IBM PC and Olivetti M24.
In a few places in the kernel, the procedure *printf* is called. The MINIX version of *printf* is part of the standard I/O library, which sends messages to the file system to print its strings. A simpler procedure is needed within the kernel, and is provided in the form of the procedure *printk*, which calls the kernel version of *putc* directly. All occurrences of the string "printf" are changed into "printk" by the macro on line 0696.

The final procedure in the driver is temporary and used only for helping to debug MINIX. At the start of in_char, a check is made to see if the key is a function key. If it is, *func_key* (line 4519) is called to provide some debug information on the screen. This feature has been included to help people who plan to modify MINIX. It can be removed when this assistance is no longer needed. The dump procedures are in the file *dmp.c*, which is not really a permanent part of MINIX and is not shown in this book.

### 3.9. THE SYSTEM TASK IN MINIX

One consequence of making the file system and memory manager user processes outside the kernel is that occasionally they have some piece of information that the kernel needs. This structure, however, forbids them from just writing it into a kernel table. For example, the FORK system call is handled by the memory manager. When a new process is created, the kernel must know about it, in order to schedule it. How can the memory manager tell the kernel?

The solution to this problem is to have a kernel task that communicates with the file system and memory manager via the standard message mechanism, and which also has access to all the kernel tables. This task, called the *system task*, is in layer 2 in Fig. 2-26, and functions like the other tasks we have studied in this chapter. The only difference is that it does not control any I/O device. Nevertheless, it makes more sense to study it here than in any other chapter.

The system task accepts nine kinds of messages, shown in Fig. 3-39. The main program of the system task, *sys_task* (line 4627), is structured the same way as the other tasks. It gets a message, dispatches to the appropriate service procedure, and then sends a reply. We will now look at each of these messages and its service procedure.

*SYS_FORK* is used by the memory manager to tell the kernel that a new process has come into existence. The kernel needs to know this in order to schedule it. The message contains the slot numbers within the process table corresponding to the parent and child. The memory manager and file system also have process tables, with entry *k* referring to the same process in all three. In this manner, the memory manager can specify just the parent and child slot numbers, and the kernel will know which processes are meant.

The procedure *do_fork* (line 4658) copies the parent's process table entry to the child's slot and zeros the accounting information. The check on line 4674 to see if the memory manager is feeding the kernel garbage is pure paranoia, but a
little internal consistency checking does no harm. Similar checks are made in a number of other places in the system as well.

After a FORK, the memory manager allocates memory for the child. The kernel must know where the child is located in memory so it can set up the segment registers properly when running the child. The SYS_NEWMAP message allows the memory manager to give the kernel any process’ memory map. This message can also be used after a BRK system call changes the map.

The message is handled by do_newmap (line 4698), which must first copy the new map from the memory manager’s address space. The map is not contained in the message itself because it is too big. In theory, the memory manager could tell the kernel that the map is at address m, where m is an illegal address. The memory manager is not supposed to do this, but the kernel checks anyway. The 18-byte map is copied directly into the process table’s p_map field. Information from it is also extracted and loaded into the p_reg fields that hold the segment registers.

When a process does an EXEC system call, the memory manager sets up a new stack for it containing the arguments and environment. It passes the resulting stack pointer to the kernel using SYS_EXEC, which is handled by do_exec (line 4746). In addition to setting the stack pointer, do_exec kills off the alarm timer, if any, by storing a zero on top of it. It is for this reason that the clock task always checks when a timer has run out to see if anybody is still interested.

The EXEC call causes a slight anomaly. The process invoking the call sends a message to the memory manager and blocks. With other system calls, the resulting reply unblocks it. With EXEC there is no reply, because the newly loaded core image is not expecting a reply. Therefore, do_exec unblocks the process itself on line 4762.

Processes can exit in MINIX either by doing an EXIT system call, which sends a message to the memory manager, or by being killed by a signal. In both cases, the memory manager tells the kernel by the SYS_XIT message. The work is done by doxit (line 4771), which is more complicated than you might expect. Taking care of the accounting information is straightforward. The tricky part is that the
process might have been queued trying to send or receive at the time it was killed. The code on lines 4796 to 4816 checks for this possibility, and if found, carefully removes it from all the queues it is on.

In contrast to the previous message, which is slightly complicated, SYS_GETSP is completely trivial. It is used by the memory manager to find out the value of the current stack pointer for some process. This value is needed for the BRK and SBRK system calls to see if the data segment and stack segment have collided. The code is in do_getsp (line 4825).

Now we come to the only message type used exclusively by the file system, SYS_TIMES. It is needed to implement the TIMES system call, which returns the accounting times to the caller. All do_times (line 4844) does is put the requested times into the reply message.

It can happen that either the memory manager or the file system discovers an error that makes it impossible to continue operation. For example, if upon first starting up, the file system sees that the super-block on the root device has been corrupted, it panics and sends a SYS_ABORT message to the kernel. All do_abort (line 4868) does is call panic to terminate MINIX immediately.

Most of the signal handling is done in the memory manager. It checks to see if the process to be signaled is enabled to catch or ignore the signal, if the sender of the signal is entitled to do so, and so on. The one thing the memory manager cannot do is actually cause the signal, that is, push the PSW, CS register, program counter, and signal number onto the stack of the signaled process. That work is done by sending the SYS_SIG message to the system task.

The message is handled by do_sig (line 4880). After extracting the parameters of the message, do_sig calls the assembly language procedure build_sig to construct an 8-byte array containing the interrupt information. The array, sig_stuff, is copied onto the stack of the signaled process by phys_copy on line 4910. The process's stack pointer is then decremented by the size of the block of information just copied.

The final message, SYS_COPY, is the most heavily used one. It is needed to allow the file system and memory manager to copy information to and from user processes.

When a user does a READ call, the file system checks its cache to see if it has the block needed. If not, it sends a message to the appropriate disk task to load it into the cache. Then the file system sends a message to the system task telling it to copy the block to the user process. In the worst case, seven messages are needed to read a block; in the best case four messages are needed. Both cases are shown in Fig. 3-40. These messages are a significant source of overhead in MINIX, and are the price paid for the highly modular design.

As an aside, on the 8088, which has no protection, it would be easy enough to cheat and let the file system copy the data to the caller's address space, but this would violate the design principle. Anyone interested in improving the performance of MINIX should look carefully at this mechanism to see how much improper behavior one can tolerate for how much gain in performance. The
implementation of this procedure is straightforward. It is done by \texttt{do\_copy} (line 4922) and consists of little more than extracting the message parameters and calling \texttt{phys\_copy}.

At the end of \texttt{system.c} are three utility procedures used in various places throughout the kernel. When a task needs to cause a signal (e.g., the clock task needs to cause a SIGALRM signal, or the terminal task needs to cause a SIGINT signal), it calls \texttt{cause\_sig} (line 4960). This procedure sets a bit in the \texttt{p\_pending} field of the process table entry for the process to be signaled, and then calls \texttt{inform} to tell the memory manager to handle the signal.

\texttt{Inform} (line 4987) checks to see if the memory manager is currently waiting for a message from \texttt{ANY}, that is, if it is idle and waiting for the next request to process. If it is idle, \texttt{inform} builds a message of type \texttt{KSIG} and sends it the message. The task calling \texttt{cause\_sig} continues running as soon as the message has been copied into the memory manager's receive buffer. It does not wait for the memory manager to run.

When the signaling task finishes, the scheduler will be called. If the memory manager is the highest priority runnable process, it will run and process the signal.

The procedure \texttt{umap} (line 5021) is a generally useful procedure that maps a virtual address onto a physical address. Its parameters are a pointer to the process table entry for the process or task whose virtual address space is to be mapped, a flag specifying the text, data, or stack segment, the virtual address itself, and a byte count. The byte count is useful because \texttt{umap} checks to make
sure that the entire buffer starting at the virtual address is within the process’s address space. For this reason, it must know how big the buffer is. The byte count is not used for the mapping itself, just this check. All the tasks that copy data to or from user space compute the physical address of the buffer using \texttt{umap}.

### 3.10. SUMMARY

Input/Output is an often neglected, but important, topic. A substantial fraction of any operating system is concerned with I/O. We started out by looking at I/O hardware, and the relation of I/O devices to I/O controllers, which are what the software has to deal with. Then we looked at the four levels of I/O software: the interrupt routines, the device drivers, the device-independent I/O software, and the I/O libraries and spoolers that run in user space.

Next we studied the problem of deadlock and how it can be tackled. Deadlock occurs when a group of processes each have been granted exclusive access to some resources, and each one wants yet another resource that belongs to another process in the group. All of them are blocked and none will ever run again. Deadlock can be prevented by structuring the system so it can never occur, for example, by allowing a process to hold only one resource at any instant. It can also be avoided by examining each resource request to see if it leads to a situation in which deadlock is possible, and denying or delaying those that lead to trouble.

Device drivers in MINIX are implemented as processes embedded in the kernel. All of them are located in the same address space, but they are otherwise completely independent. We have looked at the RAM disk driver, floppy disk driver, clock driver, terminal driver, and system task, which is not a device driver but is structurally very similar to one. Each of these drivers has a main loop that gets requests and processes them, eventually sending back replies to report on what happened.

### PROBLEMS

1. Imagine that advances in chip technology make it possible to put an entire controller, including all the bus access logic, on an inexpensive chip. How will that affect the model of Fig. 3-1?

2. If a disk controller writes the bytes it receives from the disk to memory as fast as it receives them, with no internal buffering, is interleaving conceivably useful? Discuss.

3. A disk is double interleaved, as in Fig. 3-3(c). It has eight sectors of 512 bytes per track, and a rotation rate of 300 rpm. How long does it take to read all the sectors
of a track in order, assuming the arm is already correctly positioned, and 1/2 rotation is needed to get sector 0 under the head? What is the data rate? Now repeat the problem for a noninterleaved disk with the same characteristics. How much does the data rate degrade due to interleaving?

4. The DM-11 terminal multiplexer, which was used on the PDP-11 many, many years ago, sampled each (half-duplex) terminal line at seven times the baud rate to see if the incoming bit was a 0 or a 1. Sampling the line took 5.7 microsec. How many 1200 baud lines could the DM-11 support?

5. A local network is used as follows. The user issues a system call to write to the network. The operating system then copies the data to a kernel buffer. Then it copies the data to the network controller board. When all the bytes are safely inside the controller, they are sent over the network at a rate of 10 megabits/sec. The receiving network controller stores each bit a microsecond after it is sent. When the last bit arrives, the destination CPU is interrupted, and the kernel copies the newly arrived packet to a kernel buffer to inspect it. Once it has figured out which user the packet is for, the kernel copies the data to the user space. If we assume that each interrupt and its associated processing takes 1 msec, that packets are 1024 bytes (ignore the headers), and that copying a byte takes 1 microsec, what is the maximum rate at which one process can pump data to another?

6. What is “device independence”?

7. In which of the four I/O software layers is each of the following done.
   (a) Computing the track, sector, and head for a disk read.
   (b) Maintaining a cache of recently used blocks.
   (c) Writing commands to the device registers.
   (d) Checking to see if the user is permitted to use the device.
   (e) Converting binary integers to ASCII for printing.

8. Why are output files for the printer normally spooled on disk before being printed?

9. Consider Fig. 3-8. Suppose that in step (o) C requested S instead of requesting R. Would this lead to deadlock? Suppose it requested both S and R?

10. All the trajectories in Fig. 3-12 are horizontal or vertical. Can you envision any circumstances in which diagonal trajectories were also possible?

11. Take a careful look at Fig. 3-11(b). If Suzanne asks for one more unit, does this lead to a safe state or an unsafe one? What if the request came from Marvin instead of Suzanne?

12. Suppose that process A in Fig. 3-13 requests the last tape drive. Does this action lead to a deadlock?

13. A computer has six tape drives, with n processes competing for them. Each process may need two drives. For which values of n is the system deadlock free?

14. Can a system be in a state that is neither deadlocked nor safe? If so, give an example. If not, prove that all states are either deadlocked or safe.

15. A distributed system using mailboxes has two IPC primitives, SEND and RECEIVE. The latter primitive specifies a process to receive from. and blocks if no message
from that process is available, even though messages may be waiting from other processes. There are no shared resources, but processes need to communicate frequently about other matters. Is deadlock possible? Discuss.

16. In an electronic funds transfer system, there are hundreds of identical processes that work as follows. Each process reads an input line specifying an amount of money, the account to be credited, and the account to be debited. Then it locks both accounts and transfers the money, releasing the locks when done. With many processes running in parallel, there is a very real danger that having locked account \( x \) it will be unable to lock \( y \) because \( y \) has been locked by a process now waiting for \( x \). Devise a scheme that avoids deadlocks. Do not release an account record until you have completed the transactions. (In other words, solutions that lock one account and then release it immediately if the other is locked, are not allowed.)

17. The banker’s algorithm is being run in a system with \( m \) resource classes and \( n \) processes. In the limit of large \( m \) and \( n \), the number of operations that must be performed to check a state for safety is proportional to \( m^a n^b \). What are the values of \( a \) and \( b \)?

18. Cinderella and the Prince are getting divorced. To divide their property, they have agreed on the following algorithm. Every morning, each one may send a letter to the other’s lawyer requesting one item of property. Since it takes a day for letters to be delivered, they have agreed that if both discover that they have requested the same item on the same day, the next day they will send a letter canceling the request. Among their property is their dog, Woofer, Woofer’s doghouse, their canary, Tweeter, and Tweeter’s cage. The animals love their houses, so it has been agreed that any division of property separating an animal from its house is invalid, requiring the whole division to start over from scratch. Both Cinderella and the Prince desperately want Woofer. So they can go on (separate) vacations, each spouse has programmed a personal computer to handle the negotiation. When they come back from vacation, the computers are still negotiating. Why? Is deadlock possible? Is starvation possible? Discuss.

19. The message format of Fig. 3-15 is used for sending request messages to drivers for block devices. Which fields, if any, could be omitted for messages to character devices?

20. Disk requests come in to the disk driver for cylinders 10, 22, 20, 2, 40, 6, and 38, in that order. A seek takes 6 msec per cylinder moved. How much seek time is needed for
   (a) First-come, first served.
   (b) Closest cylinder next.
   (c) Elevator algorithm (initially moving upwards).

In all cases, the arm is initially at cylinder 20.

21. A personal computer salesman visiting a university in South-West Amsterdam remarked during his sales pitch that his company had devoted substantial effort to making their version of UNIX very fast. As an example, he noted that their disk driver used the elevator algorithm and also queued multiple requests within a cylinder in sector order. A student, Harry Hacker, was impressed and bought one.
He took it home and wrote a program to randomly read 10,000 blocks spread across the disk. To his amazement, the performance that he measured was identical to what would be expected from first-come, first-served. Was the salesman lying?

22. A UNIX process has two parts—the user part and the kernel part. Is the kernel part like a subroutine or a coroutine?

23. The clock interrupt handler on a certain computer requires 2 msec (including process switching overhead) per clock tick. The clock runs at 60 Hz. What fraction of the CPU is devoted to the clock?

24. Two examples of watchdog timers were given in the text: timing the start-up of the floppy disk motor and allowing for carriage return on hard copy terminals. Give a third example.

25. Why are RS232 terminals interrupt driven, but memory mapped terminals not interrupt driven?

26. Consider how a terminal works. The driver outputs one character and then blocks. When the character has been printed, an interrupt occurs and a message is sent to the blocked driver, which outputs the next character and then blocks again. If the time to pass a message, output a character, and block is 4 msec, does this method work well on 110 baud lines? How about 4800 baud lines?

27. A bit map terminal contains 1200 by 800 pixels. To scroll a window, the CPU (or controller) must move all the lines of text upwards by copying their bits from one part of the video RAM to another. If a particular window is 66 lines high by 80 characters wide (5280 characters, total), and a character’s box is 8 pixels wide by 12 pixels high, how long does it take to scroll the whole window at a copying rate of 500 nsec per byte? If all lines are 80 characters long, what is the equivalent baud rate of the terminal? Putting a character on the screen takes 50 microsec. Now compute the baud rate for the same terminal in color, with 4 bits/pixel. (Putting a character on the screen now takes 200 microsec.)

28. Why do operating systems provide escape characters, such as \ in MINIX?

29. After receiving a DEL (SIGINT) character, the MINIX driver discards all output currently queued for that terminal. Why?

30. Many RS232 terminals have escape sequences for deleting the current line and moving all the lines below it up one line. How do you think this feature is implemented inside the terminal?

31. On the IBM PC’s color display, writing to the video RAM at any time other than during the CRT beam’s vertical retrace causes ugly spots to appear all over the screen. A screen image is 25 by 80 characters, each of which fits in a box 8 pixels by 8 pixels. Each row of 640 pixels is drawn on a single horizontal scan of the beam, which takes 63.6 microsec, including the horizontal retrace. The screen is redrawn 60 times a second, each of which requires a vertical retrace period to get the beam back to the top. What fraction of the time is the video RAM available for writing in?

32. Write an RS232 driver for MINIX.
33. Write a graphics driver for the IBM color display, or some other suitable bit map display. The driver should accept commands to set and clear individual pixels, move rectangles around the screen, and any other features you think are interesting. User programs interface to the driver by opening /dev/graphics and writing commands to it.

34. Modify the MINIX floppy disk driver to do track-at-a-time caching.

35. Implement a floppy disk driver that works as a character, rather than a block device, to bypass the file system's buffer cache. In this way, users can read large chunks of data from the disk, which are DMA'ed directly to user space, greatly improving performance. This driver would primarily be of interest to programs that need to read the raw bits on the disk, without regard to the file system. File system checkers fall into this category.

36. Implement the UNIX PROFIL system call, which is missing from MINIX.

37. Modify the terminal driver so that in addition to a having a special key to erase the previous character, there is a key to erase the previous word.
Memory is an important resource that must be carefully managed. While the average home computer nowadays has ten times as much memory as the IBM 7094, the largest computer in the world in the early 1960s, programs are getting bigger just as fast as memories. To paraphrase Parkinson’s law, “Programs expand to fill the memory available to hold them.” In this chapter we will study how operating systems manage their memory.

The part of the operating system that manages memory is called the memory manager. Its job is to keep track of which parts of memory are in use and which parts are not in use, to allocate memory to processes when they need it and deallocate it when they are done, and to manage swapping between main memory and disk when main memory is not big enough to hold all the processes.

In this chapter we will investigate a number of different memory management schemes, ranging from very simple to highly sophisticated. We will start at the beginning and look first at the simplest possible memory management system, and then gradually progress to more and more elaborate ones.

4.1. MEMORY MANAGEMENT WITHOUT SWAPPING OR PAGING

Memory management systems can be divided into two classes: those that move processes back and forth between main memory and disk during execution (swapping and paging), and those that do not. The latter are simpler, so we will
study them first. Later in the chapter we will examine swapping and paging. Throughout this chapter the reader should keep in mind that swapping and paging are largely artifacts caused by the lack of sufficient main memory to hold all the programs at once. As main memory gets cheaper, the arguments in favor of one kind of memory management scheme or another may become obsolete.

4.1.1. Monoprogramming without Swapping or Paging

The simplest possible memory management scheme is to have just one process in memory at a time, and to allow that process to use all of memory. The user loads the entire memory with a program from disk or tape, and it takes over the whole machine. Although this approach was common up until about 1960, it is not used any more, not even on inexpensive home computers, mostly because it implies that every process must contain within it a device driver for each I/O device it uses.

The usual technique used on simple microcomputers is shown in Fig. 4-1. The memory is divided up between the operating system and a single user process. The operating system may be at the bottom of memory in RAM (Random Access Memory), as shown in Fig. 4-1(a), or it may be in ROM (Read Only Memory) at the top of memory, as shown in Fig. 4-1(b), or the device drivers may be at the top of memory in a ROM and the rest of the operating system in RAM at the bottom of memory, as shown in Fig. 4-1(c). The IBM PC, for example, uses the model of Fig. 4-1(c), with the device driver ROM located in the highest 8K block of the 1M address space. The program in the ROM is called the BIOS (Basic Input Output System).

![Fig. 4-1. Three ways of organizing memory with an operating system and one user process.](image)

When the system is organized in this way, only one process at a time can be running. The user types a command on the terminal, and the operating system loads the requested program from disk into memory and executes it. When the process finishes, the operating system types a prompt character on the terminal
and then waits for a command from the terminal to load another process, overwriting the first one.

4.1.2. Multiprogramming and Memory Usage

Although monoprogramming is sometimes used on small computers, on larger computers with multiple users it is rarely used. In Chap. 2 we already saw one reason for multiprogramming—to make it easier to program an application by splitting it up into two or more processes. Another motivation is that large computers often provide interactive service to several people simultaneously, which requires the ability to have more than one process in memory at once in order to get reasonable performance. Loading a process, running it for 100 msec, and then spending a few hundred milliseconds swapping it to disk is inefficient. But if the quantum is set too much above 100 msec, the response time will be poor.

Another reason for multiprogramming a computer (also applicable to batch systems), is that most processes spend a substantial fraction of their time waiting for disk I/O to complete. It is common for a process to sit in a loop reading data blocks from a disk file and then doing some computation on the contents of the blocks read. If it takes 40 msec to read a block, and the computation takes 10 msec, with monoprogramming the CPU will be idle waiting for the disk 80 percent of the time.

Modeling Multiprogramming

When multiprogramming is used, the CPU utilization can be improved. Crudely put, if the average process computes only 20 percent of the time it is sitting in memory, with five processes in memory at once, the CPU should be busy all the time. This model is unrealistically optimistic, however, since it assumes that all five processes will never be waiting for I/O at the same time.

A better model is to look at CPU usage from a probabilistic viewpoint. Suppose that a process spends a fraction \( p \) of its time in I/O wait state. With \( n \) processes in memory at once, the probability that all \( n \) processes are waiting for I/O (in which case the CPU will be idle) is \( p^n \). The CPU utilization is then \( 1 - p^n \). Figure 4-2 shows the CPU utilization as a function of \( n \), called the degree of multiprogramming.

From the figure it is clear that if processes spend 80 percent of their time waiting for I/O, at least 10 processes must be in memory at once to get the CPU waste below 10 percent. When you realize that an interactive process waiting for a user to type something at a terminal is in I/O wait state, it should be clear that I/O wait times of 80 percent and more are not unusual. But even in batch systems, processes doing a lot of disk or tape I/O will often have this percentage or more.

For the sake of complete accuracy, it should be pointed out that the
probabilistic model just described is only an approximation. It implicitly assumes that all \( n \) processes are independent, meaning that it is quite acceptable for a system with five processes in memory to have three running and two waiting. But with a single CPU, we cannot have three processes running at once, so a process becoming ready while the CPU is busy will have to wait. Thus the processes are not independent. A more accurate model can be constructed using queueing theory, but the point we are making—multiprogramming lets processes use the CPU when it would be otherwise idle—is, of course, still valid, even if the true curves of Fig. 4-2 are slightly different.

Even though the model of Fig. 4-2 is simple-minded, it can still be used to make specific, although approximate, predictions about CPU performance. Suppose, for example, that a computer has 1M of memory, with the operating system taking up 200K and each user program also taking up 200K. With an 80 percent average I/O wait, we have a CPU utilization (ignoring operating system overhead) of about 60 percent. Adding another megabyte of memory allows the system to go from four-way multiprogramming to nine-way multiprogramming, thus raising the CPU utilization to 87 percent. In other words, the second megabyte will raise the throughput by 45 percent.

Adding a third megabyte would only increase CPU utilization from 87 percent to 96 percent, thus raising the throughput by only another 10 percent. Using this model the computer's owner might decide that a second megabyte was a good investment, but that a third megabyte was not.

**Analysis of Multiprogramming System Performance**

This model can also be used to analyze batch systems. Consider, for example, a computer center whose jobs average 80 percent I/O wait time. On a particular morning, four jobs are submitted as shown in Fig. 4-3(a). The first job, arriving at 10:00 A.M., requires 4 minutes of CPU time. With 80 percent I/O
wait, the job uses only 12 seconds of CPU time for each minute it is sitting in memory, even if no other jobs are competing with it for the CPU. The other 48 seconds are spent waiting for I/O to complete. Thus the job will have to sit in memory for at least 20 minutes in order to get 4 minutes of CPU work done, even in the absence of competition for the CPU.

From 10:00 A.M. to 10:10 A.M., job 1 is all by itself in memory and gets 2 minutes of work done. When job 2 arrives at 10:10 A.M., the CPU utilization increases from 0.20 to 0.36, due to the higher degree of multiprogramming (see Fig. 4-2). However, with round robin scheduling, each job gets half of the CPU, so each job gets 0.18 minutes of CPU work done for each minute it is in memory. Notice that the addition of a second job costs the first job only 10 percent of its performance (from 0.20 to 0.18 minutes of CPU per minute of real time).

At 10:15 A.M. the third job arrives. At this point job 1 has received 2.9 minutes of CPU and job 2 has had 0.9 minutes of CPU. With three-way multiprogramming, each job gets 0.16 minutes of CPU time per minute of real time, as shown in Fig. 4-3(b). From 10:15 A.M. to 10:20 A.M. each of the three jobs gets 0.8 minutes of CPU time. At 10:20 A.M. a fourth job arrives. Fig. 4-3(c) shows the complete sequence of events.

**Fig. 4-3.** (a) Arrival and work requirements of four jobs. (b) CPU utilization for 1 to 4 jobs with 80 percent I/O wait. (c) Sequence of events as jobs arrive and finish. The numbers above the horizontal lines show how much CPU time, in minutes, each job gets in each interval.
4.1.3. Multiprogramming with Fixed Partitions

By now it should be clear that it is often useful to have more than one process in memory at once. The question is then: "How should memory be organized to achieve this goal?" The easiest way is simply to divide memory up into \( n \) (possibly unequal) partitions. This partitioning can, for example, be done manually by the operator when the system is started up.

When a job arrives, it can be put into the input queue for the smallest partition large enough to hold it. Since the partitions are fixed in this scheme, any space in a partition not used by a job is lost. In Fig. 4-4(a) we see how this system of fixed partitions and separate input queues looks.

![Diagram](image)

**Fig. 4-4.** (a) Fixed memory partitions with separate input queues for each partition. (b) Fixed memory partitions with a single input queue.

The disadvantage of sorting the incoming jobs into separate queues becomes apparent when the queue for a large partition is empty but the queue for a small partition is full, as is the case for partitions 1 and 4 in Fig. 4-4(a). An alternative organization is to maintain a single queue as in Fig. 4-4(b). Whenever a partition becomes free, the job closest to the front of the queue that fits in it could be loaded into the empty partition and run. Since it is undesirable to waste a large partition on a small job, a different strategy is to search the whole input queue whenever a partition becomes free and pick the largest job that fits. Note that the latter algorithm discriminates against small jobs as being unworthy of having a whole partition, whereas usually it is desirable to give the smallest jobs the best service, not the worst.

This system, with fixed partitions set up by the operator in the morning and not changed thereafter, was used by OS/360 on large IBM mainframes for many
years. It was called MFT (Multiprogramming with a Fixed number of Tasks or OS/MFT). It is simple to understand and equally simple to implement: incoming jobs are queued until a suitable partition is available, at which time the job is loaded into that partition and run until it terminates.

Relocation and Protection

Multiprogramming introduces two essential problems that must be solved—relocation and protection. Look at Fig. 4-4. From the figure it is clear that different jobs will be run at different addresses. When a program is linked (i.e., the main program, user-written procedures, and library procedures are combined into a single address space), the linker must know at what address the program will begin in memory.

For example, suppose that the first instruction is a call to a procedure at relative address 100 within the binary file produced by the linker. If this program is loaded in partition 1, that instruction will jump to absolute address 100, which is inside the operating system. What is needed is a call to 100K + 100. If the program is loaded into partition 2, it must be carried out as a call to 200K + 100, and so on. This problem is known as the relocation problem.

One possible solution is to actually modify the instructions as the program is loaded into memory. Programs loaded into partition 1 have 100K added to each address, programs loaded into partition 2 have 200K added to addresses, and so forth. To perform relocation during loading like this, the linker must include in the binary program a list or bit map telling which program words are addresses to be relocated and which are opcodes, constants, or other items that must not be relocated. OS/MFT worked this way. Some microcomputers also work like this.

Relocation during loading does not solve the protection problem. A malicious program can always construct a new instruction and jump to it. Because programs in this system use absolute memory addresses rather than addresses relative to a register, there is no way to stop a program from building an instruction that reads or writes any word in memory. In multiuser systems, it is undesirable to let processes read and write memory belonging to other users.

The solution that IBM chose for protecting the 360 was to divide memory into blocks of 2K bytes and assign a 4-bit protection code to each block. The PSW contained a 4-bit key. The 360 hardware trapped any attempt by a running process to access memory whose protection code differed from the PSW key. Since only the operating system could change the protection codes and key, user processes were prevented from interfering with one another and with the operating system itself.

An alternative solution to both the relocation and protection problems is to equip the machine with two special hardware registers, called the base and limit registers. When a process is scheduled, the base register is loaded with the address of the start of its partition, and the limit register is loaded with the length of the partition. Every memory address generated automatically has the base
register contents added to it before being sent to memory. Thus if the base register is 100K, a CALL 100 instruction is effectively turned into a CALL 100K + 100 instruction, without the instruction itself being modified. Addresses are also checked against the limit register to make sure that they do not attempt to address memory outside the current partition. The hardware protects the base and limit registers to prevent user programs from modifying them. The IBM PC uses a weaker version of this scheme—it has base registers (the segment registers), but no limit registers (see Appendix B).

An additional advantage of using a base register for relocation is that a program can be moved in memory after it has started execution. After it has been moved, all that needs to be done to make it ready to run is change the value of the base register. When the relocation is done by modifying the program as it is loaded, it cannot be moved without going through the entire modification process again.

4.2. SWAPPING

With a batch system, organizing memory into fixed partitions is simple and effective. As long as enough jobs can be kept in memory to keep the CPU busy all the time, there is no reason to use anything more complicated. With timesharing, the situation is different: there are normally more users than there is memory to hold all their processes, so it is necessary to keep excess processes on disk. To run these processes, they must be brought into main memory, of course. Moving processes from main memory to disk and back is called swapping, and is the subject of the following sections.

4.2.1. Multiprogramming wit.: Variable Partitions

In principle, a swapping system could be based on fixed partitions. Whenever a process blocked, it could be moved to the disk and another process brought into its partition from the disk. In practice, fixed partitions are unattractive when memory is scarce because too much of it is wasted by programs that are smaller than their partitions. A different memory management algorithm is used instead. It is known as variable partitions.

When variable partitions are used, the number and size of the processes in memory vary dynamically throughout the day. Figure 4-5 shows how variable partitions work. Initially only process A is in memory. Then processes B and C are created or swapped in from disk. In Fig. 4-5(d) A terminates or is swapped out to disk. Then D comes in and B goes out. Finally E comes in.

The main difference between the fixed partitions of Fig. 4-4 and the variable partitions of Fig. 4-5 is that the number, location, and size of the partitions vary dynamically in the latter as processes come and go, whereas they are fixed in the former. The flexibility of not being tied to a fixed number of partitions that may
be too large or too small improves memory utilization but it also complicates allocating and deallocating memory, as well as keeping track of it.

It is possible to combine all the holes into one big one by moving all the processes downward as far as possible. This technique is known as memory compaction. It is usually not done because it requires a lot of CPU time. For example, on a 1M micro that can copy 1 byte per microsec (1 megabyte/sec), it takes 1 sec to compact all of memory. It is, however, done on the large CDC Cyber mainframes because they have special hardware that can compact at a rate of 40 megabytes/sec.

A point that is worth making concerns how much memory should be allocated for a process when it is created or swapped in. If processes are created with a fixed size that never changes, then the allocation is simple: you allocate exactly what is needed, no more and no less.

If, however, processes’ data segments can grow, for example, by dynamically allocating memory from a heap, as in many programming languages, a problem occurs whenever a process tries to grow. If a hole is adjacent to the process, it can be allocated and the process allowed to grow into the hole. On the other hand, if the process is adjacent to another process, the growing process will either have to be moved to a hole in memory large enough for it, or one or more processes will have to be swapped out to create a large enough hole. If a process cannot grow in memory and the swap area on the disk is full, the process will have to be killed.

If it is expected that most processes will grow as they run, it is probably a good idea to allocate a little extra memory whenever a process is swapped in or moved, to reduce the overhead associated with moving or swapping processes that no longer fit in their allocated memory. However, when swapping processes to disk, only the memory actually in use should be swapped; it is wasteful to
swap the extra memory as well. In Fig. 4-6(a) we see a memory configuration in which space for growth has been allocated to two processes.

![Diagram](image)

**Fig. 4-6.** (a) Allocating space for a growing data segment. (b) Allocating space for a growing stack and a growing data segment.

If processes can have two growing segments, for example, the data segment being used as a heap and the stack, an alternative arrangement suggests itself, namely that of Fig. 4-6(b). In this figure we see that each process has a stack at the top of its allocated memory growing downward, and a data segment just beyond the program text, growing upward. The memory between them can be used for either segment. If it runs out, either the process will have to be moved to a hole with enough space, swapped out of memory until a large enough hole can be created, or killed.

In general terms, there are three ways of keeping track of memory usage: bit maps, lists, and buddy systems. In the following sections we will look at each of these in turn.

### 4.2.2. Memory Management with Bit Maps

With a bit map, memory is divided up into allocation units, perhaps as small as a few words and perhaps as large as several kilobytes. Corresponding to each allocation unit is a bit in the bit map, which is 0 if the unit is free and 1 if it is occupied (or vice versa). Figure 4-7 shows part of memory and the corresponding bit map.

The size of the allocation unit is an important design issue. The smaller the allocation unit, the larger the bit map. However, even with an allocation unit as small as 4 bytes, 32 bits of memory will require only 1 bit of the map. A
memory of 32n bits will use n map bits, so the bit map will take up only 3 percent of memory. If the allocation unit is chosen large, the bit map will be small, but appreciable memory may be wasted in the last unit if the process size is not an exact multiple of the allocation unit.

A bit map provides a simple way to keep track of memory words in a fixed amount of memory because the size of the bit map depends only on the size of memory and the size of the allocation unit. The main problem with it is that when it has been decided to bring a k word process into memory, the memory manager must search the bit map to find a run of k consecutive 0 bits in the map. Searching a bit map for a run of a given length is a slow operation, so in practice, bit maps are not often used.

4.2.3. Memory Management with Linked Lists

Another way of keeping track of memory is maintaining a linked list of allocated and free memory segments, where a segment is either a process or a hole between two processes. The memory of Fig. 4-7(a) is represented in Fig. 4-7(c) as a linked list of segments. Each entry in the list specifies a hole (H) or process (P), the address at which it starts, the length, and a pointer to the next entry.

In this example, the segment list is kept sorted by address. Sorting this way has the advantage that when a process terminates or is swapped out, updating the list is straightforward. A terminating process normally has two neighbors (except when it is at the very top or bottom of memory). These may be either processes or holes, leading to the four combinations of Fig. 4-8. In Fig. 4-8(a) updating the list requires replacing a P by an H. In Fig. 4-8(b) and Fig. 4-8(c), two entries are coalesced into one, and the list becomes one entry shorter. In Fig. 4-8(d), three entries are merged and two items are removed from the list. Since the process table slot for the terminating process will normally point to the
list entry for the process itself, it may be more convenient to have the list as a double-linked list, rather than the single-linked list of Fig. 4-7(c). This is done to find the previous entry and to see if a merge is possible.

![Fig. 4-8. Four neighbor combinations for the terminating process, X.](image)

When the processes and holes are kept on a list sorted by address, several algorithms can be used to allocate memory for a newly created or swapped in process. We assume that the memory manager knows how much memory to allocate. The simplest algorithm is first fit. The memory manager scans along the list of segments until it finds a hole that is big enough. The hole is then broken up into two pieces, one for the process and one for the unused memory, except in the unlikely case of an exact fit. First fit is a fast algorithm because it searches as little as possible.

A minor variation of first fit is next fit. It works the same way as first fit, except that it keeps track of where it is when it finds a suitable hole. The next time it is called, it starts searching from where it left off, instead of always at the beginning, as first fit does. Simulations by Bays (1977) show that next fit gives slightly worse performance than first fit.

Another well-known algorithm is best fit. Best fit searches the entire list and takes the smallest hole that is adequate. Rather than breaking up a big hole that might be needed later, best fit tries to find a hole that is close to the actual size needed.

As an example of first fit and best fit, consider Fig. 4-7 again. If a block of size 2 is needed, first fit will allocate the hole at 5, but best fit will allocate the hole at 18.

Best fit is slower than first fit because it must search the entire list every time it is called. Somewhat surprisingly, it also results in more wasted memory than first fit or next fit because it tends to fill up memory with tiny, useless holes. First fit generates larger holes on the average.

To get around the problem of breaking up nearly exact matches into a process and a tiny hole, one could think about worst fit, that is, always take the largest available hole, so that the hole broken off will be big enough to be useful. Simulation has shown that worst fit is not a very good idea.

All four algorithms can be speeded up by maintaining separate lists for processes and holes. In this way, all of them devote their full energy to inspecting holes, not processes. The price paid for this speedup on allocation is the
additional complexity and slowdown when deallocating memory, since a freed
segment has to be removed from the process list and inserted into the hole list.

If distinct lists are maintained for processes and holes, the hole list may be
kept sorted on size, to make best fit faster. When best fit searches a list of holes
from smallest to largest, as soon as it finds a hole that fits, it knows that the hole
is the smallest one that will do the job, hence the best fit. With a hole list sorted
by size, first fit and best fit are equally fast, and next fit is pointless.

When the holes are kept on separate lists from the processes, a small optimi-
ization is possible. Instead of having a separate set of data structures for main-
taining the hole list, as is done in Fig. 4-7(c), the holes themselves can be used.
The first word of each hole could be the hole size, and the second word a pointer
to the following entry. The nodes of the list of Fig. 4-7(c), which require three
words and one bit (P/H), are no longer needed.

Yet another allocation algorithm is quick fit, which maintains separate lists
for some of the more common sizes requested. For example, it might have a
table with \( n \) entries, in which the first entry was a pointer to the head of a list of
4K holes, the second entry was a pointer to a list of 8K holes, the third entry a
pointer to 12K holes, and so on. Holes of say, 21K, could either be put on the
20K list or on a special list of odd-sized holes. With quick fit, finding a hole of
the required size is extremely fast, but it has the same disadvantage as all
schemes that sort by hole size, namely, when a process terminates or is swapped
out, finding its neighbors to see if a merge is possible is expensive. If merging is
not done, memory will quickly fragment into a large number of small, useless
holes.

If we drop our implicit assumption that nothing is known in advance about
the probability distribution of requested sizes and process lifetimes, then various
other algorithms become applicable. The work of Oldehoeft and Allan (1985),
Stephenson (1983), and Beck (1982) describes some of the possibilities.

4.2.4. Memory Management with the Buddy System

We saw in the previous section that keeping all the holes on one or more lists
sorted by hole size made allocation very fast, but deallocation slow because all
the hole lists had to be searched to find the deallocated segment’s neighbors. The
buddy system (Knuth 1973; Knowlton 1965) is a memory management algorithm
that takes advantage of the fact that computers use binary numbers for addressing
in order to speed up the merging of adjacent holes when a process terminates or
is swapped out.

It works like this. The memory manager maintains a list of free blocks of
size 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, etc., bytes, up to the size of memory. With a 1M memory,
for example, 21 such lists are needed, ranging from 1 byte to 1 megabyte. Ini-
tially, all of memory is free, and the 1M list has a single entry containing a sin-
gle 1M hole. The other lists are empty. The initial memory configuration is
shown in Fig. 4-9 in the top row.
Now let us see how the buddy system works when a 70K process is swapped into an empty 1M memory. As the hole lists are only for powers of 2, 128K will be requested, that being the smallest power of 2 that is big enough. No 128K block is available, nor are blocks for 256K or 512K. Thus the 1M block is split into two 512K blocks, called buddies, one at memory address 0 and the other at memory address 512K. One of these, the one at 0, is then split into two 256K buddy blocks, one at 0 and one at 256K. The lower of these is then split into two 128K blocks, and the one at address 0 (marked A in Fig. 4-9) is allocated to the process.

Next, a 35K process is swapped in. This time we round 35K up to a power of 2 and discover that no 64K blocks are available, so we split the 128K block into two 64K buddies, one at 128K and one at 192K. The block at 128K is allocated to the process, marked as B in Fig. 4-9. The third request is for 80K.

Now let us see what happens when a block is returned. Imagine that 128K block A (of which only 70K is used) is freed at this point. It just goes on the free list for 128K blocks at this point. Now a 60K block is needed, so a check is made to see if any sufficiently large blocks are available. The 64K block located at address 192K will do so it is allocated.

Now block B is returned. At this point we have a 128K block at 0 and a 64K block at 128K that are free. No merging is possible yet. Note that even if the 128K block at 0 had been split into a 64K block at 0 that was in use and a free block at 64K, no merging could occur. When block D is returned, we can reconstruct the 256K block at address 0. Finally, when block C is returned, we return to the initial configuration of a single hole of 1M.

Buddy systems have an advantage over algorithms that sort blocks by size but not necessarily at addresses that are multiples of the block size. The advantage is that when a block of size $2^k$ bytes is freed, the memory manager has to search only the list of $2^k$ holes to see if a merge is possible. With other algorithms that
allow memory blocks to be split in arbitrary ways, all the hole lists must be searched. The result is that the buddy system is fast.

Unfortunately, it is also extremely inefficient in terms of memory utilization. The problem comes from the fact that all requests must be rounded up to a power of 2. A 35K process must be allocated 64K. The extra 29K is just wasted. This form of overhead is known as **internal fragmentation** because the wasted memory is internal to the allocated segments. In Fig. 4-5 we have holes **between** the segments, but no wasted space **within** the segments. This form of waste is called **external fragmentation** or **checkerboarding**.

Various authors (e.g., Peterson and Norman, 1977; Kaufman, 1984) have modified the buddy system in various ways to try to get around some of its problems.

### 4.2.5. Allocation of Swap Space

The algorithms presented above are for keeping track of main memory so that when processes are swapped in, the system can find space for them. In some systems, when a process is in memory, no disk space is allocated to it. When it must be swapped out, space must be allocated in the disk swap area for it. On each swap, it may be placed somewhere else on disk. The algorithms for managing swap space are the same ones used for managing main memory.

In other systems, when a process is created, swap space is allocated for it on disk (using one of the algorithms we have studied). Whenever the process is swapped out, it is always swapped to its allocated space, rather than going to a different place each time. When the process exits, the swap space is deallocated.

The only difference is that disk space for a process must be allocated as an integral number of disk blocks. Therefore, a process of size 13.5K using a disk with 1K blocks will be rounded up to 14K before the free disk space data structures are searched.

### 4.2.6. Analysis of Swapping Systems

The free list and bit map algorithms lead to a form of external fragmentation that is easy to analyze. Imagine a simulation run to determine how much memory is wasted in holes at any instant. The simulator might start at 0, generating segment sizes at random, and marking them as process or hole, also at random. This simulation would lead to as many holes as processes. However, if adjacent holes were then merged, the number of holes would become smaller than the number of segments.

The ratio of holes to processes can be found by the following analysis (Knuth, 1973). Consider an average process in the middle of memory after the system has come to equilibrium. During its stay in memory, half of the operations on the segment just above it will be process allocations and half will be process deallocations. Thus, half the time it has another process as upper neighbor,
and half the time it has a hole as upper neighbor. Averaged over time, there must be half as many holes as processes. In other words, if the mean number of processes in memory is \( n \), the mean number of holes is \( n/2 \). This result is known as the **fifty percent rule**.

The fifty percent rule has its origin in a fundamental asymmetry between processes and holes. When two holes are adjacent in memory, they are merged into a single hole. Adjacent processes are not merged. This mechanism systematically reduces the number of holes.

Another useful result is the **unused memory rule**. Let \( f \) be the fraction of memory occupied by holes, \( s \) be the average size of the \( n \) processes, and \( ks \) be the average hole size for some \( k > 0 \). With a total memory of \( m \) bytes, the \( n/2 \) holes occupy \( m - ns \) bytes. Algebraically,

\[
(n/2) \times ks = m - ns
\]

Solving this equation for \( m \), we get

\[
m = ns(1 + k/2)
\]

The fraction of memory in holes is just the number of holes, \( n/2 \), times the average hole size, \( ks \), divided by the total memory, \( m \), or

\[
f = \frac{nks/2}{m} = \frac{nks/2}{ns(1 + k/2)} = \frac{k}{k + 2}
\]

As an example, if the average hole is \( 1/2 \) as large as the average process, \( k = 1/2 \), and 20 percent of the memory will be wasted in holes. If we reduce the average hole size to \( 1/4 \) of the average process size, for example, by using best fit instead of first fit, the wastage will drop to about 11 percent. As long as the average hole size is an appreciable fraction of the average process size, a substantial amount of memory will be wasted.

### 4.3. VIRTUAL MEMORY

Many years ago people were first confronted with programs that were too big to fit in the available memory. The solution usually adopted was to split the program into pieces, called **overlays**. Overlay 0 would start running first. When it was done, it would call another overlay. Some overlay systems were highly complex, allowing multiple overlays in memory at once. The overlays were kept on the disk and swapped in and out of memory by the operating system.

Although the actual work of swapping overlays in and out was done by the system, the work of splitting the program into pieces had to be done by the programmer. Splitting up large programs into small, modular pieces was time consuming and boring. It did not take long before someone thought of a way to turn the whole job over to the computer.
The method that was devised (Fotheringham, 1961) has come to be known as **virtual memory**. The basic idea behind virtual memory is that the combined size of the program, data, and stack may exceed the amount of physical memory available for it. The operating system keeps those parts of the program currently in use in main memory, and the rest on the disk. For example, a 1M program can run on a 256K machine by carefully choosing which 256K to keep in memory at each instant, with pieces of the program being swapped between disk and memory as needed.

Virtual memory can also work in a multiprogramming system. For example, eight 1M programs can each be allocated a 256K partition in a 2M memory, with each program operating as though it had its own, private 256K machine. In fact, virtual memory and multiprogramming fit together very well. While a program is waiting for part of itself to be swapped in, it is waiting for I/O and cannot run, so the CPU can be given to another process.

### 4.3.1. Paging

Most virtual memory systems use a technique called **paging**, which we will now describe. On any computer, there exists a set of memory addresses that programs can produce. When a program uses an instruction like \texttt{MOVE \textit{REG},1000}, it is moving the contents of memory address 1000 to \textit{REG} (or vice versa, depending on the computer). Addresses can be generated using indexing, base registers, segment registers, and other ways.

These program-generated addresses are called **virtual addresses** and form the **virtual address space**. On computers without virtual memory, the virtual address is put directly onto the memory bus and causes the physical memory word with the same address to be read or written. When virtual memory is used, the virtual addresses do not go directly to the memory bus. Instead, they go to a **memory management unit** (MMU), a chip or collection of chips that maps the virtual addresses onto the physical memory addresses as illustrated in Fig. 4-10.

![Fig. 4-10. The position and function of the MMU.](image-url)
An example of how this mapping works is shown in Fig. 4-11. In this example, we have a computer that can generate 16-bit addresses, from 0 up to 64K. These are the virtual addresses. This computer, however, has only 32K of physical memory, so although 64K programs can be written, they cannot be loaded into memory in their entirety and run. A complete copy of a program's core image, up to 64K, must be present on the disk, however, so that pieces can be brought in by the system as needed.

The virtual address space is divided up into units called pages. The corresponding units in the physical memory are called page frames. The pages and page frames are always the same size. In this example they are 4K, but page sizes of 512 bytes, 1K, and 2K are also commonly used. With 64K of virtual address space and 32K of physical memory, we have 16 virtual pages and 8 page frames. Transfers between memory and disk are always in units of a page.

![Virtual address space and mapping to physical memory addresses](image)

**Fig. 4-11.** The relation between virtual addresses and physical memory addresses is given by the page table.

When the program tries to access address 0, for example, using the instruction MOVE REG,0, the virtual address 0 is sent to the MMU. The MMU sees that this virtual address falls in page 0 (0 to 4095), which according to its mapping is page frame 2 (8192 to 12287). It thus transforms the address to 8192 and outputs address 8192 onto the bus. The memory board knows nothing at all about the MMU, and just sees a request for reading or writing address 8192, which it honors. Thus, the MMU has effectively mapped all virtual addresses between 0 and 4095 onto physical addresses 8192 to 12287.

Similarly, an instruction MOVE REG,8192 is effectively transformed into
MOVE REG,24576 because virtual address 8192 is in virtual page 2 and this page is mapped onto physical page frame 6 (physical addresses 24576 to 28671). As a third example, virtual address 21500 is 20 bytes from the start of virtual page 5 (virtual addresses 20480 to 24575) and maps onto physical address 12288 + 20 = 12308.

By itself, this ability to map the 16 virtual pages onto any of the eight page frames by setting the MMU’s map appropriately does not solve the problem that the virtual address space is larger than the physical memory. Since we have only eight physical page frames, only eight of the virtual pages in Fig. 4-11 are mapped onto physical memory. The others, shown as a cross in the figure, are not mapped. In the actual hardware, a present/absent bit in each entry keeps track of whether the page is mapped or not.

What happens if the program tries to use an unmapped page, for example, by using the instruction MOVE REG,32780, which is byte 12 within virtual page 8 (starting at 32768)? The MMU notices that the page is unmapped (indicated by a cross in the figure), and causes the CPU to trap to the operating system. This trap is called a page fault. The operating system picks a little-used page frame and writes its contents back to the disk. It then fetches the page just referenced into the page frame just freed, changes the map, and restarts the trapped instruction.

For example, if the operating system decided to evict page frame 1, it would load virtual page 8 at physical address 4K and make two changes to the MMU map. First, it would mark virtual page 1’s entry as unmapped, to trap any future accesses to virtual addresses between 4K and 8K. Then it would replace the cross in virtual page 8’s entry with a 1, so that when the trapped instruction is re-executed, it will map virtual address 32780 onto physical address 4108.

Now let us look inside the MMU to see how it works and why we have chosen to use a page size that is a power of 2. In Fig. 4-12 we see an example of a virtual address, 8196 (0010000000000100 in binary), being mapped using the MMU map of Fig. 4-11. The incoming 16-bit virtual address is split up into a 4-bit page number and a 12-bit offset within the page. With 4 bits for the page number, we can represent 16 pages, and with 12 bits for the offset, we can address all 4096 bytes within a page.

The page number is used as an index into the page table, yielding the page frame corresponding to that virtual page. If the present/absent bit is 0, a trap is caused. If it is 1, the page frame number found in the page table is copied to the high-order 3 bits of the output register, along with the 12-bit offset, which is copied unmodified from the incoming virtual address. The output register is then put onto the memory bus as the physical memory address.

### 4.3.2. Segmentation

Paging provides a technique for implementing a large linear address space in a limited physical memory. For some applications, a two-dimensional address
space is more convenient. Ideally, each program should have a very large number of segments (e.g., $2^{32}$), each consisting of a large number of bytes (e.g., also $2^{32}$). The first, say, 64K segments could be reserved for procedures, data, stacks, and heaps, belonging to the running program. The remaining segments could each contain one file per segment, so that processes could directly address all their files, without having to open them and use special I/O primitives to read and write them. Each file could grow and shrink completely independently of the others in this arrangement, with each byte of memory addressed by a (segment, offset) pair.

The MULTICS system designers (Corbato and Vyssotsky, 1965; Daley and Neumann, 1965; Organick, 1972) attempted to build a segmented system of this type, with moderate success. MULTICS had only 36 bits of addressing, which eventually proved to be inadequate. No major system since that time has attempted anything quite so grand, although the idea of using a very large segmented memory to eliminate file I/O is still as attractive as ever.

In the MULTICS design, the idea was that each segment should support a logical entity, such as a file, procedure, or array. Thus, unlike paging, where the
programmer is generally unaware of the page boundaries, with segmentation the programmer (or the compiler) made a definite attempt to put different objects in different segments. This strategy facilitated the sharing of objects among multiple processes.

The idea of a segmented memory has survived to this date. In a much watered-down form, it is common in many 68000-based microcomputers. A typical implementation provides hardware support for up to 16 processes, each with 1024 2K or 4K pages. If we stick to 4K pages for this example, each process has a 4M virtual address space, consisting of 1024 pages of 4K each.

This scheme could be implemented by giving each process its own page table with 1024 page frame numbers, but it is generally not implemented that way. Instead, the MMU hardware contains a table with 16 sections, one for each of up to 16 processes. Each section has 64 segment descriptors, so the address space of each 4M process is divided up into 64 segments, each containing 16 pages. The segment and page tables are depicted in Fig. 4-13(a).

![Segment and page tables](image)

**Fig. 4-13.** (a) MMU used in many 68000-based microcomputer systems. (b) Virtual address for a 4M system.
Each of the segment descriptors contains the segment length (0 to 16 pages), protection bits telling whether the segment can be read or written, and a pointer to the page table itself. The page tables each contain up to 16 entries, with each entry pointing to a page frame in memory (actually, holding the page frame number).

When the operating system starts up a process, it loads a 4-bit process number into a special hardware register. Whenever that process references memory, the MMU translates the virtual address as follows. It takes the 4-bit process number and the 6 high-order bits of the 22-bit virtual address (needed to address 4M) and combines them into a 10-bit number used to index into the segment table and locate the relevant segment descriptor.

It then checks the protection bits in the segment descriptor to see if the access is allowed. If access is allowed, the MMU then checks the page number extracted from the virtual address against the segment length field in the segment descriptor, to see if the segment is long enough. If it is long enough, the page number is used as an index into the page table, whose address is provided in the segment descriptor. (All the page tables are kept in a special fast memory inside the MMU.) Once the page frame number is found, it is combined with the offset field of the virtual address to form the physical memory address, which is then put out onto the bus.

One of the key features of this MMU design is that when the operating system does a process switch, all it has to do is change the 4-bit process number register. It does not have to reload all the segment or page tables. Two or more processes can share a segment by just having their segment descriptors point to the same page table. Any changes made to the pages of that segment by any process are automatically visible to the other ones.

While the design of Fig. 4-13 provides each of 16 processes with only 64 segments of 64K each, the idea can easily be extended to larger address spaces at the price of requiring more table space within the MMU. Most of the table space is for the page tables. If we had four times as much page table memory inside the MMU and were content with 4 processes instead of 16, the MMU could support 64 1M segments per process.

While this address space is clearly not enough to hold all the files a single user owns, it is beginning to get closer to at least holding all the files that a given process needs while it is running. After all, not many programs need more than, say, 50 files, and most files are well below 1M.

It is worth pointing out that the segmentation scheme of Fig. 4-13 is not the only one possible. In the MULTICS system, for example, each process had a segment table stored in main memory. Each table entry pointed to a page table, also stored in main memory. The segment and page tables could be so large that they themselves were paged. Special hardware was present to avoid having to reference the segment and page tables for pages that were heavily used. This hardware stored the 16 most recently used (segment, page) entries in an associative memory for fast lookup.
4.4. PAGE REPLACEMENT ALGORITHMS

When a page fault occurs, the operating system has to choose a page to remove from memory to make room for the page that has to be brought in. If the page to be removed has been modified while in memory, it must be rewritten to the disk to bring the disk copy up to date. If, however, the page has not been changed (e.g., a page contains program text), the disk copy is already up to date, so no rewrite is needed. The page to be read in just overwrites the page being evicted.

While it would be possible to pick a random page to replace at each page fault, system performance is much better if a page that is not heavily used is chosen. If a heavily used page is removed, it will probably have to be brought back in quickly, resulting in extra overhead. Much work has been done on the subject of page replacement algorithms, both theoretical and experimental. The bibliography by Smith (1978) lists over 300 papers on the subject. In the following sections we will describe some of the more interesting algorithms that have been found.

4.4.1. Optimal Page Replacement

The best possible page replacement algorithm is easy to describe but impossible to implement. The algorithm goes like this. At the moment that a page fault occurs, some set of pages is in memory. One of these pages will be referenced on the very next instruction (the page containing that instruction). Other pages may not be referenced until 10, 100, or perhaps 1000 instructions later. Each page can be labeled with the number of instructions that will be executed before that page is first referenced.

The optimal page algorithm simply says that the page with the highest label should be removed. If one page will not be used for 8 million instructions and another page will not be used for 6 million instructions, removing the former pushes the page fault that will fetch it back as far into the future as possible. Computers, like people, try to put off unpleasant events for as long as they can.

The only problem with this algorithm is that it is unrealizable. At the time of the page fault, the operating system has no way of knowing when each of the pages will be referenced next. (We saw a similar situation earlier with the shortest job first scheduling algorithm—how can the system tell which job is shortest?) Still, by running a program on a simulator and keeping track of all page references, it is possible to implement optimal page replacement on the second run by using the page reference information collected on the first run.

In this way it is possible to compare the performance of realizable algorithms with the best possible one. If an operating system achieves a performance of, say, only 1 percent worse than the optimal algorithm, effort spent in looking for a better algorithm will yield at most a 1 percent improvement.
4.4.2. Not-Recently-Used Page Replacement

In order to allow the operating system to collect useful statistics about which pages are being used and which ones are not, most computers with virtual memory have two bits associated with each page. One bit, the \textbf{R} or \textbf{referenced bit}, is set by the hardware on any read or write to the page. The other bit, the \textbf{M} or \textbf{Modified bit}, is set by the hardware when a page is written (i.e., a byte on it is stored into). It is important to realize that these bits must be updated on every memory reference, so it is essential that they be set by the hardware. Once a bit has been set to 1, it stays a 1 until the operating system resets it to 0 in software.

If the hardware does not have \textit{R} and \textit{M} bits, they can be simulated as follows. When a process is started up, all of its page table entries are marked as not in memory. As soon as any page is referenced, a page fault will occur. The operating system then sets the \textit{R} bit (in its internal tables), changes the page table entry to point to the correct page, with mode READ ONLY, and restarts the instruction. If the page is subsequently written on, another page fault will occur, allowing the operating system to set the \textit{M} bit and change the page's mode to READ/WRITE.

The \textit{R} and \textit{M} bits can be used to build a simple paging algorithm as follows. When a process is started up, both page bits for all its pages are set to 0 by the operating system. Periodically (e.g., on each clock interrupt), the \textit{R} bit is cleared, to distinguish pages that have not been referenced recently from those that have been.

When a page fault occurs, the operating system inspects all the pages and divides them into four categories based on the current values of their \textit{R} and \textit{M} bits:

- Class 0: not referenced, not modified.
- Class 1: not referenced, modified.
- Class 2: referenced, not modified.
- Class 3: referenced, modified.

Although class 1 pages seem, at first glance, impossible, they occur when a class 3 page has its \textit{R} bit cleared by a clock interrupt. Clock interrupts do not clear the \textit{M} bit because this information is needed to know whether the page has to be rewritten to disk or not.

The \textbf{not recently used} or \textbf{NRU} algorithm removes a page at random from the lowest numbered nonempty class. Implicit in this algorithm is that it is better to remove a modified page that has not been referenced in at least one clock tick (typically 20 msec) than a clean page that is in heavy use. The main attraction of NRU is that it is easy to understand, efficient to implement, and gives a performance that, while certainly not optimal, is often adequate.
4.4.3. First-In, First-Out Page Replacement

Another low-overhead paging algorithm is first-in, first-out or FIFO. To illustrate how this works, consider a supermarket that has enough shelves to display exactly \( k \) different products. One day, some company introduces a new convenience food—instant, freeze-dried, organic yogurt that can be reconstituted in a microwave oven. It is an immediate success, so our finite supermarket has to get rid of one old product in order to stock it.

One possibility is to find the product that the supermarket has been stocking the longest (i.e., something it began selling 120 years ago), and get rid of it on the grounds that no one is interested any more. In effect, the supermarket maintains a linked list of all the products it currently sells in the order they were introduced. The new one goes on the back of the list, and the one at the front of the list is dropped.

As a page replacement algorithm, the same idea is applicable. The operating system maintains a list of all pages currently in memory, with the page at the head of the list the oldest one and the page at the tail the most recent arrival. On a page fault, the page at the head is removed and the new page added to the tail of the list. When applied to stores, FIFO might remove mustache wax, but it might also remove flour, salt, or butter. When applied to computers the same problem arises.

A simple modification to FIFO that avoids the problem of throwing out a heavily used page is to inspect the \( R \) and \( M \) bits of the oldest page. If the page belongs to class 0 (not referenced, not modified), it is evicted, otherwise, the next oldest page is inspected, and so forth. If no class 0 pages are present in memory, then the algorithm is repeated up to three more times looking for class 1, 2, and 3 pages.

Another variation on FIFO is second chance. The idea here is to first inspect the oldest page as a potential victim. If its \( R \) bit is 0, the page is replaced immediately. If the \( R \) bit is 1, the bit is cleared and the page is put onto the end of the list of pages, as though it had just arrived in memory. Then the search continues. What second chance is doing is looking for an old page that has not been referenced in the previous clock interval. If all the pages have been referenced, second chance degenerates into pure FIFO.

A minor technical variation of second chance is to keep all the pages on a circular list. Instead of putting pages at the end of the list to give them a second chance, the pointer to the "front" of the list is just advanced one page, giving the same effect. This variation is often called clock.

Intuitively, it might seem that the more page frames the memory has, the fewer page faults a program will get. Belady et al. (1969) discovered a counter example, in which FIFO caused more page faults with four page frames than with three. This strange situation has become known as Belady’s anomaly. It is illustrated in Fig. 4-14 for a program with five virtual pages, numbered from 0 to 4. The pages are referenced in the order
In Fig. 4-14(a) we see how with three page frames a total of nine page faults are caused. In Fig. 4-14(b) we get ten page faults with four page frames.

4.4.4. Least Recently Used Page Replacement

A good approximation to the optimal algorithm is based on the common observation that pages that have been heavily used in the last few instructions will probably be heavily used again in the next few. Conversely, pages that have not been used for a long time will probably remain unused for a long time. This observation suggests a realizable algorithm: when a page fault occurs, throw out the page that has been unused for the longest time. This strategy is called least recently used or LRU paging.

Although LRU is theoretically realizable, it is not cheap. To fully implement LRU, it is necessary to maintain a linked list of all pages in memory, with the most recently used page at the front and the least recently used page at the rear. The difficulty is that the list must be updated on every memory reference. Finding a page in the list, deleting it, and then moving it to the front is a very time consuming operation. Either (expensive) special hardware is needed, or we will have to find a cheaper approximation in software.

Searching and manipulating a linked list on every instruction is prohibitively slow, even in hardware. However, there are other ways to implement LRU with special hardware. Let us consider the simplest way first. This method requires equipping the hardware with a 64-bit counter, C, that is automatically
incremented after each instruction. Furthermore, each page table entry must also have a field large enough to contain the counter. After each memory reference, the current value of $C$ is stored in the page table entry for the page just referenced. When a page fault occurs, the operating system examines all the counters in the page table to find the lowest one. That page is the least recently used.

Now let us look at a second hardware LRU algorithm. For a machine with $n$ page frames, the LRU hardware must maintain a matrix of $n \times n$ bits, initially all zero. Whenever page frame $k$ is referenced, the hardware first sets all the bits of row $k$ to 1, then sets all the bits of column $k$ to 0. At any instant, the row whose binary value is lowest is the least recently used, the row whose value is next lowest is next least recently used, and so forth. The workings of this algorithm are given in Fig. 4-15 for four page frames and the page reference string 0 1 2 3 2 1 0 3 2 3

After page 0 is referenced we have the situation of Fig. 4-15(a), and so on.

4.4.5. Simulating LRU in Software

Although both of the previous algorithms are realizable, they are dependent on special hardware, and are of little use to the operating system designer who is making a system for a machine that does not have this hardware. Instead, a solution that can be implemented in software is needed. One possibility is called the not frequently used or NFU algorithm. It requires a software counter associated with each page, initially zero. At each clock interrupt, the operating system scans all the pages in memory. For each page, the $R$ bit, which is 0 or 1, is added to the counter. In effect, the counters are an attempt to keep track of how often each page has been referenced. When a page fault occurs, the page with the lowest counter is chosen for replacement.
The main problem with NFU is that it never forgets anything. For example, in a multipass compiler, pages that were heavily used during pass 1 may still have a high count well into later passes. In fact, if pass 1 happens to have the longest execution time of all the passes, the pages containing the code for subsequent passes will always have lower counts than the pass 1 pages. Consequently, the operating system will remove useful pages instead of pages that are no longer in use.

Fortunately, a small modification to NFU makes it able to simulate LRU quite well. The modification has two parts. First, the counters are each shifted right 1 bit before the \( R \) bit is added in. Second, the \( R \) bit is added to the leftmost, rather than the rightmost bit.

Figure 4-16 illustrates how the modified algorithm, known as **aging**, works. Suppose that after the first clock tick the \( R \) bits for pages 0 to 5 have the values 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, and 1 respectively (page 0 is 1, page 1 is 0, page 2 is 1, etc.). In other words, between tick 0 and tick 1, pages 0, 2, 4, and 5 were referenced, setting their \( R \) bits to 1, while the other ones remain 0. After the six corresponding counters have been shifted and the \( R \) bit inserted at the left, they have the values shown in Fig. 4-16(a). The four remaining columns show the six counters after the next four clock ticks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>R bits for pages 0-5, clock tick 0</th>
<th>R bits for pages 0-5, clock tick 1</th>
<th>R bits for pages 0-5, clock tick 2</th>
<th>R bits for pages 0-5, clock tick 3</th>
<th>R bits for pages 0-5, clock tick 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>10000000</td>
<td>11000000</td>
<td>11100000</td>
<td>11110000</td>
<td>01111000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>10000000</td>
<td>11000000</td>
<td>01100000</td>
<td>10110000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10000000</td>
<td>01000000</td>
<td>00100000</td>
<td>00010000</td>
<td>10001000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>00000000</td>
<td>10000000</td>
<td>01000000</td>
<td>00100000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>10000000</td>
<td>11000000</td>
<td>01100000</td>
<td>10110000</td>
<td>01011000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10000000</td>
<td>01000000</td>
<td>10100000</td>
<td>01010000</td>
<td>00101000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a)          (b)          (c)          (d)          (e)

**Fig. 4-16.** The aging algorithm simulates LRU in software. Shown are six pages for five clock ticks. The five clock ticks are represented by (a) to (e).

When a page fault occurs, the page whose counter is the lowest is removed. It is clear that a page that has not been referenced for, say, four clock ticks will have four leading zeros in its counter, and thus will have a lower value than a counter that has not been referenced for three clock ticks.

This algorithm differs from LRU in two ways. Consider pages 3 and 5 in
Fig. 4-16(e). Neither has been referenced for two clock ticks; both were referenced in the tick prior to that. According to LRU, if a page must be replaced, we should choose one of these two. The trouble is, we do not know which of these two was referenced last in the interval between tick 1 and tick 2. By recording only one bit per time interval, we have lost the ability to distinguish references early in the clock interval from those occurring later. All we can do is remove page 3, because page 5 was also referenced two ticks earlier and page 3 was not.

The second difference between LRU and aging is that in aging the counters have a finite number of bits, 8 bits in this example. Suppose two pages each have a counter value of 0. All we can do is pick one of them at random. In reality, it may well be that one of the pages was last referenced 9 ticks ago and the other was last referenced 1000 ticks ago. We have no way of seeing that. In practice, however, 8 bits is generally enough if a clock tick is around 20 msec. If a page has not been referenced in 160 msec, it probably is not that important.

4.5. DESIGN ISSUES FOR PAGING SYSTEMS

In the previous sections we have explained how paging works and have given a few of the basic page replacement algorithms. But knowing the bare mechanics is not enough. To design a system, you have to know a lot more to make it work well. It is like the difference between knowing how to move the rook, knight, bishop, and other pieces in chess, and being a good player. In the following sections, we will look at other issues that operating system designers must consider carefully in order to get good performance from a paging system.

4.5.1. The Working Set Model

In the purest form of paging, processes are started up with none of their pages in memory. As soon as the CPU tries to fetch the first instruction, it gets a page fault, causing the operating system to bring in the page containing the first instruction. Other page faults for global variables and the stack usually follow quickly. After a while, the process has most of the pages it needs and settles down to run with relatively few page faults. This strategy is called demand paging because pages are loaded only on demand, not in advance.

Of course, it is easy enough to write a test program that systematically reads all the pages in a large address space, causing so many page faults that there is not enough memory to hold them all. Fortunately, most processes do not work this way. They exhibit a locality of reference, meaning that during any phase of execution, the process references only a relatively small fraction of its pages. Each pass of a multipass compiler, for example, references only a fraction of all the pages, and a different fraction at that.
The set of pages that a process is currently using is called its **working set** (Denning, 1968a; Denning, 1980). If the entire working set is in memory, the process will run without causing many faults until it moves into another execution phase (e.g., the next pass of the compiler). If the available memory is too small to hold the entire working set, the process will cause many page faults and run very slowly since executing an instruction typically takes a microsecond and reading in a page from the disk typically takes tens of milliseconds. At a rate of one or two instructions per 30 milliseconds, it will take a long time to finish. A program causing page faults every few instructions is said to be **thrashing** (Denning, 1968b).

In a time-sharing system, processes are frequently moved to disk (i.e., all their pages are removed from memory) to let other processes have a turn at the CPU. The question arises of what to do when a process is brought back in again. Technically, nothing need be done. The process will just cause page faults until its working set has been loaded. The problem is that having 20, 50, or even 100 page faults every time a process is loaded is slow, and it also wastes considerable CPU time, since it takes the operating system a few milliseconds of CPU time to process a page fault.

Therefore, many paging systems try to keep track of each process’ working set, and make sure that it is in memory before letting the process run. This approach is called the **working set model** (Denning, 1970). It is designed to greatly reduce the page fault rate. Loading the pages **before** letting processes run is also called **prepaging**.

The most important property of the working set is its size. If the total size of the working sets of all the processes “in memory” exceeds the available memory, thrashing will occur. Note that the whole concept of being “in memory” is pretty fuzzy in a paging system. What is usually meant is that the system normally has a set of processes that it regards as runnable, regardless of which pages are actually in memory. The scheduler restricts its choices to processes in this set.

From time to time, this set is changed, and if the working set model is being used, the pages comprising the working sets of the newly runnable processes will be brought into memory. It is up to the operating system to make sure that the sum of the working sets of the runnable processes fits in memory, if need be, by reducing the degree of multiprogramming (i.e., having fewer runnable processes).

To implement the working set model, it is necessary for the operating system to keep track of which pages are in the working set. One way to monitor this information is to use the aging algorithm discussed above. Any page containing a 1 bit among the high order \( n \) bits of the counter is considered to be a member of the working set. If a page has not been referenced in \( n \) consecutive clock ticks, it is dropped from the working set. The parameter \( n \) has to be determined experimentally for each system, but the system performance is usually not especially sensitive to the exact value.
4.5.2. Local versus Global Allocation Policies

In the preceding sections we have discussed several algorithms for choosing a page to replace when a fault occurs. A major issue associated with this choice (which we have carefully swept under the rug until now) is how memory should be allocated among the competing runnable processes.

Take a look at Fig. 4-17(a). In this figure, three processes, A, B, and C, make up the set of runnable processes. Suppose A gets a page fault. Should the page replacement algorithm try to find the least recently used page considering only the six pages currently allocated to A, or should it consider all the pages in memory? If it looks only at A's pages, the page with the lowest age value is $A_5$, so we get the situation of Fig. 4-17(b).

![Fig. 4-17. Local versus global page replacement. (a) Original configuration. (b) Local page replacement. (c) Global page replacement.](image)

On the other hand, if the page with the lowest age value is removed without regard to whose page it is, page $B_3$ will be chosen and we will get the situation of Fig. 4-17(c). The algorithm of Fig. 4-17(b) is said to be a **local** page replacement algorithm, whereas Fig. 4-17(c) is said to be a **global** algorithm. Local algorithms correspond to assigning each process a fixed amount of memory. Global algorithms dynamically allocate page frames among the runnable processes.

In general, global algorithms work better, especially when the working set size can vary over the lifetime of a process. If a local algorithm is used and the working set grows, thrashing will result, even if there are plenty of free page frames. If the working set shrinks, local algorithms waste memory. If a global algorithm is used, the system must continually decide how many page frames to assign to each process. One way is to monitor the working set size as indicated...
by the aging bits, but this approach does not necessarily prevent thrashing. The working set may change size in microseconds, whereas the aging bits are a crude measure spread over a number of clock ticks.

A more direct way to control thrashing and allocate memory globally is to use the page fault frequency or PFF allocation algorithm. For a large class of page replacement algorithms, including LRU, it is known that the fault rate decreases as more pages are assigned. (Belady's anomaly occurred with FIFO, which does not have this property.) This property is illustrated in Fig. 4-18.

![Fig. 4-18. Page fault rate as a function of the number of page frames assigned.](image)

The dotted line marked A corresponds to a page fault rate that is unacceptably high, so the faulting process is given more page frames to reduce the fault rate. The dotted line marked B corresponds to a page fault rate so low that it can be concluded that the process has too much memory. In this case page frames are taken away from it. Thus, PFF tries to keep the paging rate within acceptable bounds. If it discovers that there are so many processes in memory that it is not possible to keep all of them below A, then some process is removed from memory, and its page frames are divided up among the remaining processes or put into a pool of available pages that can be used on subsequent page faults.

### 4.5.3. Page Size

The page size is often a parameter that can be chosen by the operating system designers. Even if the hardware has been designed with, for example, 512-byte pages, the operating system can easily regard pages 0 and 1, 2 and 3, 4 and 5, and so on, as 1K pages by always allocating two consecutive 512-byte page frames for them.

Determining the optimum page size requires balancing several competing factors. To start with, a randomly chosen text, data, or stack segment will not fill an integral number of pages. On the average, half of the final page will be empty. The extra space in that page is wasted (internal fragmentation). With \( n \) segments in memory and a page size of \( p \) bytes, \( np/2 \) bytes will be wasted on internal fragmentation. This reasoning argues for a small page size.
Another argument for a small page size becomes apparent if we think about a compiler consisting of 8 passes of 4K each. With a 32K page size, the program must be allocated 32K all the time. With a 16K page size, it needs only 16K. With a page size of 4K or smaller, it requires only 4K at any instant. In general, a large page size will cause more unused program to be in memory than a small page size.

On the other hand, small pages mean that programs will need many pages, hence a large page table. A 32K program needs only four 8K pages, but 64 512-byte pages. Transfers to and from the disk are generally a page at a time, with most of the time being for the seek and rotational delay, so that transferring a small page takes almost as much time as transferring a large page. It might take $64 \times 15$ msec to load 64 512-byte pages, but only $4 \times 25$ msec to load four 8K pages.

On some machines, the page table must be loaded into hardware registers every time the CPU switches from one process to another. On these machines having a small page size means that the time required to load the page registers gets longer as the page size gets smaller. Furthermore, the space occupied by the page table increases as the page size decreases.

This last point can be analyzed mathematically. Let the average process size be $s$ bytes and the page size be $p$ bytes. Furthermore, assume that each page entry requires $e$ bytes. The approximate number of pages needed per process is then $s/p$, occupying $se/p$ bytes of page table space. The wasted memory in the last page of the process due to internal fragmentation is $p/2$. Thus, the total overhead due to the page table and the internal fragmentation loss is given by

$$\text{overhead} = se/p + p/2$$

The first term (page table size) is large when the page size is small. The second term (internal fragmentation) is large when the page size is large. The optimum must lie somewhere in between. By taking the first derivative with respect to $p$ and equating it to zero, we get the equation

$$-se/p^2 + 1/2 = 0$$

From this equation we find that the optimum page size (considering only memory wasted in fragmentation and page table size) can be given by

$$p = \sqrt{2se}$$

For $s = 32K$ and $e = 8$ bytes per page table entry, the optimum page size is 724 bytes. In practice 512 bytes or 1K would be used, depending on the other factors (e.g., disk speed). Most commercially available computers use page sizes of 512 bytes, 1K, 2K, or 4K.
4.5.4. Implementation Issues

Implementers of virtual memory systems have to make choices among the major theoretical algorithms such as second chance versus aging, local versus global page allocation, and demand paging versus prepaging. But they also have to be aware of a number of practical implementation issues as well. In this section we will take a look at a few of the more common problems and their solutions.

Instruction Backup

When a program references a page that is not in memory, the instruction causing the fault is stopped part way through and a trap to the operating system occurs. After the operating system has fetched the page needed, it must restart the instruction causing the trap. This is easier said than done.

For one thing, most instructions consist of several bytes. The Motorola 68000 instruction MOVE.L #6(A1),2(A0) is 6 bytes, for example (see Fig. 4-19). In order to restart the instruction, the operating system must determine where the first byte of the instruction is. The value of the program counter at the time of the trap depends on which operand faulted and how the CPU's microcode has been implemented.

```
MOVE.L  #6(A1), 2(A0)  
```

**Fig. 4-19.** An instruction causing a page fault

In Fig. 4-19, we have an instruction starting at address 1000 that makes three memory references: the instruction word, and two offsets for the operands. Depending on which of these three memory references caused the page fault, the program counter might be 1000, 1002, or 1004 at the time of the fault. It is frequently impossible for the operating system to determine unambiguously where the instruction began. If the program counter is 1002 at the time of the fault, the operating system has no way of telling whether the word in 1002 is a memory address associated with an instruction at 1000, or an instruction opcode.

Bad as this problem may be, it could have been worse. Instructions that use autoincrement mode can also fault. Depending on the details of the microcode, the increment may be done before the memory reference, in which case the operating system must decrement the register in software before restarting the instruction. Or, the autoincrement may be done after the memory reference, in
which case it will not have been done at the time of the trap and must not be undone by the operating system. Autodecrement causes the same problem.

The precise details of whether autoincrements and autodecrements have or have not been done before the corresponding memory references may differ from instruction to instruction and from CPU model to CPU model. (In the DEC PDP-11 series, no two models worked the same way.) As a result, paging on the 68000 is not possible, at least not without enormous contortions on the part of the operating system.

Fortunately, on some machines the CPU designers provided a solution, usually in the form of a register into which the program counter is copied just before each instruction is executed. These machines generally also have a second register telling which registers have already been autoincremented or autodecremented, and by how much. Given this information, the operating system can unambiguously undo all the effects of the faulting instruction so it can be started all over again. The Motorola 68010, for example, contains these features; in fact, they are the principal difference between the 68000 and 68010, making paging possible on the latter and impossible on the former.

**Locking Pages in Memory**

Although we have not discussed I/O much in this chapter, the fact that a computer has virtual memory does not mean that I/O (especially terminal I/O) is absent. Virtual memory and I/O interact in subtle ways. Consider a process that has just issued a system call to read from some file or device into a buffer within its address space. While waiting for the I/O to complete, the process is suspended and another process is allowed to run. This other process gets a page fault.

If the paging algorithm is global, there is a small, but nonzero, chance that the page containing the I/O buffer will be chosen to be removed from memory. If an I/O device is currently in the process of doing a DMA transfer to that page, removing it will cause part of the data to be written in the buffer where it belongs, and part of the data to be written over the newly loaded page. One solution to this problem is to lock pages engaged in I/O in memory so that they will not be removed. Another solution is to do all I/O to kernel buffers and then copy the data to user pages later.

**Shared Pages**

Another implementation issue is sharing. In a large time-sharing system, it is common for several users to be running the same program (e.g., the editor, a compiler) at the same time. It is clearly more efficient to share the pages, to avoid having two copies of the same page in memory at the same time. One problem is that not all pages are sharable. In particular, pages that are read-only, such as program text, can be shared, but data pages cannot.
Even with this restriction, another problem occurs with shared pages. Suppose processes $A$ and $B$ are both running the editor and sharing its pages. If the scheduler decides to remove $A$ from memory, evicting all its pages and filling the empty page frames with some other program will cause $B$ to generate a large number of page faults to bring them back in again.

Similarly, when $A$ terminates, it is essential to be able to discover that the pages are still in use so that their disk space will not be freed by accident. Searching all the page tables to see if a page is shared is too expensive, so special data structures are needed to keep track of shared pages.

### 4.6. OVERVIEW OF MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN MINIX

Memory management in MINIX is simple: neither paging nor swapping is used. The memory manager maintains a list of holes sorted in memory address order. When memory is needed, due either to a FORK or an EXEC system call, the hole list is searched using first fit for a piece that is big enough to hold the new process. Once a process has been placed in memory, it remains in exactly the same place until it terminates. It is never swapped out and also never moved to another place in memory. Nor does the allocated area ever grow or shrink.

This strategy deserves some explanation. It derives from three factors: (1) the idea that MINIX is for personal computers, rather than for large time-sharing systems, (2) the desire to have MINIX work on the IBM PC, and (3) an attempt to make the system straightforward to implement on other small, personal computers in the future.

The first factor means that, on the average, the number of running processes will be small, so that typically enough memory will be available to hold all the processes with room left over. Swapping will generally not be needed. Since it adds considerable complexity to the system, not swapping makes the code much smaller. Furthermore, many personal computers do not have a hard disk, and a floppy disk is not exactly the ideal swapping device.

The desire to have MINIX run on the IBM PC also had substantial impact on the memory management design. The 8088’s memory management architecture is very primitive. It does not support virtual memory in any form and does not even detect stack overflow, a defect that has major implications for the way processes are laid out in memory.

The portability issue argues for as simple a memory management scheme as possible. If MINIX used paging or segmentation, it would be difficult, if not impossible to port it to machines not having these features. By making a minimal number of assumptions about what the hardware can do, the number of machines to which MINIX can be ported is increased.

Another unusual aspect of MINIX is the way the memory management is implemented. It is not part of the kernel. Instead, it is handled by the memory manager process, which runs in user space and communicates with the kernel by
the standard message mechanism. The position of the memory manager is shown in Fig. 4-20.

![Fig. 4-20. The memory manager runs outside the kernel, in user space.](image)

Moving the memory manager out of the kernel is an example of the separation of policy and mechanism. The decisions about which process will be placed where in memory (policy) are made by the memory manager. The actual setting of memory maps for processes (mechanism) is done by the system task within the kernel. This split makes it relatively easy to change the memory management policy (algorithms, etc.) without having to modify the lowest layers of the operating system.

Most of the memory manager code is devoted to handling the MINIX system calls that involve memory management, primarily FORK and EXEC, rather than just manipulating lists of processes and holes. In the next section we will look at the memory layout, and then in the ones following it we will take a bird’s-eye view of how the memory management system calls are processed.

### 4.6.1. Memory Layout

Memory is allocated in MINIX on two occasions. First, when a process forks, an amount of memory equal in size to what the parent has is allocated for the child. Second, when a process changes its memory image via the EXEC system call, the old image is returned to the free list as a hole, and memory is allocated for the new one. Memory is released whenever a process terminates, either by exiting or by being killed by a signal.

Figure 4-21 shows both ways of allocating memory. In Fig. 4-21(a) we see two processes, \( A \) and \( B \), in memory. If \( A \) forks, we get the situation of Fig. 4-21(b). If the child now executes the file \( C \), the memory looks like Fig. 4-21(c).

Note that the old memory for the child is released before the new memory for \( C \) is allocated, so that \( C \) can use the child’s memory. In this way, a series of FORK and EXEC pairs (such as the shell setting up a pipeline) results in all the processes being adjacent, with no holes between them, as would have been the case had the new memory been allocated before the old memory had been released.

When memory is allocated, either by the FORK or EXEC system calls, a
certain amount of it is taken for the new process. In the former case, the amount taken is identical to what the parent process has. In the latter case, the memory manager takes the amount specified in the header of the file executed. Once this allocation has been made, under no conditions is the process ever allocated any more total memory.

Figure 4-22 shows the internal memory layout used for a single MINIX process. For a program not using separate I and D space, the total amount of memory allocated is specified by a field in the header. If, for example, a program has 4K of text, 2K of data, and 1K of stack, and the header says to allocate 40K total, the gap of unused memory between the data segment and the stack segment will be 33K.

If the programmer knows that the total memory needed for the combined growth of the data and stack segments for the file a.out is at most 10K, he can give the command

```
chmem =10240 a.out
```

which changes the header field so that upon EXEC the memory manager allocates a space 10240 bytes more than the sum of the initial text and data segments. For
the above example, a total of 16K would be allocated on all subsequent EXECs of the file. Of this amount, the topmost 1K would be used for the stack.

For a program using separate I and D space (indicated by a bit in the header that is set by the linker), the total field in the header applies to the data space only. A program with 4K of text, 2K of data, 1K of stack, and a total size of 64K would be allocated 68K (4K instruction space, 64K data space), leaving 61K for the data segment and stack to consume during execution. The boundary of the data segment can be moved only by the BRK system call. All BRK does is check to see if the new data segment bumps into the current stack pointer, and if not, note the change in some internal tables. No memory is allocated. If the new data segment bumps into the stack, the call fails.

This strategy has been chosen to make it possible to run MINIX on the IBM PC, which does not check for stack overflow in hardware. A user program can push as many words as it wants to on the stack without the operating system being aware of it. On computers with more sophisticated memory management hardware, the stack is allocated a certain amount of memory initially. If it attempts to grow beyond this amount, a trap to the operating system occurs, and the system allocates another piece of memory to the stack, if possible. This trap does not exist on the 8088, making it dangerous to have the stack adjacent to anything except a large chunk of unused memory, since the stack can grow quickly and without warning. MINIX has been designed so that if it is moved to a computer with better memory management, the better memory management can be used.

4.6.2. Message Handling

Like all the other components of MINIX, the memory manager is message driven. After the system has been initialized, the memory manager enters its main loop, which consists of waiting for a message, carrying out the request contained in the message, and sending a reply. Figure 4-23 gives the list of legal message types, their input parameters, and the value sent back in the reply message. FORK, EXIT, WAIT, BRK, and EXEC are clearly closely related to memory allocation and deallocation. The four signal calls, SIGNAL, KILL, ALARM, and PAUSE, also can affect what is in memory, because a signal that kills a process also causes its memory to be deallocated. The five GET/SET calls have nothing to do with memory management at all. They also have nothing to do with the file system. But they had to go either in the file system or the memory manager, since each system call is handled by one or the other. They were put here simply because the file system was large enough already.

The final two messages, KSIG and BRK2 are not system calls. KSIG is the message type used by the kernel to inform the memory manager of a signal originating in the kernel, such as SIGINT, SIGQUIT, or SIGALRM. BRK2 is used during system initialization to tell the memory manager how big the system is.

Although there is a library routine sbrk, there is no system call SBRK. The
library routine computes the amount of memory needed by adding the increment or decrement specified as parameter to the current size, and makes a BRK call to set the size. Similarly, there are no separate system calls for geteuid and getegid. The calls GETUID and GETGID return both the effective and real identifiers.

A key data structure used for message processing is the table `mm_callvec` declared in `table.c` (line 7400). It contains pointers to the procedures that handle the various message types. When a message comes in to the memory manager, the main loop extracts the message type and puts it in the global variable `mm_call`. This value is then used to index into `mm_callvec` to find the pointer to the procedure that handles the newly arrived message. That procedure is then called to execute the system call. The value that it returns is sent back to the caller in the reply message to report on the success or failure of the call. This mechanism is similar to that of Fig. 1-18, only in user space rather than in the kernel.

4.6.3. Memory Manager Data Structures and Algorithms

The memory manager has two key data structures: the process table and the hole table. We will now look at both of these in turn.

In Fig. 2-4 we saw that some of process table fields are needed for process management, others for memory management, and yet others for the file system. In MINIX, each of these three pieces of the operating system has its own process table, containing just those fields that it needs. The entries correspond exactly,
to keep things simple. Thus, slot \( k \) of the memory manager’s table refers to the same process as slot \( k \) of the file system’s table. When a process is created or destroyed, all three parts update their tables to reflect the new situation, in order to keep them synchronized.

The memory manager’s process table is called \( mproc \). It contains all the fields related to a process’ memory allocation, as well as some additional items. The most important field is the array \( mpseg \), which has three entries, for the text, data, and stack segments, respectively. Each entry is a structure containing the virtual address, physical address, and length of the segment, all measured in clicks rather than in bytes. All segments must start on a click boundary and occupy an integral number of clicks.

The method used for recording memory allocation is shown in Fig. 4-24. In this figure we have a process with 3K of text, 4K of data, a gap of 1K, and then a 2K stack, for a total memory allocation of 10K. In Fig. 4-24(b) we see what the virtual, physical, and length fields for each of the three segments are, assuming that the process does not have separate I and D space. In this model, the text segment is always empty, and the data segment contains both text and data. When a process references virtual address 0, either to jump to it or to read it (i.e., as instruction space or as data space), physical address 0x32000 (in decimal, 200K) will be used. This address is at click 0x3200.

![Diagram of memory allocation](image)

**Fig. 4-24.** (a) A process in memory. (b) Its memory representation for non-separate I and D space. (c) Its memory representation for separate I and D space.

Note that the virtual address at which the stack begins depends initially on the total amount of memory allocated to the process. If the \( chmem \) command were used to modify the file header to provide a larger dynamic allocation area (bigger gap between data and stack segments), the next time the file was executed, the stack would start at a higher virtual address. If the stack grows longer by one
click, the stack entry should change from the triple (0x200, 0x3400, 0x80) to the triple (0x1FF, 0x33FF, 0x81).

Because the 8088 hardware does not have a stack limit trap, this change will not be made until the next BRK system call, at which point the operating system explicitly reads SP and recomputes the segment entries. On a machine with a stack trap, the stack segment’s entry would be updated as soon as the stack outgrew its segment.

Fig. 4-24(c) shows the segment entries for the memory layout of Fig. 4-24(a) for separate I and D space. Here both the text and data segments are nonzero in length.

The mp_seg array shown in Fig. 4-24(b) or (c) is primarily used to map virtual addresses onto physical memory addresses. Given a virtual address and the space to which it belongs, it is a simple matter to see whether the virtual address is legal or not (i.e., falls inside a segment), and if legal, what the corresponding physical address is. The kernel procedure unmap performs this mapping for the I/O tasks and for copying to and from user space, for example.

In addition to the segment information, mproc also holds the process id (pid) of the process itself and of its parent, the uids and gids (both real and effective), information about signals, and the exit status, if the process has already terminated but its parent has not yet done a WAIT for it.

The other major memory manager table is the hole table, hole, which lists every hole in memory in order of increasing memory address. The gaps between the data and stack segments are not considered holes since they have already been allocated. They are not contained in the free hole list. Each hole list entry has three fields: the base address of the hole, in clicks; the length of the hole, in clicks; and a pointer to the next entry on the list. The list is singly linked, so it is easy to find the next hole starting from any given hole, but to find the previous hole, you have to search the entire list from the beginning until you come to the given hole.

The reason for recording everything about segments and holes in clicks rather than bytes is simple: it is much more efficient. On the 8088, using byte addresses would require 20 bits per address, whereas recording addresses in clicks requires only 16 bits per address. Similar arguments hold for paging machines. A computer with a page size of 1K and 64M of memory needs only 16 bits to hold a page number, but 26 bits to hold a full memory address.

The principal operations on the hole list are allocating a piece of memory of a given size and returning an existing allocation. To allocate memory, the entire hole list is searched, starting at the hole with the lowest address, until a hole that is large enough is found (first fit). The segment is then allocated by reducing the hole by the amount needed for the segment, or in the rare case of an exact fit, removing the hole from the list. This scheme is fast and simple, but suffers from both internal fragmentation (up to 15 bytes may be wasted in the final click, since an integral number of clicks is always taken) and external fragmentation.

When a process terminates and is cleaned up, its memory is returned to the
free list. If either or both of the memory's neighbors are holes, they are merged, so adjacent holes never occur. In this way, the number, location, and sizes of the holes vary continuously as the system runs. Whenever all user processes have terminated, all of available memory is once again in a single hole, ready for allocation.

4.6.4. The FORK, EXIT, and WAIT System Calls

When processes are created or destroyed, memory must be allocated or deallocated. Also, the process table must be updated, including the parts held by the kernel and the file system. It is the memory manager that coordinates all of this activity. Process creation is done by FORK, which is carried out as a series of steps, as shown in Fig. 4-25.

1. Check to see if process table is full.
2. Try to allocate memory for the child.
3. Copy the parent's image to the child's memory.
4. Find a free process slot and copy parent's slot to it.
5. Enter child's memory map in process table.
6. Choose a pid for the child.
7. Tell kernel and file system about child.
9. Send reply messages to parent and child.

Fig. 4-25. The steps required to carry out the FORK system call.

It is difficult and inconvenient to stop a FORK call part way through, so the memory manager maintains a count at all times of the number of processes currently in existence in order to see easily if a process table slot is available. If the table is not full, an attempt is made to allocate memory for the child. If this step also succeeds, the FORK is guaranteed to work. The newly allocated memory is then filled in, a process slot is located and filled in, a pid is chosen, and the other parts of the system informed that a new process has been created.

A process fully terminates when two events happen: (1) the process itself has exited (or has been killed by a signal), and (2) its parent has executed a WAIT system call to find out what happened. A process that has exited or has been killed, but whose parent has not (yet) done a WAIT for it, enters a kind of suspended animation, sometimes known as zombie state. It is prevented from being scheduled and has its alarm timer turned off (if it was on), but it is not removed from the process table. Its memory is not freed, although it could have been. (Zombie state is unusual and rarely lasts long, and it was easier to program this way.) When the parent finally does the WAIT, the memory and process table slot are freed, and the file system and kernel are informed.

A problem arises if the parent of an exiting process is itself already dead. If no special action were taken, the exiting process would remain a zombie forever. Instead, the tables are changed to make it a child of the init process. When the system comes up, init reads the /etc/ttyys file to get a list of all terminals, and then forks off a login process to handle each one. It then spends most of its time
waiting for processes to terminate. In this way, orphan zombies are cleaned up quickly.

4.6.5. The EXEC System Call

When a command is typed at the terminal, the shell forks off a new process, which then executes the command requested. It would have been possible to have a single system call to do both FORK and EXEC at once, but they were provided as two distinct calls for a very good reason: to make it easy to implement redirection. When the shell forks, the child process closes standard input and output if they are redirected, and then opens the redirected files. Then it executes the command, which inherits the redirected standard input and output.

EXEC is the most complex system call in MINIX. It must replace the current memory image with a new one, including setting up a new stack. It carries out its job in a series of steps, as shown in Fig. 4-26.

| 1. Check permissions — is the file executable? |
| 2. Read the header to get the segment and total sizes. |
| 3. Fetch the arguments and environment from the caller. |
| 4. Release the old memory and allocate the new one. |
| 5. Copy stack to new memory image. |
| 6. Copy text and data segments to new memory image. |
| 7. Check for and handle setuid, setgid bits. |
| 8. Fix up process table entry. |
| 9. Tell kernel that process is now runnable. |

Fig. 4-26. The steps required to carry out the EXEC system call.

Each step consists, in turn, of yet smaller steps, some of which can fail. For example, there might be insufficient memory available. The order in which the tests are made has been carefully chosen to make sure the old memory image is not released until it is certain that the EXEC will succeed, to avoid the embarrassing situation of not being able to set up a new memory image, but not having the old one to go back to, either. Normally EXEC does not return, but if it fails, the calling process must get control again, with an error indication.

There are a few steps in Fig. 4-26 that deserve some more comment. First is the question of whether there is enough room or not. Checking to see if there is sufficient physical memory is done by searching the hole list before freeing the old memory—if the old memory were freed first and there was insufficient memory, it would be hard to get the old image back again.

However, this test is overly strict. It sometimes rejects EXEC calls that, in fact, could succeed. Suppose, for example, the process doing the EXEC call occupies 20K. Further suppose that there is a 30K hole available and that the new image requires 50K. By testing before releasing, we will discover that only 30K is available and reject the call. If we had released first, we might have succeeded, depending on whether or not the new 20K hole was adjacent to, and thus now merged with, the 30K hole. A more sophisticated implementation could handle this situation a little better.
A more subtle issue is whether the executable file fits in the virtual address space. The problem is that memory is allocated not in bytes, but in clicks (16 bytes on the 8088, 1 page on a virtual memory system). Each click must belong to a single segment, and may not be, for example, half data, half stack, because the entire memory administration is in clicks.

To see how this restriction can give trouble, note that the 64K address space of the 8088 can be divided into 4096 clicks. Suppose a separate I and D space program has 40,000 bytes of text, 32,770 bytes of data, and 32,760 bytes of stack. The data segment occupies 2049 clicks, of which the last one is only partially used; still, the whole click is part of the data segment. The stack segment is 2048 clicks. Together they exceed 4096 clicks, and thus cannot co-exist, even though the number of bytes needed fits in the virtual address space (barely). This problem exists on all machines whose click size is larger than 1 byte.

Another important issue is how the initial stack is set up. The library call normally used to invoke EXEC with arguments and an environment is

\[ \text{execve(name, argv, envp)}; \]

where \( \text{name} \) is a pointer to the name of the file to be executed, \( \text{argv} \) is a pointer to an array of pointers, each one pointing to an argument, and \( \text{envp} \) is a pointer to an array of pointers, each one pointing to an environment string.

It would be easy enough to implement EXEC by just putting the three pointers in the message to the memory manager, and letting it fetch the file name and two arrays by itself. Then it would have to fetch each argument and each string one at a time. Doing it this way requires at least one message to the system task per argument or string and probably more, since the memory manager has no way of knowing how big each one is in advance.

To avoid the overhead of multiple messages to read all these pieces, a completely different strategy has been chosen. The \text{execve} library procedure builds the entire initial stack inside itself and passes its base address and size to the memory manager. Building the new stack within the user space is highly efficient, because references to the arguments and strings are just local memory references, not references to a different address space.

To make this mechanism clearer, let us consider an example. When a user types

\[ \text{ls -l f.c g.c} \]

to the shell, the shell makes the call

\[ \text{execve("/bin/ls", argv, envp)}; \]

to the library procedure. The contents of the two pointer arrays are shown in Fig. 4-27(a). The procedure \text{execve}, within the shell’s address space, now builds the initial stack, as shown in Fig. 4-27(b). This stack is eventually copied intact to the memory manager during the processing of the EXEC call.

When the stack is finally copied to the user process, it will not be put at
virtual address 0. Instead, it will be put at the end of the memory allocation, as determined by the total memory size field in the executable file’s header. As an example, let us arbitrarily assume that the stack begins at address 5110. It is up to the memory manager to relocate the pointers within the stack so that when deposited into the new address, the stack looks like Fig. 4-27(c).

When the EXEC call completes and the program starts running, the stack will indeed look exactly like Fig. 4-27(c), with the stack pointer having the value 5110. However, another problem is yet to be dealt with. The main program of the executed file is probably declared something like this:

```c
main(argc, argv, envp);
```

As far as the C compiler is concerned, `main` is just another function. It does not know that `main` is special, so it compiles code to access the three parameters on the assumption that they will be passed according to the standard C calling convention, last parameter first. With one integer and two pointers, the three parameters are expected to occupy the three words just before the return address. Of course, the stack of Fig. 4-27(c) does not look like that at all.

---

Fig. 4-27. (a) The arrays passed to `execve`. (b) The stack built by `execve`. (c) The stack after relocation by the memory manager. (d) The stack as it appears to `main` at the start of execution.
The solution is that newly executed files do not begin with main. Instead, a small, assembly language routine called the C run-time, start-off procedure, is always linked in at text address 0 so it gets control first. Its job is to push three more words onto the stack and then to call main using the standard call instruction. This results in the stack of Fig. 4-27(d) at the time that main starts executing. Thus, main is tricked into thinking it was called in the usual way (actually, it is not really a trick; it is called that way).

If the programmer neglects to call exit at the end of main, control will pass back to the C run-time, start-off routine when main is finished. Again, the compiler just sees main as an ordinary procedure, and generates the usual code to return from it after the last statement. Thus main returns to its caller, the C run-time, start-off routine which then calls exit itself. The MINIX C run-time, start-off routine is called crtso and is located in the directory lib and its subdirectories, for various compilers.

4.6.6. The BRK System Call

The library procedures brk and sbrk are used to adjust the upper bound of the data segment. The former takes an absolute size and calls BRK. The latter takes a positive or negative increment to the current size, computes the new data segment size, and then calls BRK. There is no SBRK system call.

An interesting question is: "How does sbrk keep track of the current size, so it can compute the new size?" The answer is that a variable, brksize, always holds the current size so sbrk can find it. This variable is initialized to a compiler generated symbol giving the initial size of text plus data (nonseparate I and D) or just data (separate I and D). The name, and, in fact, very existence of such a symbol is compiler dependent.

Carrying out BRK is easy for the memory manager. All that must be done is to check to see that everything still fits in the address space, adjust the tables, and tell the kernel.

4.6.7. Signal Handling

Signals can be generated in two ways: by the KILL system call, and by the kernel. The kernel generated signals currently implemented are SIGINT, SIGQUIT, and SIGALRM, but if MINIX is ever ported to a machine that traps on illegal instructions, detects illegal addresses, or notices other hardware violations, the corresponding signals will also be generated by the kernel.

Whatever their origin, the memory manager processes all signals the same way. For each process to be signaled, a variety of checks are made to see if the signal is feasible. One process can signal another if both have the same uid, and were started from the same terminal. Furthermore, neither zombies nor processes that have explicitly called SIGNAL to ignore the signal can be signaled.
If all the conditions are met, the signal can be sent. If the signal is to be caught, a message is sent to the system task within the kernel, requesting that it push the 4 words of Fig. 4-28 onto the signaled process' stack. The exact layout of the words pushed is designed to be identical to what a hardware trap pushes (plus the signal number), so porting MINIX to a different system implies changing the layout of Fig. 4-28 accordingly.

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 4-28. The four words pushed onto the stack of a signaled process on the 8088.

After the process has received the interrupt, a run time system routine, catchsig, is called. This routine first saves all the registers on the stack. Then it uses the signal number as an index into a local table to find the C function to be called. When the user executes a SIGNAL call, the pointer to the function to be called is stored in a local table; the memory manager is merely told which signal is being enabled. It is also given the address of catchsig, which it traps to on all signals. After catchsig has found the pointer to the signal handler, it calls the handler.

When the handler is done, it returns to catchsig, which restores the registers and does a RETURN FROM INTERRUPT instruction to resume processing at the point it was prior to the interrupt. Interrupts are completely invisible to the interrupted program.

If a signal is sent to a process that has not been enabled to handle it, the memory manager kills the process. If the parent is waiting for it, it is cleaned up and removed from the process table. If the parent is not waiting, it becomes a zombie. For certain signal numbers (e.g., SIGQUIT), the memory manager also writes a core dump of the process to the current directory.

It can easily happen that a signal is sent to a process that is currently blocked waiting for a READ on a terminal for which no input is available. If the process has not specified that the signal is to be caught, it is just killed in the usual way. If, however, the signal is caught, the issue arises of what to do after the signal interrupt has been processed. Should the process go back to waiting, or should it continue with the next statement?

What MINIX does is this: the system call is terminated in such a way as to return the error code EINTR, so the process can see that the call was broken off by a signal. Determining that a signaled process was blocked on a system call is not entirely trivial. The memory manager must ask the file system to check for it.
4.6.8. Other System Calls

The memory manager also handles a few more simple system calls: GETPID, GETUID, GETGID, SETUID, and SETGID. The first three calls just look up and return the requested information. GETUID returns both the real and effective uid. Depending on whether getuid or geteuid was called, one or the other is extracted from the message and returned to the user. The same holds for the gid. These five calls are the simplest MINIX system calls.

4.7. IMPLEMENTATION OF MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN MINIX

Armed with a general overview of how the memory manager works, let us now turn to the code itself. The memory manager is written entirely in C, is straightforward and contains a substantial amount of comment in the code itself, so our treatment of most parts need not be long or involved. We will first look briefly at the header files, then the main program, and finally the files for the various system call groups discussed previously.

4.7.1. The Header Files

The file const.h (line 5150) defines a few constants used by the memory manager. The conditional declaration of MM_STACKBYTES is needed primarily for the array mbuf in exec.c. The array is used for several purposes and has to be large enough for all of them.

The memory manager's global variables are declared in glo.h (line 5200). The same trick used in the kernel with EXTERN is used here, namely, that EXTERN is normally a macro that expands to extern, except in the file table.c, where it becomes the null string so storage is actually reserved for them.

The first variable, mp, is a pointer to the mproc structure for the process whose system call is now being processed. The second variable, dont_reply, is initialized to FALSE when each new request arrives, but can be set to TRUE during the call if it is discovered that no reply message should be sent. No replies are sent for a successful EXEC, for example. The third variable, procs_in_use, keeps track of how many process slots are currently in use, making it easy to see if a FORK call is feasible.

The message buffers mm_in and mm_out are for the request and reply messages, respectively. Who is the index of the current process and is related to mp by

\[ mp = &\text{mproc}[\text{who}] \]

When a message comes in, the system call number is extracted from it and put in mm_call.
The three variables `err_code`, `result2`, and `res_ptr` are used to hold values returned to the caller in the reply message. The most important one is `err_code`, which generally is set to `OK` if the call was completed without error.

The array `mm_stack` holds the memory manager's stack. The stack pointer is initialized to point to it in a tiny assembly code routine, called `head`, that is called before `main` starts. In a sense, `head` is analogous to `criso`, which is not linked with the memory manager or file system, because they do not have arguments.

The file `mproc.h` (line 5250) contains the memory manager's version of the process table. Most of the fields are adequately described by their comments. The two bit maps, `mp_ignore` and `mp_catch`, each contain 16 bits, 1 bit per signal, with signal 1 being the rightmost bit. The `mp_flags` field is used to hold a miscellaneous collection of bits, as indicated at the end of the file.

Next comes `param.h` (line 5300), which contains macros for many of the system call parameters contained in the request message. It also contains three macros for fields in the reply message. If the statement

\[
k = \text{pid};
\]

were to appear in any file in which `param.h` were included, the preprocessor would convert it to

\[
k = \text{mm_in.ml_il};
\]

before feeding it to the compiler proper.

The final header file is `type.h` (line 5350). All it does is include the global type definition file. It is merely included for symmetry, since the kernel and file system have nonempty `type.h` files.

### 4.7.2. The Main Program

The memory manager is compiled and linked independently from the kernel and the file system. Consequently, it has its own main program, which is started up after the kernel has finished initializing itself. The main program is in `main.c` (line 5400). After doing its own initialization (line 5441), the memory manager enters its loop on line 5444. In this loop, it calls `get_work` to wait for an incoming request message, calls one of its `do_XXX` procedures via the `mm_callvec` table to carry out the request, and finally sends a reply, if needed. This structure should be familiar by now: it is the same used by the I/O tasks.

The procedures `get_work` (line 5471) and `reply` (line 5485) handle the actual receiving and sending, respectively. The remaining procedures in this file are all concerned with initializing the memory manager. They are not used after the system has started running.
4.7.3. Implementation of FORK, EXIT, and WAIT

The FORK, EXIT, and WAIT system calls are implemented by the procedures do_fork, do_mm_exit, and do_wait in the file forkexit.c. The procedure do_fork (line 5683) follows the steps shown in Fig. 4-25. Notice that it reserves the last few process table slots for the super-user. After computing how much memory the child needs, including the gap between the data and stack segments on the 8088, mem_copy is called to send a message to the system task to get the copying done.

Now a slot is found in the process table. The test involving procs_in_use earlier guarantees that one will exist. After the slot has been found, it is filled in, first by copying the parent's slot there, and afterward by updating the mp_parent, mp_seg, mp_exitstatus, and mp_sigstatus fields.

The next step is assigning a pid to the child. The variable next_pid keeps track of the next pid to be assigned. However, the following problem could conceivably occur. After assigning, say, pid 20 to a very long-lived process, 30,000 more processes might be created and destroyed, and next_pid might come back to 20 again. Assigning a pid that was still in use would be a disaster (suppose someone later tried to signal process 20), so we search the whole process table to make sure that the pid to be assigned is not already in use.

The calls to sys_forked and tell_fs inform the kernel and file system, respectively, that a new process has been created, so they can update their process tables. (All the procedures beginning with sys_ are library routines that send a message to the system task in the kernel to request one of the services of Fig. 3-39.) Process creation and destruction are always initiated by the memory manager and then propagated to the kernel and file system when completed.

The reply message to the child is sent explicitly at the end of do_fork. The reply to the parent, containing the child's pid, is sent by the loop in main, as the normal reply to a request.

The next system call handled by the memory manager is EXIT. The procedure do_mm_exit (line 5767) accepts the call, but most of the work is done by mm_exit, a few lines further down. The reason for this division of labor is that mm_exit is also called to take care of processes terminated by a signal. The work is the same, but the parameters are different, so it is convenient to split things up this way.

The action taken by mm_exit depends on whether the parent is already waiting or not. If so, cleanup is called to release the memory and process table slot, and to get rid of the process entirely. If the parent is not waiting, the process becomes a zombie, indicated by the HANGING bit in the mp_flags word. Either way, if it has a running timer, the timer is killed. The call to the library procedure sysxit sends a message to the system task telling it to mark the process as no longer runnable, so it will not be scheduled any more.

When the parent process does a WAIT, control comes to do_wait on line 5809. The loop in do_wait scans the entire process table to see if the process has
any children at all, and if so, checks to see if any are zombies that can now be cleaned up. If a zombie is found (line 5828), it is cleaned up. The flag dont_reply is set because the reply to the parent is sent from inside cleanup, not from the loop in main.

If the process doing the WAIT has no children, it simply gets an error return (line 5842). If it has children, but none are zombies, then a bit is set on line 5838 to indicate that it is waiting, and the parent is suspended until a child terminates.

When a process has exited and its parent is waiting for it, in whichever order these events occur, the procedure cleanup (line 5849) is called to perform the last rites. The parent is awakened from its WAIT call and is given the pid of the terminated child, as well as its exit and signal status. The file system is told to mark the child’s entry as free. (The kernel is told when the process terminates, as it must suspend scheduling immediately.) Then the child’s memory is freed and the parent’s and child’s flags are updated.

The last step has to do with the problem discussed earlier of what happens to a process if its parent dies. To see if any existing process is a child of the process trying to exit, all the processes are inspected. If the test on line 5890 succeeds, the exiting process has children.

It is possible that a situation such as shown in Fig. 4-29(a) occurs. In this figure we see that process 12 is about to exit, and that its parent, 7, is waiting for it. Cleanup will be called to get rid of 12, so 52 and 53 are turned into children of init, as shown in Fig. 4-29(b). Now we have the situation that 53, which has already exited, is the child of a process doing a WAIT. Consequently, it can also be cleaned up. The code on lines 5893 to 5897 takes care of this. We see here one of the very few recursive calls in MINIX.

Fig. 4-29. (a) The situation as process 12 is about to exit. (b) The situation after it has exited.

### 4.7.4. Implementation of EXEC

The code for EXEC follows the outline of Fig. 4-26. It is contained in the procedure do_exec (line 5934). After making a few simple validity checks, the memory manager fetches the name of the file to be executed from the user space.
On line 5965 it sends a special message to the file system, to switch to the user's directory, so that the path just fetched will be interpreted relative to the user's, rather than to MM's, working directory.

If the file is present and executable, the memory manager reads the header to extract the segment sizes. Then it fetches the stack from user space (line 5981), allocates memory for the new image (line 5988), patches up the pointers [see the differences between Fig. 4-27(b) and (c)], and reads in the text and data segments (lines 6003 and 6004). Finally, it processes the setuid and setgid bits, updates the process table entry, and tells the kernel that it is finished, so that the process can be scheduled again.

Although the control of all the steps is in do_exec, many of the details are carried out by subsidiary procedures within exec.c. Read_header, for example, not only reads the header and returns the segment sizes, but also verifies that all the segments fit in the virtual address space.

Procedure new_mem checks to see if sufficient memory is available for the new memory image. If so, the old memory is released and the new memory acquired. If insufficient memory is available, the EXEC call fails. After the new memory is allocated, new_mem updates the memory map (in mp_seg) and reports it to the kernel by calling the library procedure sys_newmap.

The remainder of new_map is concerned with zeroing the bss segment, gap, and stack segment. (The bss segment is that part of the data segment that contains all the uninitialized global variables.) Many compilers generate explicit code to zero the bss segment, but doing it here allows MINIX to work even with compilers that do not explicitly zero the bss. The gap between data and stack segments is also zeroed, so that when the data segment is extended by BRK, the newly acquired memory will contain zeros.

The next procedure is patch_ptr (line 6183), which does the job of relocating the pointers of Fig. 4-27(b) to the form of Fig.4-27(c). The work is simple: Examine the stack to find all the pointers, and add the base address to each one.

The final procedure in exec.c is load_seg (line 6216), which is called twice per EXEC, once to load the text segment and once to load the data segment. Rather than just reading the file block by block and then copying the blocks to the user, a trick is used to allow the file system to load the entire segment directly to the user space. Loading is appreciably speeded up by this maneuver. In effect, the call is decoded by the file system in a slightly special way so that it appears to be a read of the entire segment by the user process itself. Only a few lines at the beginning of the file system's read routine know that some monkey business is going on here.

4.7.5. Implementation of BRK

As we have just seen, the memory model used by MINIX is quite simple. Each process is given a single contiguous allocation when it is created. It is never moved around in memory, it is never swapped out of memory, it never
grows, and it never shrinks. All that can happen is that the data segment can eat away at the gap from the low end, and the stack can eat away at it from the high end. Under these circumstances, the implementation of the BRK call is especially easy. It consists of verifying that the new sizes are feasible, and then updating the tables to reflect them.

The top-level procedure is `do_brk` (line 6283), but most of the work is done in `adjust`. The latter checks to see if the stack and data segments have collided. If they have, the BRK call cannot be carried out, but the process is not killed immediately. It gets control back (with an error message), so it can print appropriate messages and shut down gracefully.

If `adjust` has to adjust the data segment, all it does is update the length field. If it also notices that the stack pointer, which is given to it as a parameter, has grown beyond the stack segment, both the origin and length are updated.

The procedure `size_ok` makes the test to see if the segment sizes fit within the address space, in clicks as well as in bytes. The last procedure in this file, `stack_fault`, is not used at present. If MINIX is ever ported to a machine that traps when the stack pointer moves outside the stack segment, then the memory manager will have to handle stack growth, analogous to data segment growth. This procedure will then be of use.

### 4.7.6. Implementation of Signal Handling

The four system calls relating to signals, `SIGNAL`, `KILL`, `ALARM`, and `PAUSE`, as well as the signals themselves, are processed in the file `signal.c`. Let us start with the `SIGNAL` call, since it is the easiest (line 6488). First the memory manager checks to see that the signal number is valid. If it is, the two bit maps, one for signals to be ignored and one for signals to be caught, are updated. Each bit map has 16 bits, one for each of signals 1 to 16, with signal 1 the right-most bit.

Next come two procedures, `do_kill` (line 6519) and `do_ksig` (line 6530), that are conceptually similar. Both are used to cause the memory manager to send a signal. `Do_kill` is called when a user process issues a KILL system call. `Do_ksig` is called when a message arrives from the kernel with one or more signals.

Although `do_ksig` has code to handle stack faults, the kernel does not generate them at present. This feature may be useful on other machines, however. Messages from the kernel may contain multiple signals, which are examined and processed one bit at a time by the loop on line 6564. Each signal bit set results in a call to `check_sig`, just as in `do_kill`.

The procedure `check_sig` is where the memory manager checks to see if the signal can be sent. The call

```c
kill(0, sig);
```

causes the indicated signal to be sent to all the processes in the caller's group (i.e., all the processes started from the same terminal). For this reason,
check_sig contains a loop on line 6602 to scan through the process table to find all the processes to which a signal should be sent. The loop contains a large number of tests. Only if all of them are passed is the signal sent, by calling sig_proc on line 6627.

Now we come to sig_proc (line 6640), which actually does the signaling. The key test here is to distinguish processes that have been enabled to catch signals from those that have not. Those processes that want to catch signals but do not have enough stack space left for the interrupt information, are not signaled. If the signal is to be caught, the call to sys_sig on line 6663 sends a message to the system task requesting it to cause the signal.

If the signal is not to be caught (or cannot be caught due to lack of stack space), control passes to line 6668 to allow mm_exit to terminate the process as though it had exited. Then tries to dump core if that is appropriate for the signal class.

The third system call handled in signal.c is ALARM, which is controlled by do_alarm (line 6679). The work, done by set_alarm (line 6695), consists of sending a message to the clock task telling it to start the timer. When the timer runs out, the kernel announces the fact by sending the memory manager a message of type KSIG, which causes do_ksig to run, as discussed above. The complete sequence of events for a SIGALRM signal is shown in Fig. 4-30.

![Fig. 4-30. Messages for an alarm. (1) User does ALARM. (2) MM sends request to clock task. (3) Clock task replies. (4) Signal arrives. (5) MM tells system task to copy interrupt block to user space. (6) Reply.](image)

The final system call is PAUSE. All that is necessary for do_pause (line 6723) to do is set a bit and refrain from replying, thus keeping the caller blocked. The kernel need not even be informed, since the kernel knows that the caller is blocked.
The procedure *unpause* (line 6736) has to do with signals that are sent to processes suspended on READ, WRITE, PAUSE, and WAIT calls. The latter two can be checked directly, but the former two require asking the file system.

The final procedure in this file is *dump_core* (line 6774), which writes core dumps, block by block, to the disk.

### 4.7.7. Implementation of the Other System Calls

The file *getset.c* contains one procedure, *do_getset* (line 6867), which carries out the five remaining memory manager calls: GETPID, GETUID, GETGID, SETUID, and SETGID. They are all so simple that they are not worth an entire procedure each. The GETUID and GETGID calls both return the real and effective uid or gid.

Setting the uid or gid is slightly more complex than just reading it. A check has to be made to see if the caller is authorized to set the uid or gid. If the caller passes the test, the file system must be informed of the new uid or gid, since file protection depends on it.

### 4.7.8. Memory Manager Utilities

The remaining files contain utility routines and tables. The file *alloc.c* is where the system keeps track of which parts of memory are in use and which are free. It has four entry points:

- **alloc_mem** - request a block of memory of a given size.
- **free_mem** - return memory that is no longer needed.
- **max_hole** - compute the size of the largest available hole.
- **mem_init** - initialize the free list when the memory manager starts running.

As we have said before, *alloc_mem* (line 6987) just uses first fit on a list of holes sorted by memory address. If it finds a piece that is too big, it takes what it needs and leaves the rest on the free list, but reduced in size by the amount taken. If an entire hole is needed, *del_slot* (line 7072) is called to remove the entry from the free list.

*Free_mem's* job is to check if a newly released piece of memory can be merged with holes on either side. If it can, *merge* (line 7095) is called to join the holes and update the lists.

*Max_hole* (line 7131) scans the hole list and returns the largest item it finds. *Mem_init* (line 7153) builds the initial free list, consisting of all available memory in one big hole.

The next file is *utility.c*, which holds a few miscellaneous procedures used in various places in the memory manager. The procedure *allowed* (line 7224) checks to see if a given access is allowed to a file.

For example, *do_exec* needs to know if a file is executable. *Mem_copy* is the interface to the system task for copying data around in memory. It is used to copy the parent image to the child for FORK, and similar things.
The procedure \texttt{no\_sys} (line 7298) should never be called. It is provided just in case a user ever calls the memory manager with a system call number that is invalid or is not handled by the memory manager.

\textit{Panic} (line 7309) is called only when the memory manager has detected an error from which it cannot recover. It reports the error to the system task, which then brings MINIX to a screeching halt. It is not called lightly.

The two procedures in the file \texttt{putc.c} are also utilities, although of quite a different character from the previous ones. From time to time, calls to \texttt{printf} are inserted into the memory manager, mostly for debugging. Also, \texttt{panic} calls \texttt{printf}. The name \texttt{printf} is actually a macro defined as \texttt{prntk}, so that calls to \texttt{printf} do not use the standard I/O library procedure that sends messages to the file system. \texttt{Prntk} calls \texttt{putc} to communicate directly with the terminal task, something that is forbidden to ordinary users.

Our final file is \texttt{table.c}. It contains key statements on lines 7408 and 7409. Together, these redefine the macro \texttt{EXTERN} to be the null string, so that when all the include files are expanded during the compilation of \texttt{table.c}, the word \texttt{extern} will not be present, and storage will be allocated for all the variables.

The other major feature of \texttt{table.c} is the array \texttt{mm\_callvec}. When a request message arrives, the system call number is extracted from it and used as an index into \texttt{mm\_callvec} to locate the procedure that carries out that system call (see line 5458). System call numbers that are not valid calls all invoke \texttt{no\_sys}, which just returns an error code.

4.8. SUMMARY

In this chapter we have examined memory management, both in general and in MINIX. We saw that the simplest systems do not swap at all. Once a program is loaded into memory, it remains there until it finishes. Some operating systems allow only one process at a time in memory, while others support multiprogramming.

The next step up is swapping. When swapping is used, the system can handle more processes than it has room for in memory. Processes for which there is no room are swapped out to the disk. Free space in memory and on disk can be kept track of with a bit map, a hole list, or the buddy system.

More advanced computers often have some form of virtual memory. In the simplest form, each process’ address space is divided up into uniform sized blocks called pages, which can be placed into any available page frame in memory. Many page replacement algorithms are known, two of the better ones being second chance and aging. Sometimes segmentation and paging are combined to provide a two-dimensional virtual memory.

Memory management in MINIX is very simple. Memory is allocated when a process executes a \texttt{FORK} or \texttt{EXEC} system call. The memory so allocated is never
increased or decreased as long as the process lives. Most of the work of the memory manager is concerned not with keeping track of free memory, which it does using a hole list and the first fit algorithm, but with carrying out the system calls relating to memory management.

**PROBLEMS**

1. Consider a swapping system in which memory consists of the following hole sizes in memory order: 10K, 4K, 20K, 18K, 7K, 9K, 12K, and 15K. Which hole is taken for successive segment requests of
   (a) 12K
   (b) 10K
   (c) 9K
   for first fit? Now repeat the question for best fit, worst fit, and next fit.

2. Using the model of Fig. 4-2, we can predict the increased throughput as a function of the degree of multiprogramming. Suppose that a computer has a 2M memory, of which the operating system takes 512K (one quarter of memory) and each user program also takes 512K. If all programs have 60 percent I/O wait, by what percentage will the throughput increase if another 1M is added?

3. Some swapping systems try to eliminate external fragmentation by compaction. Imagine that a computer with 1M user memory compacts once every second. If it takes 1/2 microsec to copy a byte, and the average hole is 0.4 as large as the average segment, what fraction of the total CPU time is used up on compaction?

4. A minicomputer uses the buddy system for memory management. Initially it has one block of 256K at address 0. After successive requests for 5K, 25K, 35K, and 20K come in, how many blocks are left and what are their sizes and addresses?

5. In a swapping system with variable partitions, the segments have the probability distribution \( e^{-s/10} \), where \( s \) is the segment size in kilobytes. The holes have the probability distribution \( e^{-h/5} \) where \( h \) is the hole size in kilobytes. What is the average fraction of wasted memory?

6. Using the page table of Fig. 4-11, give the physical address corresponding to each of the following virtual addresses:
   (a) 20
   (b) 4100
   (c) 8300

7. The Intel 8086 processor does not support virtual memory. Nevertheless, some companies have sold systems that contain an unmodified 8086 CPU and do paging. Make an educated guess as to how they did it. (Hint: think about the logical location of the MMU.)
8. Imagine that a computer uses a segmented MMU such as the one of Fig. 4-13, except that the process number is 3 bits and virtual address spaces are 8M with 4K pages and 32K segments. How many words are needed to hold all the page pointers? If the segment size is now changed to 64K, without changing any of the other parameters (i.e., fewer, but larger segments), how does that affect the number of page table pointers needed?

9. If an instruction takes 1 microsec and a page fault takes an additional \( n \) microsec, give a formula for the effective instruction time if page faults occur every \( k \) instructions on the average.

10. Below is the listing of a short assembly language program for a computer with 512-byte pages. The program is located at address 1020, and its stack pointer is at 8192 (the stack grows toward 0). Give the page reference string generated by this program. Each instruction occupies 4 bytes (1 word), and both instruction and data references count in the reference string.

Load word 6144 into register 0
Push register 0 onto the stack
Call a procedure at 5120, stacking the return address
Subtract the immediate constant 16 from the stack pointer
Compare the actual parameter to the immediate constant 4
Jump if equal to 5152

11. A computer whose processes have 1024 pages in their address spaces keeps its page tables in memory. The overhead required for reading a word from the page table is 500 nsec. To reduce this overhead, the computer has an associative memory, which holds 32 (virtual page, physical page frame) pairs, and can do a look up in 100 nsec. What hit rate is needed to reduce the mean overhead to 200 nsec?

12. A computer has four page frames. The time of loading, time of last access, and the \( R \) and \( M \) bits for each page are as shown below (the times are in clock ticks):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Loaded</th>
<th>Last ref.</th>
<th>( R )</th>
<th>( M )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Which page will NRU replace?
(b) Which page will FIFO replace?
(c) Which page will LRU replace?
(d) Which page will second chance replace?

13. If FIFO page replacement is used with four page frames and eight pages, how many page faults will occur with the reference string 0172327103 if the four frames are initially empty? Now repeat this problem for LRU.

14. A small computer has four page frames. At the first clock tick, the \( R \) bits are 0111 (page 0 is 0, the rest are 1). At subsequent clock ticks, the values are 1011, 1010, 1101, 0010, 1010, 1100, and 0001. If the aging algorithm is used with an 8-bit counter, give the values of the four counters after the last tick.
15. How long does it take to load a 64K program from a disk whose average seek time is 30 msec, whose rotation time is 20 msec, and whose tracks hold 32K
   
   (a) for a 2K page size?
   (b) for a 4K page size?

   The pages are spread randomly around the disk.

16. One of the first time-sharing machines, the PDP-1, had a memory of 4K 18-bit words. It held one process at a time in memory. When the scheduler decided to run another process, the process in memory was written to a paging drum, with 4K 18-bit words around the circumference of the drum. The drum could start writing (or reading) at any word, rather than only at word 0. Why do you suppose this drum was chosen?

17. A computer provides each process with 65536 bytes of address space divided into pages of 4096 bytes. A particular program has a text size of 32768 bytes, a data size of 16386 bytes, and a stack size of 15870 bytes. Will this program fit in the address space? If the page size were 512 bytes, would it fit? Remember that a page may not contain parts of two different segments.

18. It has been observed that the number of instructions executed between page faults is directly proportional to the number of page frames allocated to a program. If the available memory is doubled, the mean interval between page faults is also doubled. Suppose that a normal instruction takes 1 microsec, but if a page fault occurs, it takes 2001 microsec. If a program takes 60 sec to run, during which time it gets 15,000 page faults, how long would it take to run if twice as much memory were available?

19. Why does the MINIX memory management scheme make it necessary to have a program like chmem?

20. When a MINIX process makes the SIGNAL system call to cause some signal to be caught, the address of the function to be called is stored in a table within the process itself, rather than in the memory manager. Give an advantage of doing things in this way.

21. Modify MINIX to release a zombie’s memory as soon as it enters the zombie state, rather than waiting until the parent waits for it.

22. In the current implementation of MINIX, when an EXEC system call is made, the memory manager checks to see if a hole large enough to contain the new memory image is currently available. If not, the call is rejected. A better algorithm would be to see if a sufficiently large hole would be available after the current memory image was released. Implement this algorithm.

23. When carrying out an EXEC system call, MINIX uses a trick to have the file system read in entire segments at once. Devise and implement a similar trick to allow core dumps to be written in a similar way.

24. Modify MINIX to do swapping.
The most visible part of any operating system is the file system. Most programs read or write at least one file, and users are always aware of the existence of files and their properties. For many people, the convenience and usability of the operating system is largely determined by the interface, structure, and reliability of the file system.

In this chapter we will look at the various ways a file system can appear to its users, how file systems are implemented, how files are protected against unauthorized usage, and finally, how the MINIX file system has been designed and implemented. We will also look at some design issues specific to distributed operating systems.

5.1. THE USER VIEW OF THE FILE SYSTEM

From the user's standpoint, the most important aspect of a file system is how it appears to him, that is, what constitutes a file, how files are named and protected, what operations are allowed on files, and so on. The details of whether linked lists or bit maps are used to keep track of free storage and how many sectors there are in a logical block are of less interest, although they are of great importance to the designers of the file system. In the following sections we will discuss a number of issues relating primarily to the user interface. Later on in the chapter we will look at how file systems are implemented.
5.1.1. File Basics

The best way to store information in a computer would be to provide each process with a large number of very large segments, for example, $2^{32}$ segments, each $2^{32}$ bytes long. When someone first began using a computer, he would be given a shell with standard segments in its address space (e.g., editors, compilers, and other utilities). As time went on, all the text typed in by the user, all the binaries of his programs, and all information acquired from third parties would accumulate in the shell’s address space. Some of the segments would contain directories, to provide a hierarchical naming scheme for files (e.g., like UNIX).

This address space would be inherited by all processes, which could add more segments and then return the address space to the shell when finished. Accessing information would then just be a matter of reading and writing (virtual) memory.

In practice, this way of storing information is not yet feasible, although MULTICS made a serious attempt at it. For one thing, current address spaces are much too small and not all computers have virtual memory. For another, when a process crashes, its address space is normally lost, making address spaces ill-suited for long-term (e.g., months or years) storage. Still, as technology advances, the concept of holding all of a user’s information within the address space of each of his processes will no doubt be reexamined from time to time.

While waiting for the millenium, most operating systems take a different approach to storing information. They allow users to define named objects called files, which can hold programs, data, or anything else the user wants. These files are not part of the address space of any process. Instead, the operating system provides special operations (i.e., system calls) to create and destroy them, read and write them, and manage them in other ways.

Figure 5-1 illustrates three common file organizations. The first way is a simple byte sequence. UNIX files are structured this way. The second way is a sequence of fixed-size records. Arbitrary records can be read or written, but records cannot be inserted or deleted in the middle of a file. CP/M works like this.

The third way is a tree of disk blocks, each block holding $n$ keyed records. Records can be looked up by key, and new records can be inserted anywhere in the tree. If a record is added to a block that is full, the block is split into two blocks, both of which are then added to the tree in their correct alphabetical sequence. This method is used on many mainframes, where it is called ISAM (Indexed Sequential Access Method).

All operating systems aim at device-independence, that is, making access the same no matter where the file (or device) is. A program that reads an input file, sorts it, and writes the sorted output file should be able to work with files on floppy disk or hard disk, and should be able to write its output on a file, a terminal, or a printer without having special code to check for each of these cases.
Some operating systems are better at device-independence than others. In UNIX, for example, a file system (e.g., a disk) can be mounted anywhere in the file tree, allowing any file to be accessed by its path name, without regard to which device it is on. In MS-DOS, on the other hand, the user must explicitly specify which device each file is on (except that one device is default and may be omitted). Thus if the default device is drive C:, to run a program located on drive A: with input and output files on drive B:, one would have to type:

A:program <B:input >B:output

Most operating systems have many distinct file types. UNIX, for example, has regular files, directories, and special files (block and character). Regular files contain user data. Directories contain the information needed to give files symbolic names (i.e., ASCII strings). Block and character special files are used to model disk devices and terminal-like devices, respectively, so that one can say, for example

```
cp abc /dev/tty
```
to copy a file, abc, to the terminal (character special file /dev/tty). Some versions of UNIX also support named pipes, which are pseudofiles that can be opened by two processes to set up an interprocess communication channel between them. As far as the user is concerned, the differences between these different file types are minimal (e.g., seeks on terminals are not allowed).

In most systems, regular files are further subdivided into different types based on their usage. The different types are distinguished by names that end with different file extensions. For example,

FILE.PAS - Pascal source program
FILE.FTN - FORTRAN source program
FILE.BAS - BASIC source program
FILE.OBJ - Object file (compiler output, not yet linked)
FILE.BIN - Executable binary program
FILE.LIB - Library of .OBJ files used by the linker
FILE.TXT - Input text for the formatting program
FILE.DAT - Data file

In some systems the extensions are simply a convention; the operating system itself does not use them for anything. In other systems, the operating system rigidly enforces rules relating to the naming. For example, it will not execute a file unless it ends in .BIN.

The TOPS-20 system goes so far as to examine the creation time of any file to be executed. Then it locates the source file and sees if the source has been modified since the binary was made. If it has, it automatically recompiles the source. In UNIX terms, the make program has been built into the shell. The extensions are mandatory so the operating system can tell which binary program was derived from which source.

Having strongly typed files like this causes problems whenever the user does anything that the system designers did not expect. Consider, as an example, a system in which program output files have type .DAT (data files). If a user writes a program that reads a .PAS file, transforms it (e.g., by converting it to a standard indentation layout), and then writes the transformed file as output, the output file will be of type .DAT. If the user tries to offer this to the Pascal compiler to compile it, the system will refuse because it has the wrong extension. Attempts to copy FILE.DAT to FILE.PAS will be rejected by the system as invalid (to protect the user against mistakes).

While this kind of "protection" may help novices, it drives experienced users up the wall since they have to devote considerable effort to circumventing the operating system's idea of what is reasonable and what is not.

The operations available on files differ slightly from operating system to operating system. Reading and writing bytes (or records) sequentially are always provided. Random access is commonly provided where that makes sense (on a regular file, but not on the special file for the line printer). In some operating systems random access is achieved by having the READ system call specify the number (or key) of the record to be read or written. In other systems (e.g., UNIX) a system call is provided to set the "current file position" anywhere within the file, so that subsequent READ or WRITE calls will operate at the new current position. Record-oriented files usually have operations to insert and delete records.

5.1.2. Directories

To keep track of files, the file system normally provides directories, which, in many systems, are themselves files. A directory typically contains a number of entries, one per file, as shown in Fig. 5-2. The simplest way is for the system
to maintain a single directory containing all the files of all the users. If there are many users, and they choose the same file names (e.g., mail and games), conflicts and confusion will quickly make the system unworkable. This system model is used only by the most primitive microcomputer operating systems.

Fig. 5-2. A directory may have several entries, each describing one file. The entries may either contain information about the file, or point to other structures that do.

An improvement on the idea of having a single directory for all files is to have one directory per user [see Fig. 5-3(b)]. This design eliminates name conflicts among users, but is not very satisfactory for users with many files. It is quite common for users to want to group their files together in logical ways. A professor, for example, might have a collection of files that together form a book that he is writing for one course, a second collection of files containing student programs submitted for another course, a third group of files containing the code of an advanced compiler-writing system he is building, a fourth group of files containing grant proposals, as well as other files for incoming and outgoing mail, minutes of committee meetings, papers he is writing, games, and so on. Some way is needed to group these files together reasonably.

What is needed is a general hierarchy (i.e., a tree of directories). With this approach, each user can have as many directories as are needed so that files can be grouped together in natural ways. This approach is shown in Fig. 5-3(c).

When the file system is organized as a directory tree, some way is needed for specifying file names. Two different methods are commonly used. In the first method, each file is given an absolute path name consisting of the path from the root directory to the file. As an example, the path /usr/ast/mailbox means that the root directory contains a subdirectory usr, which in turn contains a subdirectory ast, which contains the file mailbox. Absolute path names always start at the root directory and are unique.

The other kind of name is the relative path name. This is used in conjunction with the concept of the working directory (also called the current directory). A user can designate one directory as the current working directory, in which case all path names not beginning at the root directory are taken relative to the working directory. In UNIX, all path names beginning with a slash are absolute; all others are relative to the user’s current working directory. If the current
Fig. 5-3. Three file system designs. (a) Single directory shared by all users. (b) One directory per user. (c) Arbitrary tree per user. The letters indicate the directory or file's owner.

working directory is /usr/ast, then the file whose absolute path is /usr/ast/mailbox can be referenced simply as mailbox.

5.2. FILE SYSTEM DESIGN

Now it is time to turn from the user's view of the file system to the designer's view. Users are concerned with how files are named, what operations are allowed on them, what the directory tree looks like and similar interface issues. Designers are interested in how disk space is managed, how files are stored, and how to make everything work efficiently and reliably. In the following sections we will examine a number of key design areas to see what the issues and tradeoffs are.

5.2.1. Disk Space Management

Files are normally stored on disk, so management of disk space is a major concern to file system designers. Two general strategies are possible for storing an n byte file: n consecutive bytes of disk space are allocated, or the file is split up into a number of (not necessarily) contiguous blocks. The same tradeoff is present in memory management systems between pure segmentation and paging.

Storing a file as a contiguous sequence of bytes has the obvious problem that if a file grows, which is a very common occurrence, it will probably have to be moved on the disk. The same problem holds for segments in memory, except that moving a segment in memory is a relatively fast operation compared to
moving a file from one disk position to another. For this reason, nearly all file systems chop files up into fixed-size blocks that need not be adjacent.

Once it has been decided to store files in fixed-size blocks, the question arises of how big the block should be. Given the way disks are organized, the sector, the track and the cylinder are obvious candidates for the unit of allocation. In a paging system, the page size is also a major contender.

Having a large allocation unit, such as a cylinder, means that every file, even a 1 byte file, ties up an entire cylinder. Studies (Mullender and Tanenbaum, 1984) have shown that the median file size in UNIX environments is about 1K, so allocating a 32K cylinder for each file would waste 31/32 or 97 percent of the total disk space. On the other hand, using a small allocation unit means that each file will consist of many blocks. Reading each block normally requires a seek and a rotational delay, so reading a file consisting of many small blocks will be slow.

As an example, consider a disk with 32768 bytes per track, a rotation time of 16.67 msec, and an average seek time of 30 msec. The time in milliseconds to read a random block of \( k \) bytes is then the sum of the seek, rotational delay, and transfer times:

\[
30 + 8.3 + (k/32768) \times 16.67
\]

The solid curve of Fig. 5-4 shows the data rate for such a disk as a function of block size. If we make the gross assumption that all files are 1K (the measured median size), the dashed curve of Fig. 5-4 gives the disk space efficiency. The bad news is that good space utilization (block size < 2K) means low data rates and vice versa. Time efficiency and space efficiency are inherently in conflict.

![Fig. 5-4](image)

**Fig. 5-4.** The solid curve (left-hand scale) gives the data rate of a disk. The dashed curve (right-hand scale) gives the disk space efficiency. All files are 1K.

The usual compromise is to choose a block size of 512, 1K or 2K bytes. If a 1K block size is chosen on a disk with a 512-byte sector size, then the file system will always read or write two consecutive sectors, and treat them as a single, indivisible unit.

Once a block size has been chosen, the next issue is how to keep track of free
blocks. Two methods are widely used, as shown in Fig. 5-5. The first one consists of using a linked list of disk blocks, with each block holding as many free disk block numbers as will fit. With a 1K block and a 16-bit disk block number, each block on the free list holds the numbers of 511 free blocks. A 20M disk needs a free list of maximum 40 blocks to hold all 20K disk block numbers.

![Free disk blocks: 16, 17, 18](image)

![A 1 K disk block can hold 512 16-bit disk block numbers](image)

**Fig. 5-5.** (a) Holding the free list on a linked list. (b) A bit map.

The other free space management technique is the bit map. A disk with \( n \) blocks requires a bit map with \( n \) bits. Free blocks are represented by 1s in the map; allocated blocks by 0s (or vice versa). A 20M disk requires 20K bits for the map, which only requires 3 blocks. It is not surprising that the bit map requires less space, since it uses 1 bit per block, versus 16 bits in the linked list model. Only if the disk is nearly full will the linked list scheme require fewer blocks than the bit map.

If there is enough main memory to hold the bit map, that method is generally preferable. If, however, only 1 block of memory can be spared for keeping track of free disk blocks, and the disk is nearly full, then the linked list may be better. With only 1 block of the bit map in memory, it may turn out that no free blocks can be found on it, causing disk accesses to read the rest of the bit map. When a fresh block of the linked list is loaded into memory, 511 disk blocks can be allocated before having to go to the disk to fetch the next block from the list.

### 5.2.2. File Storage

If a file consists of a sequence of blocks, the file system must have some way of keeping track of the blocks of each file. The most obvious way—storing the blocks consecutively—is generally not feasible because files can grow. In fact, it was just this problem that led us to split files up into blocks in the first place.

A method that is feasible is to store the blocks of a file as a linked list. Each
1024-byte disk block contains 1022 bytes of data and a 2-byte pointer to the next block on the chain. This method has two disadvantages, however. First, the number of data bytes in a block is no longer a power of two, which is frequently a nuisance. Second, and more serious, random access is expensive to implement. If a program seeks to byte 32768 of a file and then starts reading, the operating system has to search its way through 32768/1022 or 33 blocks to find the data needed. Having to read 33 disk blocks to do the seek is inefficient.

Still, the idea of representing a file as a linked list can be salvaged if we keep the pointers in memory. Figure 5-6 shows the allocation scheme used by MS-DOS. In this example, we have three files, A, with blocks 6, 8, 4, and 2; B with blocks 5, 9, and 12; and C, with blocks 10, 3, and 13.

Associated with each disk is a table called the file allocation table (FAT). It has one entry for each disk block. The directory entry for each file gives the block number of the first block of the file. That slot in the FAT contains the block number of the next block. File A begins at block 6, so FAT entry 6 contains the number of the next block of file A, which is 8. FAT entry 8 contains the next block number, 4. Entry 4 points to entry 2, and entry 2 is marked as End of File.

This scheme was originally designed for 320K floppy disks using a 1K block size (standard for MS-DOS). Block numbers are 12 bits, so a 320-entry FAT requires 480 bytes, which fits conveniently in one 512-byte sector. When IBM decided to format the floppy disks as 360K, starting with DOS 2.0, the FAT grew to 540 bytes, which no longer fit in one sector and necessitated changing the disk layout to accommodate the larger (2-sector) FAT. When hard disks
with more than 4096 blocks were introduced, the 12-bit block number became inadequate, and the FAT had to be changed again. A little foresight would have come in handy.

It is also clear that with large disks, this scheme becomes increasingly unattractive. Suppose we have a 64M disk containing 64K 1K-disk blocks (a 70M disk would require disk block numbers larger than 16 bits and more troubles). The FAT will have 64K 2-byte entries and will occupy 128K. Keeping all of this in memory all the time uses up quite a bit of memory. However, keeping it on disk means that doing a seek to position 32K in a file might require as little as 1 or as many as 33 disk reads to follow the chain.

The essence of the problem with the FAT is that pointers for all the files on the whole disk are mixed up at random in the same table. This means that the whole FAT is potentially needed, even if only one file is open. A better method would be to keep the block lists for different files in different places. This is what UNIX does.

Associated with each file in UNIX is a little table (on disk) called an i-node, as shown in Fig. 5-7. It contains accounting and protection information, which we will come back to later. For the moment the key items are the 10 disk block numbers and the 3 indirect block numbers. For files up to 10 blocks long, all the disk addresses are kept right in the i-node, making them easy to find.

![Fig. 5-7. Structure of an i-node.](image)

When a file grows beyond 10 disk blocks, a free disk block is acquired and the single indirect pointer is set to point to it. This block is used to contain disk block pointers. With a 1K disk block and 32-bit disk addresses, the single indirect block can hold 256 disk addresses. This scheme suffices for files up to 266 blocks (10 in the i-node, 256 in the single indirect block).
Above 266 blocks, the double indirect pointer is used to point to a disk block of up to 256 pointers. Only these pointers do not point to data blocks. They point to 256 single indirect blocks. The double indirect block is sufficient for files up to \(266 + 256^2 = 65,802\) blocks. For files longer than about 64M, the triple indirect pointer is used to point to a block containing pointers to 256 double indirect blocks.

Files longer than 16 gigabytes cannot be handled. Of course, by going to a 2K disk block, each pointer block holds 512 pointers instead of 256, and the maximum file size becomes 128 gigabytes. The size of the FAT for a 128 gigabyte disk is unpleasant to contemplate. The strength of the UNIX scheme is that the indirect blocks are used only when they are needed. For files under 10K, no indirect blocks at all are needed. Note that for even the longest files, at most three disk references are needed to locate the disk address for any byte in the file (excluding the disk reference to get the i-node, which is fetched when the file is opened and kept in memory until it is closed).

The MINIX storage scheme is the same as that of UNIX, except that only seven disk block numbers are kept in the i-node, and there is no triple indirect block. With 2-byte disk addresses and 1K blocks, files of up to 256M can be handled, which is usually enough for personal computers.

### 5.2.3. Directory Structure

Before a file can be read, it must be opened. When a file is opened, the operating system uses the path name supplied by the user to locate the disk blocks, so that it can read and write the file later. Mapping path names onto i-nodes (or the equivalent) brings us to the subject of how directory systems are organized. These vary from quite simple to reasonably sophisticated.

Let us start with a particularly simple directory system, that of CP/M (Golden and Pechura, 1986), illustrated in Fig. 5-8. In this system, there is only one directory, so all the file system has to do to look up a file name is search the one and only directory. When it finds the entry, it also has the disk block numbers, since they are stored right in the directory entry. If the file uses more disk blocks than fit in one entry, the file is allocated additional directory entries.

![Fig. 5-8. A directory that contains the disk block numbers for each file.](image)

The fields in Fig. 5-8 have the following meanings. The *user code* field keeps track of which user owns the file. During a search, only those entries
belonging to the currently logged-in user are checked. The next two fields give
the name and extension of the file. The *extent* field is needed because a file
larger than 16 blocks occupies multiple directory entries. This field is used to
tell which entry comes first, second, and so on. The *block count* field tells
how many of the 16 potential disk block entries are in use. The final 16 fields contain
the disk block numbers themselves. The last block may not be full, so the sys-
tem has no way to determine the exact size of a file down to the last byte (i.e., it
keeps track of file sizes in blocks, not bytes).

Now let us consider some examples of systems with hierarchical directory
trees. Fig. 5-9 shows an MS-DOS directory entry. It is 32 bytes long and contains
the file name and the first block number, among other items. The first block
number can be used as an index into the FAT, to find the second block number,
and so on. In this way all the blocks can be found for a given file. Except for
the root directory, which is fixed size (112 entries for a 360K floppy disk), MS-
DOS directories are files and may contain an arbitrary number of entries.

![Fig. 5-9. The MS-DOS directory entry.](image)

The directory structure used in UNIX and MINIX is extremely simple, as
shown in Fig. 5-10. Each entry contains just a file name and its i-node number.
All the information about the type, size, times, ownership, and disk blocks is
contained in the i-node (see Fig. 5-7). All directories in UNIX are files, and may
contain arbitrarily many of these 16-byte entries.

![Fig. 5-10. A UNIX directory entry.](image)

When a file is opened, the file system must take the file name supplied and
locate its disk blocks. Let us consider how the path name `/usr/last/mbox` is
looked up. We will use UNIX as an example, but the algorithm is basically the
same for all hierarchical directory systems. First the file system locates the root
directory. In UNIX its i-node is located at a fixed place on the disk.

Then it looks up the first component of the path, `usr`, in the root directory to
find the i-node of the file /usr. From this i-node, the system locates the directory for /usr and looks up the next component, ast, in it. When it has found the entry for ast, it has the i-node for the directory /usr/ast. From this i-node it can find the directory itself and look up mbox. The i-node for this file is then read into memory and kept there until the file is closed. The lookup process is illustrated in Fig. 5-11.

Relative path names are looked up the same way as absolute ones, only starting from the working directory instead of starting from the root directory. Every directory has entries for . and .. which are put there when the directory is created. The entry . has the i-node number for the current directory, and the entry for .. has the i-node number for the parent directory. Thus, a procedure looking up ../dick/prog.c simply looks up .. in the working directory, finds the i-node number for the parent directory, and searches that directory for dick. No special mechanism is needed to handle these names. As far as the directory system is concerned, they are just ordinary ASCII strings.

5.2.4. Shared Files

When several users are working together on a project, they often need to share files. As a result, it is often convenient for a shared file to appear simultaneously in different directories belonging to different users. Figure 5-12 shows the file system of Fig 5-3(c) again, only with one of C's files now present in one of B's directories as well. The connection between B's directory and the shared file is called a link. The file system itself is now a directed acyclic graph, or DAG, rather than a tree.

Sharing files is convenient, but it also introduces some problems. To start with, if directories really do contain disk addresses, as in CP/M, then a copy of the disk addresses will have to be made in B's directory when the file is linked.
Fig. 5-12. File system containing a shared file.

If either \( B \) or \( C \) subsequently appends to the file, the new blocks will be listed only in the directory of the user doing the append. The changes will not be visible to the other user, thus defeating the purpose of sharing.

This problem can be solved in two ways. In the first solution, disk blocks are not listed in directories, but in a little data structure associated with the file itself. The directories would then point just to the little data structure. This is the approach used in UNIX (where the little data structure is the i-node).

In the second solution, \( B \) links to one of \( C \)'s files by having the system create a new file, of type LINK, and entering that file in \( B \)'s directory. The new file contains just the path name of the file linked to. When \( B \) reads from the linked file, the operating system sees that the file being read from is of type LINK, looks up the name of the file linked to, and reads that file. This approach is called symbolic linking.

Each of these methods has its drawbacks. In the first method, at the moment that \( B \) links to the shared file, the i-node records the file's owner as \( C \). Creating a link does not change the ownership (see Fig. 5-13), but it does increase the link count in the i-node, so the system knows how many directory entries currently point to the file.

If \( C \) subsequently tries to remove the file, the system is faced with a problem. If it removes the file and clears the i-node, \( B \) will have a directory entry pointing to an invalid i-node. If the i-node is later reassigned to another file, \( B \)'s link will point to the wrong file. The system can see from the count in the i-node that the file is still in use, but there is no way for it to find all the directory entries for the file, in order to erase them. Pointers to the directories cannot be stored in the i-node because there can be an unlimited number of directories.

The only thing to do is remove \( C \)'s directory entry, but leave the i-node intact, with count set to 1, as shown in Fig. 5-13(c). We now have a situation in...
which $B$ is the only user having a directory entry for a file owned by $C$. If the system does accounting or has quotas, $C$ will continue to be billed for the file until $B$ decides to remove it, at which time the count goes to 0 and the file is deleted.

With symbolic links this problem does not arise because only the true owner has a pointer to the i-node. Users who have linked to the file just have path names, not i-node pointers. When the owner removes the file, it is destroyed. Subsequent attempts to use the file via a symbolic link will fail when the system is unable to locate the file. Removing a symbolic link does not affect the file at all.

The problem with symbolic links is the extra overhead required. The file containing the path must be read, then the path must be parsed and followed, component by component, until the i-node is reached. All of this activity may require a considerable number of extra disk accesses. Furthermore, an extra i-node is needed for each symbolic link, as is an extra disk block to store the path, although if the path name is short, the system could store it in the i-node itself, as an optimization. Symbolic links have the advantage that they can be used to link to files on machines anywhere in the world, by simply providing the network address of the machine where the file resides in addition to its path on that machine.

There is also another problem introduced by links, symbolic or otherwise. When links are allowed, files can have two or more paths. Programs that start at a given directory and find all the files in that directory and its subdirectories will locate a linked file multiple times. For example, a program that dumps all the files in a directory and its subdirectories onto a tape may make multiple copies of a linked file. Furthermore, if the tape is then read into another machine, unless the dump program is clever, the linked file will be copied twice onto the disk, instead of being linked.

\[ \text{Fig. 5-13. (a) Situation prior to linking. (b) After the link is created. (c) After the original owner removes the file.} \]
5.2.5. File System Reliability

Destruction of a file system is often a far greater disaster than destruction of a computer. If a computer is destroyed by fire, lightning surges, or a cup of coffee poured onto the keyboard, it is annoying and will cost money, but generally a replacement can be purchased with a minimum of fuss. Inexpensive personal computers can even be replaced within a few hours by just going to the dealer (except at universities where issuing a purchase order takes three committees, five signatures, and 90 days).

If a computer's file system is irrevocably lost, whether due to hardware, software, or rats gnawing on the floppy disks, restoring all the information will be difficult, time consuming, and in many cases, impossible. For the people whose programs, documents, customer files, tax records, data bases, marketing plans, or other data are gone forever, the consequences can be catastrophic. While the file system cannot offer any protection against physical destruction of the equipment and media, it can help protect the information. In this section we will look at some of the issues involved in safeguarding the file system.

Disks often have bad blocks, as we pointed out in Chap. 3. Floppy disks are generally perfect when they leave the factory, but they can develop bad blocks during use. Winchester disks frequently have bad blocks right from the start: it is just too expensive to manufacture them completely free of all defects. In fact, most hard disk manufacturers supply with each drive a list of the bad blocks their tests have discovered.

Two solutions to the bad block problem are used, one hardware and one software. The hardware solution is to dedicate a sector on the disk to the bad block list. When the controller is first initialized, it reads the bad block list and picks a spare block (or track) to replace the defective ones, recording the mapping in the bad block list. Henceforth, all requests for the bad block will use the spare.

The software solution requires the user or file system to carefully construct a file containing all the bad blocks. This technique removes them from the free list, so they will never occur in data files. As long as the bad block file is never read or written, no problems will arise. Care has to be taken during disk back-ups to avoid reading this file.

Backups

Even with a clever strategy for dealing with bad blocks, it is important to back up the files frequently. After all, automatically switching to a spare track after a crucial data block has been ruined is somewhat akin to locking the barn door after the prize race horse has escaped.

File systems on floppy disk can be backed up by just copying the entire floppy disk to a blank one. File systems on small Winchester disks can be backed up by dumping the entire disk to magnetic tape, either industry standard
9-track tape (which holds about 50M per reel), or streamer tape (which comes in many sizes).

For large Winchesters (e.g., 500M), backing up the entire drive on tape is awkward and time consuming. One strategy that is easy to implement but wastes half the storage is to provide each computer with two drives instead of one. Both drives are divided into two halves: data and backup. Each night the data portion of drive 0 is copied to the backup portion of drive 1, and vice versa, as shown in Fig. 5-14. In this way, even if one drive is completely ruined, no information is lost.

An alternative to dumping the entire file system every day is to make incremental dumps. The simplest form of incremental dumping is to make a complete dump periodically, say weekly or monthly, and to make a daily dump of only those files that have been modified since the last full dump. A better scheme is to dump only those files that have changed since they were last dumped.

To implement this method, a list of the dump times for each file must be kept on disk. The dump program then checks each file on the disk. If it has been modified since it was last dumped, it is dumped again and its time-of-last-dump is changed to the current time. If done on a monthly cycle, this method requires 31 daily dump tapes, one per day, plus enough tapes to hold a full dump, made once a month. Other more complex schemes that use fewer tapes are also in use.

File System Consistency

Another area where reliability is an issue is file system consistency. Many file systems read blocks, modify them, and write them out later. If the system crashes before all the modified blocks have been written out, the file system can be left in an inconsistent state. This problem is especially critical if some of the blocks that have not been written out are i-node blocks, directory blocks, or blocks containing the free list.

To deal with the problem of inconsistent file systems, most computers have a utility program that checks file system consistency. It can be run whenever the
system is booted, particularly after a crash. The following description tells how such a utility works in UNIX and MINIX, but most other systems have something similar. These file system checkers verify each file system (disk) independently of the other ones.

Two kinds of consistency checks can be made: blocks and files. To check for block consistency, the program builds a table with two counters per block, both initially 0. The first counter keeps track of how many times the block is present in a file; the second records how often it is present in the free list (or bit map of free blocks).

The program then reads all the i-nodes. Starting from an i-node, it is possible to build a list of all the block numbers used in the corresponding file. As each block number is read, its counter in the first table is incremented. The program then examines the free list or bit map, to find all the blocks that are not in use. Each occurrence of a block in the free list results in its counter in the second table being incremented.

If the file system is consistent, each block will have a 1 either in the first table or in the second table, as illustrated in Fig. 5-15(a). However, as a result of a crash, the tables might look like Fig. 5-15(b), in which block 2 does not occur in either table. It will be reported as being a missing block. While missing blocks do no real harm, they do waste space and thus reduce the capacity of the disk. The solution to missing blocks is straightforward: the file system checker just adds them to the free list.

![Fig. 5-15](image_url)

**Fig. 5-15.** File system states. (a) Consistent. (b) Missing block. (c) Duplicate block in free list. (d) Duplicate data block.

Another situation that might occur is that of Fig. 5-15(c). Here we see a block, number 4, that occurs twice in the free list. (Duplicates can occur only if the free list is really a list; with a bit map it is impossible.) The solution here is also simple: rebuild the free list.

The worst thing that can happen is that the same data block is present in two or more files, as shown in Fig. 5-15(d) with block 5. If either of these files is removed, block 5 will be put on the free list, leading to a situation in which the
same block is both in use and free at the same time. If both files are removed, the block will be put onto the free list twice.

The appropriate action for the file system checker to take is to allocate a free block, copy the contents of block 5 into it, and insert the copy into one of the files. In this way, the information content of the files is unchanged (although almost assuredly garbled), but the file system structure is at least made consistent. The error should be reported, to allow the user to inspect the damage.

In addition to checking to see that each block is properly accounted for, the file system checker also checks the directory system. It too, uses a table of counters, but these are per file, rather than per block. It starts at the root directory and recursively descends the tree, inspecting each directory in the file system. For every file in every directory, it increments the counter for that file’s i-node (see Fig. 5-10 for the layout of a directory entry).

When it is all done, it has a list, indexed by i-node number, telling how many directories point to that i-node. It then compares these numbers with the link counts stored in the i-nodes themselves. In a consistent file system, both counts will agree. However, two kinds of errors can occur: the link count in the i-node can be too high or it can be too low.

If the link count is higher than the number of directory entries, then even if all the files are removed from the directories, the count will still be nonzero and the i-node will not be removed. This error is not serious, but it wastes space on the disk with files that are not in any directory. It should be fixed by setting the link count in the i-node to the correct value.

The other error is potentially catastrophic. If two directory entries are linked to a file, but the i-node says that there is only one, when either directory entry is removed, the i-node count will go to zero. When an i-node count goes to zero, the file system marks it as unused and releases all of its blocks. This action will result in one of the directories now pointing to an unused i-node, whose blocks may soon be assigned to other files. Again, the solution is just to force the link count in the i-node to the actual number of directory entries.

These two operations, checking blocks and checking directories, are often integrated for efficiency reasons (i.e., only one pass over the i-nodes is required). Other heuristic checks are also possible. For example, directories have a definite format, with i-node numbers and ASCII names. If an i-node number is larger than the number of i-nodes on the disk, the directory has been damaged.

Furthermore, each i-node has a mode, some of which are legal but strange, such as 0007, which allows the owner and his group no access at all, but allows outsiders to read, write, and execute the file. It might be useful to at least report files that give outsiders more rights than the owner. Directories with more than, say, 1000 entries are also suspicious. Files located in user directories, but which are owned by the super-user and have the SETUID bit on, are potential security problems. With a little effort, one can put together a fairly long list of legal, but peculiar, situations that might be worth reporting.
The previous paragraphs have discussed the problem of protecting the user against crashes. Some file systems also worry about protecting the user against himself. If the user intends to type

```bash
rm *.o
```

to remove all the files ending with `.o` (compiler generated object files), but accidently types

```bash
rm * .o
```

(note the space after the asterisk), `rm` will remove all the files in the current directory and then complain that it cannot find `.o`. In MS-DOS and some other systems, when a file is removed, all that happens is that a bit is set in the directory or i-node marking the file as removed. No disk blocks are returned to the free list until they are actually needed. Thus, if the user discovers the error immediately, it is possible to run a special utility program that "unremoves" (i.e., restores) the removed files.

### 5.2.6. File System Performance

Access to disk is much slower than access to memory. Reading a memory word typically takes a few hundred nanoseconds at most. Reading a disk block takes tens of milliseconds, a factor of 100,000 slower. As a result of this difference in access time, many file systems have been designed to reduce the number of disk accesses needed.

The most common technique used to reduce disk accesses is the **block cache** or **buffer cache**. (Cache is pronounced "cash," and is derived from the French *cacher*, meaning to hide.) In this context, a cache is a collection of blocks that logically belong on the disk, but are being kept in memory for performance reasons.

Various algorithms can be used to manage the cache, but a common one is to check all read requests to see if the needed block is in the cache. If it is, the read request can be satisfied without a disk access. If the block is not in the cache, it is first read into the cache, and then copied to wherever it is needed. Subsequent requests for the same block can be satisfied from the cache.

When a block has to be loaded into a full cache, some block has to be removed and rewritten to the disk if it has been modified since being brought in. This situation is very much like paging, and all the usual paging algorithms described in Chap. 4, such as FIFO, second chance, and LRU are applicable. One pleasant difference between paging and caching is that cache references are relatively infrequent, so that it is feasible to keep all the blocks in exact LRU order with linked lists.

Unfortunately, there is a catch. Now that we have a situation in which exact LRU is possible, it turns out that LRU is undesirable. The problem has to do with the crashes and file system consistency discussed in the previous section. If
a critical block, such as an i-node block, is read into the cache and modified, but not rewritten to the disk, a crash will leave the file system in an inconsistent state. If the i-node block is put at the end of the LRU chain, it may be quite a while before it reaches the front and is rewritten to the disk.

Furthermore, some blocks, such as double indirect blocks, are rarely referenced two times within a short interval. These considerations lead to a modified LRU scheme, taking two factors into account:

1. Is the block likely to be needed again soon?
2. Is the block essential to the consistency of the file system?

For both questions, blocks can be divided into categories such as i-node blocks, indirect blocks, directory blocks, full data blocks, and partly-full data blocks. Blocks that will probably not be needed again soon go on the front, rather than the rear of the LRU list, so their buffers will be reused quickly. Blocks that might be needed again soon, such as a partly full block that is being written, go on the end of the list, so they will stay around for a long time.

The second question is independent of the first one. If the block is essential to the file system consistency (basically, everything except data blocks), and it has been modified, it should be written to disk immediately, regardless of which end of the LRU list it is put on. By writing critical blocks quickly, we greatly reduce the probability that a crash will wreck the file system.

Even with this measure to keep the file system integrity intact, it is undesirable to keep data blocks in the cache too long before writing them out. Consider the plight of someone who is using a personal computer to write a book. Even if our writer periodically tells the editor to write the file being edited to the disk, there is a good chance that everything will still be in the cache and nothing on the disk. If the system crashes, the file system structure will not be corrupted, but a whole day's work will be lost.

This situation need not happen very often before we have a fairly unhappy user. Systems take two approaches to dealing with it. The UNIX way is to have a system call, SYNC, which forces all the modified blocks out onto the disk immediately. When the system is started up, a program, usually called update, is started up in the background to sit in an endless loop issuing SYNC calls, sleeping for 30 sec between calls. As a result, no more than 30 seconds of work is lost due to a crash.

The MS-DOS way is to write every modified block to disk as soon as it has been written. Caches in which all modified blocks are written back to the disk immediately are called write-through caches. They require much more disk I/O than nonwrite-through caches. The difference between these two approaches can be seen when a program writes a 1K block full, one character at a time. UNIX will collect all the characters in the cache, and write the block out once every 30 seconds, or whenever the block is removed from the cache. MS-DOS will make a disk access for every character written. Of course most programs do internal
buffering, so they normally write not a character, but a line or a larger unit on each WRITE system call.

A consequence of this difference in caching strategy is that just removing a (floppy) disk from a UNIX system without doing a SYNC will almost always result in lost data, and frequently in a corrupted file system as well. With MS-DOS, no problem arises. These differing strategies were chosen because UNIX was developed in an environment in which all disks were hard disks and not removable, whereas MS-DOS started out in the floppy disk world. As hard disks become the norm, even on small microcomputers, the UNIX approach, with its better efficiency, will definitely be the way to go.

Caching is not the only way to increase the performance of a file system. Another important technique is to reduce the amount of disk arm motion by putting blocks that are likely to be accessed in sequence close to each other, preferably in the same cylinder. When an output file is written, the file system has to allocate the blocks one at a time, as they are needed. If the free blocks are recorded in a bit map, and the whole bit map is in main memory, it is easy enough to choose a free block as close as possible to the previous block. With a free list, part of which is on disk, it is much harder to allocate blocks close together.

However, even with a free list, some block clustering can be done. The trick is to keep track of disk storage not in blocks, but in groups of consecutive blocks. If a track consists of 64 sectors of 512 bytes, the system could use 1K blocks (2 sectors), but allocate disk storage in units of 2 blocks (4 sectors). This is not the same as having a 2K disk block, since the cache would still use 1K blocks and disk transfers would still be 1K but reading a file sequentially on an otherwise idle system would reduce the number of seeks by a factor of two, considerably improving performance.

A variation on the same theme is to take account of rotational positioning. When allocating blocks, the system attempts to place consecutive blocks in a file in the same cylinder, but interleaved for maximum throughput. Thus, if a disk has a rotation time of 16.67 msec and it takes about 4 msec for a user process to request and get a disk block, each block should be placed at least a quarter of the way around from its predecessor.

Another performance bottleneck in systems that use i-nodes or anything equivalent to i-nodes is that reading even a short file requires two disk accesses: one for the i-node and one for the block. The usual i-node placement is shown in Fig. 5-16(a). Here all the i-nodes are near the beginning of the disk, so the average distance between an i-node and its blocks will be about half the number of cylinders, requiring long seeks.

One easy performance improvement is to put the i-nodes in the middle of the disk, rather than at the start, thus reducing the average seek between the i-node and the first block by a factor of two. Another idea, shown in Fig. 5-16(b), is to divide the disk into cylinder groups, each with its own i-nodes, blocks, and free list (McKusick et al., 1984). When creating a new file, any i-node can be
l-nodes are located near the start of the disk

Fig. 5-16. (a) I-nodes placed at the start of the disk. (b) Disk divided into cylinder groups, each with its own blocks and i-nodes.

chosen, but having done this, an attempt is made to find a block in the same cylinder group as the i-node. If none is available, then a block in a cylinder group close by is used.

5.3. FILE SERVERS

Distributed systems often have machines that offer file service to other machines. They are called file servers (Birrell and Needham, 1980; Fridrich and Older, 1981; Svobodova, 1984; Swinehart et al., 1979). One popular way of keeping the cost of a distributed system low is to provide users with diskless workstations, and have them access files by sending READ and WRITE requests over the network to a common file server.

In principle, such a network file server could have an interface identical to UNIX or MS-DOS or any other popular file system. In practice, the people building these things are researchers who are generally interested in trying out new ideas. The result is that many file servers have features not present in traditional file systems. In the following sections we will look at some of these.

5.3.1. Interface Level

File servers can present an interface to their users (clients) at any one of three levels. The simplest one is remote disk. In this model, each user is allocated a virtual disk, which is just a private portion of the file server's disk. The user can then use the virtual disk the same way he would use a local disk. The file server provides commands: READ BLOCK and WRITE BLOCK, just as a local disk does. In effect, the network is being used to simulate a disk controller. All the file system code runs in the user machines, just as it does with local disks.

The next step up in complexity is to have the file server support files but not
directories. Commands are present to create and delete files, read, write, and seek on files, and perform other file-specific operations. When a user creates a file, the file server generally returns an identifier that can be used for subsequent operations on the file. The identifier, might, for example, be a long random number, to make it difficult for unauthorized users to guess. It is up to the user to maintain directories that map ASCII names onto the file server’s identifiers. These identifiers are then analogous to the i-node numbers stored in UNIX directories.

One problem with this scheme is that if a user creates a file on a file server and then crashes before recording the identifier in a directory, the file is “lost.” It will continue to exist forever, but no one will ever be able to access it because its identifier is no longer known. The only way out of this situation is to have the file server provide a command by which a user can request a complete list of all his files.

The third kind of interface is to have the file server offer a complete file system, possibly UNIX, but often something more sophisticated. When this approach is taken, commands are present not only to manipulate files, but also to create and delete directories, change working directories, make and delete links to existing files, and similar operations. When a remote file server offers a complete directory service, it is sometimes possible for user workstations to mount a remote file system on the workstation’s file tree. Thereafter, a remote file can be accessed merely by giving its absolute path from the local root, or by giving its relative path from the current working directory (which may be on the remote disk). The fact that it is remote is no longer visible.

5.3.2. Atomic Update

In a certain sense, improved technology has led to file systems that are less reliable than they used to be. Consider the way many companies kept track of their inventory in the early days of computing, before disks were invented. The company typically had a master tape containing a complete list of its products and how many of each were in stock. A backup copy of the tape was generally kept too, in case the original became unreadable due to dust, moisture, or damage by the tape drive.

Once a day the master tape was mounted on drive 1, a tape containing the day’s sales was mounted on drive 2, and a blank tape was mounted on drive 3. Then an update program ran, reading the master and sales tapes, and producing a new master tape (which was immediately copied, for backup purposes). If this program crashed part way through, all three tapes were rewound, and the whole process started again.

This system had the attractive property that an update run either ran successfully to completion, producing a new master tape, or it failed, leaving the original file intact. Furthermore, if the master tape was ever damaged, for whatever reason, a backup was always available.
When disks were introduced, it was natural to have the master tape become a file of records on disk. Updating the master tape was replaced by reading and updating records in this file. The only problem was, if an update run crashed part way through, it was not possible to bring the system back up and rerun the update program, since an unknown number of records had already been updated. Data base systems have been dealing with this problem for years, but now with the advent of self-contained file servers, we are starting to see file systems that also address it.

The property that the three-tape system had, but the update-in-place disk system lacked, is often called **atomic update** or **failure atomicity**. What it means is that an update to a record, block or file either happens completely, or does not happen at all, leaving the system in its original state. If the atomic update fails, changing nothing, the update program can just be run again. What must be avoided at all costs is an update that changes part of the data, but not all of it, leaving the file in an unknown, partially updated state.

Another useful property that the tape system had was **fault tolerance**. A bad spot on the master tape was not fatal; the backup was always available. In theory, file systems could also maintain two copies of all files, but in practice few of them do.

File servers that offer fault-tolerant, atomic update usually implement a logical disk drive as two physical drives, as illustrated in Fig. 5-17. When information is written to logical block \(n\), the server first writes it to physical block \(n\) on drive 1. Then it reads it back to make sure that it has been written correctly. If everything is all right, the server then writes the same information to physical block \(n\) on drive 2, and verifies it as well.

![Fig. 5-17. Stable storage can be implemented using two disk drives containing the same information.](image)

This technique is known as **stable storage** (Lampson and Sturgis, 1979) and has some interesting properties. First, consider what happens if a bad block spontaneously appears on either drive. Periodically, at night for example, the file server reads both disks looking for bad blocks, that is, blocks with checksum
errors. If it finds one, it overwrites the bad block with the copy from the other drive, thus recovering from the error. (If the block has been physically damaged, the server can use a spare track kept in reserve for such emergencies.) If we assume that the probability of two corresponding blocks spontaneously going bad on the same day is negligible, stable storage will never lose data, in spite of occasional disk errors.

Now let us consider the effect of file server crashes. If a crash occurs while writing on either drive, the block being written will have a checksum error. Since this can always be detected, the good block can be used to overwrite the bad block. If the server crashes while writing on drive 1, the system will be restored to its original state. If it crashes while writing on drive 2, the system will be restored to its updated state. Either way, a write to stable storage either happens or it does not happen, but it never leaves the system in an ambiguous intermediate state.

An idea somewhat related to atomic update is that of multiversion files. When a file server supports multiversion files, a file is never modified after it has been created. Instead, changes are recorded by requesting a temporary copy of the file, modifying the copy, and then making the changes permanent by freezing the temporary copy in an atomic update. Thus, a file consists of a time-ordered sequence of immutable versions. Requests to read a file always read the latest version, unless an earlier version has been explicitly requested.

5.3.3. Concurrency Control

In a traditional file system (e.g., UNIX), if two users are updating a file at the same time, the READ and WRITE commands will be carried out in the order received. Consider what happens in a banking system if two customers each deposit money to the same account at the same time. The account initially contains 500 dollars, and the customers want to deposit 200 and 300 dollars, respectively. The following sequence of actions might occur.

1. Customer 1’s program reads the balance and sees that it is 500.
2. Customer 2’s program reads the balance and also sees that it is 500.
3. Customer 1’s program updates the balance to be 500 + 200 = 700.
4. Customer 2’s program updates the balance to be 500 + 300 = 800.

The final result is 800. If customer 1 had been a little bit slower, the final balance would have been 700. In any event, because the two updates are interleaved, the final result is wrong. What is needed is a way to ensure that first one customer runs his program and then the other, in either order, but not interleaved as above.
SEC. 5.3

The property of having simultaneous updates yield a result that is equivalent to having the updates run sequentially in some order is called \textit{serializability}. Techniques to achieve serializability are called \textit{concurrency control algorithms}. Like atomic updates, they are widely used in data base systems, but are now beginning to appear in file servers as well.

Many file servers offer some form of \textit{locking} to their clients as a concurrency control technique. When a file is locked by one client, all attempts to use or lock the file by other clients are rejected by the server. Locks can be used to achieve concurrency control as follows. Before starting an update run, the client first locks all the files that will be needed. If some file is already locked (by another client), all the files just locked are unlocked, and the run fails with no changes made. Once all the locks have been acquired, the files are read and written, and the locks are released.

One difficult problem with locking is what to do if a client requests a lock on a file and then crashes. To prevent the file from remaining locked, some servers start a timer whenever a lock is set. If the timer runs out before the lock is released, the server assumes that the client has crashed and unlocks the file. This strategy causes obvious problems if the client is alive and well, but just slow.

Concurrency control closely resembles the mutual exclusion problem we studied in detail in Chap. 2 but it differs in a subtle way. In Chap. 2 we approached the problem from the program side, establishing critical regions and making sure no two critical regions were active at once. With locking, we are approaching it from the data side, directly protecting each file, without regard to which piece of program text is executing. When there are potentially many programs that might access some file, it makes more sense to put the controls on the file, rather than on the programs.

The implementation is also different, because keeping a semaphore around for each file in the file system for the (unlikely) event that someone might want to lock it is too expensive. Instead, a table of locked files is kept in memory. The problems of crashes, timeouts, and other factors are also different.

5.3.4. Transactions

Automatic locking is often combined with atomic update in a form known as a \textit{transaction}. Transactions have the property of either running successfully to completion, or failing and leaving the system state unchanged. To run a transaction, the client process sends a \texttt{BEGIN TRANSACTION} message to the file server. It can then read and write one or more files, as needed. When it is done, the process sends an \texttt{END TRANSACTION} message to the file server, to cause all the changes to be \textit{committed}, that is, made permanent, in a single atomic update. If the commit is not possible, the transaction fails and nothing is changed. Until the \texttt{END TRANSACTION} message is received, none of the writes will be visible to other processes using any of the files. They see just the original, unmodified files.
If two or more processes are simultaneously performing transactions, it is up to the file server to give each one the illusion that it is the only one busy at that instant. In other words, the file server must automatically make all the transactions serializable. How the file server efficiently implements serializability and atomic update on multiple files is a subject of much research. Below we will just give a brief sketch of one simple approach.

When a process starts a transaction, the file server creates a transaction record on stable storage to keep track of its status. Because it is on stable storage, it will survive both server and disk crashes. When the process reads a file for the first time, the file server locks the file to prevent other processes from accessing it. If the lock cannot be acquired, the transaction fails and no changes are made.

When the process tries to write a block on a file for the first time, the file is locked and a copy of the file is made. The write (and all subsequent writes to that file) are made to the copy, not the original.

When the END TRANSACTION command is executed, the server will have a collection of newly created files that have to replace the old files, which still have not been modified. It then builds an intentions list, listing all the files that have to be updated, and for each one it notes where the new file is to be found. The intentions list goes in the transaction record on stable storage, so that even if the server crashes, when it comes back up it will know what to do. Then it sets a bit to inhibit all other operations until the transaction is marked as committed and finished.

Next, it returns all the blocks in the files to be overwritten, and replaces them with the new files by atomically updating their i-nodes. At this point, the transaction has completed and all the locks can be released. These steps are summarized in Fig. 5-18.

![Fig. 5-18](image)

Fig. 5-18. (a) The steps performed by a client during a transaction. (b) The action taken by the server for each step.

Other, more efficient algorithms are known. For a discussion of some of them, see the paper by Svobodova (1984), and the references it contains.
5.3.5. Replicated Files

Another useful feature provided by some file servers is replication. Instead of keeping just one copy of each file, the server keeps \( n \) copies. If one of the copies should be accidentally destroyed, the data will not be lost forever. If a standard directory is implemented as a list of (ASCII name, i-node number) pairs, then replication can be achieved by changing the directory to contain an ASCII string and \( n \) i-node numbers, for the \( n \) copies of the file, as shown in Fig. 5-19. For a discussion of replicated files, see, for example, Pu et al. (1986).

![Fig. 5-19. (a) An ordinary directory. (b) A directory with replicated files.](image)

When one copy of a file has been modified, it is up to the file server to handle the replication. Two strategies are possible. The first one is to locate the duplicates listed in the directory and send the blocks that have been changed to each of them, so they can be brought up to date. The other strategy is to abandon the now-obsolete duplicates, create new copies of the modified file, and enter these in the directory.

When the duplicates are all kept on different file servers, some of which are isolated due to network failures at the time the replication is to occur, the divergent copies must be reconciled when the network comes back up. If the replicated file happens to be a directory, and all the copies are independently modified while the network is down, when the network is restored to service, the file servers will be confronted with multiple, inconsistent copies of the directory, and somehow have to make them consistent again. For a more thorough discussion of this problem and some solutions, see Popek et al. (1981), Walker et al. (1983), and Weinstein et al. (1985).

5.4. SECURITY

File systems often contain information that is highly valuable to their users. Protecting this information against unauthorized usage is therefore a major concern of all file systems. In the following sections we will look at a variety of issues concerned with security and protection.
5.4.1. The Security Environment

The terms "security" and "protection" are often used interchangeably. Nevertheless, it is frequently useful to make a distinction between the general problems involved in making sure that files are not read or modified by unauthorized persons, which include technical, managerial, legal, and political issues on the one hand, and the specific operating system mechanisms used to provide security, on the other. To avoid confusion, we will use the term security to refer to the overall problem, and the term protection mechanisms to refer to the specific operating system mechanisms used to safeguard information in the computer. The boundary between them is not well defined, however. First we will look at security; later on in the chapter we will look at protection.

Security has many facets. Two of the more important ones are data loss and intruders. Some of the common causes of data loss are:

2. Hardware or software errors: CPU malfunctions, unreadable disks or tapes, telecommunication errors, program bugs.
3. Human errors: incorrect data entry, wrong tape or disk mounted, wrong program run, lost disk or tape.

Most of these can be dealt with by maintaining adequate backups, preferably far away from the original data.

A more interesting problem is what to do about intruders. These come in two varieties. Passive intruders just want to read files they are not authorized to read. Active intruders are more malicious; they want to make unauthorized changes to data. When designing a system to be secure against intruders, it is important to keep in mind the kind of intruder one is trying to protect against. Some common categories are:

1. Casual prying by nontechnical users. Many people have terminals to time-sharing systems on their desks, and human nature being what it is, some of them will read other people's electronic mail and other files if no barriers are placed in the way. Most UNIX systems, for example, have the default that all files are publicly readable.
2. Snooping by insiders. Students, system programmers, operators, and other technical personnel often consider it to be a personal challenge to break the security of the local computer system. They often are highly skilled and are willing to devote a substantial amount of time to the effort.
3. Determined attempt to make money. Some bank programmers have attempted to break into a banking system to steal from the bank. Schemes have varied from changing the software to truncate rather than round interest, keeping the fraction of a cent for themselves, to siphoning off accounts not used in years, to blackmail ("Pay me or I will destroy all the bank's records.").

4. Commercial or military espionage. Espionage refers to a serious and well-funded attempt by a competitor or a foreign country to steal programs, trade secrets, patents, technology, circuit designs, marketing plans, and so forth. Often this attempt will involve wiretapping or even erecting antennas directed at the computer to pick up its electromagnetic radiation.

It should be clear that trying to keep the KGB from stealing military secrets is quite a different matter from trying to keep students from inserting a funny message-of-the-day into the system. The amount of effort that one puts into security and protection clearly depends on who the enemy is thought to be.

Another aspect of the security problem is privacy: protecting individuals from misuse of information about them. This quickly gets into many legal and moral issues. Should the government compile dossiers on everyone in order to catch X-cheaters, where X is "welfare" or "tax," depending on your politics? Should the police be able to look up anything on anyone in order to stop organized crime? Do employers and insurance companies have rights? What happens when these rights conflict with individual rights? All of these issues are extremely important, but are beyond the scope of this book (see the references in Chap. 6 for some suggested readings, however).

5.4.2. Famous Security Flaws

Just as the transportation industry has the Titanic and the Hindenburg, computer security experts have a few things they would rather forget about. In this section we will look at some interesting security problems that have occurred in four different operating systems: UNIX, MULTICS, TENEX, and OS/360.

The UNIX utility lpr, which prints a file on the line printer, has an option to remove the file after it has been printed. In early versions of UNIX it was possible for anyone to use lpr to print, and then have the system remove, the password file.

Another way to break into UNIX was to link a file called core in the working directory to the password file. The intruder then forced a core dump of a SETUID program, which the system wrote on the core file, that is, on top of the password file. In this way, a user could replace the password file with one containing a few strings of his own choosing (e.g., command arguments).

Yet another subtle flaw in UNIX involved the command
mkdir foo

Mkdir, which is a SETUID program owned by the root, first created the i-node for the directory foo with the system call MKNOD, and then changed the owner of foo from its effective uid (i.e., root) to its real uid (the user’s uid). When the system was slow, it was sometimes possible for the user to quickly remove the directory i-node and make a link to the password file under the name foo after the MKNOD but before the CHOWN. When mkdir did the CHOWN it made the user the owner of the password file. By putting the necessary commands in a shell script, they could be tried over and over until the trick worked.

The MULTICS security problem had to do with the fact that the system designers always perceived MULTICS as a time-sharing system, with batch facilities thrown in as an afterthought to pacify some old batch diehards. The time-sharing security was excellent; the batch security was nonexistent. It was possible for anyone to submit a batch job that read a deck of cards into an arbitrary user’s directory.

To steal someone’s files, all one had to do was get a copy of the editor source code, modify it to steal files (but still work perfectly as an editor), compile it, and read it into the victim’s bin directory. The next time the victim called the editor, he got the intruder’s version, which edited fine, but stole all his files as well. The idea of modifying a normal program to do nasty things in addition to its usual function and arranging for the victim to use the modified version is now known as the Trojan horse attack.

The TENEX operating system used to be very popular on the DEC-10 computers. It is no longer used much, but it will live on forever in the annals of computer security due to the following design error. TENEX supported paging. To allow users to monitor the behavior of their programs, it was possible to instruct the system to call a user function on each page fault.

TENEX also used passwords to protect files. To access a file, a program had to present the proper password. The operating system checked passwords one character at a time, stopping as soon as it saw that the password was wrong. To break into TENEX an intruder would carefully position a password as shown in Fig. 5-20(a), with the first character at the end of one page, and the rest at the start of the next page.

The next step was to make sure that the second page was not in memory, for example, by referencing so many other pages that the second page would surely be evicted to make room for them. Now the program tried to open the victim’s file, using the carefully aligned password. If the first character of the real password was anything but A, the system would stop checking at the first character and report back with ILLEGAL PASSWORD. If, however, the real password did begin with A, the system continued reading, and got a page fault, about which the intruder was informed.

If the password did not begin with A, the intruder changed the password to that of Fig. 5-20(b) and repeated the whole process to see if it began with B. It
Fig. 5-20. The TENEX password problem.

took at most 128 tries to go through the whole ASCII character set, and thus determine the first character.

Suppose the first character was an F. The memory layout of Fig. 5-20(c) allowed the intruder to test strings of the form FA, FB, and so on. Using this approach it took at most $128n$ tries to guess an $n$ character ASCII password, instead of $128^n$.

Our last flaw concerns OS/360. The description that follows is slightly simplified, but preserves the essence of the flaw. In this system it was possible to start up a tape read and then continue computing while the tape drive was transferring data to the user space. The trick here was to carefully start up a tape read, and then do a system call that required a user data structure, for example, a file to read and its password.

The operating system first verified that the password was indeed the correct one for the given file. Then it went back and read the file name again for the actual access (it could have saved the name internally, but it did not). Unfortunately, just before the system went to fetch the file name the second time, the file name was overwritten by the tape drive. The system then read the new file, for which no password had been presented. Getting the timing right took some practice, but it was not that hard. Besides, if there is one thing that computers are good at, it is repeating the same operation over and over ad nauseam.

5.4.3. Generic Security Attacks

The flaws described above have been fixed but the average operating system still leaks like a sieve. The usual way to test a system's security is to hire a group of experts, known as tiger teams or penetration teams, to see if they can break in. Hebbard et al. (1980) tried the same thing with graduate students. In the course of the years, these penetration teams have discovered a number of areas in which systems are likely to be weak. Below we have listed some of the more common attacks that are often successful. When designing a system, be sure it can withstand attacks like these.
1. Request memory pages, disk space, or tapes and just read them. Many systems do not erase them before allocating them, and they may be full of interesting information written by the previous owner.

2. Try illegal system calls, or legal system calls with illegal parameters, or even legal system calls with legal but unreasonable parameters. Many systems can easily be confused.

3. Start logging in and then hit DEL, RUBOUT or BREAK halfway through the login sequence. In some systems, the password checking program will be killed and the login considered successful.

4. Try modifying complex operating system structures kept in user space. In many systems, to open a file, the program builds a large data structure containing the file name and many other parameters and passes it to the system. As the file is read and written, the system sometimes updates the structure itself. Changing these fields can wreak havoc with the security.

5. Spoof the user by writing a program that types “login:” on the screen and go away. Many users will walk up to the terminal and willingly tell it their login name and password, which the program carefully records for its evil master.

6. Look for manuals that say “Do not do X”. Try as many variations of X as possible.

7. Convince a system programmer to change the system to skip certain vital security checks for any user with your login name. This attack is known as a trapdoor.

8. All else failing, the penetrator might find the computer center director’s secretary and trick or bribe her. The secretary probably has easy access to all kinds of wonderful information, and is usually poorly paid. Do not underestimate the problems caused by personnel.

These and other attacks are discussed by Linde (1975).

5.4.4. Design Principles for Security

Saltzer and Schroeder (1975) have identified several general principles that can be used as a guide to designing secure systems. A brief summary of their ideas (based on experience with MULTICS) is given below.

First, the system design should be public. Assuming that the intruder will not know how the system works serves only to delude the designers.
SEC. 5.4  SECURITY  285

Second, the default should be no access. Errors in which legitimate access is refused will be reported much faster than errors in which unauthorized access is allowed.

Third, check for current authority. The system should not check for permission, determine that access is permitted, and then squirrel away this information for subsequent use. Many systems check for permission when a file is opened, and not afterward. This means that a user who opens a file, and keeps it open for weeks, will continue to have access, even if the owner has long since changed the file protection.

Fourth, give each process the least privilege possible. If an editor has only the authority to access the file to be edited (specified when the editor is invoked), editors with Trojan horses will not be able to do much damage. This principle implies a fine-grained protection scheme. We will discuss such schemes later in this chapter.

Fifth, the protection mechanism should be simple, uniform, and built in to the lowest layers of the system. Trying to retrofit security to an existing insecure system is nearly impossible. Security, like correctness, is not an add-on feature.

Sixth, the scheme chosen must be psychologically acceptable. If users feel that protecting their files is too much work, they just will not do it. Nevertheless, they will complain loudly if something goes wrong. Replies of the form "It is your own fault" will generally not be well received.

5.4.5. User Authentication

Many protection schemes are based on the assumption that the system knows the identity of each user. The problem of identifying users when they log in is called user authentication. Most authentication methods are based on identifying something the user knows, something the user has, or something the user is.

Passwords

The most widely used form of authentication is to require the user to type a password. Password protection is easy to understand and easy to implement. In UNIX it works like this. The login program asks the user to type his name and password. The password is immediately encrypted. The login program then reads the password file, which is a series of ASCII lines, one per user, until it finds the line containing the user's login name. If the (encrypted) password contained in this line matches the encrypted password just computed, the login is permitted, otherwise it is refused.

Password authentication is easy to defeat. One frequently reads about groups of high school, or even junior high school students who, with the aid of their trusty home computers, have just broken into some top secret system owned by a giant corporation or government agency. Virtually all the time the break-in consists of guessing a user name and password combination.
Morris and Thompson (1979) made a study of passwords on UNIX systems. They compiled a list of likely passwords: first names, last names, street names, city names, words from a moderate-sized dictionary (also words spelled backward), valid license plate numbers, and short strings of random characters.

They then encrypted each of these using the known password encryption algorithm, and checked to see if any of the encrypted passwords matched entries in their list. Over 86 percent of all passwords turned up in their list.

If all passwords consisted of 7 characters chosen at random from the 95 printable ASCII characters, the search space becomes $95^7$, which is about $7 \times 10^{13}$. At 1000 encryptions per second, it would take 2000 years to build the list to check the password file against. Furthermore, the list would fill 20 million magnetic tapes. Even requiring passwords to contain at least one lowercase character, one uppercase character, and one special character, and be at least seven characters long would be a big improvement on user-chosen passwords.

Even if it is considered politically impossible to require users to pick reasonable passwords, Morris and Thompson have described a technique that renders their own attack (encrypting a large number of passwords in advance) almost useless. Their idea is to associate an $n$-bit random number with each password. The random number is changed whenever the password is changed. The random number is stored in the password file in unencrypted form, so that everyone can read it. Instead of just storing the encrypted password in the password file, the password and the random number are first concatenated and then encrypted together. This encrypted result is stored in the password file.

Now consider the implications for an intruder who wants to build up a list of likely passwords, encrypt them, and save the results in a sorted file, $f$, so that any encrypted password can be looked up easily. If an intruder suspects that Marilyn might be a password, it is no longer sufficient just to encrypt Marilyn and put the result in $f$. He has to encrypt $2^n$ strings, such as Marilyn0000, Marilyn0001, Marilyn0002, and so forth and enter all of them in $f$. This technique increases the size of $f$ by $2^n$. UNIX uses this method with $n = 12$.

Although this method offers protection against intruders who try to precompute a large list of encrypted passwords, it does little to protect a user David whose password is also David. One way to encourage people to pick better passwords is to have the computer offer advice. Some computers have a program that generates random easy-to-pronounce nonsense words, such as totally, garbungey, or bipitty that can be used as passwords (preferably with some upper case and special characters thrown in).

Other computers require users to change their passwords regularly, to limit the damage done if a password leaks out. The most extreme form of this approach is the **one time password**. When one-time passwords are used, the user gets a book containing a list of passwords. Each login uses the next password in the list. If an intruder ever discovers a password, it will not do him any good, since next time a different password must be used. It is suggested that the user try to avoid losing the password book.
It goes almost without saying that while a password is being typed in, the computer should not display the typed characters, to keep them from prying eyes near the terminal. What is less obvious is that passwords should never be stored in the computer in unencrypted form, and that not even the computer center management should have unencrypted copies. Keeping unencrypted passwords anywhere is looking for trouble.

A variation on the password idea is to have each new user provide a long list of questions and answers that are then stored in the computer in encrypted form. The questions should be chosen so that the user does not need to write them down. Typical questions are:

1. Who is Marjolein's sister?
2. On what street was your elementary school?
3. What did Mrs. Woroboff teach?

At login, the computer asks one of them at random and checks to see if the answer is correct.

Another variation is challenge-response. When this is used, the user picks an algorithm when signing up as a user, for example \( x^2 \). When the user logs in, the computer types an argument, say 7, in which case the user types 49. The algorithm can be different in the morning and afternoon, on different days of the week, from different terminals, and so on.

**Physical Identification**

A completely different approach to authorization is to check to see if the user has some item, normally a plastic card with a magnetic stripe on it. The card is inserted into the terminal, which then checks to see whose card it is. This method can be combined with a password, so a user can only log in if he (1) has the card and (2) knows the password. Automated cash-dispensing machines usually work this way.

Yet another approach is to measure physical characteristics that are hard to forge. For example, a fingerprint or a voiceprint reader in the terminal could verify the user's identity. (It makes the search go faster if the user tells the computer who he is, rather than making the computer compare the given fingerprint to the entire database.) Direct visual recognition is not yet feasible, but may be one day.

Another technique is signature analysis. The user signs his name with a special pen connected to the terminal, and the computer compares it to a known specimen stored on line. Even better is not to compare the signature, but compare the pen motions made while writing it. A good forger may be able to copy the signature, but will not have a clue as to the exact order in which the strokes were made.

Finger length analysis is surprisingly practical. When this is used, each
terminal has a device like the one of Fig. 5-21. The user inserts his hand into it, and the length of all his fingers is measured and checked against the data base.

![Fig. 5-21. A device for measuring finger length.](image)

We could go on and on with more examples, but two more will help make an important point. Cats and other animals mark off their territory by urinating around its perimeter. Apparently cats can identify each other this way. Suppose someone comes up with a tiny device capable of doing an instant urinalysis, thereby providing a foolproof identification. Each terminal could be equipped with one of these devices, along with a discrete sign reading: “For login, please deposit sample here.” This might be an absolutely unbreakable system, but it would probably have a fairly serious user acceptance problem.

The same could be said of a system consisting of a thumbtack and a small spectrograph. The user would be requested to press his thumb against the thumbtack, thus extracting a drop of blood for spectrographic analysis. The point is that any authentication scheme must be psychologically acceptable to the user community. Finger-length measurements probably will not cause any problem, but even something as nonintrusive as storing fingerprints on line may be unacceptable to many people.

**Countermeasures**

Computer installations that are really serious about security, something that frequently happens the day after an intruder has broken in and done major damage, often take steps to make unauthorized entry much harder. For example, each user could be allowed to log in only from a specific terminal, and only during certain days of the week and hours of the day.
SEC. 5.4 SECURITY

Dialup telephone lines could be made to work as follows. Anyone can dial up and log in, but after a successful login, the system immediately breaks the connection and calls the user back at an agreed upon number. This measure means than an intruder cannot just try breaking in from any phone line; only the user's (home) phone will do. In any event, with or without call back, the system should take at least 10 seconds to check any password typed in on a dialup line, and should increase this time after several consecutive unsuccessful login attempts, in order to reduce the rate at which intruders can try. After three failed login attempts, the line should be disconnected for 10 minutes and security personnel notified.

All logins should be recorded. When a user logs in, the system should report the time and terminal of the previous login, so he can detect possible break ins.

The next step up is laying baited traps to catch intruders. A simple scheme is to have one special login name with an easy password (e.g., login name: guest, password: guest). Whenever anyone logs in using this name, the system security specialists are immediately notified. Other traps can be easy-to-find bugs in the operating system and similar things, designed for the purpose of catching intruders in the act.

5.5. PROTECTION MECHANISMS

In the previous sections we have looked at many potential problems, some of them technical and some of them not. In the following sections we will concentrate on some of the detailed technical ways that are used in operating systems to protect files and other things. All of these techniques make a clear distinction between policy (whose data are to be protected from whom) and mechanism (how the system enforces the policy). The separation of policy and mechanism is discussed in (Levin et al., 1975). Our emphasis will be on the mechanism, not the policy.

5.5.1. Protection Domains

A computer system contains many objects that need to be protected. These objects can be hardware, such as CPUs, memory segments, terminals, disk drives, or printers, or they can be software, such as processes, files, data bases, or semaphores.

Each object has a unique name by which it is referenced, and a set of operations that can be carried out on it. READ and WRITE are operations appropriate to a file; UP and DOWN make sense on a semaphore. Objects are the operating system equivalent of what in programming languages are called abstract data types.

It is obvious that a way is needed to prohibit processes from accessing objects that they are not authorized to access. Furthermore, this mechanism must also
make it possible to restrict processes to a subset of the legal operations when that is needed. For example, process \( A \) may be entitled to read, but not write, file \( F \).

To provide a way to discuss different protection mechanisms, it is convenient to introduce the concept of a domain. A domain is a set of (object, rights) pairs. Each pair specifies an object and some subset of the operations that can be performed on it. A right in this context means permission to perform one of the operations.

Figure 5-22 depicts three domains, showing the objects in each domain and the rights [Read, Write, eXecute] available on each object. Note that Printer1 is in two domains at the same time. Although not shown in this example, it is possible for the same object to be in multiple domains, with different rights in each domain.

![Fig. 5-22. Three protection domains.](image)

At every instant of time, each process runs in some protection domain. In other words, there is some collection of objects it can access, and for each object it has some set of rights. Processes can also switch from domain to domain during execution. The rules for domain switching are highly system dependent.

To make the idea of a protection domain more concrete, let us look at UNIX. In UNIX, the domain of a process is defined by its uid and gid. Given any (uid, gid) combination, it is possible to make a complete list of all objects (files, including I/O devices represented by special files) that can be accessed, and whether they can be accessed for reading, writing, or executing. Two processes with the same (uid, gid) combination will have access to exactly the same set of objects. Processes with different (uid, gid) values will have access to a different set of files, although there will be considerable overlap in most cases.

Furthermore, each process in UNIX has two halves: the user part and the kernel part. When the process does a system call, it switches from the user part to the kernel part (see Fig. 3-14). The kernel part has access to a different set of objects from the user part. For example, the kernel can access all the pages in physical memory, the entire disk, and all the other protected resources. Thus, a system call causes a domain switch.

When a process does an EXEC on a file with the SETUID or SETGID bit on, it acquires a new effective uid or gid. With a different (uid, gid) combination, it has a different set of files and operations available. Running a program with SETUID or SETGID is also a domain switch.

The division of a UNIX process into a kernel part and a user part is a remnant
of a much more powerful domain switching mechanism that was used in MULTICS. In that system, the hardware supported not two domains (kernel and user) per process, but up to 64. A MULTICS process could consist of a collection of procedures, each one running in some domain, which were called rings (Schroeder and Saltzer, 1972). Procedures could also be linked dynamically to a running process during execution.

Figure 5-23 shows four rings. The innermost ring, the operating system kernel, had the most power. Moving outward from the kernel, the rings became successively less powerful. Ring 1, for example, might contain the code for functions that in UNIX are handled by SETUID programs owned by the root, such as mkdir. Ring 2 might contain the grading program used to evaluate student programs, and ring 3 might contain the student programs.

![Diagram of MULTICS rings](image)

**Fig. 5-23.** A process in MULTICS occupying four rings. Each ring is a separate protection domain.

When a procedure in one ring called a procedure in another ring, a trap occurred, giving the system the opportunity to change the protection domain of the process. Thus, a MULTICS process could operate in as many as 64 different domains during its lifetime. (Actually, the situation was more complicated than we have sketched above; procedures could live in multiple consecutive rings, and parameter passing between rings was carefully controlled.) For a detailed description of MULTICS, see Organick (1972).

An important question is how the system keeps track of which object belongs to which domain. Conceptually, at least, one can envision a large matrix, with the rows being the domains and the columns being the objects. Each box lists the rights, if any, that the domain contains for the object. The matrix for Fig. 5-22 is shown in Fig. 5-24. Given this matrix and the current domain number, the system can always tell if an attempt to access a given object in a particular way from a specified domain is allowed.

Domain switching itself, as in MULTICS, can be easily included in the matrix model by realizing that a domain is itself an object, with the operation ENTER. Figure 5-25 shows the matrix of Fig. 5-24 again, only now with the three domains as objects themselves. Processes in domain 1 can switch to domain 2,
Fig. 5-24. A protection matrix.

but once there, they cannot go back. This situation models executing a SETUID program in UNIX. No other domain switches are permitted in this example.

Fig. 5-25. A protection matrix with domains as objects.

### 5.5.2. Access Control Lists

In practice, actually storing the matrix of Fig. 5-25 is rarely done because it is large and sparse. Most domains have no access at all to most objects, so storing a big, empty matrix is a waste of disk space. Two methods that are practical, however, are storing the matrix by rows or by columns, and then storing only the nonempty elements. The two approaches are surprisingly different. In this section we will look at storing it by column; in the next one we will study storing it by row.

The first technique consists of associating with each object an (ordered) list containing all the domains that may access the object, and how. This list is called the **access control list** or ACL. If it were to be implemented in UNIX, the easiest way would be to put the ACL for each file in a separate disk block, and include the block number in the file's i-node. As only the nonempty entries of the matrix are stored, the total storage required for all the ACLs combined is much less than what would be needed for the whole matrix.

As an example of how ACLs work, let us continue to imagine that they were used in UNIX, where a domain is specified by a (uid, gid) pair. Actually, ACLs
were used in UNIX's predecessor, MULTICS, more or less in the way we will describe, so the example is not so hypothetical.

Let us now assume that we have four users (i.e., uids) Jan, Els, Jelle, and Maaike, who belong to groups system, staff, student, and student, respectively. Suppose some files have the following ACLs:

File0: (Jan, *, RWX)
File1: (Jan, system, RWX)
File2: (Jan, *, RW-), (Els, staff, R--), (Maaike, *, R--)
File3: (*, student, R--)
File4: (Jelle, *, ---), (*, student, R--)

Each ACL entry, in parentheses, specifies a uid, a gid, and the allowed accesses (Read, Write, eXecute). An asterisk means all uids or gids. File0 can be read, written, or executed by any process with uid = Jan, and any gid. File1 can be accessed only by processes with uid = Jan and gid = system. A process with uid = Jan and gid = staff can access File0 but not File1. File2 can be read or written by processes with uid = Jan and any gid, read by processes with uid = Els and gid = staff, or by processes with uid = Maaike and any gid. File3 can be read by any student. File4 is especially interesting. It says that anyone with uid = Jelle, in any group, has no access at all, but all other students can read it. By using ACL's it is possible to prohibit specific uids or gids from accessing an object, while allowing everyone else in the same class.

So much for what UNIX does not do. Now let us look at what it does do. It provides three bits, rwx, per file for the owner, the owner's group, and others. This scheme is just the ACL again, but compressed to 9 bits. It is a list associated with the object saying who may access it and how. While the 9-bit UNIX scheme is clearly less general than a full-blown ACL system, in practice it is adequate, and its implementation is much simpler and cheaper.

The owner of an object can change its ACL at any time, thus making it easy to prohibit accesses that were previously allowed. The only problem is that changing the ACL will probably not affect any users who are currently using the object (e.g., have the file open).

### 5.5.3. Capabilities

The other way of slicing up the matrix of Fig. 5-25 is by rows. When this method is used, associated with each process is a list of objects that may be accessed, along with an indication of which operations are permitted on each, in other words, its domain. This list is called a capability list, and the individual items on it are called capabilities (Dennis and Van Horn, 1966; Fabry, 1974).

A typical capability list is shown in Fig. 5-26. Each capability has a type field, which tells what kind of an object it is, a rights field, which is a bit map indicating which of the legal operations on this type of object are permitted, and an object field, which is a pointer to the object itself (e.g., its i-node number). Capability lists are themselves objects, and may be pointed to from other
capability lists, thus facilitating sharing of subdomains. Capabilities are often referred to by their position in the capability list. A process might say: "Read 1K from the file pointed to by capability 2." This form of addressing is similar to using file descriptors in UNIX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Rights</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>R—</td>
<td>Pointer to File3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>RWX</td>
<td>Pointer to File4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RW—</td>
<td>Pointer to File5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>—W—</td>
<td>Pointer to Printer1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 5-26. The capability list for domain 2 in Fig. 5-24.

It is fairly obvious that capability lists, or C-lists as they are often called, must be protected from user tampering. Three methods have been proposed to protect them. The first way requires a tagged architecture, a hardware design in which each memory word has an extra (or tag) bit that tells whether the word contains a capability or not. The tag bit is not used by arithmetic, comparison, or similar ordinary instructions, and it can be modified only by programs running in kernel mode (i.e., the operating system).

The second way is to keep the C-list inside the operating system, and just have processes refer to capabilities by their slot number, as mentioned above. Hydra (Wulf, 1974) worked this way. The third way is to keep the C-list in user space, but encrypt each capability with a secret key unknown to the user. This approach is particularly suited to distributed systems, and is used by Amoeba (Tanenbaum et al., 1986).

In addition to the specific object-dependent rights, such as read and execute, capabilities usually have generic rights which are applicable to all objects. Examples of generic rights are:

1. Copy capability: create a new capability for the same object.
2. Copy object: create a duplicate object with a new capability.
3. Remove capability: delete an entry from the C-list; object unaffected.
4. Destroy object: permanently remove an object and a capability.

Many capability systems are organized as a collection of modules, with type manager modules for each type of object. Requests to perform operations on a file are sent to the file manager, whereas requests to do something with a mailbox go to the mailbox manager. These requests are accompanied by the relevant capability. A problem arises here, because the type manager module is just an ordinary program, after all. The owner of a file capability can perform only some of the operations on the file, but cannot get at its internal representation (e.g., its i-node). It is essential that the type manager module be able to do more with the capability than an ordinary process.
This problem was solved in Hydra by a technique called \textit{rights amplification}, in which type managers were given a rights template that gave them more rights to an object than the capability itself allowed. Other capability systems that have strong typing of objects also need something like this.

A last remark worth making about capability systems is that revoking access to an object is quite difficult. It is hard for the system to find all the outstanding capabilities for any object to take them back, since they may be stored in C-lists all over the disk. One approach is to have each capability point to an indirect object, rather than to the object itself. By having the indirect object point to the real object, the system can always break that connection, thus invalidating the capabilities. (When a capability to the indirect object is later presented to the system, the user will discover that the indirect object is now pointing to a null object.)

Another way to achieve revocation is the scheme used in Amoeba. Each object contains a long random number, which is also present in the capability. When a capability is presented for use, the two are compared. Only if they agree is the operation allowed. The owner of an object can request that the random number in the object be changed, thus invalidating existing capabilities. Neither of these schemes allows selective revocation, that is, taking back, say, John's permission, but nobody else's.

\textbf{5.5.4. Protection Models}

Protection matrices, such as that of Fig. 5.24, are not static. They frequently change as new objects are created, old objects are destroyed, and owners decide to increase or restrict the set of users for their objects. A considerable amount of attention has been paid to modeling protection systems in which the protection matrix is constantly changing. In the remainder of this section, we will touch briefly upon some of this work.

Harrison et al. (1976) identified six primitive operations on the protection matrix that can be used as a base to model any protection system. These operations are: \texttt{CREATE OBJECT}, \texttt{DELETE OBJECT}, \texttt{CREATE DOMAIN}, \texttt{DELETE DOMAIN}, \texttt{INSERT RIGHT}, and \texttt{REMOVE RIGHT}. The two latter primitives insert and remove rights from specific matrix elements, such as granting domain 1 permission to read \textit{File6}.

These six primitives can be combined into \textit{protection commands}. It is these protection commands that user programs can execute to change the matrix. They may not execute the primitives directly. For example, the system might have a command to create a new file, which would test to see if the file already existed, and if not, create a new object and give the owner all rights to it. There might also be a command to allow the owner to grant permission to read the file to everyone in the system, in effect, inserting the "read" right in the new file's entry in every domain.

At any instant, the matrix determines what a process in any domain can do,
not what it is authorized to do. The matrix is what is enforced by the system; authorization has to do with management policy. As an example of this distinction, let us consider the simple system of Fig. 5-27 in which domains correspond to users (similar to the UNIX model). In Fig. 5-27(a) we see the intended protection policy: Henry can read and write mailbox7, Robert can read and write secret, and all three users can read and execute compiler.

![Fig. 5-27](image)

Now imagine that Robert is very clever and has found a way to issue commands to have the matrix changed to Fig. 5-27(b). He has now gained access to mailbox7, something he is not authorized to have. If he tries to read it, the operating system will carry out his request because it does not know that the state of Fig. 5-27(b) is unauthorized.

It should now be clear that the set of all possible matrices can be partitioned into two disjoint sets: the set of all authorized states and the set of all unauthorized states. A question around which much theoretical research has revolved is this: "Given an initial authorized state and a set of commands, can it be proven that the system can never reach an unauthorized state?"

In effect, we are asking if the available mechanism (the protection commands) is adequate to enforce some protection policy. As a simple example of a policy, consider the security scheme used by the military. Each object is unclassified, confidential, secret, or top secret. Each domain (and thus each process) also belongs to one of these four security levels. The security policy has two rules:

1. No process may read any object whose level is higher than its own, but it may freely read objects at a lower level or at its own level. A secret process may read confidential objects, but not top secret ones.

2. No process may write information into any object whose level is lower than its own. A secret process may write in a top secret file but not in a confidential one.

In military terms, if we assume that privates operate at confidential level, lieutenants at secret level, and generals at top secret level, then a lieutenant may look at a private's papers, but not at a general's. Similarly, a lieutenant may tell a
general anything he knows, but he may not tell a private anything, because privates cannot be trusted.

Given this policy, some initial state of the matrix (including some way of telling which object is at which level), and the set of commands for modifying the matrix, what we would like is a way to prove that the system is secure. Such a proof turns out quite difficult to acquire; many general purpose systems are not theoretically secure. For more information about this subject see Landwehr (1981) and Denning (1982).

5.5.5. Covert Channels

In the previous section we saw how it is possible to make formal models for protection systems. In this section we will see how futile it is to make such models. In particular, we will show that even in a system that has been rigorously proven to be absolutely secure, leaking information between processes that in theory cannot communicate at all is relatively straightforward. These ideas are due to Lampson (1973).

Lampson’s model involves three processes, and is primarily applicable to large time-sharing systems. The first process is the client, which wants some work performed by the second one, the server. The client and the server do not entirely trust each other. For example, the server’s job is to help clients with filling out their tax forms. The clients are worried that the server will secretly record their financial data, for example, maintaining a secret list of who earns how much, and then selling the list. The server is worried that the clients will try to steal the valuable tax program.

The third process is the collaborator, which is conspiring with the server to indeed steal the client’s confidential data. The collaborator and server are typically owned by the same person. These three processes are shown in Fig. 5-28. The object of this exercise is to design a system in which it is impossible for the server to leak to the collaborator the information that it has legitimately received from the client. Lampson called this the confinement problem.

![Diagrams showing client, server, and collaborator processes, and an encapsulated server leaking through a covert channel.](image-url)
From the system designer's point of view, the goal is to encapsulate or confine the server in such a way that it cannot pass information to the collaborator. Using a protection matrix scheme we can easily guarantee that the server cannot communicate with the collaborator by writing into a file to which the collaborator has read access. We can probably also ensure that the server cannot communicate with the collaborator by using the system's interprocess communication mechanism.

Unfortunately, more subtle communication channels may be available. For example, the server can try to communicate a binary bit stream as follows. To send a 1 bit, it computes as hard as it can for a fixed interval of time. To send a 0 bit, it goes to sleep for the same length of time.

The collaborator can try to detect the bit stream by carefully monitoring its response time. In general, it will get better response when the server is sending a 0 than when the server is sending a 1. This communication channel is known as a covert channel, and is illustrated in Fig. 5-28(b).

Of course the covert channel is a noisy channel, containing a lot of extraneous information, but information can be reliably sent over a noisy channel by using an error-correcting code (e.g., a Hamming code, or even something more sophisticated). The use of an error-correcting code reduces the already low bandwidth of the covert channel even more, but it still may be enough to leak substantial information. It is fairly obvious that no protection model based on a matrix of objects and domains is going to prevent this kind of leakage.

Modulating the CPU usage is not the only covert channel. The paging rate can also be modulated (many page faults for a 1, no page faults for a 0). In fact, almost any way of degrading system performance in a clocked way is a candidate. If the system provides a way of locking files, then the server can lock some file to indicate a 1, and unlock it to indicate a 0. It may be possible to detect the status of a lock even on a file that you cannot access.

Acquiring and releasing dedicated resources (tape drives, plotters, etc.) can also be used for signaling. The server acquires the resource to send a 1 and releases it to send a 0. In UNIX, the server could create a file to indicate a 1 and remove it to indicate a 0; the collaborator could use the ACCESS system call to see if the file exists. This call works even though the collaborator has no permission to use the file. Unfortunately, many other covert channels exist.

Lampson also mentions a way of leaking information to the (human) owner of the server process. Presumably the server process will be entitled to tell its owner how much work it did on behalf of the client, so the client can be billed. If the actual computing bill is, say, 100 dollars and the client's income is 53K dollars, the server could report the bill as 100.53 to its owner.

Just finding all the covert channels, let alone blocking them, is extremely difficult. In practice, there is little that can be done about them. Introducing a process that causes page faults at random, or otherwise spends its time degrading system performance in order to reduce the bandwidth of the covert channels is not an attractive proposition.
5.6. OVERVIEW OF THE MINIX FILE SYSTEM

Like all file systems, the MINIX file system must deal with all the issues we have just studied. It must allocate and deallocate space for files, keep track of disk blocks and free space, provide some way to protect files against unauthorized usage, and so on. In the remainder of this chapter we will look closely at MINIX to see how it accomplishes these goals.

In the first part of this chapter, we have repeatedly referred to UNIX rather than to MINIX for the sake of generality, although the external interface of the two is virtually identical. Now we will concentrate on the internal design of MINIX. For information about the UNIX internals, see Thompson (1978) and Bach (1986). The MINIX file system is just a big C program that runs in user space (see Fig. 4-20). To read and write files, user processes send messages to the file system telling what they want done. The file system does the work and then sends back a reply. The file system is, in fact, a network file server that happens to be running on the same machine as the caller.

This design has some important implications. For one thing, the file system can be modified, experimented with, and tested almost completely independently of the rest of MINIX. For another, it is very easy to move the whole file system to any computer that has a C compiler, compile it there, and use it as a free-standing UNIX-like remote file server. The only changes that need to be made are in the area of how messages are sent and received, which differs from system to system.

In the following sections, we will present an overview of many of the key areas of the file system design. Specifically, we will look at messages, the file system layout, i-nodes, the block cache, the bit maps, directories and path names, the process table, and special files (plus pipes). After studying all of these topics, we will show a simple example of how the pieces fit together by tracing what happens when a user process executes the READ system call.

5.6.1. Messages

The file system accepts 29 types of messages requesting work. All but two are for MINIX system calls. The two exceptions are for messages generated by other parts of MINIX. All the messages, their parameters, and results are shown in Fig. 5-29. The file system also gets messages from the memory manager telling about work that the latter has done on behalf of a few other system calls, such as FORK and EXIT. These are not listed in the figure since they are primarily handled by the memory manager.

The structure of the file system is basically the same as that of the memory manager and all the I/O tasks. It has a main loop that waits for a message to arrive. When a message arrives, its type is extracted and used as an index into a table containing pointers to the procedures within the file system that handle all the types. Then the appropriate procedure is called, it does its work and returns
Fig. 5-29. The principal message types accepted by the file system. File name parameters are always pointers to the name. The code *status* as reply value means OK or ERROR.

A MINIX file system is a logical, self-contained entity with i-nodes, directories, and data blocks. It can be stored on any block device, such as a floppy disk or a (portion of a) hard disk. In all cases, the layout of the file system has the same structure. Figure 5-30 shows this layout for a 360K floppy disk with 127 i-nodes and a 1K block size. Larger file systems, or those with more or fewer i-nodes or a different block size, will have the same six components in the same order, but their relative sizes may be different.

Each file system begins with a **boot block**. When the computer is turned on, the hardware reads the boot block into memory and jumps to it. Not every disk drive can be used as a boot device, but to keep the structure uniform, every
OVERVIEW OF THE MINIX FILE SYSTEM

Fig. 5-30. Disk layout for a typical 360K floppy disk, with 127 i-nodes and a 1K block size (i.e., two consecutive 512-byte sectors are treated as a single block).

device has a boot block. Once the system has been booted, the boot block is not used any more.

The super-block contains information describing the layout of the file system. It is illustrated in Fig. 5-31.

The main function of the super-block is to tell the file system how big the various pieces of Fig. 5-30 are. Given the block size and the number of i-nodes, it is easy to calculate the size of the i-node bit map and the number of blocks of i-nodes. For example, for a 1K block, each block of the bit map has 1K bytes (8K bits), and thus can keep track of the status of up to 8191 i-nodes (i-node 0 always contains zeros and is effectively unused). For 10,000 i-nodes, two bit map blocks are needed. Since i-nodes are 32 bytes, a 1K block holds up to 32 i-nodes. With 127 usable i-nodes, 4 disk blocks are needed to contain them all.

Fig. 5-31. The MINIX super-block.

We will explain the difference between zones and blocks in detail later, but for the time being it is sufficient to say that disk storage can be allocated in units...
(zones) of 1, 2, 4, 8, or in general $2^n$ blocks. The zone bit map keeps track of
free storage in zones, not blocks. For the standard 360K floppy disk MINIX dis-
tribution, the zone and block sizes are the same (1K), so for a first approxima-
tion a zone is the same as a block on these devices. Until we come to the details
of storage allocation later in the chapter, it is adequate to think "block" whenever
you see "zone."

Note that the number of blocks per zone is not stored in the super-block, as it
is never needed. All that is needed is the base 2 logarithm of the zone to block
ratio, which is used as the shift count to convert zones to blocks and vice versa.
For example, with 8 blocks per zone, $\log_2 8 = 3$, so to find the zone containing
block 128 we shift 128 right 3 bits to get zone 16. Zone 0 is the boot block, but
the zone bit map includes only the data zones.

The information in the super-block is redundant because sometimes it is
needed in one form and sometimes in another. With 1K devoted to the super-
block, it makes sense to compute this information in all the forms it is needed,
rather than having to recompute it frequently during execution. The zone
number of the first data zone on the disk, for example, can be calculated from
the block size, zone size, number of i-nodes, and number of zones, but it is fast-
er just to keep it in the super-block. The rest of the super-block is wasted
anyhow, so using up another word of it costs nothing.

When MINIX is booted, the super-block for the root device is read into a table
in memory. Similarly, as other file systems are mounted, their super-blocks are
also brought into memory. The super-block table holds a few fields not present
on the disk, such as the device from which it came, a field telling whether it has
been mounted read-only or not, and a field that is set whenever the memory ver-

cion is modified.

Before a disk can be used as a MINIX file system, it must be given the struc-
ture of Fig. 5-30. The utility program mkfs has been provided to build file sys-

tems. This program can be called either by a command like

```
mkfs /dev/fd1 360
```

to build an empty 360 block file system on the floppy disk in drive 1, or it can be
given a prototype file listing directories and files to include in the new file sys-
tem. Attempts to mount a file system not in MINIX format, such as an MS-DOS
diskette will be rejected by the MOUNT system call, which checks the super-block
for the magic number and other things.

### 5.6.3. Bit Maps

MINIX keeps tracks of which i-nodes and zones are free by using two bit
maps (see Fig. 5-31). When the system is booted, the super-block and bit maps
for the root device are loaded into memory. As mentioned, the super-block table
in memory holds some fields not present on the disk. One of these fields is an
array whose $k$-th entry is a pointer to the $k$-th i-node bit map block (in memory).
When a file is removed, it is then a simple matter to calculate which block of
the bit map contains the bit for the i-node being freed, and to find it via a pointer
array. Once the block is found, the bit corresponding to the freed i-node is set
to 0. A similar set of pointers is used for the zone bit map.

When a file is created, the file system searches through the bit map blocks,
one at a time, until it finds a free i-node. This i-node is then allocated for the
new file. If every i-node slot on the disk is full, the search routine returns a 0,
which is why i-node 0 is not used. (When mkfs creates a new file system, it
zeros i-node 0 and sets the lowest bit in the bit map to 1, so the file system will
never attempt to allocate it.)

With this background, we can now explain the difference between zones and
blocks. The idea behind zones is to help ensure that disk blocks that belong to
the same file are located on the same cylinder, to improve performance when the
file is read sequentially. The approach chosen is to make it possible to allocate
several blocks at a time. If, for example, the block size is 1K and the zone size
is 4K, the zone bit map keeps track of zones, not blocks. A 20M disk has 5K
zones of 4K, hence 5K bits in its zone map.

Most of the file system works with blocks. Disk transfers are always a block
at a time, and the buffer cache also works with individual blocks. Only a few
parts of the system that keep track of physical disk addresses (e.g., the zone bit
map and the i-nodes) know about zones.

Another reason for having zones has to do with the desire to keep disk
addresses to 16 bits, primarily to be able to store lots of them in the indirect
blocks. However, with a 16-bit zone number and a 1K zone, only 64K zones
can be addressed, limiting disks to 64M. As disks get larger, it is easy to switch
to 2K or 4K zones, without changing the block size. Most files are smaller than
1K, so increasing the block size means wasting disk bandwidth reading and writing mostly empty blocks, and wastes precious main memory storing them in the
buffer cache. Of course, a larger zone size means more wasted disk space, but
since large zones are needed only with large disks, the problem of disk space
efficiency is not so acute.

Zones also introduce an unexpected problem, best illustrated by a simple
example, again with 4K zones and 1K blocks. Suppose a file is of length 1K,
meaning that 1 zone has been allocated for it. The blocks between 1K and 4K
contain garbage (residue from the previous owner), but no harm is done because
the file size is clearly marked in the i-node as 1K. Reads beyond the end of a
file always return a count of 0 and no data.

Now someone seeks to address 32768 and writes 1 byte. The file size is now
changed to 32769. Subsequent seeks to 1K followed by attempts to read the data
will now be able to read the previous contents of the block, which is a serious
security breach.

The solution is to check for this situation when a write is done beyond the
end of a file, and explicitly zero all the not-yet-allocated blocks in the zone that
was previously the last one. Although this situation rarely occurs, the code has
to deal with it, making the system slightly more complex. In retrospect, it is not clear whether having zones is worth the extra trouble. In the standard distribution of MINIX the zone size and block size are both set to 1K, so the problem does not arise.

5.6.4. I-nodes

The layout of the MINIX i-node is given in Fig. 5-32. It differs from the UNIX i-node in several ways. First, shorter disk pointers are used (2 bytes vs. 3 bytes). Second, fewer pointers are stored (9 vs. 13). Third, MINIX only records one time, whereas UNIX records three of them. Finally, the links and gid fields have been reduced to 1 byte in MINIX. These changes reduce the size from 64 bytes to 32 bytes, to reduce the disk and memory space needed to store i-nodes.

![Fig. 5-32. The MINIX i-node.](image)

When a file is opened, its i-node is located and brought into the inode table in memory, where it remains until the file is closed. The inode table has a few additional fields not present on the disk, such as the i-node’s device and number, so the file system knows where to rewrite it if it is modified while in memory. It also has a counter per i-node. If the same file is opened more than once, only one copy of the i-node is kept in memory, but the counter is incremented each time the file is opened and decremented each time it is closed. Only when the counter goes to zero is the i-node removed from the table (and rewritten to the disk, if it has been modified).

The main function of a file’s i-node is to tell where the data blocks are. The first seven zone numbers are given right in the i-node itself. For the standard distribution, with zones and blocks both 1K, files up to 7K do not need indirect blocks. Beyond 7K, indirect zones are needed, using the scheme of Fig. 5-7, except that only single and double are present. With 1K blocks and zones and
16-bit zone numbers, a single indirect block holds 512 entries, representing half a megabyte of storage. A double indirect block points to 512 single indirect blocks, giving up to 256 megabytes. (Actually this limit is not reachable, because with 16-bit zone numbers and 1K zones, we can address only 64K zones, which is 64 megabytes; for a larger disk we would have to go to a 2K zone.)

The i-node also holds the mode information, which tells what kind of a file it is (regular, directory, block special, character special, or pipe), and gives the protection and SETUID and SETGID bits. The link field in the i-node records how many directory entries point to the i-node, so the file system knows when to release the file's storage. This field should not be confused with the counter (present only in the inode table in memory, not on the disk) that tells how many times the file is currently open.

5.6.5. The Block Cache

MINIX uses a block cache to improve its performance. The cache is implemented as an array of buffers, each consisting of a header containing pointers, counters, and flags, and a body with room for one disk block. All the blocks are chained together in a double-linked list, from most recently used (MRU) to least recently used (LRU) as shown in Fig. 5-33.

![Fig. 5-33. The linked lists used by the block cache.](image)

In addition, to be able to quickly determine if a given block is in the cache or not, a hash table is used. All the blocks that have hash code $k$ are linked together on a single-linked list pointed to by entry $k$ in the hash table. At present, the hash function just extracts the low-order $n$ bits from the block number, so blocks from different devices appear on the same hash chain.

When the file system needs a block, it calls a procedure, `get_block`, which computes the hash code for that block and searches the appropriate list. If the block is found, a counter in the block's header is incremented to show that the block is in use, and a pointer to it is returned. If the block is not found, the LRU list is searched to find a block to evict from the cache. If the block at the front (the least recently used block) has count 0, it is chosen, otherwise the next
block is inspected, and so on. It is important to check the counter because some blocks, such as the bit maps, must never be evicted while they are still in use, no matter how infrequently they are used.

Once a block has been chosen for eviction, another flag in its header is checked to see if the block has been modified since being read in. If so, it is rewritten to the disk. At this point the block needed is read in by sending a message to the disk task. The file system is suspended until the block arrives, at which time it continues and a pointer to the block is returned to the caller.

When the procedure that requested the block has done its job, it calls another procedure, put_block, to free the block. One of the parameters to put_block tells what class of block (e.g., i-nodes, directory, data) is being freed. Depending on the class, two key decisions are made:

1. Whether to put the block on the front or rear of the LRU list.
2. Whether to write the block (if modified) to disk immediately or not.

Blocks that are not likely to be needed again soon, such as double indirect blocks, go on the front of the list so they will be claimed the next time a free buffer is needed. Blocks that are likely to be needed again soon go on the rear of the list in true LRU fashion.

When a directory has been modified, it is written to disk immediately, to reduce the chance of corrupting the file system in the event of a crash. An ordinary data block that has been modified is not rewritten until either one of two events occurs: (1) it reaches the front of the LRU chain and is evicted, or (2) a SYNC system call is executed.

Note that the header flag indicating that a block has been modified is set by the procedure within the file system that requested and used the block. The procedures get_block and put_block are concerned just with manipulating all the linked lists. They have no idea which file system procedure wants which block or why.

5.6.6. Directories and Paths

Another important subsystem within the file system is the management of directories and path names. Many system calls, such as OPEN, have a file name as a parameter. What is really needed is the i-node for that file, so it is up to the file system to look up the file in the directory tree and locate its i-node.

A MINIX directory consists of a file containing 16-byte entries. The first 2 bytes form a 16-bit i-node number, and the remaining 14 bytes are the file name. To look up the path /user/last/mbox the system first looks up user in the root directory, then it looks up last in /user, and finally it looks up mbox in /user/last. The actual lookup proceeds one path component at a time, as illustrated in Fig. 5-11.
As an aside, the standard MINIX configuration uses /usr for floppy disk 0 (system files) and /user for floppy disk 1 (user files). Most UNIX systems have the whole file tree under /usr. In the following examples, we will use /user/ast as an example of a typical user directory.

The only complication is what happens when a mounted file system is encountered. To see how that works, we must look at how mounting is done. When the user types the command

/etc/mount /dev/fd1 /user

on the terminal, the file system contained on floppy disk 1 is mounted on top of /user in the root file system. The file systems before and after mounting are shown in Fig. 5-34.

![Fig. 5-34](image.png)

Fig. 5-34. (a) Root file system. (b) An unmounted file system. (c) The result of mounting the file system of (b) on /user.

The key to the whole mount business is a flag set in the i-node of /user after a successful mount. This flag indicates that the i-node is mounted on. The MOUNT call also loads the super-block for the newly mounted file system into the super_block table and sets two pointers in it. Furthermore, it puts the root i-node of the mounted file system in the inode table.

In Fig. 5-31 we see that super-blocks in memory contain two fields related to mounted file systems. The first of these, the i-node-of-the-mounted-file-system, is set to point to the root i-node of the newly mounted file system. The second, the i-node-mounted-on, is set to point to the i-node mounted on, in this case, the i-node for /user. These two pointers serve to connect the mounted file system to the root, and, represent the "glue" that holds the mounted file system to the root [shown as the dots in Fig. 5-34(c)].
When a path such as /user/ast/f2 is being looked up, the file system will see a flag in the i-node for /user and realize that it must continue searching at the root i-node of the file system mounted on /user. The question is: “How does it find this root i-node?”

The answer is straightforward. The system searches all the super-blocks in memory until it finds the one whose i-node mounted on field points to /user. This must be the super-block for the file system mounted on /user. Once it has the super-block, it is easy to follow the other pointer to find the root i-node for the mounted file system. Now the file system can continue searching. In this example, it looks for ast in the root directory of floppy disk 1.

5.6.7. File Descriptors

Once a file has been opened, a file descriptor is returned to the user process for use in subsequent READ and WRITE calls. In this section we will look at how file descriptors are managed within the file system.

Like the kernel and the memory manager, the file system maintains part of the process table within its address space. Three of its fields are of particular interest. The first two are pointers to the i-nodes for the root directory and the working directory. Path searches, such as that of Fig. 5-11, always begin at one or the other, depending on whether the path is absolute or relative. These pointers are changed by the CHROOT and CHDIR system calls to point to the new root or new working directory, respectively.

The third interesting field in the process table is an array indexed by file descriptor number. It is used to locate the proper file when a file descriptor is presented. At first glance, it might seem sufficient to have the k-th entry in this array just point to the i-node for the file belonging to file descriptor k. After all, the i-node is fetched into memory when the file is opened and kept there until it is closed, so it is sure to be available.

Unfortunately, this simple plan fails because files can be shared in subtle ways in MINIX (as well as in UNIX). The trouble arises because associated with each file is a 32-bit number that indicates the next byte to be read or written. It is this number, called the file position, that is changed by the LSEEK system call. The problem can be stated easily: “Where should the file pointer be stored?”

The first possibility is to put it in the i-node. Unfortunately, if two or more processes have the same file open at once, they must all have their own file pointers, since it would hardly do to have an LSEEK by one process affect the next read of a different process. Conclusion: the file position cannot go in the i-node.

What about putting it in the process table? Why not have a second array, paralleling the file descriptor array, giving the current position of each file? This idea does not work either, but the reasoning is more subtle. Basically, the trouble comes from the semantics of the FORK system call. When a process forks,
both the parent and the child are required to share a single pointer giving the current position of each open file.

To understand the problem better, consider the case of a shell script whose output has been redirected to a file. When the shell forks off the first program, its file position for standard output is 0. This position is then inherited by the child, which writes, say, 1K of output. When the child terminates, the shared file position must now be 1K.

Now the shell reads some more of the shell script and forks off another child. It is essential that the second child inherit a file position of 1K from the shell, so it will begin writing at the place where the first program left off. If the shell did not share the file position with its children, the second program would overwrite the output from the first one, instead of appending to it.

As a result, it is not possible to put the file position in the process table. It really must be shared. The solution used in MINIX is to introduce a new, shared table, filp, which contains all the file positions. Its use is illustrated in Fig. 5-35. By having the file position truly shared, the semantics of FORK can be implemented correctly, and shell scripts work properly.

![Fig. 5-35. How file positions are shared between a parent and a child.](image)

Although the only thing that the filp table really must contain is the shared file position, it is convenient to put the i-node pointer there as well. In this way, all that the file descriptor array in the process table contains is a pointer to a filp entry. The filp entry also contains a count of the number of processes using it, so the file system can tell when the last process using the entry has terminated, in order to reclaim the slot.

### 5.6.8. Pipes and Special Files

Pipes and special files differ from ordinary files in an important way. When a process tries to read or write from a disk file, it is certain that the operation will complete within a few hundred milliseconds at most. In the worst case, two or three disk accesses might be needed. When reading from a pipe, the situation
is different: if the pipe is empty, the reader will have to wait until some other process puts data in the pipe, which might take hours. Similarly, when reading from a terminal, a process will have to wait until somebody types something.

As a consequence, the file system's normal rule of handling a request until it is finished does not work. It is necessary to suspend these requests and restart them later. When a process tries to read or write from a pipe, the file system can check the state of the pipe immediately to see if the operation can be completed. If it can be, it is, but if it cannot be, the file system records the parameters of the system call in the process table, so it can restart the process when the time comes.

Note that the file system need not take any action to have the caller suspended. All it has to do is refrain from sending a reply, leaving the caller blocked waiting for the reply. Thus, after suspending a process, the file system goes back to its main loop to wait for the next system call. As soon as another process modifies the pipe's state so that the suspended process can complete, the file system sets a flag so that next time through the main loop it extracts the suspended process' parameters from the process table and executes the call.

The situation with terminals and other character special files is slightly different. The i-node for each special file contains two numbers, the major device and the minor device. The major device number indicates the device class (e.g., RAM disk, floppy disk, hard disk, terminal). It is used as an index into a file system table that maps it onto the number of the corresponding task (i.e., I/O driver). In effect, the major device determines which I/O driver to call. The minor device number is passed to the driver as a parameter. It specifies which device is to be used, for example, terminal 2 or drive 1.

When a process reads from a special file, the file system extracts the major and minor device numbers from the file's i-node, and uses the major device number as an index in a file system table to map it onto the corresponding task number. Once it has the task number, the file system sends the task a message, including as parameters the minor device, the operation to be performed, the caller's process number and buffer address, and the number of bytes to be transferred. The format is the same as in Fig. 3-15, except that \textit{POSITION} is not used.

If the driver is able to carry out the work immediately (e.g., a line of input has already been typed on the terminal), it copies the data from its own internal buffers to the user and sends the file system a reply message saying that the work is done. The file system then sends a reply message to the user, and the call is finished. Note that the driver does not copy the data to the file system. Data from block devices go through the block cache, but data from character special files do not.

On the other hand, if the driver is not able to carry out the work, it records the message parameters in its internal tables, and immediately sends a reply to the file system saying that the call could not be completed. At this point, the file system is in the same situation as having discovered that someone is trying to
read from an empty pipe. It records the fact that the process is suspended, and waits for the next message.

When the driver has acquired enough data to complete the call, it transfers it to the buffer of the still-blocked user, and then sends the file system a message reporting what it has done. All the file system has to do is send a reply message to the user to unblock it and report the number of bytes transferred.

5.6.9. An Example: The READ System Call

As we shall see shortly, most of the code of the file system is devoted to carrying out system calls. Therefore, it is appropriate that we conclude this overview with a brief sketch of how the most important call, READ, works.

When a user program executes the statement

\[
\text{n} = \text{read} (\text{fd}, \text{buffer}, \text{nbytes});
\]

to read an ordinary file, the library procedure read is called with three parameters. It builds a message containing these parameters, along with the code for READ as the message type, sends the message to the file system, and blocks waiting for the reply. When the message arrives, the file system uses the message type as an index into its tables to call the procedure that handles reading.

This procedure extracts the file descriptor from the message, and uses it to locate the filp entry and then the i-node for the file to be read (see Fig. 5-35). The request is then broken up into pieces such that each piece fits within a block. For example, if the current file position is 600 and 1K bytes have been requested, the request is split into two parts, for 600 to 1023, and for 1024 to 1623 (assuming 1K blocks).

For each of these pieces in turn, a check is made to see if the relevant block is in the cache. If it is not, the file system picks the least recently used buffer not currently in use and claims it, sending a message to the disk task to rewrite it if it is dirty. Then the disk task is asked to fetch the block to be read.

Once the block is in the cache, the file system sends a message to the system task asking it to copy the data to the appropriate place in the user's buffer (i.e., bytes 600 to 1023 to the start of the buffer, and bytes 1024 to 1623 to offset 424 within the buffer). After the copy has been done, the file system sends a reply message to the user specifying how many bytes have been copied.

When the reply comes back to the user, the library function read extracts the reply code and returns it as the function value to the caller.

5.7. IMPLEMENTATION OF THE MINIX FILE SYSTEM

The MINIX file system is relatively large (more than 100 pages of C) but quite straightforward. Requests to carry out system calls come in, are carried out, and replies are sent. In the following sections we will go through it a file at a time,
pointing out the highlights. The code itself contains many comments to aid the reader.

5.7.1. The Header Files

Like the kernel and memory manager, the file system has some header files that define various data structures and tables. Let us begin our study of the file system with them.

The file const.h (line 7500) defines some constants, such as table sizes and flags, that are used throughout the file system. Some of them, such as NR_BUFS and NR_BUF_HASH, can be changed to tune the system’s performance. Others, such as BOOT_BLOCK and SUPER_BLOCK, do not affect the performance.

The next file, buf.h (line 7550), defines the block cache. The array buf holds all the buffers, each of which contains a block, b, and a header full of pointers, flags, and counters. The data part is declared as a union of 5 types (line 7565) because sometimes it is convenient to refer to the block as a character array, sometimes as a directory, and so on.

The proper way to refer to the data part of buffer 3 as a character array is b[3].b.b_.data because b[3].b refers to the union as a whole, from which the b_.data field is selected. Although this syntax is correct, it is a little cumbersome, so on line 7588 we define a macro b_.data, which allows us to write b[3].b_.data instead. Note that b_.data (the field of the union) contains two underscores, whereas b_.data (the macro) contains just one, to distinguish them. Macros for other ways of accessing the block are contained in lines 7588 to 7592.

Another interesting aspect of this file is the use of EXTERN for all the arrays and variables. When this file is included in code files, EXTERN has the value extern, as defined on line 0009. However, in the file table.c, it is defined as the null string, to cause storage to be allocated. The rules of C (Kernighan and Ritchie, 1978, p. 206) clearly specify that global variables must be declared as extern in all files except one, although some compilers and many programmers do not understand this point. We saw the same issue in the kernel and memory manager.

The macros at the end of the file (lines 7601 to 7610) define different block types. When a block is returned to the buffer cache after use, one of these values is supplied to tell the cache manager whether to put the block on the front or rear of the LRU list, and whether to write it to disk immediately or not.

The file dev.h (line 7650) provides the definition of the dmap table. The table itself is declared in table.c with initial values, so that version cannot be included in several files. This is why dev.h is needed. The table provides the mapping between the major device number and the corresponding task.

The file file.h (line 7700) contains the intermediate table used to hold the current file position and i-node pointer (see Fig. 5-35). It also tells whether the file was opened for reading, writing, or both, and how many file descriptors are currently pointing to the entry.
The file system's part of the process table is contained in \textit{fproc.h} (line 7750). It holds the mode mask, pointers to the i-nodes for the current root directory and working directory, the file descriptor array, uid, gid, and terminal number. The remaining fields are used to store the parameters of system calls that are suspended part way through, such as reading from an empty pipe. The fields \textit{fp\_suspended} and \textit{fp\_revived} actually require only single bits, but nearly all compilers generate better code for characters than bit fields.

Next comes the file with the global variables, \textit{glo.h}. The message buffers for the incoming and reply messages are also here, as is the file system's stack. When the file system starts up for the first time after MINIX is booted, a tiny assembly code procedure sets the stack pointer to the top of \textit{fstack}.

Now we come to the i-node table in \textit{inode.h} (line 7850). As we have said several times, when a file is opened, its i-node is read into memory and kept there until the file is closed. These i-nodes are kept in this table. Most of the fields should be self-explanatory at this point. However, \textit{i\_seek} deserves some comment. As an optimization, when the file system notices that a file is being read sequentially, it tries to read blocks into the cache even before they are asked for. For randomly accessed files there is no read ahead. When an \textit{LSEEK} call is made, the field \textit{i\_seek} is set to inhibit read ahead.

The file \textit{param.h} (line 7900) is analogous to the file of the same name in the memory manager. It defines names for message fields containing parameters, so the code can refer to, for example, \textit{buffer}, instead of \textit{m.m1_p1}, which selects one of the fields of the message buffer \textit{m}.

In \textit{super.h} (line 7950), we have the declaration of the super-block table. When the system is booted, the super-block for the root device is loaded here. As file systems are mounted, their super-blocks go here as well.

Finally, we come to the type declarations, in \textit{type.h} (line 8000). Two types are defined, the directory entry and the disk i-node.

5.7.2. Table Management

Associated with each of the main tables—blocks, i-nodes, super-blocks, and so forth—is a file that contains procedures that manage the table. These procedures are heavily used by the rest of the file system, and form the principal interface between tables and the file system. For this reason, it is appropriate to begin our study of the file system code with them.

Block Management

The block cache is managed by the procedures in the file \textit{cache.c}. This file contains six procedures, which are listed in Fig. 5-36. The first one, \textit{get\_block} (line 8079), is the standard way the file system acquires data blocks. When a file system procedure needs to read a user data block, a directory block, a super-
block, or any other kind of block, it calls \texttt{get\_block}, specifying the device and block number desired.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get_block</th>
<th>Fetch a block for reading or writing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put_block</td>
<td>Return a block previously requested with get_block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alloc_zone</td>
<td>Allocate a new zone (to make a file longer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_zone</td>
<td>Release a zone (when a file is removed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_block</td>
<td>Transfer a block between disk and cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invalidate</td>
<td>Purge all the cache blocks for some device</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 5-36. Procedures used for block management.

When \texttt{get\_block} is called, it first looks in the block cache to see if the requested block is present. If so, it returns a pointer to it. Otherwise, it has to read the block in. The blocks in the cache are linked together on \texttt{NR\_BUF\_HASH} (32) linked lists. All the blocks on each list have block numbers that end with the same string of 5 bits, that is 00000, 00001, ..., or 11111.

The statement on line 8099 sets \texttt{bp} to point to the start of the list on which the requested block would be, if it were in the cache. The loop on line 8101 searches this list to see if the block can be found. If so, the pointer to it is returned to the caller on line 8106.

If the block is not on the list, it is not in the cache, so the least recently used block that is not currently in use is taken. Bit maps and similar blocks that are still in use are never chosen for eviction. The buffer chosen is removed from its hash chain, since it is about to acquire a new block number and hence belongs on a different hash chain. If it is dirty, it is rewritten to the disk on line 8139.

As soon as the buffer is available, the new parameters are filled in and the block is read in from the disk, with one exception. If the file system needs a block just to rewrite all of it, it is wasteful to first read the old version in. In this case, the disk read is omitted (line 8149). When the new block has been read in, get\_block returns to its caller with a pointer to it.

Suppose that the file system needs a directory block temporarily, to look up a file name. It calls get\_block to acquire the directory block. When it has looked up its file name, it calls put\_block (line 8157) to return the block to the cache, thus making the buffer available in case it is needed later for a different block.

The procedure put\_block takes care of putting the newly returned block on the LRU list, and in some cases, rewriting it to the disk. First (lines 8179 to 8189), it removes the block from its current position on the LRU list. Next it puts it on the front or rear of the LRU list, depending on block\_type, a flag provided by the caller telling what kind of a block it is. Blocks that are not likely to be needed again soon are put on the front, where they will be reused quickly. Blocks that may be needed again soon go on the rear, so they will stay around for a while.

After the block has been repositioned on the LRU list, another check is made
(lines 8224 and 8225) to see if the block should be rewritten to disk immediately. 

I-nodes, directory blocks, and other blocks that are essential for the correct functioning of the file system itself fall into this category and are rewritten on the spot.

As a file grows, from time to time a new zone must be allocated to hold the new data. The procedure alloc_zone (line 8235) takes care of allocating new zones. It does this by causing the zone bit map to be searched for a free zone. An attempt is made to find a zone close to zone 0 of the current file, in order to keep the zones of a file together. The mapping between bit number in the bit map and zone number is handled on line 8268, with bit 1 corresponding to the first data zone.

When a file is removed, its zones must be returned to the bit map. Free_zone (line 8275) is responsible for returning these zones. All it does is call free_bit, passing the zone map and the bit number as parameters. Free_bit is also used to return free i-nodes, but then with the i-node map as the first parameter, of course.

Managing the cache requires reading and writing blocks. To provide a simple interface to the disk, the procedure rw_block (line 8295) has been provided. It reads or writes a single block. Similar procedures rw_inode and rw_super exist to read and write i-nodes and super-blocks as well.

The last procedure in the file is invalidate (line 8326). It is called when a disk is unmounted, for example, to remove from the cache all the blocks belonging to the file system just unmounted. If this were not done, then when the device were reused (with a different floppy disk), the file system might find the old blocks instead of the new ones.

I-node Management

The block cache is not the only table that needs support procedures. The i-node table does too. Many of the procedures are similar in function to the block management procedures. They are listed in Fig. 5-37.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get_inode</td>
<td>Fetch an i-node into memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put_inode</td>
<td>Return an i-node that is no longer needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alloc_inode</td>
<td>Allocate a new i-node (for a new file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wipe_inode</td>
<td>Clear some fields in an i-node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_inode</td>
<td>Release an i-node (when a file is removed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rw_inode</td>
<td>Transfer an i-node between memory and disk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dup_inode</td>
<td>Indicate that someone else is using an i-node</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 5-37. Procedures used for i-node management.

The procedure get_inode (line 8379) is analogous to get_block. When any part of the file system needs an i-node, it calls get_inode to acquire it. Get_inode first searches the i-node table to see if the i-node is already present. If so, it increments the usage counter and returns a pointer to it. This search is contained on
lines 8389 to 8406. If the i-node is not present in memory, the i-node is loaded by calling \texttt{rw\_inode}.

When the procedure that needed the i-node is finished with it, the i-node is returned by calling the procedure \texttt{put\_inode} (line 8421), which decrements the usage count \texttt{i\_count}. If the count is then zero, the file is no longer in use, and the i-node can be removed from the table. If it is dirty, it is rewritten to disk.

If the \texttt{i\_link} field is zero, no directory entry is pointing to the file, so all its zones can be freed. Note that the usage count going to zero and the number of links going to zero are quite different events, with different causes and different consequences.

When a new file is created, an i-node must be allocated for it. This work is done by \texttt{alloc\_inode} (line 8446). Unlike zones, where an attempt is made to keep the zones of a file close together, any i-node will do.

After the i-node has been acquired, \texttt{get\_inode} is called to fetch the i-node into the table in memory. Then its fields are initialized, partly in-line (lines 8482 to 8486) and partly using \texttt{wipe\_inode} (line 8503). This split has been made because \texttt{wipe\_inode} is also needed elsewhere in the file system to clear certain i-node fields (but not all of them).

When a file is removed, its i-node is freed by calling \texttt{free\_inode} (line 8525). All that happens here is that the corresponding bit in the i-node bit map is set to 0.

The procedure \texttt{rw\_inode} (line 8543) is analogous to \texttt{rw\_block}. Its job is to fetch an i-node from the disk. It does its work by carrying out the following steps:

1. Calculate which block contains the required i-node.
2. Read in the block by calling \texttt{get\_block}.
3. Extract the i-node and copy it to the \texttt{inode} table.
4. Return the block by calling \texttt{put\_block}.

The procedure \texttt{dup\_inode} (line 8579) just increments the usage count of the i-node.

**Super-block Management**

The file \texttt{super.c} contains procedures that manage the super-block and the bit maps. There are seven procedures in this file, listed in Fig. 5-38.

\texttt{Load\_bit\_maps} (line 8631) is called when the root device is loaded, or when a new file system is mounted. It reads in all the bit map blocks, and sets up the super-block to point to them. The arrays \texttt{s\_imap} and \texttt{s\_zmap} in the super-block point to the i-node bit map blocks and zone bit map blocks, respectively.

When a file system is unmounted, its bit maps are copied back to disk by \texttt{unload\_bit\_maps} (line 8669).
When an i-node or zone is needed, alloc_inode or alloc_zone is called, as we have seen above. Both of these call alloc_bit (line 8689) to actually search the relevant bit map. The search involves three nested loops, as follows:

1. The outer one loops on all the blocks of a bit map.
2. The middle one loops on all the words of a block.
3. The inner one loops on all the bits of a word.

The middle loop works by seeing if the current word is equal to the one's complement of zero, that is, a complete word full of 1s. If so, it has no free i-nodes or zones, so the next word is tried. When a word with a different value is found, it must have at least one 0 bit in it, so the inner loop is entered to find the free (i.e., 0) bit. If all the blocks have been tried without success, there are no free i-nodes or zones, so the code NO_BIT (0) is returned.

Freeing a bit is simpler than allocating one, because no search is needed. Free_bit (line 8747) calculates which bit map block contains the bit to free, and sets the proper bit to 0. The block itself is always in memory, and can be found by following the s imap or s map pointers in the super-block.

The next procedure get_super (line 8771), is used to search the super-block table for a specific device. For example, when a file system is to be mounted, it is necessary to check that it is not already mounted. This check can be performed by asking get_super to find the file system’s device. If it does not find the device, then the file system is not mounted.

The conversion between block and zone is done by shifting block numbers left or zone numbers right. The amount to shift depends on the number of blocks per zone, which can be different for each file system. The procedure scale_factor (line 8810) does the lookup.

Finally, we have rw_super (line 8824), which is analogous to rw_block and rw_inode, as we have mentioned. It is called to read and write super-blocks.

**File Descriptor Management**

MINIX contains special procedures to manage file descriptors and the filp table (see Fig. 5-35). They are contained in the file filedes.c. When a file is created or opened, a free file descriptor and a free filp slot are needed. The procedure
get_fd (line 8871) is used to find them. They are not marked as in use, however, because many checks must first be made before it is known for sure that the CREATE or OPEN will succeed.

Get_filp (line 8916) is used to see if a file descriptor is in range, and if so, returns its filp pointer.

The last procedure in this file is find_filp (line 8930). It is needed to find out when a process is writing on a broken pipe (i.e., a pipe not open for reading by any other process). It locates potential readers by a brute force search of the filp table.

5.7.3. The Main Program

The main loop of the file system is contained in file main.c, starting at line 8992. Structurally, it is very similar to the main loop of the memory manager and the I/O tasks. The call to get_work waits for the next request message to arrive (unless a process previously suspended on a pipe or terminal can now be handled). It also sets a global variable, who, to the caller’s process table slot number and another global variable, fs_call, to the number of the system call to be carried out.

Once back in the main loop, three flags are set: fp points to the caller’s process table slot, super_user tells whether the caller is the super-user or not, and dont_reply is initialized to FALSE. Then comes the main attraction—the call to the procedure that carries out the system call. The procedure to call is selected by using fs_call as an index into the array of procedure pointers, call_vector.

When control comes back to the main loop, if dont_reply has been set, the reply is inhibited (e.g., a process has blocked trying to read from an empty pipe). Otherwise a reply is sent. The final statement in the main loop has been designed to detect that a file is being read sequentially, and to load the next block into the cache before it is actually requested, to improve performance.

The procedure get_work (line 9016) checks to see if any previously blocked procedures have now been revived. If so, these have priority over new messages. Only if there is no internal work to do does the file system call the kernel to get a message, on line 9042.

After a system call has been completed, successfully or otherwise, a reply is sent back to the caller by reply (line 9053). In principle, send should never fail, but the kernel returns a status code, so we might as well check it.

Before the file system starts running, it initializes itself by calling fs_init (line 9069). This procedure builds the linked lists used by the block cache, deleting any buffers that happen to lie across a 64K boundary (because the IBM PC’s DMA chip cannot cross 64K boundaries). It then loads the RAM disk from the boot diskette, initializes the super-block table, and reads in the super-block and root i-node for the root device. If everything appears to be in good shape, the i-node and zone bit maps are loaded. Finally, some tests are made on the constants, to see if they make sense.
When a boot diskette is created, a bit-for-bit copy of the RAM disk image is included on it after the MINIX binary. The procedure *load_ram* copies this image, block by block, to the RAM disk, after first doing some housekeeping (including telling the RAM disk driver where the RAM disk will go and how big it is).

### The Dispatch Table

The file *table.c* (line 9300) contains the pointer array used in the main loop for determining which procedure handles which system call number. We saw a similar table inside the memory manager.

Something new, however, is the table *dmap* on line 9416. This table has one row for each major device, starting at zero. When a device is opened, closed, read, or written, it is this table that provides the name of the procedure to call to handle the operation. All of these procedures are located in the file system's address space. Many of these procedures do nothing, but some call a task to actually request I/O. The task number corresponding to each major device is also provided by the table.

Whenever a new major device is added to MINIX, a line must be appended to this table telling what action, if any, is to be taken when the device is opened, closed, read, or written. As a simple example, if a tape drive is added to MINIX, when its special file is opened, the procedure in the table could check to see if the tape is already in use.

### 5.7.4. Operations on Individual Files

In this section we will look at the system calls that operate on files (as opposed to, say, directories). We will start with how files are created, opened, and closed, and then see how they are read and written.

### Creating, Opening, and Closing Files

The file *open.c* contains the code for five system calls: *CREAT, MKNOD, OPEN, CLOSE,* and *LSEEK.* We will examine each of these in turn. Creating a file involves three steps:

1. Allocating and initializing an i-node for the new file.
2. Entering the new file in the proper directory.
3. Setting up and returning a file descriptor for the new file.

The procedure that handles *CREAT* is *do_create* (line 9479). As in the memory manager, the convention is used in the file system that system call *XXX* is performed by procedure *do_XXX.*

*Do_create* starts out by fetching the name of the new file, and making sure
that free file descriptor and filp table slots are available. The new i-node is actually created by the procedure new_node, which is called on line 9496. If the i-node cannot be created, new_node sets the global variable err_code.

The specific actions carried out by do_creat depend on whether the file already exists. If the file does not exist, lines 9504 to 9521 are skipped, the table slots claimed, and the file descriptor returned.

If the file does exist, then the file system must test to see what kind of a file it is, what its mode is, and so on. Doing a CREATE on an ordinary file causes it to be truncated to length zero; doing it on a special file that is writable causes it to be opened for writing; doing it on a directory is always rejected.

The code of do_create, as well as many other file system procedures, contains a substantial amount of code that checks for various errors and illegal combinations. While not glamorous, this code is essential to having an error-free, robust file system. If everything is in order, the file descriptor and filp slot located at the beginning are now marked as allocated and the file descriptor is returned. They were not marked as allocated in the beginning in order to make it easier to exit part way through if that had been needed.

The MKNOD call is handled by do_mknod (line 9541). This procedure is similar to do_creat, except that it just creates the i-node and makes a directory entry for it. If the i-node already exists, the call terminates with an error. The case-by-case analysis we saw in do_creat is not needed here.

The allocation of the i-node and the entering of the path name into the file system are done by new_node (line 9557). The statement on line 9575 parses the path name (i.e., looks it up component by component) as far as the final directory; the call to advance three lines later tries to see if the final component can be opened.

For example, on the call

```c
fd = creat("/user/ast/foobar", 0755);
```

last_dir tries to load the i-node for /user/ast into the tables and return a pointer to it. If the file does not exist, we will need this i-node shortly in order to add foobar to the directory. All the other system calls that add or delete files also use last_dir to first open the final directory in the path.

If new_node discovers that the file does not exist, it calls alloc_inode on line 9581 to allocate and load a new i-node, returning a pointer to it. If no free i-nodes are left, new_node fails, and returns NIL_INODE.

If an i-node can be allocated, we continue at line 9591, filling in some of the fields, writing it back to the disk, and entering the file name in the final directory (on line 9596). Again we see that the file system must constantly check for errors, and upon encountering one, carefully release all the resources, such as i-nodes and blocks that it is holding. If we were prepared to just let MINIX panic when we ran out of, say, i-nodes, rather than undoing all the effects of the current call, and returning an error code to the caller, the file system would be appreciably simpler.
The next procedure is `do_open` (line 9622). After making a variety of checks, it calls `eat_path` to parse the file name and fetch the i-node into memory. Once the i-node is available, the mode can be checked to see if the file may be opened. The call to `forbidden` on line 9645 does the `rwx` bit checking. Directories and special files are handled afterward. Finally, the file descriptor is returned as the function value.

Closing a file is even easier than opening one. The work is done by `do_close` (line 9680). Pipes and special files need some attention, but for regular files, all that needs to be done is to decrement the `filp` counter and check to see if it is zero, in which case the i-node is returned with `put_inode`.

Note that returning an i-node means that its counter in the `inode` table is decremented, so it can be removed from the table eventually. This operation has nothing to do with freeing the i-node (i.e., setting a bit in the bit map saying that it is available). The i-node is only freed when the file has been removed from all directories.

The final procedure in this file is `do_lseek` (line 9721). When a seek is done, this procedure is called to set the file position to a new value.

Reading a File

Once a file has been opened, it can be read or written. First we will discuss reading, then writing. They differ in a number of ways, but have enough similarities that both `do_read` (line 9784) and `do_write` (line 10125) call a common procedure `read_write` (line 9794), to do most of the work.

The code on lines 9811 to 9818 is used by the memory manager to have the file system load entire segments in user space for it. Normal calls are processed starting on line 9821, where some validity checks are made (e.g., reading from a file opened only for writing) and some variables are initialized. Reads from character special files do not go through the block cache, so they are filtered out on line 9836.

The tests on lines 9844 to 9854 apply only to writes, and have to do with files that may get bigger than the device can hold, or writes that will create a hole in the file by writing beyond the end-of-file. As we discussed in the MINIX overview, the presence of multiple blocks per zone causes problems that must be dealt with explicitly. Pipes are also special and are checked for.

The heart of the read mechanism, at least for ordinary files, is the loop starting on line 9861. This loop breaks the request up into chunks, each of which fits in a single disk block. A chunk begins at the current position and extends until one of the following conditions is met:

1. All the bytes have been read.
2. A block boundary is encountered.
3. The end-of-file is hit.
These rules mean that a chunk never requires two disk blocks to satisfy it. Figure 5-39 shows three examples of how the chunk size is determined. The actual calculation is done on lines 9862 to 9871.

![Diagram showing chunk size determination]

Three examples of how the first chunk size is determined for a 10-byte file. The block size is 8 bytes, and the number of bytes requested is 6. The chunk is shown shaded.

The actual reading of the chunk is done by \texttt{rw\_chunk} (line 9874). When control comes back, various counters and pointers are incremented, and the next iteration begins. When the loop terminates, the file position and other variables may be updated (e.g., pipe pointers).

Finally, if \texttt{read ahead} is called for, the i-node to read from and the position to read from are stored in global variables, so that after the reply message is sent to the user, the file system can start working on getting the next block. In many cases the file system will block, waiting for the next disk block, during which time the user process will be able to work on the data it already has.

The procedure \texttt{rw\_chunk} (line 9919) is concerned with taking an i-node and a file position, converting them into a physical disk block number, and requesting the transfer of that block (or a portion of it) to the user space. The mapping of the relative file position to the physical disk address is done by \texttt{read\_map}, which understands about i-nodes and indirect blocks. For an ordinary file, the variables \texttt{b} and \texttt{dev} on lines 9944 and 9945 contain the physical block number and device number, respectively. The call to \texttt{get\_block} on line 9964 is where the cache handler is asked to find the block, reading it in if need be.

Once we have a pointer to the block, the call to \texttt{rw\_user} on line 9972 takes care of transferring the required portion of it to the user space. The block is then released by \texttt{put\_block}, so that it can be evicted from the cache later, when the time comes. (After being acquired by \texttt{get\_block}, the counter in the block's header will show that it is in use, so it will be exempt from eviction; \texttt{put\_block} decrements the counter.)
Read_map (line 9984) converts a logical file position to the physical block number by inspecting the i-node. For blocks close enough to the beginning of the file that they fall within one of the first seven zones (the ones right in the i-node), a simple calculation is sufficient to determine which zone is needed, and then which block. For blocks further into the file, one or more indirect blocks may have to be read.

The procedure rw_user (line 10042) just formats a message for the system task and sends it. The actual copying is done by the kernel. The file system could hardly do the copying; it does not even know where the user is located in memory. This extra overhead is the price that must be paid for the highly modular design.

Finally, readAhead (line 10082) converts the logical position to a physical block number, calls get_block to make sure the block is in the cache, and then returns the block immediately. It cannot do anything with the block, after all. It just wants to improve the chance that the block is around if it should be used soon.

Note that readAhead is called only from the main loop in main. It is not called as part of the processing of the READ system call. It is important to realize that the call to readAhead is performed after the reply is sent, so that the user will be able to continue running even if the file system has to wait for a disk block while reading ahead. Figure 5-40 shows the relations between some of the major procedures involved in reading a file.

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 5-40. Some of the procedures involved in reading a file.
Writing a File

Writing a file is similar to reading one, except that writing requires allocating new disk blocks. One difference is *write_map* (line 10135), which is analogous to *read_map*, only instead of looking up physical block numbers in the i-node and its indirect blocks, it enters new ones there (to be precise, it enters zone numbers, not block numbers).

The code of *write_map* is somewhat long and detailed because it must deal with several cases. If the zone to be inserted is close to the beginning of the file, it is just inserted into the i-node on (line 10160).

The worst case is when the file is at the maximum size that can be handled by a single-indirect block, so a double-indirect block must be allocated. Next, a single-indirect block must be allocated and its address put into the double-indirect block. If the double-indirect block is successfully allocated, but the single-indirect block cannot be allocated (i.e., disk full), then the double one must be carefully released so as not to corrupt the bit map.

Again, if we could just toss in the sponge and panic at this point, the code would be much simpler. However, from the user’s point of view it is much nicer that running out of disk space just returns an error from WRITE, rather than crashing the computer with a corrupted file system.

The next procedure in *write.c* is *clear_zone*, which takes care of the problem of erasing blocks that are suddenly in the middle of a file, when a seek is done beyond the end of file, followed by a write of some data. Fortunately, this situation does not occur very often.

*New_block* (line 10265) is called by *rw_chunk* on line 9955 whenever a new block is needed. Figure 5-41 shows six successive stages of the growth of a sequential file. The block size is 1K and the zone size is 2K in this example.

![Fig. 5-41. (a) - (f) The successive allocation of 1K blocks. The zone size is 2K.](image)

The first time *new_block* is called, it allocates zone 12 (blocks 24 and 25). The next time it uses block 25, which has already been allocated but is not yet in use. On the third call, zone 20 (blocks 40 and 41) is allocated, and so on. *Zero_block* (line 10318) clears a block, erasing its previous contents.
Pipes

Pipes are similar to ordinary files in many respects. In this section we will focus on the differences. First of all, they are created differently, by the pipe call, rather than the creat call. The pipe call is handled by do_pipe (line 10384) in file pipe.c. All do_pipe really does is allocate an i-node for the pipe, and return two file descriptors for it.

Reading and writing a pipe is slightly different from reading and writing a file, because a pipe has a finite capacity. An attempt to write to a pipe that is already full will cause the writer to be suspended. Similarly, reading from an empty pipe will suspend the reader. In effect, a pipe has two pointers, the current position (used by readers) and the size (used by writers), to determine where data comes from or goes to.

The various checks to see if an operation on a pipe is possible are carried out by pipe_check (line 10433). In addition to the above tests, which may lead to the caller being suspended, pipe_check calls release to see if a process previously suspended due to no data or too much data can now be revived. These revivals are done on line 10457 and line 10478, for sleeping writers and readers, respectively. Writing on a broken pipe (no readers) is also detected here.

The act of suspending a process is done by suspend (line 10488). All it does is save the parameters of the call in the process table, and set the flag dont_reply to TRUE, to inhibit the file system's reply message.

The procedure release (line 10510) is called to check if a process that was suspended on a pipe can now be allowed to continue. If it finds one, it calls revive to set a flag so that the main loop will notice it later.

The last procedure in pipe.c is do_unpause (line 10572). When the memory manager is trying to signal a process, it must find out if that process is hanging on a pipe or special file (in which case it must be awakened with an EINTR error). Since the memory manager knows nothing about pipes or special files, it sends a message to the file system to ask. That message is processed by do_unpause, which revives the process, if it is blocked.

5.7.5. Directories and Paths

We have now finished looking at how files are read and written. Our next task is to see how path names and directories are handled.

Converting a Path to an I-node

Many system calls (e.g., open, unlink, and mount) have path names (i.e., file names) as a parameter. Most of these calls must fetch the i-node for the named file before they can start working on the call itself. How a path name is converted to an i-node is a subject we will now look at in detail. We already saw the general outline in Fig. 5-11.
The parsing of path names is done in the file path.c. The first procedure, eat_path (line 10675), accepts a pointer to a path name, parses it, arranges for its i-node to be loaded into memory, and returns a pointer to the i-node. It does its work by calling last_dir to get the i-node to the final directory, and then calling advance to get the final component of the path. If the search fails, for example, because one of the directories along the path does not exist, or exists but is protected against being searched, NIL_INODE is returned instead of a pointer to the i-node.

Pathnames may be absolute or relative, and may have arbitrarily many components, separated by slashes. These issues are dealt with by last_dir (line 10703). It begins (line 10722) by examining the first character of the path name to see if it is an absolute path or a relative one. For absolute paths, rip is set to point to the root i-node; for relative ones, it is set to point to the i-node for the current working directory.

At this point, last_dir has the path name and a pointer to the i-node of the directory to look up the first component in. It enters a loop on line 10726 now, parsing the path name, component by component. When it gets to the end, it returns a pointer to the final directory.

Get_name (line 10749) is a utility procedure that extracts components from strings. More interesting is advance (line 10792), which takes as parameters a directory pointer and a string, and looks up the string in the directory. If it finds the string, advance returns a pointer to its i-node. The details of transferring across mounted file systems are handled here.

Although advance controls the string lookup, the actual comparison of the string against the directory entries is done in search_dir, which is the only place in the file system where directory files are actually examined. It contains two nested loops, one to loop over the blocks in a directory, and one to loop over the entries in a block. The procedure search_dir is also used to enter and delete names from directories. Figure 5-42 gives the relations between some of the major procedures used in looking up path names.

---

**Fig. 5-42.** Some of the procedures used in looking up path names.
Mounting File Systems

Two system calls that affect the file system as a whole are MOUNT and UMOUNT. They allow independent file systems on different minor devices to be "glued" together to form a single naming tree. Mounting, as we saw in Fig. 5-31, is effectively achieved by reading in the root i-node and super-block of the file system to be mounted, and setting two pointers in its super-block. One of them points to the i-node mounted on, and the other points to the root i-node of the mounted file system.

The setting of these pointers is done in the file mount.c by do_mount on lines 11116 and 11117. The two pages of code that precede setting the pointers are almost entirely concerned with checking for all the errors that can occur while mounting a file system, among them:

1. The special file given is not a block device.
2. The special file is a block device, but is already mounted.
3. The file system to be mounted has a rotten magic number.
4. The file system to be mounted is invalid (e.g., no i-nodes).
5. The file to be mounted on does not exist or is a special file.
6. There is no room for the mounted file system's bit maps.
7. There is no room for the mounted file system's super-block.
8. There is no room for the mounted file system's root i-node.

Perhaps it seems inappropriate to keep harping on this point, but the reality of any practical operating system is that a substantial fraction of the code is devoted to doing minor chores that are not intellectually very exciting, but are crucial to making a system usable. If a user attempts to mount the wrong floppy disk by accident, say, once a month, and this leads to a crash and a corrupted file system, the user will perceive the system as being unreliable and blame the designer, not himself.

Thomas Edison once made a remark that is relevant here. He said that "genius" is one percent inspiration and 99 percent perspiration. The difference between a good system and a mediocre one is not the brilliance of the former's scheduling algorithm, but its attention to getting all the details right.

Unmounting a file system is easier than mounting one—there are fewer things that can go wrong. The only real issue is making sure that no process has any open files or working directories on the file system to be removed. This check is straightforward: just scan the whole i-node table to see if any i-nodes in memory belong to the file system to be removed (other than the root i-node). If so, the UMOUNT call fails.

The last procedure in mount.c is name_to_dev (line 11180), which takes a
special file, gets its i-node, and extracts its major and minor device numbers. These are stored in the i-node itself, in the place where the first zone would normally go. This slot is available because special files do not have zones.

**Linking and Unlinking Files**

The next file is `link.c`, which deals with linking and unlinking files. The procedure `do_link` (line 11275) is very much like `do_mount` in that nearly all of the code is concerned with error checking. Some of the possible errors that can occur in the call

```c
link(file_name, link_name);
```

are

1. `File_name` does not exist or cannot be accessed.
2. `File_name` already has the maximum number of links.
3. `File_name` is a directory (only super-user can link to it).
4. `Link_name` already exists.
5. `File_name` and `link_name` are on different devices.

If no errors are present, a new directory entry is made with the string `link_name` and the i-node number of `file_name`. The actual entry is made by `searchdir`, called from `do_link` on line 11324.

Files are removed by unlinking them. The work is done by `do_unlink` (line 11342). Again, a variety of checks are made first. If no errors are found, the directory entry is cleared and the link count in the i-node is reduced by one.

If the link count is now zero, all the zones are freed by `truncate` (line 11388). This procedure works by simply stepping through the i-node a zone at a time, freeing all the zones it finds.

### 5.7.6. Other System Calls

The last group of system calls is a mixed bag of things involving status, directories, protection, time, and other services.

**Changing Directories and File Status**

The file `stadir.c` contains the code for four system calls: CHDIR, CHROOT, STAT, and FSTAT. In `last_dir`, on line 10722, we saw how path searches start out by looking at the first character of the path, to see if it is a slash or not. Depending on the result, a pointer is then set to the working directory or the root directory.
Changing from one working directory (or root directory) to another is just a matter of changing these two pointers within the caller's process table. These changes are made by \texttt{do\_chdir} (line 11475) and \texttt{do\_chroot} (line 11500). Both of them do the necessary checking, and then call \texttt{change} (line 11515) to open the new directory to replace the old one.

The code on lines 11483 to 11490 is not executed on CHDIR calls made by user processes. It is specifically for calls made by the memory manager, to change to a user's directory for the purpose of handling EXEC calls. When a user tries to execute a file, say, \texttt{a.out} in his working directory, it is easier for the memory manager to change to that directory than to try to figure out where it is.

The remaining two system calls handled in this file, \texttt{STAT} and \texttt{FSTAT}, are basically the same, except for how the file is specified. The former gives a path name, whereas the latter provides the file descriptor of an open file. The top-level procedures, \texttt{do\_stat} and \texttt{do\_fstat}, both call \texttt{stat\_inode} to do the work. Before calling \texttt{stat\_inode}, \texttt{do\_stat} opens the file to get its i-node. In this way, both \texttt{do\_stat} and \texttt{do\_fstat} pass an i-node pointer to \texttt{stat\_inode}.

All \texttt{stat\_inode} does is extract information from the i-node and copy it into a buffer. The buffer must be explicitly copied to user space by \texttt{rw\_user} on line 11624 because it is too large to fit in a message.

**Protection**

The MINIX protection mechanism uses the \texttt{rwx} bits. Three sets of bits are present for each file: for the owner, for his group, and for others. The bits are set by the CHMOD system call, which is carried out by \texttt{do\_chmod} (line 11677). After making a series of validity checks, the mode is changed on line 11704.

The CHOWN system call is similar to CHMOD in that both of them change an internal i-node field in some file. The implementation is also similar although \texttt{do\_chown} (line 11715) is available only to the super-user.

The UMASK system call allows the user to set a mask (stored in the process table), which then masks out bits in subsequent CREAT system calls. The complete implementation would be only one statement, line 11752, except that the call must return the old mask value as its result. This additional burden triples the number of lines of code required (lines 11751 to 11753).

The ACCESS system call makes it possible for a process to find out if it can access a file in a specified way (e.g., for reading). It is implemented by \texttt{do\_access} (line 11760), which fetches the file's i-node and calls the internal procedure, \texttt{forbidden} (line 11782), to see if the access is forbidden. \texttt{Forbidden} checks the uid and gid, as well as the information in the i-node. Depending on what it finds, it selects one of the three \texttt{rwx} groups and checks to see if the access is permitted or forbidden.

\texttt{Read\_only} (line 11830) is a little internal procedure that tells whether the file system on which its i-node parameter is located is mounted read-only or read-write. It is needed to prevent writes on file systems mounted read-only.
Time

MINIX has several system calls that involve time: UTIME, TIME, STIME, and TIMES. They are summarized in Fig. 5-43. They are handled by the file system for no good reason. They just had to go somewhere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UTIME</th>
<th>Set a file's &quot;time of last modification&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>Get the current real time in seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STIME</td>
<td>Set the real time clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMES</td>
<td>Get the process accounting times</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 5-43. The four system calls involving time.

Associated with each file is a 32-bit number that records the time when the file was last modified. This time is kept in the i-node. With the UTIME system call, this time can be set by the owner of the file or the super-user. The procedure do_utime (line 11877) performs the system call by fetching the i-node and storing the user-specified time in it.

The real time is not maintained by the file system. It is maintained by the clock task within the kernel. Consequently, the only way to get or set the real time is to send a message to the clock task. This is, in fact, what do_time and do_stime both do. The real time is in seconds, since Jan 1, 1970.

The accounting information is also maintained by the kernel. At each clock tick it charges one tick to some process. This information can be retrieved by sending a message to the system task, which is what do_tims (line 11937) does. The procedure is not named do_times because most C compilers add an underscore to the front of all external symbols, and most linkers truncate symbols to eight characters, thus making do_time indistinguishable from do_times.

Leftovers

The file misc.c contains procedures for a few system calls that do not fit in anywhere else. The DUP system call duplicates a file descriptor. In other words, it creates a new file descriptor that points to the same file as its argument.

The call has a variant that is slightly different. It is invoked by the call:

dup2(fd, fd2);

in which fd is a file descriptor referring to an open file, and fd2 is an integer that has no file assigned to it yet. The call makes fd2 a valid file descriptor for the same file as fd.

The two system calls share the same message type. They are distinguished by the 0100 bit, which is set in fd for DUP2. Both versions of the call are handled by do_dup (line 11981). The work to be done is straightforward, consisting of manipulating file descriptors and filp entries.
SEC. 5.7
IMPLEMENTATION OF THE MINIX FILE SYSTEM

The next system call is SYNC, which copies all blocks, i-nodes, and superblocks that have been modified since being loaded back to the disk. The call is processed by do_sync (line 12018). It simply searches through all the tables looking for dirty entries.

The system calls FORK, EXIT, and SET are really memory manager calls, but the results have to be posted here as well. When a process forks, it is essential that the kernel, memory manager, and file system all know about it. These "system calls" do not come from user processes, but from the memory manager. Their job consists of recording the relevant information.

The last nonsystem call is handled by do_revive (line 12149). It is called when a task that was previously unable to complete work that the file system had requested, such as providing input data for a user process, has now completed the work. The file system now revives the process and sends it the reply message.

5.7.7. The I/O Device Interface

I/O in MINIX is done by sending messages to the tasks within the kernel. The file system's interface with these tasks is contained in the file device.c, which also contains procedures that do special things for special files. As a starter, when a special file is opened, the procedure dev_open (line 12233) is called, just in case some special processing is needed. This procedure extracts the major and minor device numbers for the special file, and uses the major device number as an index into the dmap table in file table.c to call a procedure within the file system for special processing (line 12240). Normally this entry is no_call, which does nothing, but other procedures can be entered into dmap as needed.

Closing a device is similar, with the work being done by dev_close (line 12248) in this case.

When actual device I/O is needed, dev_io (line 12261) is called. It builds a standard message (see Fig. 3-15) and sends it to the specified task. It is called from read_write to handle character special files, and from rw_block for block special files. While dev_io is waiting for a reply from the task, the file system waits. It has no internal multiprogramming. Usually these waits are quite short though (a few hundred milliseconds at worst).

One system call is handled in device.c, ioctl. That call has been put here because it is closely tied to the task interface. When an ioctl is done, do_ioctl is called to build a message and send it to the proper task.

Find_dev (line 12328) is a little helper procedure that extracts the major and minor device numbers from a full device number. The final three procedures in device.c are not mentioned explicitly in the file system. All three are procedures that are called indirectly, via dmap. Reads and writes use either rw_dev or rw_dev2 (see Fig. 5-40 for the call hierarchy). When a null routine is needed, no_call is used.
5.7.8. General Utilities

The file system contains a few general purpose utility procedures that are used in various places. They are collected together in the file utility.c. The first procedure is clock_time. It sends messages to the clock task to find out what the current real time is. The next one is cmp_string. It compares two strings to see if they are the same. Then comes copy. It copies a block of data from one part of the file system’s address space to another.

The procedure fetch_name is needed because many system calls have a file name as parameter. If the file name is short, it is included in the message from the user to the file system. If it is long, a pointer to the name in user space is put in the message. Fetch_name checks for both cases, and either way, gets the name.

No.sys is the error handler that is called when the file system receives a system call that is not one of its calls. Finally, panic prints a message and tells the kernel to throw in the towel when something catastrophic happens.

The last file is putc.c. It contains two procedures, both of which have to do with printing messages. The standard library procedures cannot be used, because they send messages to the file system. These procedures send messages directly to the terminal task.

5.8. SUMMARY

When seen from the outside, a file system is a collection of files and directories, plus operations on them. Files can be read and written, directories can be created and destroyed, and files can be moved from directory to directory. Most modern file systems support a hierarchical directory system, in which directories may have subdirectories ad infinitum.

When seen from the inside, a file system looks quite different. The file system designers have to be concerned with how storage is allocated, and how the system keeps track of which block goes with which file. We have also seen how different systems have different directory structures. File system reliability and performance are also important issues.

We looked at some of the ways network file servers have been constructed in recent years. Atomic updates and transactions are often key features of these systems.

Security and protection are of vital concern to both the system users and designers. We discussed some security flaws in older systems, and generic problems that many systems have. We also looked at authentication, with and without passwords, access control lists, and capabilities.

Finally, we studied the MINIX file system in detail. It is large, but not very complicated. It accepts requests for work from user processes, indexes into a table of procedure pointers, and calls that procedure to carry out the requested
system call. Due to its modular structure and position outside the kernel, it can be removed from MINIX and used as a free-standing network file server with only minor modifications.

PROBLEMS

1. An operating system only supports a single directory, but allows that directory to have arbitrarily many files with arbitrarily long file names. Can something approximating a hierarchical file system be simulated? How?

2. Give 5 different path names for the file /etc/passwd. (Hint: think about the directory entries "." and "..".)

3. Free disk space can be kept track of using a free list or a bit map. Disk addresses require D bits. For a disk with B blocks, F of which are free, state the condition under which the free list uses less space than the bit map. For D having the value 16 bits, express your answer as a percentage of the disk space that must be free.

4. An MS-DOS computer uses a FAT to keep track of disk blocks. Compare its performance to UNIX with respect to doing random seeks on long files, if
   (a) The FAT is always on disk.
   (b) The FAT is always in memory.

5. How many disk references are needed to open the path games/zapper in UNIX?

6. The link count in the UNIX i-node is redundant. All it does is to tell how many directory entries point to the i-node, something that can equally well be seen by looking at the directories. Why is this field used?

7. A UNIX file system uses 1024-byte blocks and 16-bit disk addresses. The i-node holds 8 disk addresses for data blocks, one single-indirect block address, and one double-indirect block address. What is the maximum file size? Think carefully.

8. In UNIX, files can be shared by having two directories point to the same i-node. MS-DOS does not have i-nodes. Could files be linked in two directories at the same time in MS-DOS? If so, how could it be implemented?

9. A file system checker has built up its counters as shown in Fig. 5-15. They are:
   In use: 101001011010010
   Free: 000111000101101
   Are there any errors? If so, are they serious? Why?

10. It has been suggested that the first part of each UNIX file be kept in the same disk block as its i-node. What good would this do?

11. The performance of a file system depends critically upon the cache hit rate (fraction of blocks found in the cache). If it takes 1 msec to satisfy a request from the cache, but 40 msec to satisfy a request if a disk read is needed, give a formula for the mean time required to satisfy a request if the hit rate is h. Plot this function for values of h from 0 to 1.0.
12. A floppy disk has 40 cylinders. A seek takes 6 msec per cylinder moved. If no attempt is made to put the blocks of a file close to each other, two blocks that are logically consecutive (i.e., follow one another in the file) will be about 13 cylinders apart, on the average. If, however, the operating system makes an attempt to cluster related blocks, the mean interblock distance can be reduced to 2 cylinders (for example). How long does it take to read a 100 block file in both cases, if the rotational latency is 100 msec and the transfer time is 25 msec per block?

13. Would compacting disk storage periodically be of any conceivable value? Why or why not?

14. A UNIX program creates a file and immediately seeks to byte 20 million. It then writes one byte. How many disk blocks does the file now occupy (including indirect blocks).

15. For a file system offering remote disk service, state whether each of the following is done in the client machine or the server machine.

   (a) Checking file permissions to see if the user may access the file.
   (b) Handling seek errors on the disk.
   (c) Looking up path names.

16. How could TENEX be modified not to have the password problem described in the text?

17. After getting your degree, you apply for a job as director of a large university computer center that has just put its ancient operating system out to pasture and switched over to UNIX. You get the job. Fifteen minutes after starting work, your assistant bursts into your office screaming: "Some students have discovered the algorithm we use for encrypting passwords and posted it on the bulletin board." What should you do?

18. The MOUNT system call in UNIX is restricted to the super-user. Why?

19. The Morris-Thompson protection scheme with the n-bit random numbers was designed to make it difficult for an intruder to discover a large number of passwords by encrypting common strings in advance. Does the scheme also offer protection against a student user who is trying to guess the super-user password on his machine?

20. A computer science department has a large collection of UNIX machines on its local network. Users on any machine can issue a command of the form

   machine4 who

and have it executed on machine4, without having the user login on the remote machine. This feature is implemented by having the user's kernel send the command and his uid to the remote machine. Is this scheme secure if the kernels are all trustworthy (e.g., large time-shared minicomputers with protection hardware)? What if some of the machines are students' personal computers, with no protection hardware?

21. When a file is removed, its blocks are generally put back on the free list, but they are not erased. Do you think it would be a good idea to have the operating system
22. Three different protection mechanisms that we have discussed are capabilities, access control lists, and the UNIX rwx bits. For each of the following protection problems, tell which of these mechanisms can be used.

(a) Rick wants his files readable by everyone except Jennifer.
(b) Helen and Anna want to share some secret files.
(c) Cathy wants some of her files to be public.

For UNIX, assume that groups are categories such as faculty, students, secretaries, and so on.

23. Consider the following protection mechanism. Each object and each process is assigned a number. A process can only access an object if the object has a higher number than the process. Which of the scheme discussed in the text does this resemble? In what essential way does it differ from the scheme in the text?

24. Can the Trojan Horse attack work in a system protected by capabilities?

25. Two computer science students, Carolyn and Elinor, are having a discussion about i-nodes in MINIX. Carolyn maintains that memories have gotten so large and so cheap that when a file is opened, it is simpler and faster just to fetch a new copy of the i-node into the i-node table, rather than search the entire table to see if it is already there. Elinor disagrees. Who is right?

26. Is it possible for an i-node in memory to have i_count equal to 1 but i_link equal to 0? How?

27. A MINIX file system for a 360K floppy disk has 360 1K disk blocks. It also has 63 i-nodes. How many blocks are available for directories and data?

28. If the i-node bit map in MINIX is completely garbled by a crash, is there any way to recover the contents of the file system, or is it lost forever? Explain.

29. Now repeat the previous problem, only this time assume it is the zone map that has been garbled.

30. Opening and reading a block special file is implemented almost the same way as opening and reading an ordinary file. Describe the differences between the two.

31. Why does the block cache use the hash table? Could it function without this table?

32. Find as many security flaws as you can in MINIX. Caution: do not try this exercise at your local computer center. They do not have much of a sense of humor there.

33. Write a printer spooling daemon for MINIX.

34. Implement named pipes in MINIX. A named pipe can be implemented as a special file with major device number 255. When one process opens it to read and another process opens it to write, it behaves the same way as a pipe created by the PIPE system call.

35. MINIX does not have any way to lock files. Implement a new system call, LOCK, that takes a file descriptor and locks the corresponding file. If the file is already
locked, the system call fails. Users can open locked files, but they cannot lock them again until they have been unlocked. Also implement an UNLOCK system call.

36. Implement symbolic links in MINIX. You may limit the path length to something that conveniently fits in an i-node. There is a spare bit in the mode (01000 bit) that can be used to indicate that a file is a symbolic link. Add a new system call to allow symbolic links to be made.

37. Implement a system of disk space quotas by having a file /etc/quotas tell how much space each user is entitled to have, and how much the user currently has. Every time a zone is allocated on behalf of a user, update the current usage and check to see if the user is over quota. Users who are over quota do not get any more space. Make the design efficient.
In the previous five chapters we have touched upon a variety of topics. This chapter is intended as an aid to readers interested in pursuing their study of operating systems further. Section 6.1 is a list of suggested readings. Section 6.2 is an alphabetical bibliography of all books and articles cited in this book.

In addition to the references given below, the Proceedings of the n-th ACM Symposium on Operating Systems Principles (ACM) held every other year and the Proceedings of the n-th International Conference on Distributed Computing Systems (IEEE) held every year are good places to look for recent papers on operating systems. Furthermore, ACM Transactions on Computer Systems and Operating Systems Review are two journals that often have interesting articles on operating systems. Brumfield (1986) has published a useful guide to the operating systems literature. Useful bibliographies have been assembled by Metzner (1982), Newton (1979), Smith (1978, 1981), and Zobel (1983).

6.1. SUGGESTIONS FOR FURTHER READING

6.1.1. Introduction and General Works

Bach, The Design of the UNIX Operating System

A detailed description of the internal structure and algorithms used by System
5.2. It covers the kernel, the buffer cache, files, processes, and memory management, among other topics.

Blair et al., "A Critique of UNIX"

A discussion of areas in which UNIX is weak, including file management, process creation, process scheduling, and resource management. A useful antidote to the numerous papers and books that describe UNIX as the greatest invention since sliced bread.

Brooks, The Mythical Man-Month: Essays on Software Engineering

A witty, amusing, and informative book on how not to write an operating system by someone who learned the hard way. Full of good advice.

Comer, Operating System Design. The Xinu Approach

A book about the Xinu operating system, which runs on the LSI-11 computer. It contains a detailed exposition of the code, including a complete listing in C.

Deitel, An Introduction to Operating Systems

The first part of this book contains standard material, but the last five chapters contain detailed case studies of UNIX, VMS, CP/M, MVS, and VM/370.

Finkel, An Operating Systems Vade Mecum

A general text on operating systems. It is practically-oriented, up-to-date, well-written and covers many of the topics treated in this book, making it a good place to look for a different perspective on the same subject.

Holt, Concurrent Euclid, The UNIX System, and TUNIS

TUNIS, like MINIX, is a rewrite of UNIX. This book describes the TUNIS system, but does not contain the source code. TUNIS is written not in C, but in Concurrent Euclid, and much of the book is devoted to explaining the various features of this language.

Lampson, "Hints for Computer System Design"

Butler Lampson, one of the world's leading designers of innovative operating systems, has collected many hints, suggestions, and guidelines from his years of experience and put them together in this entertaining and informative article. Like Brooks' book, this is required reading for every aspiring system designer.

Peterson and Silberschatz, Operating System Concepts. 2nd Ed.

Another text on operating systems. It covers many of the same topics as this book, and is a good general reference.
Quartermann et al., "4.2 BSD and 4.3 BSD as Examples of the UNIX System"
A survey of the structure, internal organization and algorithms used by Berkeley UNIX including processes, scheduling, paging, I/O, communications and networking.

Ritchie and Thompson, "The UNIX Time-Sharing System"
This is the original paper on UNIX by its designers. All the key ideas are here. It is as well worth reading now as when it was first published.

Tanenbaum and van Renesse, "Distributed Operating Systems"
A survey article about distributed operating systems. It focuses on those aspects of distributed operating systems that differ from single-processor systems, and thus complements the material in this book. Four existing distributed systems are examined in detail.

6.1.2. Processes

Andrews and Schneider, "Concepts and Notations for Concurrent Progr."
A tutorial and survey of processes and interprocess communication, including busy waiting, semaphores, monitors, message passing, and other techniques. The article also shows how these concepts are embedded in various programming languages.

Ben-Ari, Principles of Concurrent Programming
This little book is entirely devoted to the problems of interprocess communication. There are chapters on mutual exclusion, semaphores, monitors, and the dining philosophers problem, among others.

Birrell and Nelson, "Implementing Remote Procedure Calls"
Remote procedure calls are commonly used in distributed systems for interprocess communication. This paper describes the implementation of a particularly elegant remote procedure call system developed at Xerox PARC.

Kerridge and Simpson, "Communicating Parallel Processes"
A discussion of what is wrong with the standard interprocess communication primitives, and a proposal for a new language in which parallelism can be more easily expressed.

Lampson and Redell, "Experience with Processes and Monitors in Mesa"
When monitors are used in real systems, problems arise that do not come up in textbook examples. This paper describes some of these problems and their solutions.

Chapters 9 and 10 are devoted to processes and interprocess communication, including semaphores, monitors, and other techniques.

### 6.1.3. Input/Output

Calingaert, *Operating Systems Elements*

Chapter 5 on device management discusses such issues as: allocation, buffering, blocking and error recovery.

Coffman et al., “System Deadlocks”

A short introduction to deadlocks, what causes them, and how they can be prevented or detected.

Finkel, *An Operating Systems Vade Mecum*

Chapter 5 discusses I/O hardware and device drivers, particularly for terminals and disks.

Grosshans, *File Systems Design and Implementation*

Chapters 2-8 cover a variety of design issues for I/O systems, primarily for disks and magnetic tapes.


A discussion of deadlocks. Holt introduces a directed graph model that can be used to analyze some deadlock situations.

IEEE, *Computer Magazine*, July 1985

This special issue on mass storage has five papers on advanced disk systems, including optical disks.

Isloor and Marsland, “The Deadlock Problem: An Overview”

A tutorial on deadlocks, with special emphasis on data base systems. A variety of models and algorithms are covered.

Pike et al., “Hardware/Software Tradeoffs for Bitmap Graphics on the Blit”

A description of how the Blit terminal works. The authors argue that special hardware assistance for bitmap graphics is not necessary. Everything should be done in software.

### 6.1.4. Memory Management

Denning, “Virtual Memory”

A classic paper on many aspects of virtual memory. Denning was one of the pioneers in this field, and was the inventor of the working set concept.
Denning, "Working Sets Past and Present"
A good overview of numerous memory management and paging algorithms. A comprehensive bibliography is included.

Doran, "Virtual Memory"
A tutorial on virtual memory, covering both concepts and implementation. The Burroughs B6700 and GE 645 are used as examples.

Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming*
First fit, best fit, buddy systems, and other memory management algorithms are discussed and compared in this book.

Peterson and Silberschatz, *Operating System Concepts. 2nd Ed.*
Chapters 5 and 6 deal with memory management, including swapping, paging, and segmentation. A variety of paging algorithms are mentioned.

### 6.1.5. File Systems

Anyanwu and Marshall, "A Crash Resistant UNIX File System"
A description of how the concept of stable storage can be integrated into an operating system. The conceptual background, implementation, and performance of the resulting system are discussed.

Denning, *Cryptography and Data Security*
A thorough treatment of the problems of protection, cryptography, and security in operating systems and data base systems. Many models and algorithms are discussed.

Denning and Denning, "Data Security"
A survey of security and protection issues, ranging from capabilities and cryptography at one end, to information flows and inference controls at the other.

Grampp and Morris, "UNIX Operating System Security"
A practical guide to making your UNIX system more secure. It covers passwords, file system security, the SETUID bit, Trojan horses, networking, encryption, and people problems.

Grosshans, *File Systems Design and Implementation*
The latter part of this book deals with file system design and access methods. It is oriented towards the kinds of file systems found on large mainframes, which are quite different from the ones covered in this book.
A collection of 24 papers on various aspects of security and privacy, including models as well as policies and applications such as operating systems, networks, cryptography, and data bases.

Kochan and Wood, UNIX System Security
An entire book telling how to run a secure UNIX shop. It deals with user security, system security, and network security.

McKusick et al., “A Fast File System for UNIX”
The UNIX file system was completely reimplemented for 4.2 BSD. This paper describes the design of the new file system, with emphasis on performance aspects.

Lampson, “Atomic Transactions”
A good introduction to the concept of atomic transactions, showing how they can be built up from simple primitives.

Linden, “Oper. System Structures to Support Security and Reliable Software”
A survey of protection mechanisms, with an emphasis on domains, capabilities, and typed objects.

Popek and Walker, The LOCUS Distributed Systems Architecture
Chapter 3 describes the operation of the LOCUS file system, which is physically distributed, replicated, but still compatible with that of UNIX.

Svobodova, “File Servers for Network-Based Distributed Systems”
A survey of file servers used in distributed systems. The emphasis is on file servers that provide atomic actions and transactions.

6.2. ALPHABETICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY


SEC. 6.2  ALPHABETICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY  343


ALPHABETICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY


A

INTRODUCTION
TO C

C was invented by Dennis Ritchie of AT&T Bell Laboratories to provide a high-level language in which UNIX could be programmed. It is now widely used for many other applications as well. C is especially popular with systems programmers because it allows programs to be expressed simply and concisely. The definitive work describing C is *The C Programming Language* by Kernighan and Ritchie (1978). Bolon (1986), Gehani (1984), Hancock and Krieger (1986), Harbison and Steele (1984), and numerous others have also written books about C.

In this appendix we will attempt to provide enough of an introduction to C that someone who is familiar with high-level languages such as Pascal, PL/I, or Modula 2 will be able to understand most of the MINIX code given in this book. Features of C not used in MINIX are not discussed here. Numerous subtle points are omitted. The emphasis is on reading C, not writing it.

A.1. FUNDAMENTALS OF C

A C program is made up of a collection of procedures (often called functions, even when they do not return values). These procedures contain declarations, statements, and other elements that together tell the computer to do something. Figure A-1 shows a little procedure that declares three integer variables and assigns them all values. The procedure's name is *main*. It has no formal
parameters, as indicated by the absence of any identifiers between the parentheses. Its body is enclosed between braces (curly brackets). This example shows that C has variables, and that these variables must be declared before being used. C also has statements, in this example, assignment statements. All statements must be terminated by semicolons (unlike Pascal, which uses semicolons between statements, not after them). Comments are started by the /* symbol and ended by the */ symbol, and may extend over multiple lines.

```c
main()
{
    int i, j, k;
    /* declaration of 3 integer variables */

    i = 10;       /* set i to 10 (decimal) */
    j = i + 015;  /* set j to i + 15 (octal) */
    k = j * j + 0xFF;  /* set k to j * j + 0xFF (hexadecimal) */
}
```

Fig. A-1. An example of a procedure in C.

The procedure contains three constants. The constant 10 in the first assignment is an ordinary decimal constant. The constant 015 is an octal constant (equal to 13 decimal). Octal constants always begin with a leading zero. The constant 0xFF is a hexadecimal constant (equal to 255 decimal). Hexadecimal constants always begin with 0x. All three radices are commonly used in C.

A.2. BASIC DATA TYPES

C has two principal data types: integer and character, written int and char, respectively. There is no Boolean data type. Instead, integers are used, with 0 meaning false and everything else meaning true. C also has floating point types, but MINIX does not use them.

The type int may be qualified with the “adjectives” short, long, or unsigned, which determine the (compiler dependent) range of values. Most 8088 compilers use 16-bit integers for int and short int and 32-bit integers for long int. Unsigned integers on the 8088 range from 0 to 65535, rather than -32768 to +32767 as ordinary integers do. Characters are 8 bits.

The qualifier register is also allowed for both int and char and is a hint to the compiler that the variable being declared might be worth putting in a register instead of in memory, to make the program run faster. Some declarations are shown in Fig. A-2.

Conversion between types is allowed. For example, the statement

```c
flag_pole = i;
```

is allowed even though i is an integer and flag_pole is a long. In many cases when converting between types it is necessary or useful to force one type to
int i;  / * one integer */
short int z1, z2; / * two short integers */
char c;  / * one character */
unsigned short int k; / * one unsigned short integer */
long flag_pole; / * the 'int' may be omitted */
register int r;  / * a register variable */

Fig. A-2. Some declarations.

another. This can be done by putting the target type in parentheses in front of
the expression to be converted, as in

p( (long) i);

to convert the integer i to a long before passing it as a parameter to a procedure
p, which expects a long.

One thing to watch out for when converting between types is sign extension.
When converting a character to an integer, some compilers treat characters as
being signed, that is, from −128 to +127, whereas others treat them as being
unsigned, that is, from 0 to 255. In MINIX one frequently sees statements like

i = c & 0377

which converts c (a character) to an integer and then performs a Boolean AND
(the ampersand) with the octal constant 0377. The result is that the upper 8 bits
are set to zero, effectively forcing c to be treated as an unsigned 8-bit quantity,
in the range 0 to 255.

A.3. CONSTRUCTED TYPES

In this section we will look at four ways of building up more complex data
types: arrays, structures, unions, and pointers. An array is a collection of items
of the same type. All arrays in C start with element 0. The declaration

int a[10];

declares an array, a, with 10 integers, referred to as a[0] through a[9]. Two,
three, and higher dimensional arrays exist, but they are not used in MINIX.

A structure is a collection of variables, usually of different types. A struc-
ture in C is similar to a record in Pascal. The declaration

struct {int i; char c;} s;

declares s to be a structure containing two members, an integer i, and a charac-
ter c. To assign the member i the value 6, one would write

s.i = 6;
where the dot operator indicates that a member is being selected from a structure.

A union is also a collection of members, except that at any one moment, it can only hold one of them. The declaration

union {int i; char c;} u;

means that u can either hold an integer or a character, but not both. The compiler must allocate enough space for a union to hold the largest member. Unions are only used in two places in MINIX (for the definition of a message as a union of several different structures, and for the definition of a disk block as a union of a data block, an i-node block, a directory block, etc.).

Pointers are used to hold machine addresses in C. They are very heavily used. An asterisk is used to indicate a pointer in declarations. The declaration

int i, *pi, a[10], *b[10], **ppi;

 Declares an integer i, a pointer to an integer pi, an array with 10 elements a, an array of 10 pointers to integers b, and a pointer to a pointer to an integer ppi. The exact syntax rules for complex declarations combining arrays, pointers, and other types is somewhat complex. Fortunately, MINIX only uses simple declarations.

Figure A-3 shows a declaration of an array z, of structures, each of which has three members, an integer i, a pointer to a character cp, and a character c. Arrays of structures are common in MINIX. The name table is defined as the type of the structure, allowing struct table to be used in declarations to mean this structure. For example,

register struct table *p;

Declares p to be a pointer to a structure of type table, and suggests that it be kept in a register. During program execution, p might point, for example, to z[4] or to any of the other elements of z, all 20 of which are structures of type table.

struct table {
    int i;         /* each structure is of type table */
    char *cp, c;   /* an integer */
} z[20];           /* a pointer to a character and a character */

/* this is an array of 20 structures */

Fig. A-3. An array of structures.

To make p point to z[4], we would write

p = &z[4];

where the ampersand as a unary (monadic) operator means "take the address of what follows." To copy to the integer variable n the value of the member i of the structure pointed to by p we would write
n = p->i;

Note that the arrow is used to access a member of a structure via a pointer. If we were to use z itself, we would use the dot operator:

n = z[4].i;

The difference is that z[4] is a structure, and the dot operator selects members from structures. With pointers, we are not selecting a member directly. The pointer must first be followed to find the structure; only then can a member be selected.

It is sometimes convenient to give a name to a constructed type. For example,

typedef unsigned short int unshort;

defines unshort as an unsigned short integer. It can be used as though it were a basic type. For example,

unshort u1, *u2, u3[5];

declares an unsigned short integer, a pointer to an unsigned short integer, and an array of unsigned short integers.

A.4. STATEMENTS

Procedures in C contain declarations and statements. We have already seen the declarations, so now we will look at the statements. The assignment, if, and while statements are essentially the same as in other languages. Figure A-4 shows some examples of them. The only points worth making are that braces are used for grouping compound statements, and the while statement has two forms, the second of which is similar to Pascal's repeat statement.

C also has a for statement, but this is unlike the for statement in any other language. It has the general form

for (initializer; condition; expression) statement;

The meaning of the statement is

initializer;
while (condition) {
    statement;
    expression;
}

As an example, consider the statement

for (i = 0; i < n; i = i + 1) a[i] = 0;
if \( x < 0 \) \( k = 3 \); /* a simple if statement */

if \( x > y \) {
  j = 2;
  k = j + 1;
}

if \( x + 2 < y \) {
  j = 2;
  k = j - 1;
} else {
  m = 0;
}

while \( n > 0 \) {
  k = k + k;
  n = n - 1;
}

do {
  k = k + k;
  n = n - 1;
} while \( n > 0 \);

Fig. A-4. Some if and while statements in C.

This statement sets the first \( n \) elements of \( a \) to zero. It starts out by initializing \( i \) to zero (outside the loop). Then it iterates as long as \( i < n \), executing the assignment and incrementing \( i \). The statement can, of course, be a compound statement enclosed by braces, rather than just a simple assignment, as is shown here.

C has a construction that is similar to Pascal’s case statement. It is called a switch statement. Figure A-5 shows an example. Depending on the value of the expression following the keyword switch, one clause or another is chosen. If the expression does not match any of the cases, the default clause is selected. If the expression does not match any case and no default is present, control just continues with the next statement following the switch.

One thing to note is that after one of the cases has been executed, control just continues with the next one, unless a break statement is present. In practice, the break is virtually always needed.

The break statement is also valid inside for and while loops, and when executed causes control to exit the loop. If the break statement is located in the innermost of a series of nested loops, only one level is exited.

A related statement is the continue statement, which does not exit the loop, but causes the current iteration to be terminated and the next iteration to start immediately. In effect, it is a jump back to the top of the loop.

C has procedures, which may be called with or without parameters.
switch (k) {
    case 10:
        i = 6;
        break; /* do not continue with case 20 */
    case 20:
        j = 2;
        k = 4;
        break;
    default:
        j = 5;
}

Fig. A-5. An example of a switch statement.

According to Kernighan and Ritchie (p. 121) it is not permitted to pass arrays, structures, or procedures as parameters, although pointers to all of these are allowed. Book or no book, many C compilers allow structures as parameters.

The name of an array, when written without a subscript, is taken to mean a pointer to the array, making it easy to pass an array pointer. Thus if a is the name of an array of any type, it can be passed to a procedure g by writing

g(a);

This rule holds only for arrays, not structures.

Procedures can return values by executing the return statement. This statement may provide an expression to be returned as the value of the procedure, but the caller may safely ignore it. If a procedure returns a value, the type of the value is written before the procedure name, as shown in Fig. A-6. As with parameters, procedures may not return arrays, structures, or procedures, but may return pointers to them. This rule is designed to make the implementation efficient—all parameters and results always fit in a single machine word. Compilers that allow structures as parameters usually allow them as return values as well.

int sum(i, j) /* this procedure returns an integer */
int i,j; /* formal parameters declared before { */
{
    return(i + j); /* add the parameters and return the sum */
}

Fig. A-6. An example of a simple procedure that returns a value.

C does not have any built-in input/output statements. I/O is done by calling library procedures, the most common of which is illustrated below:

printf("x = %d y = %o z = %x\n", x, y, z);
The first parameter is a string of characters between quotation marks (it is actually a character array). Any character that is not a percent is just printed as is. When a percent is encountered, the next parameter is printed, with the letter following the percent telling how to print it:

\[ \text{d - print as a decimal integer} \]
\[ \text{o - print as an octal integer} \]
\[ \text{u - print as unsigned decimal integer} \]
\[ \text{x - print as a hexadecimal integer} \]
\[ \text{s - print as a string} \]
\[ \text{c - print as a single character} \]

The letters D, O, and X are also allowed, for printing decimal, octal, and hexadecimal longs.

A.5. EXPRESSIONS

Expressions are constructed by combining operands and operators. The arithmetic operators, such as + and −, and the relational operators, such as < and > are similar to their counterparts in other languages. The % operator is used for modulo. It is worth noting that the equality operator is == and the not equals operator is !=. To see if \( a \) and \( b \) are equal, one can write

\[ \text{if (} a \text{ == } b \text{)} \text{ statement;} \]

C also allows assignments and operators to be combined, so

\[ a += 4; \]

means the same as

\[ a = a + 4; \]

The other operators may also be combined this way.

Operators are provided for manipulating the bits of a word. Both shifts and bitwise Boolean operations are allowed. The left and right shift operators are << and >> respectively. The bitwise Boolean operators & and | are AND, INCLUSIVE OR, and EXCLUSIVE OR, respectively. If \( i \) has the value 035 (octal), then the expression \( i \ & \ 06 \) has the value 04 (octal). As another example, if \( i \) is 7, then

\[ j = (i << 3) | 014; \]

assigns 074 to \( j \).

Another important group of operators is the unary operators, all of which take only one operand. As a unary operator, the ampersand takes the address of
a variable. Thus &i has the value of the machine location at which i is located. If p is a pointer to an integer and i is an integer, the statement

\[ p = \&i; \]

computes the address of i and stores it in the variable p.

The opposite of taking the address of something (e.g., to put it in a pointer) is taking a pointer as input and computing the value of the thing pointed to. If we have just assigned the address of i to p, then *p has the same value as i. In other words, as a unary operator, the asterisk is followed by a pointer (or an expression yielding a pointer), and yields the value of the item pointed to. If i has the value 6, then the statement

\[ j = \*p; \]

will assign 6 to j.

The ! operator returns 0 if its operand is nonzero and 1 if its operator is 0. It is primarily used in if statements, for example

\[ \text{if} \ (\!x) \ k = 8; \]

checks the value of x. If x is zero (false), k is assigned the value 8. In effect, the ! operator negates the condition following it, just as the not operator does in Pascal.

The - operator is the bitwise complement operator. Each 0 in its operand becomes a 1 and each 1 becomes a 0. In fact, this is the one’s complement of the operand.

The sizeof operator tells how big its operand is, in bytes. If applied to an array of 20 integers, a, on a machine with 2-byte integers, for example, sizeofa will have the value 40. When applied to a structure, it tells how big the structure is.

The last group of operators are the increment and decrement operators. The statement

\[ p++; \]

means increment p. How much it is incremented by depends on its type. Integers or characters are incremented by 1, but pointers are incremented by the size of the object pointed to. Thus if a is an array of structures, and p a pointer to one of these structures, and we write

\[ p = \&a[3]; \]

to make p point to one of the structures in the array, then after we increment p it will point to a[4] no matter how big the structures are. The statement

\[ p--; \]

is analogous, except that it decrements instead of incrementing.

In the assignment
SEC. A.5  EXPRESSIONS

\[ n = k++; \]

where both variables are integers, the original value of \( k \) is assigned to \( n \) and then the increment happens. In the assignment

\[ n = ++k; \]

first \( k \) is incremented, then its new value is stored in \( n \). Thus the ++ (or --) operator can be written either before or after its operand, with different meanings.

One last operator is the ? operator, which selects one of two alternatives separated by a colon. For example,

\[ i = (x < y ? 6 : k + 1); \]

compares \( x \) to \( y \). If \( x \) is less than \( y \), then \( i \) gets the value 6; otherwise, it gets the value \( k + 1 \). The parentheses are optional.

A.6. PROGRAM STRUCTURE

A C program consists of one or more files containing procedures and declarations. These files can be separately compiled, yielding separate object files, which are then linked together (by the linker) to form the executable program. Unlike Pascal, procedure declarations may not be nested, so they all appear at the "top level" in the file.

It is permitted to declare variables outside procedures, for example, at the beginning of a file before the first procedure declaration. These variables are global, and can be used in any procedure in the whole program, unless the keyword static precedes the declaration, in which case it is not permitted to use the variables in another file. The same rules apply to procedures. Variables declared inside a procedure are local to the procedure in which they are declared.

A procedure may access an integer variable, \( v \), declared in a file other than its own (provided that the variable is not static), by saying

\[ \text{extern int } v; \]

The extern declaration merely serves to tell the compiler what type the variable has; no storage is allocated by extern declarations. Each global variable must be declared exactly once without the attribute extern, in order to allocate storage for it.

Variables may be initialized, as in

\[ \text{int size = 100;} \]

Arrays and structures may also be initialized. Global variables that are not explicitly initialized get the default value of zero.

A.7. THE C PREPROCESSOR

Before a source file is even given to the C compiler, it is automatically run through a program called the **preprocessor**. The preprocessor output, not the original program, is what is fed into the compiler. The preprocessor carries out three major transformations on the file before giving it to the compiler:

1. File inclusion.
2. Macro definition and expansion.
3. Conditional compilation.

Preprocessor directives all begin with a number sign (#) in column 1.

When a directive of the form

```c
#include "file.h"
```

is encountered by the preprocessor, it bodily includes the file, line by line, in the program given to the compiler. When the directive is written as

```c
#include <file.h>
```

the directory `/usr/include` rather than the working directory is searched for the file. It is common practice in C to group declarations used by several files in a **header file** (usually with suffix `.h`), and include them where they are needed.

The preprocessor also allows macro definitions. For example,

```c
#define BLOCK_SIZE 1024
```

defines a macro `BLOCK_SIZE` and gives it the value 1024. From that point on, every occurrence of the 10-character string "BLOCK_SIZE" in the file will be replaced by the 4-character string "1024" before the compiler sees the file. All that is happening here is that one character string is being replaced by another one. By convention, macro names are written in upper case. Macros may have parameters, but in practice few of them do.

The third preprocessor feature is conditional compilation. There are several places in MINIX where the code is special for the 8088, and should not be included when compiling for a different CPU. These sections look something like this:

```c
#if defined i8088
   statements for the 8088 only
#endif
```

If the symbol `i8088` is defined at the time the statements between the two preprocessor directives are included in the preprocessor output; otherwise they are omitted. By calling the compiler with the command
cc -c -Di8088 prog.c

or by including in the program the statement

#define i8088

we force the symbol *i8088* to be defined, hence all the 8088 dependent code to be included. As MINIX evolves, it may acquire special code for 68000s and other processors, which would also be handled like this. As an example of what the preprocessor does, consider the program of Fig. A-7(a) It includes one file, *prog.h*, whose contents are as follows:

```c
int x;
define MAX_ELEMENTS 100
```

Imagine that the compiler has been called with the command

cc -c -Di8088 file.c

After the file has been run through the preprocessor, the output is as shown in Fig. A-7(b). It is this output, not the original file, that is given as input to the C compiler.

```c
#include prog.h

int x;
main()
{
    int a[MAX_ELEMENTS];
    x = 4;
    a[x] = 6;
    #ifdef i8088
    printf(8088. a[x]=%d\n, a[x]);
    #endif
    #ifdef m68000
    printf(68000. x=%d\n, x);
    #endif
}
```

(a) (b)

**Fig. A-7.** (a) Contents of *file.c*. (b) The preprocessor output.

Notice that the preprocessor has done its job and removed all the lines starting with the # sign. If the compiler had been called with

cc -c -Dm68000 file.c

the other print statement would have been included. If it had been called with
cc -c file.c

neither print statement would have been included. (We will leave it up to the reader to speculate about what would have happened if the compiler had been called with both -D flags.)

A.8. IDIOMS

In this section we will look at a few constructions that are characteristic of C, but are not common in other programming languages. As a starter, consider the loop

```
while (n--) *p++ = *q++;
```

The variables p and q are typically character pointers, and n is a counter. What the loop does is copy an n-character string from the place pointed to by q to the place pointed to by p. On each iteration of the loop, the counter is decremented, until it gets to 0, and each of the pointers is incremented, so they successively point to higher numbered memory locations.

Another common construction is

```
for (i = 0; i < N; i++) a[i] = 0;
```

which sets the first N elements of a to 0. An alternative way of writing this loop is

```
for (p = &a[0]; p < &a[N]; p++) *p = 0;
```

In this formulation, the integer pointer, p, is initialized to point to the zeroth element of the array. The loop continues as long as p has not reached the address of a[N], which is the first element that is too far. On each iteration, a different element is set to 0. The pointer construction is much more efficient than the array construction, and is therefore commonly used.

Assignments may appear in unexpected places. For example,

```
if (a = f(x)) statement;
```

first calls the function f, then assigns the result of the function call to a, and finally tests a to see if it is true (nonzero) or false (zero). If a is nonzero, the statement is executed. The statement

```
if (a = b) statement;
```

is similar, in that it assigns b to a and then tests a to see if it is nonzero. It is totally different from

```
if (a == b) statement;
```

which compares two variables and executes the statement if they are equal.
Unlike, say, a program in artificial intelligence that does medical diagnoses and knows nothing whatsoever about the hardware on which it is running, an operating system must know a great deal about its hardware. To handle error recovery on a disk, the operating system needs a fairly detailed knowledge of how the disk works, what kinds of errors it can make, and how the errors can be handled.

Despite this need for detailed, low-level information, operating systems can be made fairly portable by constructing them in a modular way, with, say, all the code and data structures for disk handling in one module, all the code and data structures for terminal handling in another module, and so on. MINIX has been carefully constructed this way so the addition or removal of some I/O device affects only a limited portion of the system, usually one module. Nevertheless, to write, or even understand, each of these modules, one must have some knowledge of the relevant hardware. In the following sections, we will look at the hardware and architecture of the IBM PC in a general way, to provide the necessary background information.

B.1. The Intel 8088 CPU

The heart of the IBM PC is the 8088 CPU, made by the Intel Corp. From the programmer's point of view, the 8088 is a 16-bit CPU, in that the registers
are all 16 bits wide and most instructions operate on 16 bit words. Intel also makes several other compatible CPU chips, such as the 8086, 80186, 80286, and 80386, which differ from the 8088 in speed, price, and other ways that will not concern us here.

The 8088 has an address space of 1 megabyte, with each byte having a unique address, from 0 to \(2^{20} - 1\). Words may begin at any address, although for compatibility with other CPUs it is good practice to have a word occupy an even byte and the following odd byte, as shown in Fig. B-1. If the byte at address 0 contains the value 0x05 and the byte at address 1 contains 0x77, the word at address 0 contains 0x7705. (0x followed by a number is the C convention for writing hexadecimal numbers; numbers beginning with a 0 but no x are octal, as in 0777.) The Intel byte numbering scheme is different from the one IBM uses on its large machines and the one that Motorola uses, so be careful to avoid confusion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte 3</th>
<th>Byte 2</th>
<th>Word at 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Byte 1</td>
<td>Byte 0</td>
<td>Word at 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. B-1. Bytes and words on the 8088.

The 8088 has 12 registers, all different. They fall into three groups of four registers each (see Fig. B-2). The first group, AX, BX, CX, and DX are primarily used for arithmetic but also have other purposes. Each of these is 16 bits wide, and is divided into a high part and low part, each of 8 bits. The high-order part of AX is called AH; the low-order part is called AL. Moving a byte to, AH, for example, does not affect the byte in AL, although it does affect the value of AX, of course. Multiplication of two 16-bit values yields a 32-bit value, stored in DX-AX, which for the purposes of multiplication and division are regarded as a single 32-bit register, with DX being the high-order half. Similarly, 32-bit dividends for division also use the DX-AX pair. CX is also used for holding shift and repetition counts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arithmetic registers</th>
<th>Pointer registers</th>
<th>Segment registers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AX AH AL</td>
<td>Si</td>
<td>CS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BX BH BL</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>DS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CX CH CL</td>
<td>BP</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DX DH DL</td>
<td>SP</td>
<td>ES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. B-2. The 8088 has 12 registers, all different.

The second group of registers contains four 16-bit pointers. These registers
are not divided into upper and lower halves. SI and DI are used by the hardware for certain string and block movement and comparison instructions. Since these instructions are relatively rare, many compilers use SI and DI for register variables, saving and restoring them when required. BP is a general pointer register. Many compilers use it to point to the base of the current stack frame. SP is the hardware stack pointer.

The third group consists of the four 16-bit segment registers. It is easier to think of them as 20-bit registers, of which the low-order 4 bits are always 0, so only 16 bits need to be stored. The segment registers are relocation registers and are needed because programs may be located anywhere in the 8088's 1 megabyte address space, but instruction addresses are only 16 bits. Look at program 1 in Fig. B-3. Suppose the instruction at the start of program 1 needed to jump to address 1K relative to the start of the program. Since program 1 has been loaded at address 100K, just beyond the operating system, the address to jump to is 101K. With only 16 bit addresses, there is no way to express the concept JUMP 101K.

Fig. B-3, 8088 memory layout. Each program has instructions (text), data, and a stack. The area between the data and stack is unused, and can be used when either the stack grows downward or the data grows upward.

The solution Intel chose is to make all memory references relative to some segment register. Each one has its low-order four bits permanently set to 0, so only 16 bits are actually stored. CS points to the start of the code segment (program text). When program 1 is running, CS is 100K, and since all program addresses are interpreted by the 8088 chip as relative to CS, then JUMP 1K indeed jumps to 101K, as it should.

The DS register relocates references to data. When a program does MOV AX,25000, the 8088 moves the word at DS + 25000 to AX. Most programs set DS to CS, so the program has a simple address space from 0 to 64K, which maps onto the physical addresses CS to CS + 64K. Large programs can have DS set to the start of the data segment, thus allowing 64K of program and an additional 64K of data.

This feature is called separate I(nstruction) and D(ata) space and is supported by MINIX. If program 1 in Fig. B-3 were using separate I and D space (DS = 120K), then to fetch the first data word into AX it would say MOV AX,0. On the other hand, if separate I and D space were not being used, DS would be 100K and the first data word would be fetched by MOV AX,20480.
(1K = 1024, so 20K = 20480). It is normally up to the compiler and linker to get the addresses right.

In theory, the SS register can be used for relocating the stack. For somewhat complex technical reasons, in practice it is always set equal to DS, so the data segment and stack are part of the same 64K address space. Normally the stack pointer is initially set to 65534, so the stack grows downward toward the data segment. The data segment may grow upward, toward the stack. If they collide, the program is terminated.

The final segment register, ES, is the Extra Segment register. Programs can set it to any value, to make an occasional reference to any word in the full 1 megabyte address space. Any memory reference instruction can be prefixed by a special code to tell the 8088 to use ES instead of DS for the next memory reference.

Because each of the segment registers contains four implicit 0s in the low-order bits, each segment effectively must begin at an address that is a multiple of 16 bytes. A group of 16 bytes beginning at an address that is a multiple of 16 is called a click. The click is the basic unit used for memory allocation. We will hear a lot about clicks when we study memory management in MINIX.

The 8088 CPU actually contains one more register, which Intel calls the flags and everybody else calls the program status word, or PSW. It contains the condition code bits (set on compare instructions), a bit telling whether interrupts are enabled or disabled, and a few other bits. On machines with a kernel mode and a user mode, a bit in the PSW tells which mode is current. The 8088 has only one mode (in essence, kernel mode). We are treating the PSW differently from the other 12 registers since it works quite differently from the other registers. Its main function occurs in interrupt processing, something we will deal with later.

Most 8088 instructions have a 1-byte opcode followed by a byte specifying the addressing modes and registers. The addressing modes are not as regular as they are on, say, a PDP-11, VAX, or 68000, so we will not look at them in detail. The most important addressing modes are register, register indirect, direct addressing, and indexed addressing. Direct addressing (in the range of 0 to 64K) is used to access global variables whose address is known at compile time. Indexed addressing is used to access variables local to some procedure.

Figure B-4 illustrates the normal layout of the address space of a running program. At a certain instant, some procedure is executing and the memory looks like Fig. B-4(a). Now suppose that the running procedure executed the call

```
startup(a,b);
```

The compiler will have generated instructions to first push b onto the stack and then push a onto the stack. The C calling convention is that the last parameter is always pushed first, and the first parameter is always pushed last. This convention is used because C allows a variable number of parameters (think about `printf`) and this way the called procedure can always find the first parameter in a known place.
After the parameters have been pushed, the calling procedure executes a CALL instruction to stack the return address and jump to the called procedure. At this point we have the picture of Fig. B-4(b). The called procedure now starts running. It usually first stacks BP and then sets BP to point to the old BP value on the stack. Then it stacks any registers that might be used for register variables (SI and DI in this example). Finally it decrements SP by the number of bytes the called procedure needs for local variables (6 in this example).

Since procedures must start out by stacking the old BP, setting the new BP, saving registers, and decrementing the stack pointer, many compilers put the number of bytes of locals in AX and call an internal procedure (usually called csv) to do the work. Using a procedure saves space but wastes a little time compared to doing the same steps in inline code. While the called procedure is executing, the stack is as shown in Fig. B-4(c).

The important thing to see here is how memory is addressed. Global variables are accessed by direct addressing because the compiler knows their position within the address space at compile time. If the compiler puts n at 3000, to load it into AX the compiler might generate MOV AX,3000.

Actual parameters, such as a and b in Fig. B-4(c) are addressed using indexed addressing with BP as the index register and positive offsets. To fetch a into AX, the instruction MOV AX,4(BP) would be used. This instruction adds the contents of BP and the constant 4, storing the result in an internal CPU register not visible to the programmer. This address is then used to locate the word to load into AX.
Local variables are also accessed using indexed addressing but with negative offsets. The local variable \( x \) would be fetched using MOV AX,-6(BP). In all cases, the address computed by adding the contents of BP to a constant is relative to DS (which is always equal to SS in MINIX). In case you are wondering why compilers do not just index off SP for both locals and parameters, thus saving the trouble of managing BP, there is a simple answer: the 8088 does not have an indexed addressing mode that uses SP.

When the called procedure is finished, it sets SP to BP, pops the old BP into BP, and then executes a RET instruction. Many C compilers use a little subroutine, usually called cret, to do these things. The return instruction pops the return address from the stack and puts it in the program counter, thus returning the calling procedure. The caller then adds a constant to SP to remove the parameters from the stack. This gets the caller back to the state it was in just prior to the call. Notice that calling a procedure is considerably more complex than just a single CALL instruction, and involves work by both the calling and called procedure.

The 8088 has a large number of instructions. A few examples of the more important ones are given in Fig. B-5. An important point to realize here is that although all 8088s have exactly the same instruction set, not all assemblers for the 8088 use the same syntax to describe those instructions. One assembler may expect MOV AX,#X to move the address of the variable \( X \) to AX, and another may expect MOV AX,OFFSET X, or maybe even something more ridiculous. The examples of assembly code in this book all use the notation of the PC-IX assembler, which is probably the simplest of all the assemblers and the easiest to understand. Furthermore, the MINIX assembler accepts the same input notation as the PC-IX assembler. Besides, in a book about a UNIX-like system, it seems appropriate to use the UNIX notation. (PC-IX is IBM's version of UNIX for the PC-XT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add ax, var</td>
<td>add the contents of a memory word var to register ax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add bx,6(bp)</td>
<td>Boolean AND bx with memory word located at 6(bp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call _panic</td>
<td>call procedure panic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cli</td>
<td>disable interrupts (clear interrupt flag)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmp ax,#6</td>
<td>compare ax to the constant 6 and set condition codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dec -4(bp)</td>
<td>subtract 1 from memory word whose address is given by -4(bp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>load register al with a byte from the I/O port named in dx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inc si</td>
<td>add 1 to register si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iret</td>
<td>return from interrupt, popping PC, CS, PSW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>je label</td>
<td>jump to label if previous compare was &quot;equal&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jl label</td>
<td>jump if previous compare was &quot;less&quot; (jg, jne, etc. also exist)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loop label</td>
<td>subtract 1 from cx; if it is now nonzero, jump to label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mov ax,var</td>
<td>move the contents of the memory word var to ax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movb ah, var</td>
<td>move the contents of the memory byte varb to ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out 0x20</td>
<td>output contents of register al to I/O port 0x20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop var</td>
<td>pop one word from the stack and put it in var</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push bx</td>
<td>push the bx register onto the stack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep</td>
<td>repeat following instruction until cx is 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ret</td>
<td>return from procedure call (pop return address and jump there)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sti</td>
<td>enable interrupts (set interrupt flag)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. B-5. Some 8088 instructions.
B.2. The IBM PC System Architecture

The IBM PC consists of more than just the 8088 CPU. It also contains memory, a keyboard, display, diskette (floppy disk) drive, and a variety of other peripherals. The CPU communicates with these components over a set of 62 parallel wires known as the system bus. Some of the bus wires are used for addresses, some for data, and some for control.

The CPU gives commands to the I/O devices by executing the OUT instruction, which outputs a byte (or, rarely, a word) to the device’s controller (adapter). The controller contains the electronics that convert the digital commands from the CPU into analog control signals to cause the I/O device to move. Each controller has a set of I/O addresses assigned to it. The diskette controller, for example, has I/O addresses 0x3F0 to 0x3F7, and the color display has I/O addresses 0x3D0 to 0x3DF. These I/O addresses belong to a distinct I/O address space, and are unrelated to ordinary memory addresses. There is no memory-mapped I/O.

As a simple example, when the CPU outputs a byte to 0x3F2, the byte is loaded into a register on the diskette controller card. The low-order 2 bits select one of the four possible drives. The next bit resets the controller if it is 0. The next bit enables diskette interrupts if it is 1. The high-order 4 bits turn the four drive motors on (1) or off (0). By giving a series of commands like this, the CPU can issue instructions to the I/O devices, read their status, and so on.

When an I/O device has finished its command, it can signal the CPU by sending an interrupt signal over the bus. The interrupt signal causes the CPU to push three words onto the current stack: first the PSW, then CS, and finally PC, as shown in Fig. B-6. Next, the interrupt bit in the PSW is turned off, to disable further interrupts. Finally, a new PC and CS are loaded from an address in the first 1K of memory. The PSW is not loaded, except that the interrupt enable bit is turned off. The address used depends on the controller that caused the interrupt; each controller has its own, unique address. The 4 bytes containing the new PC and CS are called the controller’s interrupt vector.

![Fig. B-6. (a) Stack before an interrupt. (b) Stack after an interrupt.](image)

Loading PC and CS effectively forces the CPU to jump to an address somewhere in the 1 megabyte address space. Since each controller has its own
interrupt vector, each one has its own jump address. This address contains the interrupt service procedure for that controller. What happens next is up to the software.

As we have mentioned several times, the 8088 has an address space of 1 megabyte. IBM has chosen to allocate the lowest 640K to ordinary RAM for programs and data. The upper 360K is used for various ROMs (BASIC interpreters and the like) and for special RAMs. At address 0xFFFF000 is a special ROM called the BIOS (Basic Input Output System). It contains a collection of procedures for reading and writing disk blocks, writing characters on the screen, and other I/O.

Unfortunately, none of these procedures is interrupt driven. They all wait for the I/O to complete before returning control to the user. Thus, if one program is waiting for input from the keyboard, the entire system, including all the background processes, comes to a screeching halt. In a time-sharing system like MINIX, stopping the entire system because one program needs input is intolerable. Consequently, MINIX makes no use of the BIOS. It does all of its own I/O right down at the controller level. All versions of UNIX for the IBM PC, including IBM's own PC-IX also work this way.
This appendix tells you how to run MINIX. If you are an experienced UNIX user, there will be relatively little new here. Using MINIX is very similar to using UNIX. If you are not familiar with UNIX at all, it is suggested that you first read the papers by Ritchie and Thompson (1974) or Kernighan and Mashey (1981), and then at least glance through one of the many books on UNIX now available. A few of them are: Bourne (1982), Brown (1984), Christian (1983), Foxley (1985), Kernighan and Pike (1984), Lomuto and Lomuto (1983), McGilton and Morgan (1983), Pasternack (1985), Poole and Poole (1986), Rochkind (1985), and Walker (1984). For a detailed description of Version 7 UNIX (as opposed to the various other versions), the best place to look is the official Bell Labs UNIX Programmer's Manual, published as a book by Holt, Rinehart, and Winston (1983).

This appendix is intended to provide enough information to get you started, and to point out some of the differences between MINIX and UNIX. To begin with, MINIX was designed with the idea of being similar to Version 7 UNIX, the last version of UNIX produced by Ken Thompson, Dennis Ritchie, and the other members of the Computing Science Research Center at Bell Labs. Subsequent versions from AT&T, Berkeley, and other sources have tended to acquire many features, just as ships acquire many barnacles when they have been in the water too long. Features grafted onto UNIX after the release of Version 7 are not present in MINIX. Small is beautiful. The best way to tell if some feature is present in MINIX is to try it.
C.1. HOW TO START MINIX

The first step in running MINIX is to acquire an IBM PC, XT, AT, or true compatible. The latter point deserves some explanation. Many manufacturers have brought out machines that are similar to the IBM PC in some ways, but different in other ways. MINIX will not run on all these machines. Like all versions of UNIX for the IBM PC, MINIX does not use the BIOS (because the BIOS is not interrupt-driven, making it totally unsuitable for time-sharing). Instead, it programs all the I/O chips directly. Therefore it will only run on machines using the same I/O chips as the IBM PC.

MINIX comes in several versions, for different memory sizes. Be sure that the version you have is appropriate for your machine. The smallest configuration on which MINIX will run is 256K RAM and one 360K floppy drive, but not all programs will run on this configuration. A system with 640K RAM and two floppy disk drives is better. For information about running MINIX with a hard disk, see /doc in the software distribution.

Before running MINIX for the first time, make a backup of all the floppy disks, to prevent disaster if one of them should be subsequently damaged. They are not copy protected.

To boot MINIX, proceed as follows.

1. Turn off the PC and then insert the boot diskette in drive 0. You can also type CTRL-ALT-DEL to boot a running PC, but sometimes the PC is in a peculiar state and the boot message fails to appear or appears in a peculiar way. It does not matter that you cannot see it. Wait 15 seconds and then proceed with step 3. Alternatively, just turn off the PC and start again.

2. You should get a message like: "Booting MINIX 1.1" as soon as the power-on self-tests have finished.

3. About 15 seconds after the above message, you will get a menu on the screen offering you several options. Remove the boot diskette from drive 0, insert the root file system in its place, and hit the = (equal sign) key.

4. MINIX will now erase the screen and display a line at the top telling how much memory the machine has, how large the operating system (including all its tables and buffers) is, how large the RAM disk is, and how much memory is available for user programs (the first number minus the next two). Check to see that the available memory is at least positive. MINIX will not run with negative memory. To do anything useful, however, at least 100K is needed.

5. Now the root file system will be copied from drive 0 to the RAM disk. The MINIX root device is always on the RAM disk, no matter how many disks of what kind are being used.
6. When the RAM disk has been loaded, the system initialization file, /etc/rc, is executed. It asks you to remove the root file system and then insert the /usr file system in drive 0 and type a carriage return. Do so.

7. After /usr has been mounted, you will next be requested to enter the date (and time). Enter a 12-digit number in the form MMDDYYYYhhmmss, followed by a carriage return. For example, 3:35 p.m. on July 4, 1976 was 070476153500.

8. You will now get the message

   login:

on the screen. Type

   ast

and wait for the system to ask for your password. Then type

   Wachtwoord

   being careful to type the first letter in upper case. Lower and upper case letters are always distinct in MINIX.

9. If you have successfully logged in, the shell will display a prompt (dollar sign) on the screen. Try typing

   ls -1

to see what is in your directory. Then type

   ls -1 /bin

to see what is in the /bin directory on the root device. After that, try

   ls -1 /usr/bin

to see what is on the drive 0 diskette. To stop the display from scrolling out of view, type CTRL-S; to restart it, type CTRL-Q. (Note that CTRL-S means depress the "control" key on the keyboard and then hit the S key while "control" is still depressed.)

10. If you have two drives, you can mount the /user diskette by inserting it into drive 1 and typing

    /etc/mount /dev/fd1 /user

   Use ls to inspect it. The shell script /user/test/run runs some tests to see if MINIX is working properly. To use it, first back up the diskette as described in Section C.2.4. Then remove all the source code and documentation (to create more free space) and type

    cd /user/test; run
The tests take a number of minutes. After they have been completed, you can remove the entire test directory, leaving only /user/bin. The rest of the diskette space is for your own files.

11. You can now edit files, compile programs, or do many other things. The reference manuals given later in this chapter give a brief description of the programs available. On the standard /usr diskette, there is very little free space. If you have only one 360K drive, it will probably be necessary to delete some files to create more space.

12. When you are finished working, and want to log out, type CTRL-D. The

    login:

message will appear, and you or another user can log in again.

13. When you want to shut the computer down, make sure all processes have finished, if need be, by killing them with kill. Then type sync or just log out. When the disk light goes out, you can turn the computer power off. Never turn the system off without first running sync or logging out (which does an implied sync). Failure to obey this rule will generally result in a garbled file system and lost data.

C.2. HOW TO USE MINIX

In the following sections we will look at some aspects of MINIX that will be of interest to many users. These include the standard file system, mounted file systems, working with disks, printing files, and so on.

C.2.1. Introduction

As a general rule, most aspects of MINIX work the same way as they do in UNIX. When you log in, you get a shell, which is functionally similar to the standard V7 shell (Bourne shell). Most programs are called the same way as in UNIX, have the same flags, and perform the same functions as their UNIX counterparts.

The MINIX shell, for example, recognizes redirection of standard input and standard output, pipes, magic characters in file names, semicolons to separate multiple commands on a line, and the ampersand, to indicate a background process. The (default) keyboard editing conventions are also similar to UNIX: the backspace key (CTRL-H) is used to correct typing errors, the @ symbol is used to erase the current input line, CTRL-S is used to stop the screen from scrolling out of view, CTRL-Q is used to start the screen moving again, and CTRL-D is used to indicate end-of-file from the keyboard. These key bindings can be
changed using the IOC TL system call and stty program, the same way as they can be changed in UNIX.

One major difference between MINIX and UNIX is the editor. The standard UNIX editor, ed, was designed with slow, mechanical, hardcopy terminals in mind. More modern editors, such as vi and emacs were designed for computers with megabytes of memory and large disks. The MINIX editor, mined, was designed and implemented especially for MINIX. It is a small, fast, and easy to learn full-screen editor. Its commands are described later in this chapter.

C.2.2. A Tour Through the MINIX File System

The MINIX file tree is organized the same way as the standard UNIX file tree. The root directory (which is always located on the RAM disk, in memory) contains the following subdirectories:

/bin - contains the most important binary (executable) programs
/dev - contains the special files for the I/O devices
/etc - contains various files and programs for system administration
/lib - contains some programs called by other programs
/tmp - used to hold temporary files
/user - the user file system is mounted here
/usr - the system disk is mounted here

Let us briefly examine these directories one at a time. In /bin we find the most heavily used programs such as cat, cp, and ls as well as some programs such as login and sh needed to bring the system up. Because access to the RAM disk is much faster than to the rotating disks, /bin should be used to hold programs that are frequently used. In principle, MINIX will run with only the root file system (i.e., no disks at all), but the amount of space available for user files will be extremely limited.

The directory /dev contains the special files for the I/O devices, including:

/dev/ram - the RAM disk
/dev/mem - absolute memory
/dev/kmem - kernel memory
/dev/null - null device (data written to it are discarded)
/dev/fd0 - floppy disk drive 0
/dev/fd1 - floppy disk drive 1
/dev/hd0 - hard disk minor device 0
/dev/hd1 - hard disk minor device 1
/dev/lp - line printer
/dev/tty - current terminal
/dev/ttyO - terminal 0 (console)

When /dev/ram is opened and read, for example, by the command

od -x /dev/ram
the contents of the RAM disk are read out, byte by byte, starting at byte 0. Similarly, reading /dev/mem reads out absolute memory, starting at address 0 (the interrupt vectors). The file /dev/kmem is similar to /dev/mem, except that it starts at the address in memory where the kernel is located (0x600). The next file, /dev/null, is the null device. It is used as a place for redirecting program output that is not needed. Data copied to /dev/null are lost forever.

The next two files are for floppy disk drives 0 and 1, respectively. Reading or writing from one of these files reads or writes on the corresponding floppy disk, without regard to the structure of the file system on it. They are normally only used for operations such as copying complete floppy disks, block by block or creating fresh file systems.

The character special file /dev/lp is for the line printer. It is write only. Bytes written to this file are sent to the line printer without modification (to make it possible to send escape sequences to graphics printers). Users normally print files by using the lpr program, rather than copying files directly to /dev/lp. The latter method takes care of converting line feed to carriage return plus line feed, expanding tabs to spaces, etc., whereas the former method does not.

The final group of special files is for the terminal. Both /dev/tty and /dev/tty0 refer to the terminal (console). In a system with only one terminal, there is no difference, but MINIX has been designed to make it easy to expand to multiple terminals, in which case /dev/tty1, /dev/tty2, etc. should be added for the new terminals. When more than one terminal is present, a specific terminal can be read or written by using one of the special files of the form /dev/tty[n]. In contrast, /dev/tty always accesses the terminal associated with the process making the system call. In this way, a process can refer to its terminal without having to know the terminal number.

Another important directory is /etc. This directory contains files and programs used for mounting and unmounting file systems, making new file systems, and other forms of system management. We will look at them later.

The directory /lib holds two pieces of the C compiler that are not normally directly called by users: the C preprocessor, cpp, and the front end, cem.

The /tmp directory is used by many programs for temporary files. By putting this directory on the RAM disk, these programs are speeded up.

The directories /user and /usr are empty. They should be used for mounting the user disk and system disk, respectively. When the standard /usr file system is mounted, the directory /usr/bin is where most of the executable binary programs are kept, and /usr/lib is where the rest of the C compiler and its libraries are stored.

C.2.3. Mounted File Systems

When MINIX is started up, the only device present is the root device (on the RAM disk). After the files and directories that belong on the root device are copied there from the root file system diskette, MINIX prints a message asking the
user to remove the diskette. It then executes the shell script /etc/rc as the final step in bringing up the system.

The file /etc/rc first prints a message asking the user to put the /usr diskette in drive 0. Then it pauses to allow the diskette to be inserted and the date entered. The shell script now executes the command

/etc/mount /dev/fd0 /usr

to mount the system disk on /usr. From this point on, all the files in /usr, including the binary programs in /usr/bin, are available.

On PCs with two floppy disk drives, the user should insert a user file system diskette (or any other file system diskette) in drive 1 and type:

/etc/mount /dev/fd1 /user

Users planning to mount the same diskette in drive 1 whenever the system is brought up can modify /etc/rc to perform the mount on drive 1 analogously to the mount on drive 0. Note, however, that changes made to /etc/rc on the RAM disk will be lost when the system is next booted unless they are also made to the root file system diskette, which can be mounted and modified, just like any other diskette.

If it is desired to remove the diskette in drive 1 during operation, first type the command:

/etc/umount /dev/fd1

and wait until it types "ok" before removing the diskette. (Note that the program is called umount, just as it is in UNIX, not unmount.)

If you remove a diskette while it is still mounted, the system may hang, but it can be brought back to life by simply re-inserting the same diskette. If you remove a diskette while it is still mounted and insert another in its place, the contents of both file systems will be seriously damaged and information may be irretrievably lost (see below about repairing damaged file systems). During normal MINIX operation, the diskettes are mounted when the system is booted, and not touched thereafter. Experienced MS-DOS users who are used to constantly switching diskettes without telling the operating system should post discrete KEEP OFF signs on their drives as a reminder.

Although it is permitted to insert a non-MINIX diskette in a drive (e.g., to read an MS-DOS diskette), only MINIX file system diskettes can be mounted. Attempts to mount a diskette not containing a MINIX file system will be detected and rejected.

C.2.4. Helpful Hints

In this section we will point out several aspects of MINIX that will frequently be useful. As a starter, it is wise to back up floppy disks periodically. To make a backup, first format a floppy disk with 9 sectors/track. MINIX does not have a
format program, but the MS-DOS 2.0 and subsequent format programs can be used. Formatting a floppy disk writes timing information, sector preambles, and similar information on it. The MS-DOS formatter also puts an MS-DOS file system on the floppy disk, but that will be erased when the backup is made. The important thing is getting the timing and preambles onto the disk.

Next, unmount the file systems in drives 0 and 1. It is possible to back up a mounted file system, but only if no background processes are running. To be doubly safe, give a `sync` command. Insert the newly formatted diskette in drive 1, and then type

```
cp /dev/fd0 /dev/fd1
```

to copy information from drive 0 to drive 1. When the drive lights go out, the floppy disks can be removed.

Files can be printed using the `lpr` program. It can be given an explicit list of files, as in

```
lpr file1 file2 file3 &
```

If no arguments are supplied, `lpr` prints its standard input, for example

```
lpr file1 file2 file3 | lpr &
```

Note that `lpr` is not a spooling daemon. It sits in a loop copying files to `/dev/lp`. For this reason, it should be started off in the background with the ampersand, so the user can continue working while printing is going on. Only one `lpr` at a time may be running.

Disk space is always in short supply on floppy disk systems. To find out how much space and how many i-nodes are left on drive 0, type

```
df /dev/fd0
```

Similar commands can be used for other devices, including `/dev/ram`.

When you log in, the shell checks to see if there is a file `.profile` in your home directory. If it finds one, it executes the file as a shell script. This file is commonly used to set shell variables, `stty` parameters, and so on. See `/usr/adm/profile` as a simple example.

It is possible to copy files from an MS-DOS disk to MINIX or vice versa. See the description of `dosread` and `doswrite` for details.

The ASCII codes produced by the IBM PC keyboard are determined by software, not hardware. A mapping has been chosen to try to produce a unique value for each key, so programs can see the difference between, for example, the + in the top row and the + in the numeric keypad. The codes 1 through 255 are used. To see which code a given key produces, use `od -b`, and then type the key or keys followed by a return and a CTRL-D.

The IBM PC does not have any protection hardware. As a result, if a program's stack overruns the area available for it, it will overwrite the data segment. This usually results in a system crash. When a program crashes
unexpectedly or acts strange, it is probably worthwhile to find out how much memory is allocated for it (the "memory" column in the output of size). If this is less than 64K, it can be increased using chmem. When working with unreliable programs, doing syncs frequently is advisable.

The 640K version of MINIX can be used on 512K machines, although there are some limitations and problems to watch out for. The main problem is the small amount of memory available for user programs. It will be difficult to run several programs at once. When using the C compiler, it will be necessary to use the -F flag to avoid having the preprocessor and front end run at the same time, connected by a pipe. Running them separately means that enough disk space must be available for the intermediate file. If a program cannot be executed due to its size, chmem can sometimes be used to reduce the stack size, to allow it to run with less memory. If the stack is made too small, however, the program may go berserk or crash the system due to stack overrun. Unfortunately the hardware does not detect stack overrun.

The problems with memory allocation are due to a large chunk of memory being taken up by the operating system, its buffers, and the RAM disk, plus the fact that multiple programs can be running at once. This, plus the lack of hardware protection, requires that a more economical approach be taken to memory use than the standard MS-DOS method of just giving each program the whole machine to itself. In practice, once the sizes have been set right for a given configuration, they need not be fiddled with any more.

Even on 640K machines, it sometimes happens that a program (or a compiler pass) cannot be executed due to lack of memory for it. When this happens, the shell prints a message of the form program: cannot execute. The solution is to run fewer programs at once, or reduce the program’s size with chmem. The amount of stack space assigned to the shell, make, etc. in the standard distribution may not be optimal for all applications. Change it if problems arise. To see how much is currently assigned, type

```
size /bin/* /usr/bin/* | more
```

Several of the utility programs, including the C compiler, create their temporary files in /tmp, on the RAM disk. If the RAM disk fills up, a message will be printed on the terminal. The first thing to do is check /tmp to see if there is any debris left over from previous commands, and if so, remove it. If that does not solve the problem, temporarily removing some of the larger files from /bin or /lib will usually be enough. These files can be restored later by mounting the root file system on any drive and copying the needed files from it.

MINIX, like UNIX, will not break off a system call part way through just because the DEL key has been struck. When the system call in question happens to be an EXEC, which is loading a long program from a slow floppy disk, it can take a few seconds before the shell prompt appears. Be patient. Hitting DEL again makes things worse, rather than better.

Although it is really intended as a debugging aid, rather than a permanent
part of the system, the F1 and F2 function keys cause dumps of some of the internal tables to be printed on the screen. F1 gives a dump like the UNIX ps command, which is not present in MINIX. Frequently, the system appears to be stopped, but it is actually thinking its little head off and using the RAM disk, which, unlike the other disks, is not accompanied by whirring and clicking noises and flashing lights. The nervous user can press F1 to see the internal process table to verify that progress is still being made. The F1 and F2 keys are intercepted directly by the keyboard driver, so they always work, no matter what the computer is doing. The values in the columns user and sys are the number of clock ticks charged to each process. By hitting F1 twice, a few seconds apart, it is possible to see where the CPU time is going.

Additional documentation can be found in the /doc directory on the /user disk.

C.3. HOW TO BEHAVE LIKE A SUPER-USER

Your days as an ordinary user are over. You will now have to learn how to be a system administrator as well. In fact, within a minute you will learn how to become a super-user. Fortunately, being a super-user is not difficult. However, super-users have more power than ordinary users. They can violate nearly all of the system's protection rules. Although there is no Hippocratic Oath for super-users (yet), tradition requires them to exercise their great power with care and responsibility. Super-users get a special prompt (#), to remind them of their awesome power.

To become super-user, login as root using the password Geheim. (Notice the capital G). Alternatively, use the su program with the same password. Hackers will no doubt enjoy trying to become super-user the hard way—by logging in as ast and hunting for loopholes in the system that allow one to become super-user without using the super-user password. In fact, I am prepared to offer a rijsdaalder to the first person reporting each successful new method.

C.3.1. Making New File Systems

One of the things that super-users do is make new file systems. Two ways are provided. First, when MINIX is booted, the initial menu offers several options. To run the system, type = (equal sign). Another possibility is making an empty file system. This option is exercised by typing the letter m instead of =. This file system can be subsequently mounted and files copied to it.

It is often convenient to make a file system during normal MINIX operation. This is possible using the program mkfs (make file system). To make an empty 360 block file system on drive 1, type

```
mkfs /dev/fd1 360
```
When the program finishes, the file system will be ready to mount. On a system with only one disk drive, `mkfs` will first have to be copied to `/bin`, the `/dev/fd0` file system unmounted, a blank diskette inserted into drive 0 and then the file system made using `/dev/fd0` as the second argument to `mkfs`.

It is also possible to make a file system that is initialized with files and directories. A command for doing this is

```
mkfs /dev/fd1 proto
```

where `proto` is a prototype file. The description of `mkfs` later in this chapter gives an example of a prototype file.

### C.3.2. File System Checking

File systems can be damaged by system crashes, by accidently removing a mounted file system, by forgetting to run `sync` before shutting the system down and in other ways. Repairing a file system by hand is a tricky business (see the discussion in Chap. 5), so a program has been provided to automate the job.

When MINIX is booted, one of the choices on the initial menu is to check a file system. To use this option, first insert the file system to be checked in drive 0, and then type `f`. The file system checker, `fsck`, then reads the i-nodes, bit maps, and directories to see if the file system is consistent. If it is, `fsck` prints some statistics and then redispalyes the menu. At this point another file system can be checked, or MINIX can be started (after first inserting the root file system diskette in drive 0).

If `fsck` finds a problem, it will display a message. Before making changes to the file system, it always asks permission. In general, if you type `y` (followed by a carriage return), `fsck` will do its best to repair the system. It will always yield a correct file system, but if the file system has been badly damaged, files may be lost.

### C.3.3. The `/etc` Directory

The `/etc` directory contains several files that super-users should know about. One of these is the password file, `/etc/passwd`. You can enter new users by editing this file and adding a line for each new user. The entry for a user named `kermit` might be

```
kermit::15:1:Kermit the Frog:/user/kermit:/bin/sh
```

The entry contains seven fields, separated by colons. These fields contain the login name, password (initially null), uid, gid, name, home directory, and shell for the new user. When a new user is entered, the corresponding home directory must also be created, using `mkdir`, and its owner set correctly, using `chown`. Each user must have a unique uid, but the numerical values are unimportant. It is probably adequate to put all ordinary users in group 3, unless there really are
distinct groups of users. When the new user logs in for the first time, he should choose a password and enter it using `passwd`.

Another important file is `/etc/rc`. Each time the system is booted, this file is run as a shell script just before the `login:` message is printed. It can be used to mount file systems, request the date, erase temporary files, and anything else that needs to be done before starting the system. It also forks off `update`, which runs in the background and issues a `SYNC` system call every 30 seconds to flush the buffer cache.

If you have two drives, it may be convenient to modify `/etc/rc` to mount `/dev/fd1` on `/user` during system boot. If you do this, you can also change `/etc/passwd` to put your home directory on `/user` instead of `/usr`.

The file `/etc/ttyS` contains one line for each terminal in the system. During startup, `init` reads this file and forks off a login process for each terminal. When the console is the only terminal, `ttyS` contains only 1 line.

Also contained in `/etc` are the programs `mount`, and `umount` for mounting and unmounting file systems, respectively.

When any of the files on the RAM disk, such as `/etc/passwd`, are modified, the changes will be lost when the system is shut down unless the modified files are explicitly copied back to the root file system. This can be done by mounting the root file system diskette and then copying the files with `cp`.

**C.3.4. Modifying File Systems**

As distributed, MINIX comes with three file system diskettes: the root file system, `/usr`, and `/user`. When the system is booted, the root file system diskette is copied to the RAM disk, and not used thereafter. One implication of this design is that changes made to the RAM disk during system operation will be lost when the system is shut down. To modify the root file system, it should be mounted, for example, by putting it in drive 1 and typing

```
/etc/mount /dev/fd1 /user
```

Programs can then be copied to or from it, files can be removed, and so on. When the modification is done, it must be unmounted and removed from the drive.

More generally, the contents of the three file systems can be reorganized by mounting and copying. Programs that are heavily used should be put on the root file system, but at least 50K should be left unused for `/tmp`. Once a root file system diskette has been made, its size cannot be changed, but a new one can always be made using `mkfs`, as discussed in Appendix D.

One simple way to build a new `/usr` or `/user` file system is to make an empty file system using the “m” option of the initial menu, or `mkfs`, mount this file system, and then copy files to it from one or more other file systems, possibly mounting and unmounting several of them during the process.
For systems containing only one floppy disk drive, a careful choice has to be made about which programs will be on the root file system and which will be on /usr since together they are too small to hold all the programs.

One way to build a file system is to start with an empty file system. Programs that are currently on the root device that are to go on the new file system are copied to it. Then, /lib and /bin, are emptied, except for rm and cp, to make more space on the root device. Next, the file system being built is unmounted, and another one mounted in its place. Useful programs from it are copied to the now-empty root device. Then the file system being built is remounted, and files copied to it from the root device. This process may have to be repeated several times, depending on how many files are being copied and from where.

C.3.5. Miscellaneous Notes

A number of MINIX programs can only be executed by the super-user. These include: mkfs, chown, and mknod. Other programs, such as mkdir, can be executed by any user, but are owned by the root and have the SETUID bit on, so that when they are executed, the effective uid is that of the super-user, even though the real uid is not.

In general, if a program, prog, needs to run as the super-user but is to be made generally available to all users, it can be made into a SETUID program owned by the root by the command line:

chown root prog; chmod 4755 prog

Needless to say, only the super-user can execute these commands.

C.4. MINIX COMMANDS

In this section the MINIX commands (programs) that are supplied with the system are summarized. Books on UNIX should be consulted for more detail, especially (Bell Telephone Laboratories, 1983). Most MINIX commands have the same flags and arguments as their UNIX counterparts. A few of the programs listed below are on the /user diskette, and will not be available unless that diskette is mounted.

In the notation used, square brackets denote optional quantities and the ellipsis (...) is used to indicate that the previous item may be present 1 or more times. In the Syntax lines, words and flags printed in boldface type must be entered exactly as shown. Words and symbols printed in lightface type are arguments, and must be replaced by file names, numeric arguments, and so forth. In the examples, all the information following a number sign (#) is a comment.
Command: ar – archiver
Syntax: ar [adprtvx] archive file ...
Flags: a Append files to the archive
d Delete files from the archive
p Print the files on standard output
r Replace files (append when not present)
t List archive’s table of contents
v Verbose mode (give more information)
x Extract files from the archive

Examples: ar r clib *.c # Replace all the C files
         ar d lib.a file.s # Remove file.s from the archive

Ar maintains archives and libraries. An archive can be created with the r flag by listing a nonexistent archive name. Members of the archive can be replaced, deleted, printed, or extracted.

Command: asld – assembler-loader
Syntax: asld [-d] [-s] [-o name] file ...
Flags: -L A listing is produced on standard output
       -T Used to specify a directory for the temporary file
       -o Output goes to file named by next argument
       -s A symbol table is produced on standard output

Examples: asld –s file.s # Assemble file.s and list symbols
          asld -o output file.s # Assemble file.s, put binary on output
          asld -T. file1.s file2.s # Use current directory for temporary file

Asld is the MINIX assembler and loader combined. It accepts a language similar to that accepted by the PC-IX assembler. Symbols are made up of letters, digits and underscores. The machine instructions and addressing modes are the same as those used by PC-IX, except that modes using multiple registers are written like this example: mov ax,(bx,si). Constant operands are denoted by a number sign. Local labels are permitted in the usual UNIX style: the instruction jmp 1f jumps forward to the closest label 1:

The pseudoinstructions accepted by the assembler are listed below:

.align n Align to a multiple of n bytes
.ascii str Assemble a string
.asciz str Assemble a zero-terminated string
.byte n Assemble one or more bytes
.data What follows goes in the data segment
.define sym Export sym from the file
.errnz n Force error if n is nonzero
.even Align to an even address
.extern sym Declare sym external
.globl sym
     Same as extern
.long n
     Assemble n as a long
.org adr
     Set address within current segment
.short n
     Assemble n as a short
.space n
     Skip n bytes
.text
     What follows goes in the text segment
.word n
     Assemble n as a word
.zerow n
     Assemble n words of zeros

In the above pseudoinstructions, adr is an expression yielding a machine address, n is a numeric expression, str is a quoted string, and sym is a symbol. The library /usr/lib/libc.a is a packed archive of assembly code. To see some examples of it, extract some files from the archive with ar and then use the filter libunpack to convert them to readable ASCII.

MINIX does not use .o files. Compiler output is packed assembly language, as are the modules in an archive. This scheme requires reassembling archive modules all the time, but it saves precious diskette space. Unfortunately, the strategy also makes assembling and linking slow.

It is not possible at present to have the assembler (hence the C compiler) produce separate I & D program, even though the operating system supports such programs compiled with other compilers.

Command: basename - strip off file prefixes and suffixes
Syntax: basename file [suffix]
Flags: (none)
Examples: basename /user/ast/file   # Strips path to yield file
           basename /user/file.c .c # Strips path and .c to yield file

The initial directory names (if any) are removed yielding the name of the file itself. If a second argument is present, it is interpreted as a suffix and is also stripped, if present. This program is primarily used in shell scripts.

Command: cat - concatenate files and write them to standard output
Syntax: cat [-u] file ...
Flags: -u Unbuffered output
Examples: cat file         # Display file on the terminal
cat file1 file2 | lpr     # Concatenate 2 files and print result

Cat concatenates its input files and copies the result to standard output. If no input file is named, or - is encountered as a file name, standard input is used. Output is buffered in 512 byte blocks unless the -u flag is given.
Command: cc - C compiler
Syntax: cc [option] ... file ...
Flags:
- D  The flag -Dx = y defines a macro x with value y
- F  Use a file instead of a pipe for preprocessor output
- I  -Idir searches dir for include files
- LIB Produce a library module
- R  Complain about all non Kernighan & Ritchie code
- S  Produce an assembly code file, then stop
- T  The flag -Tdir tells cem to use dir for temporary files
- U  Undefined a macro
- c  Compile only. Do not link. (Same as -S)
- o  Put output on file named by next arg
- v  Verbose. Print pass names
- w  Suppress warning messages

Examples: cc -c file.c  # Compile file.c
cc -Di8088 file.c  # Treat the symbol i8088 as defined
cc -c -LIB file.c  # Make a module for the library
cc -R -o out file.c  # Check for K & R; output to out

This is the C compiler. It has five passes, as follows:

**Program**  |  **Input**  |  **Output**  |  **Operation performed**
---|---|---|---
/lib/cpp  |  prog.c  |  prog.i  |  C preprocessor: #include, #define, #ifndef
/lib/cem  |  prog.i  |  prog.k  |  Parsing and semantic analysis
/usr/lib/opt  |  prog.k  |  prog.m  |  Optimization of the intermediate code
/usr/lib/cg  |  prog.m  |  prog.s  |  Code generation
/usr/lib/asld  |  prog.s  |  a.out  |  Assembly and linking

The main program, cc, forks appropriately to call the passes, transmitting flags and arguments. The -v flag causes the passes to be listed as they are called.

The -c or -S flags stop compilation when cg has produced an assembly code file (in packed format) because the current assembler-loader expects that (see under File Formats later in this appendix). The libraries are also archives of packed assembly code files, except that defined symbols must be declared by .define statements at the beginning. To make modules for inclusion in the library, use the -c and -LIB options. There is no way to get .o files; the packed assembly language files are used as a substitute. They can be unpacked with the filter libunpack.

The -R flag gives warnings about all constructions not permitted by official Kernighan and Ritchie C. The average garden-variety C program that has been flawlessly accepted by most C compilers contains surprisingly many illegal constructions. Try it.

The compiler normally keeps cpp and cem in memory at the same time, transferring the output of cpp to cem using a pipe. However, if there is insufficient memory available to hold both at once, the -F flag can be given to cause these two passes to be run strictly sequentially, with the preprocessor output being stored on a file in /tmp (unless -T is used). When available memory
is very limited (e.g., a 512K machine), it may be necessary to run chmem to reduce the sizes of the compiler passes that do not fit, typically cem.

The other passes, especially asld, can create large temporary files in /tmp. To compile very large programs, first type

```
cc -c *.c
```
to get .s files. Then remove /lib/cpp and /lib/cem and possibly other files from the RAM disk to make more space for /tmp. Finally, type

```
cc *.s
```

which results in

```
asld /usr/lib/crtso.s *.s /usr/lib/libc.a /usr/lib/end.s
```
to produce the a.out file. The files removed from the RAM disk can be restored by mounting the root file system and copying them from there, or the system can be shut down and rebooted.

If the compiler (or, in fact, almost any program) begins acting strange, it is almost always due to its running out of space, either stack space or scratch file space. The relevant pass can be given more stack space using chmem. More space for scratch files can be obtained by removing other files on the device.

The compiler is derived from the ACK system (Tanenbaum et al., 1983), not from the AT&T portable C compiler. It has been shoehorned onto the PC with some loss of performance.

**Command:** chmem - change memory allocation

**Syntax:** chmem [+][-] [=] amount file ...

**Flags:** (none)

**Examples:**

```
chmem =50000 a.out   # Give a.out 50K of stack space
chmem -4000 a.out    # Reduce the stack space by 4000 bytes
chmem +1000 file1 file2 # Increase each stack by 1000 bytes
```

When a program is loaded into memory, it is allocated enough memory for the text and data+bss segments, plus an area for the stack. Data segment growth using malloc, brk, or sbrk eats up stack space from the low end. The amount of stack space to allocate is derived from a field in the executable program's file header. If the combined stack and data segment growth exceeds the stack space allocated, the program will be terminated.

It is therefore important to set the amount of stack space carefully. If too little is provided, the program may crash. If too much is provided, memory will be wasted, and fewer programs will be able to fit in memory and run simultaneously. MINIX does not swap, so that when memory is full, subsequent attempts to fork will fail. The compiler sets the stack space to the largest possible value (64K - text - data). For many programs, this value is far too large.
Nonrecursive programs that do not call _brk, sbrk, or malloc_, and do not have any local arrays usually do not need more than 1K of stack space.

The _chmem_ command changes the value of the header field that determines the stack allocation, and thus indirectly the total memory required to run the program. The _= _option sets the stack size to a specific value; the _+ _and _– _options increment and decrement the current value by the indicated amount. The old and new stack sizes are printed.

**Command: chmod – change file mode**

**Syntax:** `chmod mode file ...`

**Flags:** (none)

**Examples:**
- `chmod 754 file` # Owner: rwx; Group r-x; Others r--
- `chmod 4755 file1 file2` # Turn on SETUID bit

The permission bits for each file are set to _mode_ (octal). The 04000 bit is the SETUID bit. The 02000 bit is the SETGID bit. The low-order 9 bits are the _rwx_ bits for the owner, group, and others.

**Command: chown – change owner**

**Syntax:** `chown user file ...`

**Flags:** (none)

**Example:** `chown ast file1 file2` # Make ast the owner of the files

The owner field of the named files is changed to _user_ (i.e., login name specified). Only the super-user may execute this command.

**Command: clr – clear the screen**

**Syntax:** `clr`

**Flags:** (none)

**Example:** `clr` # Clear the screen

The screen is cleared to blanks.

**Command: cmp – compare two files**

**Syntax:** `cmp [-ls] file1 file2`

**Flags:**
- _-l _ Loud mode. Print bytes that differ (in octal)
- _-s _ Silent mode. Print nothing, just return exit status

**Examples:**
- `cmp file1 file2` # Tell whether the files are the same
- `cmp -l file1 file2` # Print all corresponding bytes that differ
Two files are compared. If they are identical, exit status 0 is returned. If they differ, exit status 1 is returned. If the files cannot be opened, exit status 2 is returned. If file1 is -, standard input is compared to file2.

Command: comm – print lines common to two sorted files
Syntax: comm [-123] file1 file2
Flags: -1 Suppress column 1 (lines only in file1)
-2 Suppress column 2 (lines only in file2)
-3 Suppress column 3 (lines in both files)
Examples: comm file1 file2 # Print all three columns
           comm -12 file1 file2 # Print only lines common to both files
Two sorted files are read and compared. A three column listing is produced. Files only in file1 are in column 1; files only in file2 are in column 2; files common to both files are in column 3. The file name - means standard input.

Command: cp – copy file
Syntax: cp file1 file2
cp file ... directory
Flags: (none)
Examples: cp oldfile newfile # Copy oldfile to newfile
cp file1 file2 /user/ast # Copy two files to a directory

Cp copies one file to another, or copies one or more files to a directory. A file cannot be copied to itself.

Command: date – print or set the date and time
Syntax: date [[MMDDYY]hmm[ss]]
Flags: -q Read the date from standard input
Examples: date # Print the date and time
date 0221881610 # Set date to Feb 21, 1988 at 4:10 p.m.
Without an argument, date prints the current date and time. With an argument, it sets the date and time. MMDDYY refers to the month, day, and year; hhmmss refers to the hour, minute and second. Each of the six fields must be two digits.

Command: dd – disk dumper
Syntax: dd [option = value] ...
Flags: (none)
Examples:  dd if=/dev/fd0 of=/dev/fd1  # Copy disk 0 to disk 1
          dd if=x of=y bs=1w skip=4  # Copy x to y, skipping 4 words
          dd if=x of=y count=3   # Copy three 512-byte blocks

This command is intended for copying partial files. The block size, skip count, and number of blocks to copy can be specified. The options are:

if = file    - Input file (default is standard input)
of = file    - Output file (default is standard output)
ibs = n     - Input block size (default 512 bytes)
obs = n     - Output block size (default is 512 bytes)
bs = n      - Block size; sets ibs and obs (default is 512 bytes)
skip = n    - Skip n input blocks before reading
seek = n    - Skip n output blocks before writing
count = n   - Copy only n input blocks
conv = lcase - Convert upper case letters to lower case
conv = ucase - Convert lower case letters to upper case
conv = swab - Swap every pair of bytes
conv = noerror - Ignore errors and just keep going

Where sizes are expected, they are in bytes. However, the letters w, b, or k may be appended to the number to indicate words (2 bytes), blocks (512 bytes), or K (1024 bytes), respectively. When dd is finished, it reports the number of full and partial blocks read and written.

Command: df – report on free disk space and i-nodes
Syntax:  df special ...
Flags:  (none)
Examples: df /dev/ram               # Report on free RAM disk space
df /dev/fd0 /dev/fd1       # Report on floppy disk space

The amount of disk space and number of i-nodes, both free and used is reported.

Command: dosdir – list an MS-DOS diskette directory
Syntax:  dosdir [-lr] drive
Flags:  -l  Long listing
        -r  Recursively descend and print subdirectories
Examples: dosdir -l 1               # List root directory on drive 1
dosdir -r 0 x/y          # Recursively list directory x/y

Dosdir reads standard IBM PC diskettes in MS-DOS format and lists their contents on standard output. Directory names should contain slashes to separate components, even though MS-DOS uses backslashes. The names dosdir, dosread, and doswrite are all links to the same program. The program sees which function to perform by seeing how it was called.
Command: dosread – read a file from an MS-DOS diskette
Syntax: dosread
Flags: -a ASCII file
Examples: dosread 1 g/adv > adv  # Read file g/adv from drive 1
dosread 0 -a prog.c > x  # Read ASCII file prog.c from drive 0

Dosread reads one file from an MS-DOS diskette and writes it on standard output. The file name should use slash, not backslash as a separator. ASCII files have the final CTRL-Z stripped, and carriage return plus line feed are mapped to line feed only, the usual MINIX convention.

Command: doswrite – write a file onto an MS-DOS diskette
Syntax: doswrite [-a] drive file
Flags: -a ASCII file
Examples: doswrite 1 x/y < z  # Write file z to disk as x/y
doswrite -a 0 f  # Copy standard input to MS-DOS file f

Doswrite writes its standard input to an MS-DOS diskette. The diskette must be formatted and have an MS-DOS file system already in place, including all the directories leading up to the file.

Command: echo – print the arguments
Syntax: echo [-n] argument ...
Flags: -n No line feed is output when done
Examples: echo Start Phase 1  # “Start Phase 1” is printed
echo -n Hello  # “Hello”

Echo writes its arguments to standard output. They are separated by blanks and terminated with a line feed unless -n is present. This command is used mostly in shell scripts.

Command: getlf – wait until a line has been typed
Syntax: getlf [argument]
Flags: (none)
Example: getlf  # Wait for a line

In shell scripts it is sometimes necessary to pause to give the user a chance to perform some action, such as inserting a diskette. This command prints its argument, if any, and then waits until a carriage return has been typed, at which time it terminates. It is used in /etc/rc.
Command: grep – search a file for lines containing a given pattern
Syntax: grep [-ensv] pattern [file] ...
Flags: 
   -e –e pattern is the same as pattern
   -n Print line numbers
   -s Status only, no printed output
   -v Select lines that do not match
Examples: grep mouse file # Find lines in file containing mouse
grep [0-9] file # Print lines containing a digit

Grep searches one or more files (by default, standard input) and selects out all the lines that match the pattern. All the regular expressions accepted by `mined` are allowed. In addition, + can be used instead of * to mean 1 or more occurrences, ? can be used to mean 0 or 1 occurrences, and | can be used between two regular expressions to mean either one of them. Parentheses can be used for grouping. If a match is found, exit status 0 is returned. If no match is found, exit status 1 is returned. If an error is detected, exit status 2 is returned.

Command: gres – grep and substitute
Syntax: gres [-g] pattern string [file] ...
Flags: 
   -g Only change the first occurrence per line
Examples: gres bug insect # Replace bug with insect
gres "^[A-Z]+$" CAPS # Replace capital-only lines with CAPS

Gres is a poor man’s sed. It looks for the same patterns as `grep`, and replaces each one by the given string.

Command: head – print the first few lines of a file
Syntax: head [-n] [file] ...
Flags: 
   -n How many lines to print
Examples: head -6 # Print first 6 lines of standard input
           head -1 file1 file2 # Print first line of two files

The first few lines of one or more files are printed. The default count is 10 lines. The default file is standard input.

Command: kill – send a signal to a process
Syntax: kill [-signal] process
Flags: (none)
Examples: kill 35 # Send signal 15 to process 35
           kill -9 40 # Send signal 9 to process 40
           kill -2 0 # Send signal 2 to whole process group
A signal is sent to a given process. By default signal 15 (SIGTERM) is sent. Process 0 means all the processes in the sender’s process group.

Command: **libpack** – pack an ASCII assembly code file  
**Syntax:** libpack  
**Flags:** (none)  
**Example:** libpack <x.s >y.s # Pack x.s  
This program is a filter that reads an ASCII assembly code file from standard input and writes the corresponding packed file on standard output. The compiler libraries are archives of packed assembly code files.

Command: **libupack** – convert a packed assembly code file to ASCII  
**Syntax:** libupack  
**Flags:** (none)  
**Example:** libupack <y.s >x.s # Unpack y.s  
This program is a filter that reads a packed assembly code file from standard input and writes the corresponding ASCII file on standard output.

Command: **In** – create a link to a file  
**Syntax:** In file [name]  
**Flags:** (none)  
**Examples:** In file newname # Make newname a synonym for file  
In /usr/games/chess # Create a link called chess  
A directory entry is created for name. The entry points to file. Henceforth, name and file can be used interchangeably. If name is not supplied, the last component of file is used as the link name.

Command: **lpr** – copy a file to the line printer  
**Syntax:** lpr [file] ...  
**Flags:** (none)  
**Examples:** lpr file & # Print file on the line printer  
pr file | lpr & # Print standard input (pr’s output)  
Each argument is interpreted as a file to be printed. Lpr copies each file to /dev/lp, without spooling. It inserts carriage returns and expands tabs. Only one lpr at a time may be running.
Command: **ls** — list the contents of a directory

**Syntax:**  
*ls* [–adfgilrst] name ...

**Flags:**  
- **a**  All entries are listed, even . and ..
- **d**  Do not list contents of directories  
- **f**  List argument as unsorted directory  
- **g**  Group id given instead of user id  
- **i**  I-node number printed in first column  
- **l**  Long listing: mode, links, owner, size and time  
- **r**  Reverse the sort order  
- **s**  Give size in blocks (including indirect blocks)  
- **t**  Sort by time, latest first

**Examples:**  
*ls* –l  # List files in working directory  
*ls* –lis  # List with i-nodes and sizes

For each file argument, list it. For each directory argument, list its contents, unless –d is present. When no argument is present, the working directory is listed.

---

Command: **make** — a program for maintaining large programs

**Syntax:**  
*make* [–f file] [–ikns] [option] ... [target]

**Flags:**  
- **f**  Use file as the makefile  
- **i**  Ignore status returned by commands  
- **k**  Kill branch on error  
- **n**  Report, but do not execute  
- **s**  Silent mode

**Examples:**  
*make* kernel  # Make *kernel* up to date  
*make* –n –f file  # Tell what needs to be done

*Make* is a program that is normally used for developing large programs consisting of multiple files. It keeps track of which object files depend on which source and header files. When called, it does the minimum amount of recompilation to bring the target file up to date.

The file dependencies are expected in *makefile* or *Makefile*, unless another file is specified with –f. *Make* has some default rules built in, for example, it knows how to make .s files from .c files. Here is a sample *makefile*.

```
d=/user/ast  # d is a macro
program:  
    head.s tail.s  # program depends on these
    cc –o program head.s tail.s  # tells how to make program
    echo Program done.  # announce completion
head.s:  
    $d/def.h head.c  # head.s depends on these
tail.s:  
    $d/var.h tail.c  # tail.s depends on these
```

A complete description of *make* would require too much space here. For more information, see Feldman (1979). Many books on UNIX also discuss *make*. 
Command: *mined* – MINIX editor
Syntax:  mined [file]
Flags:   (none)
Examples:  mined /user/ast/book.3  # Edit an existing file
           mined                       # Call editor to create a new file
           ls -l | mined                # Use *mined* as a pager to inspect listing

*Mined* (pronounced min-ed) is a simple full-screen editor. When editing a file, it holds the file in memory, thus speeding up editing, but limiting the editor to files of up to about 43K. Larger files must first be cut into pieces by *split*. Lines may be arbitrarily long. Output from a command may be piped into *mined* so it can be viewed without scrolling off the screen.

At any instant, a window of 24 lines is visible on the screen. The current position in the file is shown by the cursor. Ordinary characters typed in are inserted at the cursor. Control characters and keys on the numeric keypad (at the right-hand side of the keyboard) are used to move the cursor and perform other functions.

Commands exist to move forward and backward a word, and delete words. A word in this context is a sequence of characters delimited on both ends by white space (space, tab, line feed, start of file, or end of file). The commands for deleting characters and words also work on line feeds, making it possible to join two consecutive lines by deleting the line feed between them.

The editor maintains one save buffer (not displayed). Commands are present to move text from the file to the buffer, from the buffer to the file, and to write the buffer onto a new file. If the edited text cannot be written out due to a full disk, it may still be possible to copy the whole text to the save buffer and then write it to a different file on a different disk with CTRL-Q. It may also be possible to escape from the editor with CTRL-S and remove some files.

Some of the commands prompt for arguments (file names, search patterns, etc.). All commands that might result in loss of the file being edited prompt to ask for confirmation.

A key (command or ordinary character) can be repeated \( n \) times by typing \( \text{ESC} \ n \ \text{key} \) where \( \text{ESC} \) is the “escape” key.

Forward and backward searching requires a regular expression as the search pattern. Regular expressions follow the same rules as in the UNIX editor, *ed*:

1. Any displayable character matches itself.
2. . (period) matches any character except line feed.
3. ^ (circumflex) matches the start of the line.
4. $ (dollar sign) matches the end of the line.
5. \c matches the character \( c \) (including period, circumflex, etc).
6. [string] matches any of the characters in the string.
7. [\`string] matches any of the characters except those in the string.
8. \([x-y]\) matches any characters between \(x\) and \(y\) (e.g., \([a-z]\)).

9. Pattern* matches any number of occurrences of pattern.

Some examples of regular expressions are:

- The boy matches the string “The boy”
- ^$ matches any empty line.
- ^A.*\.$ matches any line starting with an \(A\), ending with a period.
- ^[A-Z]*$ matches any line containing only capital letters (or empty).
- [A-Z0-9] matches any line containing either a capital letter or a digit.

Control characters cannot be entered into a file simply by typing them because all of them are editor commands. To enter a control character, depress the ALT key, and then while holding it down, hit the ESC key. Release both ALT and ESC and type the control character. Control characters are displayed in reverse video.

The mined commands are as follows.

**CURSOR MOTION**

- arrows Move the cursor in the indicated direction
- CTRL-A Move cursor to start of current line
- CTRL-Z Move cursor to end of current line
- CTRL-^ Move cursor to top of screen
- CTRL- Move cursor to end of screen
- CTRL-F Move cursor forward to start of next word
- CTRL-B Move cursor backward to start of previous word

**SCREEN MOTION**

- Home key Move to first character of the file
- End key Move to last character of the file
- PgUp key Scroll window up 23 lines (closer to start of the file)
- PgDn key Scroll window down 23 lines (closer to end of the file)
- CTRL-U Scroll window up 1 line
- CTRL-D Scroll window down 1 line

**MODIFYING TEXT**

- Del key Delete the character under the cursor
- Backspace Delete the character to left of the cursor
- CTRL-N Delete the next word
- CTRL-P Delete the previous word
- CTRL-T Delete tail of line (all characters from cursor to end of line)
- CTRL-O Open up the line (insert line feed and back up)
- CTRL-G Get and insert a file at the cursor position
BUFFER OPERATIONS
- **CTRL-@** Set mark at current position for use with CTRL-C and CTRL-K
- **CTRL-C** Copy the text between the mark and the cursor into the buffer
- **CTRL-K** Delete text between mark and cursor; also copy it to the buffer
- **CTRL-Y** Yank contents of the buffer out and insert it at the cursor
- **CTRL-Q** Write the contents of the buffer onto a file

MISCELLANEOUS
- **numeric +** Search forward (prompts for regular expression)
- **numeric —** Search backward (prompts for regular expression)
- **numeric 5** Display the file status
- **CTRL-]** Go to specific line
- **CTRL-R** Global replace *pattern* with *string* (from cursor to end)
- **CTRL-L** Line replace *pattern* with *string*
- **CTRL-W** Write the edited file back to the disk
- **CTRL-X** Exit the editor
- **CTRL-S** Fork off a shell (use CTRL-D to get back to the editor)
- **CTRL-E** Erase screen and redraw it
- **CTRL-V** Visit (edit) a new file

Command: **mkdir** - make a directory

**Syntax:**  
`mkdir directory ...`

**Flags:**  
*(none)*

**Examples:**
- `mkdir dir`  
  # Create *dir* in the current directory
- `mkdir /user/ast/dir`  
  # Create the specified directory

The specified directory or directories are created. The entries . and .. are inserted into the new directory.

Command: **mkfs** - make a file system

**Syntax:**  
`mkfs special prototype`

**Flags:**  
- **-L** Make a listing on standard output

**Examples:**
- `mkfs /dev/fdl proto`  
  # Make a file system on /dev/fdl
- `mkfs /dev/fdl 360`  
  # Make empty 360 block file system

*mkfs* builds a file system and copies specified files to it. The prototype file tells which directories and files to copy to it. If the prototype file cannot be opened, and its name is just a string of digits, an empty file system will be made with the specified number of blocks. A sample prototype file follows. The text following the # sign is comment. In the real prototype file, comments are not allowed.
boot 360 63  # boot block file (ignored)
d--755 1 1  # blocks and i-nodes
   bin  d--755 2 1  # bin dir: mode (755), uid (2), gid (1)
      sh   --755 2 1 /user/ast/shell  # shell has mode rwxr-xr-x
      mv   -u--755 2 1 /user/ast/mv  # u = SETUID bit
      login -ug755 2 1 /user/ast/login  # SETUID and SETGID

$  # end of /bin

dev d--755 2 1  # special files: tty (char), fd0 (block)
   tty  c--777 2 1 4 0  # uid=2, gid=1, major=4, minor=0
   fd0  b--644 2 1 2 0 360  # uid, gid, major, minor, blocks

$  # end of /dev

user d--755 12 1  # user dir: mode (755), uid (12), gid (1)
   ast  d--755 12 1  # /user/ast

$  # /user/ast is empty

$  # end of /user

$  # end of root directory

The first entry on each line (except the first 3 and the $ lines, which terminate
directories) is the name the file or directory will get on the new file system. Next
comes its mode, with the first character being -dbc for regular files, directories,
block special files and character special files, respectively. The next two charac-
ters are used to specify the SETUID and SETGID bits, as shown above. The
last three characters of the mode are the rwx protection bits.

Following the mode are the uid and gid. For special files, the major and
minor devices are needed. The size in blocks must also be specified for block
special files (the MINIX block size is 1K; this can only be changed by changing
BLOCK_SIZE and then recompiling the operating system).

Command: **mknod**  - create a special file
Syntax:     **mknod** file [b] [c] major minor
Flags:      (none)
Example:    mknod /dev/plotter c 7 0  # Create special file for a plotter

Mknod creates a special file named file, with the indicated major and minor
device numbers. The second argument specifies a block or character file.

Command: **mount**  - mount a file system
Syntax:     /etc/mount special file [-r]
Flags:      -r  File system is mounted read-only
Example:    /etc/mount /dev/fd1 /user# Mount floppy disk 1 on /user
The file system contained on the special file is mounted on file. In the example above, the root directory of the file system in drive 1 can be accessed as /user after the mount. When the file system is no longer needed, it must be unmounted before being removed from the drive.

**Command:** mv – move or rename a file  
**Syntax:**  
```
mv file1 file2  
mv file ... directory
```

**Flags:** (none)  
**Examples:**  
```
mv oldname newname  # Move oldname to newname  
mv file1 file2 /user/ast  # Move two files to /user/ast
```

*Mv* moves one or more files from one place in the file system to another. If the old path and new path are on the same device, it is done by linking and unlinking, otherwise by copying.

**Command:** od – octal dump  
**Syntax:**  
```
od [-bcdhox] [file] [+] offset [.][b]  
```

**Flags:**  
- `-b` Dump bytes in octal  
- `-c` Dump bytes as ASCII characters  
- `-d` Dump words in decimal  
- `-h` Print addresses in hex (default is octal)  
- `-o` Dump words in octal (default)  
- `-x` Dump words in hex  

**Examples:**  
```
od -ox file  # Dump file in octal and hex  
od -d file +1000  # Dump file starting at byte 01000  
od -c file +10.b  # Dump file starting at block 10
```

*Od* dumps a file in one or more formats. If *file* is missing, standard input is dumped. The *offset* argument tells *od* to skip a certain number of bytes or blocks before starting. The offset is in octal bytes, unless it is followed by a “.” for decimal or *b* for blocks or both.

**Command:** passwd – change a login password  
**Syntax:**  
```
passwd [name]
```

**Flags:** (none)  
**Examples:**  
```
passwd  # Change current user’s password  
passwd ast  # Change ast’s password (super-user only)
```

*Passwd* is used to change your password. It prompts for the old and new passwords. It asks for the new password twice, to reduce the effect of a typing
error. Do not forget to copy the modified password file back to the root file system diskette, or the changes will be lost when the system is rebooted.

**Command: pr – print a file**

**Syntax:**

```
pr [option] ... [-columns] [+page] [file] ...
```

**Flags:**

- `-h` Take next argument as page header
- `-l` Sets page length in lines
- `-n` Number the output lines
- `-t` Do not print page header or trailer
- `-w` Sets line length in characters

**Examples:**

```
pr -w72 -l60 file           # Use 72 character line, 60 line page
pr -3 file                  # List file three columns to a page
pr +4 file                  # Start printing with page 4
```

`Pr` formats one or more files for printing. If no files are specified, standard input is printed. Options are provided for setting the width and height of the page, the number of columns to use (default 1), and the page to start with, among others.

**Command: pwd – print working directory**

**Syntax:**

```
pwd
```

**Flags:**

- (none)

**Example:**

```
pwd                      # Print the name of the working directory
```

The full path name of the current working directory is printed.

**Command: rev – reverse the characters on each line of a file**

**Syntax:**

```
rev [file] ...
```

**Flags:**

- (none)

**Example:**

```
rev file                  # Reverse each line
```

Each file is copied to standard output with all the characters of each line reversed, last one first and first one last.

**Command: rm – remove a file**

**Syntax:**

```
rm [-fIr] name ...
```

**Flags:**

- `-f` Forced remove: no questions asked
- `-i` Interactive remove: ask before removing
- `-r` Remove directories too
Examples:  

   `rm file`  # Remove file
   `rm -i *.c`  # Remove .c files, asking about each

*Rm* removes one or more files. If a file has no write permission, *rm* asks for permission (type “y” or “n”) unless *-f* is specified. If the file is a directory, it will be recursively descended and removed if and only if the *-r* flag is present.

---

**Command: rmdir – remove a directory**

**Syntax:**  
`rmdir` directory ...

**Flags:**  
*(none)*

**Examples:**  

   `rmdir /user/ast/foobar`  # Remove directory foobar
   `rmdir /user/ast/f*`  # Remove 0 or more directories

The specified directories are removed. Ordinary files are not removed.

---

**Command: roff – text formatter**

**Syntax:**  
`roff` [-hs] [+n] [-n] file ...

**Flags:**  
- *h*  Expand tabs to spaces in output
- *s*  Stop before each page; continue on DEL
- *+n*  Start printing with page *n*
- *n*  Stop after page *n*

**Examples:**  

   `roff file`  # Run off file
   `roff +5 file`  # Run off file starting at page 5

*Roff* is a text formatter. Its input consists of the text to be output, intermixed with formatting commands. A formatting command is a line containing the control character followed by a two character command name, and possibly one or more arguments. The control character is initially “." (dot). The formatted output is produced on standard output.

The formatting commands are listed below, with *n* being a number, *c* being a character, and *t* being a title. A + before *n* means it may be signed, indicating a positive or negative change from the current value. Initial values for *n*, where relevant, are given in parentheses.

- *ad*  Adjust right margin.
- *ar*  Arabic page numbers.
- *br*  Line break. Subsequent text will begin on a new line.
- *bl n*  Insert *n* blank lines.
- *bp +n*  Begin new page and number it *n*. No *n* means +1.
- *cc c*  Control character is set to *c*.
- *ce n*  Center the next *n* input lines.
- *de zz*  Define a macro called *zz*. A line with “..” ends definition.
- *ds*  Double space the output. Same as *.ls 2*.
- *ef t*  Even page footer title is set to *t*.
- *eh t*  Even page header title is set to *t*.
- *fi*  Begin filling output lines as full as possible.
.fo t  Footer titles (even and odd) are set to t.
.he c  The character c (e.g., %) tells roff where hyphens are permitted.
.he t  Header titles (even and odd) are set to t.
.hx  Header titles are suppressed.
.hy n  Hyphenation is done if n is 1, suppressed if it is 0. Default is 1.
.ig  Ignore input lines until a line beginning with ".." is found.
.in n  Indent n spaces from the left margin; force line break.
.ix n  Same as .in but continue filling output on current line.
.li n  Literal text on next n lines. Copy to output unmodified.
.ll +n  Line length (including indent) is set to n (65).
.ls +n  Line spacing: n (1) is 1 for single spacing, 2 for double, etc.
.m1 n  Insert n (2) blank lines between top of page and header.
.m2 n  Insert n (2) blank lines between header and start of text.
.m3 n  Insert n (1) blank lines between end of text and footer.
.m4 n  Insert n (3) blank lines between footer and end of page.
.na  No adjustment of the right margin.
.ne n  Need n lines. If fewer are left, go to next page.
.nn +n  The next n output lines are not numbered.
.n1  Number output lines in left margin starting at 1.
.n2 n  Number output lines starting at n. If 0, stop numbering.
.ni +n  Indent line numbers by n (0) spaces.
.nf  No more filling of lines.
.mx f  Switch input to file f.
.of t  Odd page footer title is set to t.
.oh t  Odd page header title is set to t.
.pa +n  Page adjust by n (1). Same as .bp.
.pl +n  Paper length is n (66) lines.
.po +n  Page offset. Each line is started with n (0) spaces.
.ro  Page numbers are printed in Roman numerals.
.sk n  Skip n pages (i.e., make them blank), starting with next one.
.sp n  Insert n blank lines, except at top of page.
.ss  Single spacing. Equivalent to .ls 1.
.ta  Set tab stops, e.g., .ta 9 17 25 33 41 49 57 65 73 (default).
.tc c  Tabs are expanded into c. Default is space.
.ti n  Indent next line n spaces; then go back to previous indent.
.tr ab  Translate a into b on output.
.ul n  Underline the letters and numbers in the next n lines.

Command: sh – shell
Syntax: sh [file]
Flags:  (none)
Example: sh < script  # Run a shell script
Sh is the shell. It permits redirection of input and output, pipes, magic characters, background processes, shell scripts and most of the other features of the V7 (Bourne) shell. A few of the more common commands are listed below:

```
date               # Regular command
sort <file          # Redirect input
sort <file1 >file2  # Redirect input and output
cc file.c 2>error   # Redirect standard error
a.out >f 2>&1      # Combine standard output and standard error
sort <file1 >>file2 # Append output to file2
sort <file1 >file2 & # Background job
(ls -l; a.out) &    # Run two background commands sequentially
sort <file | wc     # Two-process pipeline
sort <f | uniq | wc # Three-process pipeline
ls -l *.c           # List all files ending in .c
ls -l [a-c]*        # List all files beginning with a, b, or c
ls -l ?             # List all one-character file names
ls ?                # List the file whose name is question mark
ls '????'           # List the file whose name is three question marks
v=/usr/ast          # Use shell variable v
ls -l $v            # Use shell variable v
PS1='Hi! '          # Change the primary prompt to Hi!
PS2='More: '        # Change the secondary prompt to More:
ls -l $HOME         # List the home directory
echo $PATH          # Echo the search path
if ... then ... else ... fi # If statement
for ... do ... done # Iterate over argument list
while ... do ... done # Repeat while condition holds
case ... esac       # Select clause based on condition
echo $?             # Echo exit status of previous command
echo $$             # Echo shell’s pid
echo $#             # Echo number of parameters (shell script)
echo $2             # Echo second parameter (shell script)
echo $*             # Echo all parameters (shell script)
```

Command: shar – shell archiver
Syntax:    shar file ...
Flags:     (none)
Examples:  shar *.c >s               # Collect C programs in shell archive
           sh <s                  # Extract files from a shell archive

The named files are collected together into a shell archive written onto standard output. The individual files can be extracted by redirecting the shell archive into the shell. The advantage of shar over ar is that shar archives can be read on
almost any UNIX system, whereas numerous, incompatible versions of ar are in widespread use. Extracting the files from a shell archive requires that gres is accessible. In the distribution, gres is in /user/bin rather than /usr/bin.

**Command: size** – print text, data, and bss size of a program  
**Syntax:** \texttt{size [file] ...}  
**Flags:** (none)  
**Example:** \texttt{size file} \# Print the size of file  
The text, data, bss, and total sizes for each argument are printed. If no arguments are present, \texttt{a.out} is assumed. The amount of memory available for combined stack and data segment growth is printed in the column “stack.” This is the value manipulated by the \texttt{chmem} command. The total amount of memory allocated to the program when it is loaded is listed under “memory.” This value is just the sum of the other four columns.

**Command: sleep** – suspend execution for a given number of seconds  
**Syntax:** \texttt{sleep seconds}  
**Flags:** (none)  
**Example:** \texttt{sleep 10} \# Suspend execution for 10 sec.  
The caller is suspended for the indicated number of seconds. This command is typically used in shell scripts.

**Command: sort** – sort a file of ASCII lines  
**Syntax:** \texttt{sort [-bcdfmnru] [-tx] [-o name] [+pos1] [-pos2] file ...}  
**Flags:**  
\texttt{-b} Skip leading blanks when making comparisons  
\texttt{-c} Check to see if a file is sorted  
\texttt{-d} Dictionary order: ignore punctuation  
\texttt{-f} Fold upper case onto lower case  
\texttt{-i} Ignore nonASCII characters  
\texttt{-m} Merge presorted files  
\texttt{-n} Numeric sort order  
\texttt{-o} Next argument is output file  
\texttt{-r} Reverse the sort order  
\texttt{-t} Following character is field separator  
\texttt{-u} Unique mode (delete duplicate lines)  
**Examples:**  
\texttt{sort -nr file} \# Sort keys numerically, reversed  
\texttt{sort +2 -4 file} \# Sort using fields 2 and 3 as key  
\texttt{sort +2 -t: -o out} \# Field separator is :  
\texttt{sort +.3 -.6} \# Characters 3 through 5 form the key
Sort sorts one or more files. If no files are specified, standard input is sorted. Output is written on standard output, unless -o is specified. The options +pos1 -pos2 use only fields pos1 up to but not including pos2 as the sort key, where a field is a string of characters delimited by spaces and tabs, unless a different field delimiter is specified with -t. Both pos1 and pos2 have the form m.n where m tells the number of fields and n tells the number of characters. Either m or n may be omitted.

Command: **split** - split a large file into several smaller files
Syntax: `split [-n] [file [prefix]]`
Flags: `-n` Number of lines per piece (default: 1000)
Examples: `split -200 file` # Split file into pieces of 200 lines each
`split file z` # Split file into zaa, zab, etc.

*Split* reads file and writes it out in n-line pieces. By default, the pieces are called xaa, xab, etc. The optional second argument can be used to provide an alternative prefix for the output file names.

Command: **stty** - set terminal parameters
Syntax: `stty [option ...]`
Flags: (none)
Examples: `stty -echo` # Suppress echoing of input
`stty erase #` # Set the erase character to #

When given no arguments, stty prints the current terminal parameters. It can also be used to set the parameters, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cbreak</td>
<td>- Enter <em>cbreak</em> mode; erase and kill disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>echo</td>
<td>- Echo input on the terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nl</td>
<td>- Accept only line feed to end lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raw</td>
<td>- Enter <em>raw</em> mode; no input processing at all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabs</td>
<td>- Output tabs (do not expand to spaces)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erase c</td>
<td>- Set erase character (initially backspace)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int c</td>
<td>- Set interrupt (SIGINT) character (initially DEL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill c</td>
<td>- Set kill line character (initially @)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit c</td>
<td>- Set quit (SIGQUIT) character (initially CTRL-A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>- Set options back to original values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first five options may be prefixed by - as in `-tabs` to turn the option off. The next four options each have a single character parameter separated by a space from the option. The **default** option sets the mode and the four settable characters back to the values they had when the system was booted. It is useful when a rogue program has messed them up.
Command: su – temporarily log in as super-user or another user
Syntax: su [name]
Flags: (none)
Examples: su
        # Become super-user
        su ast
        # Become ast

Su can be used to temporarily login as another user. It prompts for the super-user password. If the correct password is entered, su creates a shell with the desired uid. If no name is specified, root is assumed. To exit the temporary shell, type CTRL-D.

Command: sum – compute the checksum and block count of a file
Syntax: sum file
Flags: (none)
Examples: sum /user/ast/xyz
          # Checksum /user/ast/xyz

Sum computes the checksum of one or more files. It is most often used to see if a file copied from another machine has been correctly received. This program works best when both machines use the same checksum algorithm.

Command: sync – flush the cache to disk
Syntax: sync
Flags: (none)
Example: sync
          # Write out all modified cache blocks

MINIX maintains a cache of recently used disk blocks. The sync command writes any modified cache blocks back to the disk. This is essential before stopping the system, and should be done before running any a.out program that might crash the system.

Command: tail – print the last few lines of a file
Syntax: tail [-n] [file] ...
Flags: -n How many lines to print
Examples: tail -6
          # Print 6 lines of standard input
          tail -1 file1 file2
          # Print last line of two files

The last few lines of one or more files are printed. The default count is 10 lines. The default file is standard input.
Command: **tar** – tape archiver  
**Syntax:** `tar [cxtv] tarfile file ...`

**Flags:**
- `-c` Create a new archive
- `-t` Print a table listing the archive’s contents
- `-v` Verbose mode—tell what is going on as it happens
- `-x` The named files are extracted from the archive

**Examples:**
- `tar c /dev/fd1 file1 file2` # Create a two-file archive
- `tar x /dev/fd1 file1 file2` # Extract two files from the archive

*Tar* is an archiver in the style of the standard tape archiver, except that it does not use tape. It’s primary advantage over *ar* is that the *tar* format is somewhat more standardized than the *ar* format, making it theoretically possible to transport MINIX files to another computer, but do not bet on it. If the target machine runs MS-DOS, try *doswrite*.

Command: **tee** – divert standard input to a file  
**Syntax:** `tee [-ai] file ...`

**Flags:**
- `-a` Append to the files, rather than overwriting
- `-i` Ignore interrupts

**Examples:**
- `cat file1 file2 | tee x` # Save and display two files
- `pr file | tee x | lpr` # Save the output of *pr* on *x*

*Tee* copies standard input to standard output. It also makes copies on all the files listed as arguments.

Command: **time** – report how long a command takes  
**Syntax:** `time command`

**Flags:** (none)

**Examples:**
- `time a.out` # Report how long *a.out* takes
- `time ls -l *.*` # Report how long the command takes

The command is executed and the real time, user time, and system time (in seconds) are printed.

Command: **touch** – update a file’s time of last modification  
**Syntax:** `touch [-c] file ...`

**Flags:**
- `-c` Do not create the file

**Example:**
- `touch *.h` # Make the *.h* files look recent

The time of last modification is set to the current time. This command is mostly used to trick *make* into thinking that a file is more recent than it really is. If the file being touched does not exist, it is created, unless the `-c` flag is present.
Command: tr – translate character codes
Syntax: tr [-cds] [string1] [string2]
Flags:  
`-c` Complement the set of characters in string1  
`-d` Delete all characters specified in string1  
`-s` Squeeze all runs of characters in string1 to one character
Examples: tr "[a-z]" "[A-Z]" <x >y  # Convert upper case to lower case  
tr -d "0123456789" <f1 >f2  # Delete all digits from f1

Tr performs simple character translation. When no flag is specified, each character in string1 is mapped onto the corresponding character in string2.

Command: true – exit with the value true
Syntax: true
Flags: (none)
Example: while true  # List the directory until DEL is hit  
do ls -l  
done

This command returns the value true. It is used for shell programming.

Command: umount – unmount a mounted file system
Syntax: /etc/umount special
Flags: (none)
Example: /etc/umount /dev/fd1  # Unmount floppy disk 1

A mounted file system is unmounted after the cache has been flushed to disk. A floppy disk should never be removed while it is mounted. If this happens, and is discovered before another floppy disk is inserted, the original one can be replaced without harm. Attempts to umount a file system holding working directories or open files will be rejected with a “device busy” message.

Command: uniq – delete consecutive identical lines in a file
Syntax: uniq [-cd] [+n] [-n] [input [output]]
Flags:  
`-c` Give count of identical lines in the input  
`-d` Only duplicate lines are written to output  
`-u` Only unique lines are written to output
Examples: uniq +2 file  # Ignore first 2 fields when comparing  
uniq -d inf outf  # Write duplicate lines to outf

Uniq examines a file for consecutive lines that are identical. All but duplicate entries are deleted, and the file is written to output. The +n option skips the first n fields, where a field is defined as a run of characters separated by white space. The -n option skips the first n spaces. Fields are skipped first.
Command: update – periodically write the buffer cache to disk
Syntax: /etc/update
Flags: (none)
Example: /etc/update &  # Start a process that flushes the cache

When the system is booted, update is started up in the background from /etc/rc to issue a SYNC system call every 30 sec.

Command: wc – count characters, words, and lines in a file
Syntax: wc [-elw] file ...
Flags: -c Print character count
       -l Print line count
       -w Print word count
Examples: wc file1 file2  # Print all three counts for both files
          wc -l file     # Print line count only

Wc reads each argument and computes the number of characters, words and lines it contains. A word is delimited by white space (space, tab, or line feed). If no flags are present, all three counts are printed.

C.5. LIBRARIES

The MINIX distribution contains a substantial number of library procedures, including the system call library, stdio, and many others. The procedures are contained in the archive /usr/lib/libc.a.

The archive contains several kinds of procedures, among them procedures called by the compiler that are not normally explicitly called by user programs. For example, when the compiler has to generate code to do multiplication or division on longs, it does not generate in-line code. It calls library procedures instead.

The archive also contains user-callable procedures. The ones corresponding to the system calls have the same parameters as their UNIX counterparts, as do the stdio procedures for the most part. However, there are a few minor exceptions to this rule.

For one thing, to keep them small, many of the standard MINIX programs do not use stdio. To avoid having the stdio package loaded with these (and all) programs, the C run-time start-off routine, crsso, (which is loaded with all C programs), does not flush stdio’s internal buffers when the main program returns to it after completion. User programs that use stdio should therefore make the call _cleanup();

before exiting or returning from the main program. (Note the underscore, which is part of the name.)
Another minor difference between MINIX stdio and UNIX stdio is how buffering of stdout is done. The MINIX version collects all the characters generated by each call to printf (or fprintf) and makes one WRITE system call per printf.

For noninteractive programs such as ls it is more efficient not to flush the buffer per printf, but to wait until it fills up. To disable the flushing of stdout on each printf, put the statement

```
setbuf(stdout, buffer);
```

at the beginning of the program, where buffer is an array of characters of size BUFSIZ (defined in stdio.h). When the program exits, it is then essential to make the call

```
fflush(stdout);
```

to flush the final bytes, or alternatively, to call _cleanup to flush all the buffers if more than one output file has been used.

The header file stdio.h is located in /usr/include, along with several other common header files.

The version of printf provided lacks some of the more exotic options of V7. One clear difference however, is that V7 accepts both %D and %ld for printing longs. MINIX only accepts the former. Similarly, MINIX only accepts %O and %X for printing longs in octal and hex.

The other library procedures, such as abs, malloc, and strcmp, have the same parameters as the corresponding V7 procedures, and they perform the same function. Space limitations make it impossible to provide detailed documentation here about them. To see which procedures are available, type

```
ar tv /usr/lib/libc.a | mined
```

### C.6. FILE FORMATS

In this section we will describe the format of several important files: executable files, archives, and library modules.

#### C.6.1. Executable File Format (a.out files)

An executable file consists of three parts: a header, the program text and the initialized data. The uninitialized data (the so-called bss segment) is not present in the executable file.

Two memory models are supported by the operating system. The small model has up to 64K memory total, for text, data, and stack. The separate I and D space model has 64K for the text and an additional 64K for data plus stack.

There is no space between the header and text or between the text and data,
except that for a separate I and D program, the text size must be a multiple of 16 bytes, the last 0 to 15 of which may be padding. The normal header is 32 bytes and is the same as that of PC-IX. It consists of eight longs as follows:

0: 0x04100301L (small model), or 0x04200301L (separate I and D)
1: 0x00000020L (32-byte header), or 0x00000030L (48-byte header)
2: size of text segment in bytes
3: size of initialized data in bytes
4: size of bss in bytes
5: 0x00000000L
6: total memory allocated to program
7: 0x00000000L

An alternative 48-byte header is also acceptable, and consists of the standard header followed by 16 bytes that are ignored. The longs are stored with the low-order byte first, so the first byte of the file is 0x01 and the next one is 0x03.

One of the fields in the header is the total amount of space that the program will be allocated when it is executed. It is equal to the sum of the text, data, bss, and dynamic allocation. (For separate I and D programs, it is the sum of the data, bss, and dynamic allocation only). The dynamic allocation is the total amount of memory reserved for the stack plus growth of the data segment. The dynamic allocation can be changed with the chmem command, which just updates long 6 in the header.

C.6.2. Archive Format

The archive format consists of a sequence of (header, file) pairs, with the magic number 0177545 prepended to the beginning of the file. Each file header consists of 26 bytes as follows (sizes in parentheses):

name (14) - File name
time ( 4) - Time of last modification
uid ( 1) - Used id (truncated to 1 byte)
gid ( 1) - Group id
mode ( 2) - File mode (protection bits)
size ( 4) - File length

If a file has an odd number of bytes, a zero byte is added at the end so that each header begins at an even address. The zero byte is not included in the size field. The two longs in the header are stored with the high-order word first, in order to be V7 compatible.

C.6.3. Library Format

The MINIX library format consists of an archive of compact assembly code files. Each file in the archive normally contains just one procedure, although in a few cases two or three closely related procedures are in the same file. Each
symbol that is to be visible outside the file must be declared in a .define statement. All the .define statements must occur at the start of the file, with no other statements before them. These statements are generated only when the C compiler is called with the -LIB flag.

Compact assembly code can be generated from ordinary ASCII assembly code by using the filter libpack. Compact assembly code can be turned back into ASCII by using the filter libupack. If a file is packed and then unpacked, the result will not be identical to the original because comments and excess white space are removed during the packing and cannot be restored. The resulting file will assemble into exactly the same binary file, however.

The packing algorithm relies on the fact that input to the assembler is a sequence of bytes, but only codes 0 to 127 (the ASCII character set) are used. What libpack does is recognize commonly occurring strings, and replace them with codes 128 to 255. For example, code 128 is push ax, code 129 is ret, code 130 is mov bp,sp, and so on. The exact list of strings mapped can be found by looking at the source of libpack or libupack. In theory, any file can be compacted, but if none of the approximately 120 built in strings occur in the file, the output will be identical to the input.

The advantage of this scheme over, say, a Huffman code is that an archive may contain some packed files and some unpacked files. They need not be distinguished in any way. Asld has been programmed to expand code 128 into push ax whenever it occurs, and so forth. If only ASCII codes appear in the input, no expansion occurs and no harm is done.
This appendix is intended for those readers who wish to modify MINIX or its utilities. In the following pages we will tell what the various files do and how the pieces are put together to form the whole.

One major problem is that some readers will undoubtedly want to use MINIX itself as the development system, others will want to use MS-DOS, and yet others will want to use one of the many UNIX systems available for the IBM PC (or even for other computers). Unfortunately, these systems all differ slightly, which gives rise to problems.

As a simple example, no two C compilers accept exactly the same dialect of C, and no two of them produce the same a.out file format. Furthermore, each assembler for the 8088 has its own input syntax and pseudoinstructions. Consequently this appendix is not a cookbook (Joy of MINIX). All we can do is try to provide enough background information to enable the aspiring implementer to tackle any problems that arise.

MINIX was developed on an IBM PC-XT using PC-IX. If that system is used as the development system, few problems will be encountered. If a 640K PC with two 360K drives is available, MINIX itself can be used as the development system. With a little bit of work, other systems can also be used. MS-DOS is not needed, except for formatting new diskettes.

Before modifying MINIX it is strongly recommended that you gain experience using it. Try running the programs in Appendix C, especially cp, df, mkdir, mkfs, mount, rm, and umount, all of which will be heavily used during
implementation. Try to recompile the original system in your own environment, to see how that is done. Only then is it sensible to begin modifying MINIX. It is probably easiest to work as root when modifying the system.

D.1. INTRODUCTION

A running MINIX system consists of three or four diskettes: the boot diskette, the root file system, the /usr file system (normally mounted on drive 0), and optionally the /user file system (mounted on drive 1, if available). All of these pieces are independent. You can construct one or more new file systems to use with the original operating system, which is on the boot diskette, or you can build a new operating system to use with the original file systems. You can also modify some, but not all, of the file systems. Each one is self contained.

The boot diskette contains the executable image of the operating system, as well as the file system checker, fsck. When the PC is booted from it, the operating system is loaded into memory at address 1536 and fsck is loaded just after it, typically at an address of about 85K.

Control is initially passed to fsck, which displays the menu and waits for a command. If the command specifies that a file system is to be checked or an empty file system is to be built, fsck performs the work and then displays the menu again. If the command is an equal sign, fsck jumps to address 1536 to start MINIX. The memory occupied by fsck will shortly be overwritten by the root file system on the RAM disk.

The boot diskette is built by a program called build, which concatenates six programs in a special way, removing headers, padding pieces out to multiples of 16 bytes, and making certain patches to the resulting file. The six programs are: (1) the boot block, (2) the kernel, (3) the memory manager, (4) the file system, (5) the system initializer, and (6) the file system checker. Each of these programs is compiled and linked independently of the others. It is thus possible to change the file system, for example, without having to touch the kernel at all, not even to relink it. We will discuss how each of these programs is made and how build works later in this appendix.

File systems, including the root file system, /usr, and /user, can be made using mkfs. It is also possible to make an empty file system using the fsck menu, mount the file system, and then copy files to it. Existing file systems can be modified by mounting them, and then copying files to them or removing files from them.

The only difference between a file system intended as the root file system and one intended as /usr or /user is the size. When a file system is created, either by mkfs or by fsck, the number of blocks and i-nodes is written into its super-block and cannot be changed. A file system intended for /usr or /user will normally use 360 blocks, but one intended as the root file system will usually be smaller, to avoid tying up so much memory for RAM disk. The RAM disk size is
determined dynamically when the system is booted by simply reading the root file system’s super-block to see how big it is. (Throughout this appendix it will be assumed that both the block size and zone size are 1K, and little distinction will be made between blocks and zones.)

The MINIX sources contain nine directories with code and header files, and one directory, doc, containing some documentation. The code and header directories are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kernel</td>
<td>- process, message, and I/O device handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm</td>
<td>- the memory manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fs</td>
<td>- the file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>- the headers used by the operating system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lib</td>
<td>- the library routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tools</td>
<td>- miscellaneous tools and utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commands</td>
<td>- the commands (e.g., cp, grep, ls)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test</td>
<td>- programs for testing MINIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>- the headers used by the commands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We will look at each of these directories in detail as we need them. Some of the directories contain subdirectories containing assembly code or other files specific to one compiler or operating system.

Setting Up

Before trying to carry out the instructions contained in this appendix, you should read it all the way through to get a reasonable grasp of what you have to do and why. In fact, it is a good idea to run build to make a new boot diskette using the binaries supplied (see Section D.5) before trying to recompile any of the parts of the operating system.

It will be tacitly assumed throughout this appendix that the development is being done on a PC with two 360K diskettes. For PC/ATs with a single 1.2M diskette, the procedure is slightly different, as noted in a few places. Furthermore, all references to diskette sizes of 360 blocks should be replaced by 1200 blocks for 1.2M diskettes.

MINIX is a large program. Unless you are a professional software developer, it is likely to be an order of magnitude larger than any program you have ever written. Many of the complications involved in recompiling it occur because the sources do not fit on a single diskette. This fact permeates every facet of the implementer’s work.

To start with, you will need a large number of blank diskettes to hold the sources, intermediate files, executable programs, and new file systems. These diskettes should be standard IBM-compatible, double-sided, double-density, 360K diskettes. Before starting, format at least 10 diskettes with the format program of MS-DOS 2.0 or a later version. Format more diskettes as you need them. All diskettes must be formatted before being used.
The MINIX sources as distributed contain 9 directories with programs in them. As mentioned above, they are called kernel, mm, fs, h, lib, tools, commands, test, and include. To rebuild the operating system, you will need the first six; to rebuild the file systems you will need the last six. The directories h, lib, and tools are needed for both.

Before starting work, you should copy the information from the source diskettes to the newly formatted blank diskettes in a special way. The originals can then be put away for safe keeping. For each source diskette, make as many copies of it as there are directories on it. For example, for a diskette containing directories a, b, c, make three copies of it. This can be done by inserting the source diskette in drive 0 and the blank diskette in drive 1 (unmounted), and typing

```
cp /dev/fd0 /dev/fd1
```

Now remove directories b and c from the first copy, directories a and c from the second copy, and directories a and b from the third copy. The result will be that each directory will be on a diskette by itself. Finally, copy the h directory and all its files to the kernel, mm, and fs diskettes. The h directory should be at the top level, not a subdirectory of kernel etc. because files are included as ..:/h/const.h and so on.

On a system with only 1 drive, first put an empty MINIX file system on each blank diskette using mkfs. Then remove everything from the root file system except cp, mount a source diskette, and copy as much of it as possible to the RAM disk. The df program can be put in /bin to keep track of available space. Then unmount the source diskette and mount the new (empty) diskette in its place, copying the files from the root device to it. Repeat several times until everything has been copied.

When doing the development on a single drive PC/AT, it will also be necessary to create directories bin and lib on each source diskette, and copy some files from /usr/bin and /usr/lib to each one. That way, no matter which source diskette is mounted on /usr at any instant, all the necessary binaries and libraries will be available.

Some directories contain subdirectories called MINIX, PCIX, and C86. These directories contain assembly language files, makefiles, etc. that differ from system to system. If you are going to use MINIX as the development system, move all the files in the MINIX directory into the directory one level above it. For example, kernel/MINIX/makefile becomes kernel/makefile.

Similarly, if you are going to use PC-IX (or some other version of UNIX such as XENIX), use the files from PCIX. If you plan to use MS-DOS, use the C86 directory. Although these files are specifically for the Computer Innovations C86 compiler, they are a better starting point for other MS-DOS compilers than the MINIX or PC-IX files. If you are using a system other than MINIX, PC-IX or MS-DOS with the C86 compiler, you will probably have to make minor changes to some of these files.
Once you have made a choice of subdirectory and moved its files one level up, remove all the subdirectories because every block of space will be needed later.

We now encounter the first obstacle thrown up by the large size of MINIX. The commands directory is too large to fit on a single diskette. Logically, it is a single directory, but when using floppy disks it will be necessary to split it up onto multiple diskettes, each one having a single directory, commands, at the top level, and holding some of the programs. Do not fill the diskettes completely full; at least 100K should be left unused on each one. The choice of which commands go on which diskette is unimportant.

A few programs need files from the include directory that are not contained in /usr/lib/include. These are contained on one of the source diskettes. Other programs need files from h. These should be copied to the relevant diskette when their absence is noted by the compiler.

Implementers with a hard disk should create a directory minix on the hard disk and then create and load the nine subdirectories. As with the floppy disk systems, for each directory with subdirectories, one of them should be chosen and its contents placed in the directory. None of the subdirectories should be created on the hard disk.

The tools directory contains two or three programs that may be needed during the development process: dos2out, build, and mkfs. The first one, dos2out, converts MS-DOS .EXE files to MINIX format. It is only needed when MS-DOS is being used as the development system. The second one, build, puts together the compiled and linked pieces of MINIX to form the boot diskette. The third one, mkfs, builds MINIX file systems. To build a MINIX file system, you must use this version of mkfs. Accept no substitutes. Although mkfs is needed in both commands and in tools, its source is only included in the distribution once, so you have to get it into both directories by copying it.

Compile these programs to run on your development system, and use as directed. If your development system is MINIX or PC-IX, you will not need dos2out. If it is MS-DOS, compile these three programs with the flag -DDOS, for example,

```
cc -c -DDOS mkfs.c
```

After all these steps have been carried out, the original diskette distribution should be put away and all subsequent work done with the directory-per-diskette copies.

### D.2. THE LIBRARY

The operating system and many of the commands use library procedures. These procedures must be linked in when the binary (i.e., executable) program is made. To speed up linking, they are precompiled, and kept in a library from
which the linker extracts them. The following sections deal with how the library
is built and maintained.

If you are using MINIX as the development system, it is not necessary to build
the library. A complete, properly ordered MINIX library is already present as the
archive /usr/lib/libc.a. Just use it.

D.2.1. Internal Compiler Procedures

The necessary library procedures can be divided into two disjoint categories: user-callable procedures and internal compiler procedures. The user-callable procedures include the system call library procedures such as open, read, and fork, the standard I/O library procedures, such as fopen, getc, and printf, and miscellaneous procedures, such as atoi, isatty, and strcmp. The sources for all these procedures are provided in the distribution. They merely need to be compiled and put in the library.

The other category is much harder to deal with. Nearly all C compilers use library procedures as part of the generated code. For example, many C compilers do not compile in-line code for multiplication and division on longs. Instead they call the library routines lmul and ldiv. Similarly, the first or second instruction of each compiled C procedure is often a call to csv, which saves the registers and reserves storage for the local variables on the stack.

These internal procedures are written for use with one specific compiler. The version of lmul provided in the library that comes with compiler X is almost guaranteed not to work with compiler Y due to different calling conventions, assumptions about which registers it may and may not destroy, and so on. For this reason, none of the sources for the internal procedures are provided in the distribution. You have to use those that come with your compiler.

However, using the library that comes with your compiler can lead to serious problems. That library not only contains the small internal procedures, such as lmul, which are basically harmless, but it also contains the system call procedures such as read, which make foreign operating system calls. For example, if you were to compile and link one of the MINIX utilities with an MS-DOS compiler, the binary program produced might contain MS-DOS system calls, which would not work when the program ran on MINIX.

Thus we are faced with a situation in which the user-callable procedures must be derived from the supplied sources, but the internal procedures must be those that go with the particular compiler being used. The solution is to first compile the MINIX library sources and put them in the MINIX library. Then the necessary internal compiler procedures are extracted from the library supplied with the compiler and added to the MINIX library. When a MINIX program is linked, only the MINIX library is specified, thus preventing accidental use of a procedure that might make a foreign system call.

One problem with this approach is that in order to extract the compiler's internal procedures from the library, you must know which ones they are. For
the PC-IX and C86 compilers, the necessary procedures are listed below. For other compilers, the only way to find out is to initially assume that none are needed, and try compiling some programs. If the compiler generates calls to internal procedures, these will be flagged by the linker as undefined external symbols. The necessary procedures can then be extracted from the compiler's library, inspected to make sure they contain no system calls, and added to the MINIX library. This process may have to be iterated several times before all of them have been pinpointed. To speed up the process, write a test program that does addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and modulo on short integers, unsigned integers, and long integers, and try compiling and linking it.

This is an important point, so we will repeat it. Never link a MINIX program with any library other than the MINIX library, and never put any procedure in the MINIX library unless you are sure that it makes no system calls. Accidentally linking into a MINIX program a procedure that makes an MS-DOS, PC-IX, XENIX, or other foreign system call will lead to sure disaster. (Modifying MINIX so that it can handle not only all its own system calls, but also those of MS-DOS, PC-IX, and XENIX as well is left as an exercise for the reader who has a spare decade to kill.)

The directory /usr/lib contains three assembly language files, crtsos, end.s, and head.s. The first one, crtsos, is the C run-time start-off procedure. It must be the first procedure in any binary program. When a program gets control after an EXEC system call, execution always begins at address 0, which must be the start of crtsos. This little routine puts argc, argv, and envp on the stack properly, and calls _main.

It also defines some compiler-dependent labels needed to mark the start of the text, data, and bss segments. The file end.s defines the labels needed at the end of these segments. When cc is called with the argument file.s, the command that is actually executed is

```
asld /usr/lib/crtso.s file.s /usr/lib/libc.a /usr/lib/end.s
```

The file head.s is analogous to crtsos, but is only used for linking the memory manager, the file system, and init, because they are started off directly by the kernel, not by an EXEC system call.

### D.2.2. Ordering the Procedures in the Library

Another issue that arises when building the library is the ordering of the procedures in it. Some linkers do not care about the order, but others do. Most linkers are one pass, which means that as the linker examines each procedure in the library, it makes the decision to extract it or not based on the information it has at that instant.

To see what consequences this strategy has for library ordering, consider a program that calls getc to get the next input character. The procedure getc calls read. If read happens to be placed before getc in the library, when the linker
processes read while scanning the library, it will not extract it because it is not used in the user’s program. When the linker comes to getc, it will extract it and see that getc calls read. As it continues to scan the library, the linker will keep an eye out for read, but it will never find it and will eventually terminate the link with a message saying that read is an undefined symbol.

The obvious solution is to order all library procedures in such a way that if X calls Y, then X is located before Y in the library. It is easy to dream up situations where such an ordering is impossible, for example, X calls Y, Y calls Z, and Z calls X. Fortunately, in practice such situations rarely occur. On UNIX systems, the lorder command can be used to order the modules in a library.

Another factor to be taken into account when ordering the library is performance. Some linkers stop scanning a library when they have found all the procedures that they need. This observation leads to the goal of placing the most commonly used procedures as early as possible in the library.

D.2.3. Assembly Language Procedures

Although nearly all of the MINIX library is written in C, a handful of procedures had to be written in assembly language. Some of these procedures are not located in the directory lib itself, but in one of its subdirectories. If you have followed the instructions given above, you will have already copied the files from one of the subdirectories into lib.

Another point concerning the assembly code is the peculiar property that some C compilers have of not handling long names the same way as their own assemblers. When confronted with the name catchsig, for example, virtually all C compilers will prepend an underscore and then truncate the result to eight characters, yielding _catchsi as the external symbol. When the name _catchsig is used in an assembly routine, most assemblers will also truncate it to eight characters, yielding the same name, but a few of them do not truncate it, resulting in an undefined symbol _catchsig used by the assembly language file but defined nowhere. If you discover undefined symbols of this kind, the solution is to edit the assembly code files and truncate all symbols to eight characters by hand.

At least one compiler does not prepend the underscore, but attaches it after the name. In the above example, the external symbol would be catchsig. Again, the assembly code files must then be manually edited to make the names agree with what the C compiler generates.

D.2.4. Step-by-Step Instructions

The library sources are contained in the archive libsrc.a rather than as separate files (to save space on the distribution diskette). Extract them and delete the archive by typing:

ar x libsrc.a; rm libsrc.a
Compile all the C files and assemble all the assembly code files in *lib*, but do not link them. If the work is being done on UNIX, the shell script *run* can be used. If the work is being done on MINIX, nothing needs to be done. The library */usr/lib/libc.a* on the */usr* diskette is complete and ready for use.

At this point you will have over 100 object files. The next step is to augment this collection by extracting the necessary internal compiler routines from the compiler's own library. Below is a list of files that probably need to be extracted for the PC-IX and C86 compilers:

PC-IX    - *ldiv.o, lmul.o, lrem.o, aldiv.o, almul.o, alrem.o, divsub.o*

C86      - *zldivmod, ziswitch, zfloatpp, zlrsshift, zllshift, zlmul, zlrushift*
            *zsswitch, zentry*

If the MINIX C compiler is being used, no procedures need to be extracted since everything that is needed is already in the library.

The procedures *csv* and *cret* need special care. Some compilers use them for procedure entry and exit, and others do not. If your compiler uses them, be sure to check to see that they do not make system calls. Some versions of *csv* check for stack overflow, and call *write* to report the problem. If this is the case, you will have to program new versions that do not do the checking. In most cases these procedures are only a few instructions. An example is given in the file *csv.s*, which can be used with PC-IX.

Once all the object files have been assembled, the order must be determined based on who calls whom. The command

```
ar t /usr/lib/libc.a > listing
```

gives the order of the MINIX library, which is a good starting point for other compilers. With UNIX the library, */usr/lib/libc.a*, is built using the archiver, *ar*.

One last note. Most compilers produce *.o* files as the final compilation step. The MINIX C compiler produces only *.s* (assembly code) files, which are then put in the library. The MINIX assembler-loader expects *.s* files rather than *.o* files. When using the MINIX compiler, for example, to recompile library procedures that have been modified, the -*LIB* and -*e* flags are required in order to get the proper *define* pseudoinstructions into the output files.

###  D.3. MAKING NEW FILE SYSTEMS

MINIX uses several file systems: the root file system, */usr*, and possibly */user*. All of these are constructed the same way. The following sections describe how to make new file systems for MINIX.
D.3.1. Concepts

There are no hard and fast rules about which programs should go on the root file system diskette and which should go elsewhere, except that login and sh must go in /bin because init expects them there. In general, programs that are heavily used should be put in the root file system, because the root file system goes on the RAM disk. At least 50K should be left free so temporary files can be created in /tmp.

An important issue is how large to make the root file system. The larger it is, the less room there is in memory for user programs. For 640K computers, a 240K RAM disk is reasonable. The only difference between the distributions for 256K and 640K PC's is the size of the root file system and its consequences, such as the impossibility of having all the utilities online with only 256K.

The general strategy for making new file systems is to first compile and link all the programs that are to go on the new file system. If need be, the executable files will have to be converted to MINIX format. Then the mkfs program is run to build a new file system, usually on a diskette, but possibly as a hard disk file.

MINIX supports two memory models: small model and separate instruction and data space model. In the former, a maximum of 64K is allowed for the entire program. In the latter, a maximum of 64K is allowed for the program text, and an additional 64K is allowed for the data and stack combined. No other models are supported, to encourage programmers to write small, modular programs. The current assembler-loader does not generate separate I and D space programs, but when large programs are set up with separate I and D space by another compiler (e.g., on PC-IX), the operating system can handle them.

Any C compiler can be used to compile the commands, but it is essential that they be linked only with the MINIX library, as discussed in the previous section. Accidentally linking in a library procedure that makes a foreign system call will almost certainly lead to an unexpected kernel trap.

When MINIX executes a program, it loads the program into memory and then transfers control to address 0. Address 0 must contain the C run-time start-off procedure, crs0. This procedure arranges for argc, argv, and envp to be pushed onto the stack using the standard C calling sequence so that main can access them. Because crs0 is the first procedure that the linker sees, it must contain directives to define the various segments used. These differ from compiler to compiler so several versions are provided.

All executable programs must be in MINIX format, as described in Appendix C. If an MS-DOS compiler is used, the resulting .EXE file will not be in MINIX format and thus cannot be executed by MINIX. A program, dos2out is provided in the tools directory to read a .EXE file and write a new file in MINIX format.

This conversion is not entirely trivial. The header format used for .EXE files does not include the text size, which MINIX needs. In order to force this information into the .EXE header, the crs0 file used for MS-DOS (C86 compiler) forces the symbol DGROUP to be relocatable, thus getting its origin into the
header. Since \textit{DGROUP} is at the start of the data, its value is the size of the text. The utility \textit{dos2out} expects \textit{DGROUP} to be the only relocatable symbol.

It is normal in the UNIX world for C compilers to gather all the uninitialized variables, structures, and arrays together into the bss part of the data segment, following the initialized data. This scheme results in an executable program file whose size is equal to the sum of the sizes of the header, text, and initialized data. For example, a program with 3K text, 1K initialized data, and an uninitialized 50K array will have an executable file of about 4K. The bss area is set to zero by MINIX when the program is executed.

Unfortunately, some MS-DOS compilers do not distinguish between initialized and uninitialized data. They treat all variables as initialized data. If the above program were compiled with one of these compilers, the executable program would occupy about 54K of space on the disk, rather than 4K. Use of such a compiler will greatly limit the number of programs that can be kept in /bin and /usr/bin. If your compiler has this property, you are advised to replace it with one that does not.

The general strategy for making a new file system is to first compile all the commands that are to be put on it. These may well be spread over several diskettes. When all the compilations have been completed, and all the files converted to MINIX format, if need be, the resulting executable MINIX files should be gathered together in a single directory, conventionally \texttt{commands/bin}. On a system without a hard disk, a new diskette should be formatted and the directory \texttt{commands/bin} made on it. Then all the executable files should be copied there. A directory \texttt{tools} should also be put on the diskette, and loaded with \texttt{mkfs} and the prototype file.

A file system is made by running \texttt{mkfs}. If you are working on PC-IX, MS-DOS, or some other system, be sure to run the MINIX version of \texttt{mkfs} compiled for that system, not the version compiled for MINIX, and certainly not the \texttt{mkfs} that came with the development system. \texttt{Mkfs} takes a prototype file as described in Appendix C, and builds the new file system. The new file system is normally generated on a diskette, but when using a hard disk, it can also be written onto a file, and copied to a diskette later.

The above process should be repeated for each file system to be made. Once all the file systems have been constructed, MINIX can be run, and several file systems merged by copying the files. This last step may be required in order to make a file system that is full down to the last block because a diskette containing executable programs and \texttt{mkfs} cannot hold a full 360K worth of programs—\texttt{mkfs} also takes up some space.

\subsection*{D.3.2. Step-by-Step Instructions}

The first step is to make the library, as described in D.2. Next, the programs to be compiled should be gathered together in the directory \texttt{commands}. On a system without a hard disk, the programs will have to be spread over several
diskettes in order to leave enough room on each for the h and include directories, as well as space for the compiler and linker temporary files.

When using MINIX as the development system, a program can be compiled by typing

```
cc -I/usr/lib/include prog.c
```

(assuming the include files are located in /usr/lib/include, where they normally are). The proper run-time start-off routine and libraries are automatically used.

When using PC-IX or another UNIX system for building the file system, the procedure is slightly different, in order to use the MINIX run-time start-off routine and the MINIX library instead of the native one. Compile, but do not link each program in commands, by typing

```
cc -c -O prog.c
```

To link commands/prog.o from inside the commands directory and put the resulting executable file on bin/prog, type

```
l1d -s -o bin/prog .../lib/crtso.o prog.o ../lib/libc.a ../lib/end.o
```

The -s flag strips off the symbol table to make the binary file smaller. Alternatively, the flag can be omitted and strip used to get rid of the symbol table. An -i flag may be used to specify separate I and D space.

On PC-IX, chmem can now be used to reduce the dynamic allocation size. For many nonrecursive programs that have no local arrays and do not use the BRK system call, directly or indirectly, 1K is adequate for the stack. The command

```
chmem =1024 bin/prog
```

sets it to 1K. Using chmem does not affect the amount of disk space occupied by the program, but does change the amount of memory occupied when the program is executed. Smaller programs mean that more background processes can be running simultaneously. If a program crashes or acts strange, try giving it more stack space with chmem.

With MS-DOS, the exact command used to compile the program depends on the compiler being used. After compilation, linking can be typically performed by the command

```
link .\lib\crtso.obj+prog.obj,prog,listing,.\lib\lib.a
```

After the .EXE file has been built, it must be converted to MINIX form by the command

```
dos2out -d prog
```

which reads PROG.EXE and writes the output on PROG.OUT. The flag -d, which is optional, specifies that PROG.EXE is to be deleted after PROG.OUT has been made.
The subdirectories in commands contain the files makefile and make.bat for use with make and MS-DOS, respectively. To compile and link prog.c on UNIX or MINIX, the call to make is

\[
\text{make f=prog}
\]

The macro \( f \) used in makefile is assumed to contain the name of the program, without the .c suffix. Unlike the make version, the MS-DOS batch file can handle several compilations on a single call, for example

\[
\text{make prog1 prog2 prog3}
\]

When all the programs that will go on the new file system have been compiled and linked, they should be gathered together in a single directory, for example, commands/bin. On a system with only floppy disks, this directory will normally be on a fresh diskette, not the ones containing the sources. An executable version of the program mkfs should also be present.

The directory must also contain the prototype file, as described in Appendix C under the listing for mkfs. This file tells how big the new file system is to be (e.g., 360 blocks for PC diskettes), and how many i-nodes it is to have. Since 32 i-nodes fit in a 1K block, and i-node 0 is not used but occupies space, the number of i-nodes should be one less than a multiple of 32. Typical values are 63, 95, or 127. Examples of prototype files can be found in the distribution as tools/proto.ram (root file system), tools/proto.usr (/usr), and tools/proto.user (/user).

The final step in making a file system is straightforward: just type

\[
\text{mkfs -L special proto >logfile}
\]

where special is a special file, such as /dev/fd0 and proto is the prototype file. The -L flag causes a description of the new file system to be produced on standard output.

After the file system has been made, but before it is put into production, it is a good idea to run MINIX and use chmem to reduce the dynamic allocation area of programs, if this step has not already been taken prior to making the file system.

Not all compilers produce equally good code. Before replacing all the binary programs that come with MINIX, determine whether your compiler produces smaller or larger code by compiling a few programs. If your compiler produces smaller code, it may be worthwhile to recompile all programs to replace the originals. However, if your compiler produces larger code, only recompile programs that you have modified.
D.4. RECOMPILING MINIX

Recompiling the operating system itself is not technically difficult, but its relatively large size requires some care when using a system having only two 360K floppy disks and no hard disk. Before modifying the system, it is strongly recommended that you try recompiling the system as distributed, to learn how to do it. Using a floppy disk based MINIX system, it takes two to three hours to compile and build the entire operating system from scratch.

The bootable image is composed of six parts: the kernel, memory manager, file system, initializer, boot block, and file system checker. You need only recompile those parts you have modified. The binaries of the other parts are already present in tools, and can be used as is. The instructions below tell how to recompile all the parts. Normally only some of them will have to be recompiled.

D.4.1. Concepts

The operating system is contained in three directories: kernel, mm, and fs. In addition, the directory h contains header files used by all three of these. The directory kernel contains the lowest two layers of the system, which do interrupt handling, process management, message passing, and I/O. All the files in this directory are linked into a single executable, binary program, kernel.

Although nearly all of the kernel is written in C, two assembly language files are also needed. They are mpx88.s, which contains the interrupt handlers (i.e., process multiplexing) and klib88.s, which holds several small library routines used only in the kernel.

As mentioned earlier, some compilers truncate long names different from their own assemblers, so if your linker complains about undefined symbols, it may be necessary to edit mpx88.s and klib88.s to truncate all the long names by hand.

If you are using an assembler that does not accept any of the assembly language versions provided, pick the closest one and modify it as need be. Most of the pseudoinstructions are present in all assemblers, sometimes with a different name however. The only one that may not be available everywhere is .ASCIZ, which generates a string terminated by a zero byte. In this case, the zero byte should be made explicit in the argument.

D.4.2. Step-by-Step Instructions

By now you should already have moved mpx88.s and klib88.s from one of the subdirectories to kernel and removed the subdirectories. When using a system with only 360K floppy disks, remove all other directories except kernel and h from the diskette, to provide room for the object files and compiler temporary files.
Now compile or assemble each of the files. On a PC with two diskette drives, the standard /usr file system should be in drive 0 and the kernel diskette should be in drive 1 (mounted on /user). When using MINIX as the development system, the easiest way is just to type

```
make
```

Alternatively the compilations can be done "by hand" by typing

```
cc -c -D18088 -w *.c
```

The -w flag suppresses some irrelevant warning messages that occur because the source code is a compromise between what various compilers expect. This route is somewhat faster because the presence of make itself in memory means that there is not enough space left for both cpp and cem simultaneously. Consequently, the makefile uses the -F and -T. flags to direct the preprocessor output to disk instead of piping it into cem.

With MS-DOS, the make.bat file can also be used, but it should be checked first to see if it is appropriate for the configuration and compiler being used.

If the compilations have been done "by hand," link all the object files into a single executable binary program by just typing

```
make
```

For this step, the library described in Sec. D.2 will be needed, but the source files will not be. The assembler-linker, asld, is smaller than cem, so there is no shortage of memory here. However, it produces a large temporary file, so the makefile removes /lib/cem to make room for it. It can be restored later by mounting the root file system and copying the file from it to /lib.

If the development system is MS-DOS, the kernel binary must now be converted to MINIX format by running dos2out, which can be found in the tools directory of the distribution. The executable kernel file should be named simply kernel.

In a similar manner, compile and link the memory manager. It has no assembly code files, just C files. If /lib/cem has been removed, restore it manually before starting. Then mount the diskette with the mm directory on /user. Copy the h directory there if it is not already present and use the makefile or make.bat file to compile and link the memory manager. Alternatively, do it by hand with the command

```
cc -c -D18088 -w *.c
```

Again, link and convert the final output to MINIX format, if necessary, and call it mm.

Repeat the above process for the file system. Then compile, link, and convert tools/init, putting the result on the file init. At this point you will have four independently compiled and linked files: kernel, mm, fs, and init. Ultimately, these four files will form the operating system.
However, before the boot diskette can be built, two more programs, `fsck` and `bootblok` must be prepared. Both are located in `tools`. `Fsck` has two files, a C file, `fsck.c`, and an assembly language file, `fsckl.s`. `Bootblok` is entirely contained in the assembly code file `bootblok.s`. (The MS-DOS versions of the assembly language files have extension `.asm` rather than `.s`).

To compile `fsck.c`, you need the include files `hlconst.h`, `hi.type.h`, `fslconst.h`, and `fsltype.h`. Furthermore, `fsck.c` is the largest single file in MINIX, and its compilation strains the system space resources to the utmost. Be sure that `/lib/cem` has enough stack space (about 51K) and that there are no unnecessary files anywhere taking up precious disk blocks. The command

```
cc -c -T. fsck.c
```

compiles `fsck.c` using the current directory for the (large) intermediate files. Link `fsck` with the command

```
asld -T. fsckl.s fsck.s /usr/lib/libc.a /usr/lib/end.s
```

Alternatively, just type

```
make fsck
```

Normally it will not be necessary to reassemble `bootblok` since changes to the operating system rarely require changes to the boot block. However, if the boot block must be changed, after assembling and linking it remove the header, for example, using `dd`, so that the first byte of the file is the first instruction. See `tools/makefile` for the command sequence.

### D.5. BUILDING THE BOOT DISKETTE

In this section we will describe how the six independently compiled and linked programs, `bootblok`, `kernel`, `mm`, `fs`, `init`, and `fsck` are forged together to make the boot diskette. The first time you try making a new operating system, use the six binaries provided in `tools`, rather than making new ones.

#### D.5.1. Concepts

The boot diskette contains the six programs mentioned above, in the order given. The boot block occupies the first 512 bytes on the disk. When the computer is turned on, the ROM gets control and tries to read the boot block from drive 0 into memory at address 0x7C00. If this read succeeds, the ROM jumps to address 0x7C00 to start the boot program.

The MINIX boot program first copies itself to an address just below 192K, to get itself out of the way. Then it calls the BIOS repeatedly to load 16 cylinders full of data into memory starting at address 0x600 (1536). This data is the core image of the operating system, followed directly by `fsck`. When the loading is
finished, the boot program jumps to the start of \texttt{fsck}, which then displays the initial menu. If the user types an equal sign, \texttt{fsck} jumps to 1536 to start MINIX.

The boot diskette is generated by \texttt{tools/build}. It takes the six programs listed above and concatenates them in a special way. The first 512 bytes of the boot diskette come from \texttt{bootblok}. If need be, some zero bytes are added to pad \texttt{bootblok} out to 512. \texttt{Bootblok} does not have a header, and neither does the boot diskette because when the ROM loads the boot block to address 0x7C00, it expects the first byte to be the start of the first instruction.

At position 512, the boot diskette contains the kernel, again without a header. Byte 512 of the boot diskette will be placed at memory address 1536 by the boot program, and will be executed as the first MINIX instruction when \texttt{fsck} terminates. After the kernel comes \texttt{mm, fs, init, and fsck}, each padded out to a multiple of 16 bytes so that the next one begins at a click boundary.

Each of the programs may be compiled either with or without separate I and D space. The two models are different, but \texttt{build} explicitly checks to see which model each program uses and handles it. In short, what \texttt{build} does is read six files, stripping the headers off the last five of them, and concatenate them onto the output, rounding the first one up to 512 bytes and the rest up to a multiple of 16 bytes.

After having completed the concatenation of the six files, \texttt{build} makes three patches to the output.

1. The last 4 words of the boot block are set to the number of cylinders to load and the DS, PC, and CS values to use for running \texttt{fsck}. The boot program needs this information so that it can jump to \texttt{fsck} after it has finished loading. Without this information, the boot program would not know where to jump.

2. \texttt{Build} loads the first 8 words of the kernel’s data segment with the CS and DS segment register values for \texttt{kernel, mm, fs, and init}. Without this information, the kernel could not run these programs when the time came: it would not know where they were. It also sets word 4 of the kernel’s text segment to the DS value needed to run the kernel.

3. The origin and size of \texttt{init} are inserted at address 4 of the file system’s data space. The file system needs this information to know where to put the RAM disk, which begins just after the end of \texttt{init}, exactly overwriting the start of \texttt{fsck}.

D.5.2. Step-by-Step Instructions

First, compile, link, and if need be, convert to MINIX format \texttt{bootblok, kernel, mm, fs, init, and fsck} as described above, or better yet, use the ones provided where possible. The file \texttt{bootblok} provided in the distribution has already
been stripped of its header and is ready to use. If for any reason you need to reassemble it, do not forget to strip off the header, as is done in makefile.

If you have not already done so, compile build to run on the development system (see makefile and make.bat). If you are using a computer without a hard disk, collect the six parts of the operating system and build in tools in drive 1.

Next unmount /usr and insert a blank diskette in drive 0. This will be the boot diskette. Now type

build bootblok kernel mm fs init fsck /dev/fd0

On a hard disk system, the command given from tools will probably be

build bootblok ../kernel/kernel ../mm/mm ../fs/fs init fsck /dev/fd0

When build finishes running, the boot diskette will be ready in drive 0 and a printout of the sizes will appear on standard output.

Alternatively, you can just type

make image

to produce a bootable operating system on /dev/fd0. At the time you give the command, you need /usr in drive 0 so make itself can be loaded. Just before build is called, /dev/fd0 is unmounted and you are asked to insert a blank (formatted) diskette in drive 0. It pauses until you hit the return key.

If you wish to use make, you will have to create dummy files fsck.s and init.s to prevent make from trying to reconstruct fsck and init. Before running it for real, give the command

make -n image

to see what make intends to do. If need be, use touch to trick make into doing what you want, rather than what it wants.

D.6. TESTING MINIX

After having built a new version of MINIX, it is a good idea to test it. To aid in this testing, a collection of test programs have been provided on the /user diskette. To use the test programs, bring up the system, except that when it asks you to insert /usr in drive 0, insert /user instead. Now change to /user/test and list the files there. You should find a shell script called run, and a series of executable files called test0, test1, and so on, as well as a few other files used by the test programs. You can run any of the tests individually, or type

run

to run them all. If any errors are encountered, they will be reported. You will have to refer to the source code to see what each error means. The tests are quite comprehensive, and take more than 10 minutes to finish.
D.7. INSTALLING NEW DEVICE DRIVERS

Once you have successfully reached this point, you will now be able to modify MINIX. In general, if a modification only affects, say, the file system, you will not have to recompile the memory manager or kernel. If a modification affects any of the files in $h$, you should recompile the entire system, just to be safe.

One common modification is adding new I/O devices and drivers. To add a new I/O device to MINIX, it is necessary to write a driver for it. The new driver should use the same message interface as the existing ones. The driver should be put in the directory `kernel` and `makefile` or `make.bat` updated, if they are used. In addition, the entry point of the new task must be added to the list contained in the array `task` in `kernel/table.c`. If `dmp.c` is still in use, an entry also has to be made for it in `nayme`.

Two changes are also required in the $h$ directory. In `$h/const.h`, the constant `NR_TASKS` has to be increased by 1, and the new task has to be given a name in `$h/com.h`.

A new special file will have to be created for the driver. This can be done by adding a line to the directory `/dev` in `tools/proto.ram`.

To tell the file system which task is handling the new special file, a line has to be added to the array `dmap` in `fs/table.c`.

D.8. TROUBLESHOOTING

If you modify the system, there is always the possibility that you will introduce an error. In this section, we will discuss some of the more common problems and how to track them down.

To start with, if something is acting strange, turn the computer off and reboot from scratch. This gets everything into a known state. Rebooting with CTRL-ALT-DEL may leave the system in a peculiar state, which may be the cause of the trouble.

If the message

Booting MINIX 1.1

does not appear on the screen after the power-on self-tests have completed, something is wrong with the boot block. The boot block prints this message by calling the BIOS. Make a dump of the first block of the boot diskette and examine it by hand to see if it contains the proper program.

If the above message appears, but the initial menu does not, it is likely that `fsck` is not being started, since the first thing `fsck` does is print the menu. Check the last 6 bytes of the boot block to see if the segment and offset put there by `build` correspond to the address at which `fsck` is located (right after `initi`).

If the menu appears, but the system does not respond to the equal sign,
MINIX is probably being started, but crashing during initialization. One possible cause is the introduction of print statements into the kernel. However, it is not permitted to display anything until after the terminal task has run to initialize itself. Be careful about where you put the print statements.

If the screen has been cleared and the message giving the sizes has appeared, the kernel has initialized itself, the memory manager has run and blocked waiting for a message, and the file system has started running. This message is printed as soon as the file system has read the super-block of the root file system.

If the system appears to hang before or after reading the root file system, some help can be obtained by hitting the F1 or F2 function keys (unless the dump routines have been removed). By hitting F1 twice a few seconds apart and noting the times in the display, it may be possible to see which processes are running. If, for example, *init* is unable to fork, for whatever reason, or cannot open /etc/ttys, or cannot execute /bin/sh or /bin/login, the system will hang, but process 2 (*init*) may continue to use CPU cycles. If the F1 display shows that process 2 is constantly running, it is a good bet that *init* is unable to make a system call or open a file that is essential. The problem can usually be localized by putting statements in the main loops of the file system and memory manager to print a line describing each incoming message and each outgoing reply. Recompile and test the system using the new output as a guide.
MINIX
SOURCE CODE LISTING
/* Copyright (C) 1987 by Prentice-Hall, Inc. The author and publisher
* of this software make no warranty of any kind, express or implied,
* with regard to this software or its documentation. Nor shall they
* be liable for incidental or consequential damages in connection
* with the furnishing, performance, or use of this software or
* documentation. Permission is granted to make a limited number of
* copies of this software for educational or research purposes only.
*/

#define EXTERN extern /* used in *.h files */
#define PRIVATE static /* PRIVATE x limits the scope of x */
#define PUBLIC /* PUBLIC is the opposite of PRIVATE */
#define FORWARD /* some compilers require this to be 'static' */
#define TRUE 1 /* used for turning integers into Booleans */
#define FALSE 0 /* used for turning integers into Booleans */
#define HZ 60 /* clock freq (software settable on IBM-PC) */
#define BLOCK_SIZE 1024 /* # bytes in a disk block */
#define SUPER_USER (uid) 0 /* uid of superuser */
#define MAJOR 8 /* major device = (dev>>MAJOR) & 0377 */
#define MINOR 0 /* minor device = (dev>>MINOR) & 0377 */
#define NR_TASKS 8 /* number of tasks in the transfer vector */
#define NR_PROCS 16 /* number of slots in proc table */
#define NR_SEGS 3 /* # segments per process */
#define T 0 /* proc[i].mem_map[T] is for text */
#define D 1 /* proc[i].mem_map[D] is for data */
#define S 2 /* proc[i].mem_map[S] is for stack */
#define MAX_P_LONG 2147483647 /* maximum positive long, i.e. 2**31 - 1 */
#define CLICK_SIZE 0020 /* unit in which memory is allocated */
#define CLICK_SHIFT 4 /* log2 of CLICK_SIZE */
#define MM_PROC_NR 0 /* process number of memory manager */
#define FS_PROC_NR 1 /* process number of file system */
#define INIT_PROC_NR 2 /* init -- the process that goes multiuser */
#define LOW_USER 2 /* first user not part of operating system */
#define BYTE 0377 /* mask for 8 bits */
#define TO_USER 0 /* flag telling to copy from fs to user */
#define FROM_USER 1 /* flag telling to copy from user to fs */
#define READING 0 /* copy data to user */
#define WRITING 1 /* copy data from user */
#define ABS -999 /* this process means absolute memory */
```c
#define WORD_SIZE 2       /* number of bytes per word */
#define NIL_PTR (char *) 0 /* generally useful expression */
#define NO_NUM 0x8000     /* used as numerical argument to panic() */
#define MAX_PATH 128 /* max length of path names */
#define SIG_PUSH_BYTES 8  /* how many bytes pushed by signal */
#define MAX_ISTACK_BYTES 1024 /* maximum initial stack size for EXEC */
/* Device numbers of root (RAM) and boot (fd0) devices. */
#define ROOT_DEV (dev_nr) 256 /* major-minor device number of root dev */
#define BOOT_DEV (dev_nr) 512 /* major-minor device number of boot diskette */
/* Flag bits for i_mode in the inode. */
#define I_TYPE 0170000 /* this field gives inode type */
#define I_REGULAR 0100000 /* regular file, not dir or special */
#define I_BLOCK_SPECIAL 0060000 /* block special file */
#define I_DIRECTORY 0040000 /* file is a directory */
#define I_CHAR_SPECIAL 0020000 /* character special file */
#define I_SET_UID_BIT 0004000 /* set effective uid on exec */
#define I_SET_GID_BIT 0002000 /* set effective gid on exec */
#define ALL_MODES 0006777 /* all bits for user, group and others */
#define RWX_MODES 0007777 /* mode bits for RWX only */
#define R_BIT 0000004 /* Rwx protection bit */
#define W_BIT 0000002 /* rwx protection bit */
#define X_BIT 0000001 /* rwx protection bit */
#define I_NOT_ALLOC 0000000 /* this inode is free */
```
0100 #define NCALLS
0101            69 /* number of system calls allowed */
0102 #define EXIT    1
0103 #define FORK    2
0104 #define READ    3
0105 #define WRITE   4
0106 #define OPEN    5
0107 #define CLOSE   6
0108 #define WAIT    7
0109 #define CREAT   8
0110 #define LINK    9
0111 #define UNLINK  10
0112 #define CHDIR   12
0113 #define TIME    13
0114 #define MKNOD   14
0115 #define CHMOD   15
0116 #define CHOWN   16
0117 #define BRK     17
0118 #define STAT    18
0119 #define LSEEK   19
0120 #define GETPID  20
0121 #define MOUNT   21
0122 #define UMOUNT  22
0123 #define SETUID  23
0124 #define GETUID  24
0125 #define STIME   25
0126 #define ALARM   27
0127 #define FSTAT   28
0128 #define PAUSE   29
0129 #define UTIME   30
0130 #define ACCESS  33
0131 #define SYNC    36
0132 #define KILL    37
0133 #define DUP     41
0134 #define PIPE    42
0135 #define TIMES   43
0136 #define SETGID  46
0137 #define GETGID  47
0138 #define SIGNAL  48
0139 #define IOCTL   54
0140 #define EXEC    59
0141 #define UMASK   60
0142 #define CHROOT  61
0143            64 /* kernel detected a signal */
0144 #define KSIG     65 /* to MM or FS: check for EINTR */
0145 #define UNPAUSE  66 /* to MM: used to say how big FS & INIT are */
0146 #define BRK2     67 /* to FS: revive a sleeping process */
0147 #define REVIVE   68 /* to FS: reply code from tty task */
0150 /* System calls. */
0151 #define SEND 1 /* function code for sending messages */
0152 #define RECEIVE 2 /* function code for receiving messages */
0153 #define BOTH 3 /* function code for SEND + RECEIVE */
0154 #define ANY (NR_PROCS+100) /* receive(ANY, buf) accepts from any source */
0155
0156 /* Task numbers, function codes and reply codes. */
0157 #define HARDWARE -1 /* used as source on interrupt generated msgs */
0158
0159 #define SYSTASK -2 /* internal functions */
0160 # define SYS_XIT 1 /* fcn code for sys_xit(parent, proc) */
0161 # define SYS_GETSP 2 /* fcn code for sys_sp(proc, &new_sp) */
0162 # define SYS_SIG 3 /* fcn code for sys_sig(proc, sig) */
0163 # define SYS_FORK 4 /* fcn code for sys_fork(parent, child) */
0164 # define SYS_NEWMAP 5 /* fcn code for sys_newmap(procno, map_ptr) */
0165 # define SYS_COPY 6 /* fcn code for sys_copy(ptr) */
0166 # define SYS_EXEC 7 /* fcn code for sys_exec(procno, new_sp) */
0167 # define SYS_TIMES 8 /* fcn code for sys_times(procno, bufptr) */
0168 # define SYS_ABORT 9 /* fcn code for sys_abort() */
0169
0170 #define CLOCK -3 /* clock class */
0171 # define SET_ALARM 1 /* fcn code to CLOCK, set up alarm */
0172 # define CLOCK_TICK 2 /* fcn code for clock tick */
0173 # define GET_TIME 3 /* fcn code to CLOCK, get real time */
0174 # define SET_TIME 4 /* fcn code to CLOCK, set real time */
0175 # define REAL_TIME 1 /* reply from CLOCK: here is real time */
0176
0177 #define MEM -4 /* /dev/ram, /dev/(k)mem and /dev/null class */
0178 # define RAM_DEV 0 /* minor device for /dev/ram */
0179 # define MEM_DEV 1 /* minor device for /dev/mem */
0180 # define KMEM_DEV 2 /* minor device for /dev/kmem */
0181 # define NULL_DEV 3 /* minor device for /dev/null */
0182
0183 #define FLOPPY -5 /* floppy disk class */
0184 #define WINCHESTER -6 /* winchester (hard) disk class */
0185 # define DISKINT 1 /* fcn code for disk interrupt */
0186 # define DISK_READ 3 /* fcn code to DISK (must equal TTY_READ) */
0187 # define DISK_WRITE 4 /* fcn code to DISK (must equal TTY_WRITE) */
0188 # define DISK_IOCTL 5 /* fcn code for setting up RAM disk */
0189
0190 #define TTY -7 /* terminal I/O class */
0191 #define PRINTER -8 /* printer I/O class */
0192 # define TTY_CHAR_INT 1 /* fcn code for tty input interrupt */
0193 # define TTY_Q_DONE 2 /* fcn code for tty output done */
0194 # define TTY_READ 3 /* fcn code for reading from tty */
0195 # define TTY_WRITE 4 /* fcn code for writing to tty */
0196 # define TTY_IOCTL 5 /* fcn code for ioctl */
0197 # define SUSPENO -998 /* used in interrupts when tty has no data */
0198
0199 /* Names of message fields for messages to CLOCK task. */
/* Names of message fields used for messages to block and character tasks. */
#define DEVICE m2_i1 /* major-minor device */
#define PROC_NR m2_i2 /* which (proc) wants I/O? */
#define COUNT m2_i3 /* how many bytes to transfer */
#define POSITION m2_i4 /* file offset */
#define ADDRESS m2_p1 /* core buffer address */

/* Names of message fields for messages to TTY task. */
#define TTY_LINE m2_i1 /* message parameter: terminal line */
#define TTY_REQUEST m2_i2 /* message parameter: ioctl request code */
#define TTY_SPEK m2_i3 /* message parameter: ioctl speed, erasing */
#define TTY_FLAGS m2_i4 /* message parameter: ioctl tty mode */

/* Names of message fields used in reply messages from tasks. */
#define REP_PROC_NR m2_i1 /* # of proc on whose behalf I/O was done */
#define REP_STATUS m2_i2 /* bytes transferred or error number */

/* Names of fields for copy message to SYSTASK. */
#define SRC_SPACE m5_c1 /* T or D space (stack is also D) */
#define SRC_PROC_NR m5_i1 /* process to copy from */
#define SRC_BUFFER m5_i2 /* virtual address where data come from */
#define DST_SPACE m5_c2 /* T or D space (stack is also D) */
#define DST_PROC_NR m5_i2 /* process to copy to */
#define DST_BUFFER m5_i3 /* virtual address where data go to */
#define COPY_BYTES m5_i3 /* number of bytes to copy */

/* Field names for accounting, SYSTASK and miscellaneous. */
#define USER_TIME m4_i1 /* user time consumed by process */
#define SYSTEM_TIME m4_i2 /* system time consumed by process */
#define CHILD_UTIME m4_i3 /* user time consumed by process' children */
#define CHILD_STIME m4_i4 /* systime consumed by process' children */

#define PROC1 m1_i1 /* indicates a process */
#define PROC2 m1_i2 /* indicates a process */
#define PID m1_i3 /* process id passed from MM to kernel */
#define STACK_PTR m1_p1 /* used for stack ptr in sys_exec, sys_getsp */
#define PR m6_i1 /* process number for sys_sig */
#define SIGNUM m6_i2 /* signal number for sys_sig */
#define FUNC m6_f1 /* function pointer for sys_sig */
#define MEM_PTR m1_p1 /* tells where memory map is for sys_newmap */
#define CANCEL 0 /* general request to force a task to cancel */
#define SIG_MAP m1_i2 /* used by kernel for passing signal bit map */
/* Error codes. They are negative since a few system calls, such as READ, can
either return a positive number indicating success, or an error code. */

#define NERROR 34
#define OK 0
#define ERROR -1
#define EPERM -1
#define ENOENT -2
#define ESRCH -3
#define EINTR -4
#define EIO -5
#define ENXIO -6
#define E2BIG -7
#define ENOEXEC -8
#define EBADF -9
#define ECHILD -10
#define EAGAIN -11
#define ENOMEM -12
#define EACCES -13
#defineEFAULT -14
#define ENOTBLK -15
#define EBUSY -16
#define EEXIST -17
#define EXDEV -18
#define ENODEV -19
#define ENOTDIR -20
#define EI5DIR -21
#define EINVAL -22
#define ENFILE -23
#define EMFILE -24
#define ENOTTY -25
#define ETXTBSY -26
#define EFBIG -27
#define ENOSPC -28
#define ESPIPE -29
#define EROFS -30
#define EMLINK -31
#define EPIPE -32
#define EDOM -33
#define ERANGE -34
#define E_LOCKED -101
#define E_BAD_CALL -102
#define E_LONG_STRING -103
#define E_BAD_DEST -1 /* destination address illegal */
#define E_BAD_SRC -2 /* source address illegal */
#define E_TRY_AGAIN -3 /* can't send-- tables full */

/* The following error codes are generated by the kernel itself. */
#define E_BAD_DEST -1 /* destination address illegal */
#define E_BAD_SRC -2 /* source address illegal */
#define E_TRY_AGAIN -3 /* can't send-- tables full */
0300  #define E_OVERRUN    -4  /* interrupt for task that is not waiting */
0301  #define E_BAD_BUF     -5  /* message buf outside caller's addr space */
0302  #define E_TASK        -6  /* can't send to task */
0303  #define E_NO_MESSAGE  -7  /* RECEIVE failed: no message present */
0304  #define E_NO_PERM     -8  /* ordinary users can't send to tasks */
0305  #define E_BAD_FCN     -9  /* only valid fcns are SEND, RECEIVE, BOTH */
0306  #define E_BAD_ADDR    -10 /* bad address given to utility routine */
0307  #define E_BAD_PROC    -11 /* bad proc number given to utility */
0350 /* Data structures for IOCTL. */
0351
0352 struct sgttyb {
0353 char sg_ispeed;          /* input speed (not used at present) */
0354 char sg_ospeed;          /* output speed (not used at present) */
0355 char sg_erase;           /* erase character */
0356 char sg_kill;            /* kill character */
0357 int sg_flags;            /* mode flags */
0358 }
0359
0360 struct tchars {
0361 char t_intrc;            /* character that generates SIGINT */
0362 char t_quitc;            /* character that generates SIGQUIT */
0363 char t_startc;           /* start output (initially CTRL-Q) */
0364 char t_stopc;           /* stop output (initially CTRL-S) */
0365 char t_eofc;            /* end-of-file (initially CTRL-D) */
0366 char t_brkc;            /* input delimiter (like nl) */
0367 }
0368
0369 /* Fields in sg_flags. */
0370 #define XTABS  0006000 /* set to cause tab expansion */
0371 #define RAW    0000040 /* set to enable raw mode */
0372 #define CRMOD  0000020 /* set to map lf to cr + 1f */
0373 #define ECHO   0000010 /* set to enable echoing of typed input */
0374 #define CBREAK 0000002 /* set to enable cbreak mode */
0375 #define COOKED 0000000 /* neither CBREAK nor RAW */
0376 #define TIOCGETP ("t"<<8) 8
0377 #define TIOCSETP ("t"<<8) 9
0378 #define TIOCGETC ("t"<<8) 18
0379 #define TIOCSETC ("t"<<8) 17
#define NR_SIGS 16 /* number of signals used */
#define SIGHUP 1 /* hangup */
#define SIGINT 2 /* interrupt (DEL) */
#define SIGQUIT 3 /* quit (ASCII FS) */
#define SIGILL 4 /* illegal instruction (not reset when caught)*
#define SIGTRAP 5 /* trace trap (not reset when caught) */
#define SIGIOT 6 /* IOT instruction */
#define SIGEMT 7 /* EMT instruction */
#define SIGFPE 8 /* floating point exception */
#define SIGKILL 9 /* kill (cannot be caught or ignored) */
#define SIGBUS 10 /* bus error */
#define SIGSEGV 11 /* segmentation violation */
#define SIGSYS 12 /* bad argument to system call */
#define SIGPIPE 13 /* write on a pipe with no one to read it */
#define SIGALRM 14 /* alarm clock */
#define SIGTERM 15 /* software termination signal from kill */
#define STACK_FAULT 16 /* used by kernel to signal stack fault */

int (*signal())();
#define SIG_DFL (int (*)(int))0
#define SIG_IGN (int (*)(int))1
struct stat {
  short int st_dev;
  unsigned short st_ino;
  unsigned short st_mode;
  short int st_nlink;
  short int st_uid;
  short int st_gid;
  short int st_rdev;
  long st_size;
  long st_atime;
  long st_mtime;
  long st_ctime;
};

#define S_IFMT 0170000  /* type of file */
#define S_IFDIR 0040000  /* directory */
#define S_IFCHR 0020000  /* character special */
#define S_IFBLK 0060000  /* block special */
#define S_IFREG 0100000  /* regular */
#define S_ISUID 040000  /* set user id on execution */
#define S_ISGID 020000  /* set group id on execution */
#define S_ISVTX 010000  /* save swapped text even after use */
#define S_IROTH 004000  /* read permission, owner */
#define S_IWOTH 002000  /* write permission, owner */
#define S_IXOTH 001000  /* execute/search permission, owner */
MACROS

#define MAX(a,b)  ((a > b ? a : b))
#define MIN(a,b)  ((a < b ? a : b))

TYPE DEFINITIONS

typedef unsigned short unshort; /* must be 16-bit unsigned */
typedef unshort block_nr; /* block number */
#define NO_BLOCK (block_nr) 0 /* indicates the absence of a block number */
#define MAX_BLOCK_NR (block_nr) 01777777

typedef unshort inode_nr; /* inode number */
#define NO_ENTRY (inode_nr) 0 /* indicates the absence of a dir entry */
#define MAX_INODE_NR (inode_nr) 01777777

typedef unshort zone_nr; /* zone number */
#define NO_ZONE (zone_nr) 0 /* indicates the absence of a zone number */
#define HIGHEST_ZONE (zone_nr) 01777777

typedef unshort bit_nr; /* if inode_nr & zone_nr both unshort,
then also unshort, else long */
typedef long zone_type; /* zone size */
typedef unshort dev_nr; /* major | minor device number */
#define NO_DEV (dev_nr) 0 /* indicates absence of a device number */

typedef char links; /* number of links to an inode */
#define MAX_LINKS 0177

typedef long real_time; /* real time in seconds since Jan 1, 1970 */
#define MAX_FILE_POS 017777777777L

typedef short int uid; /* user id */
typedef char gid; /* group id */

typedef unsigned vir_bytes; /* virtual addresses and lengths in bytes */
typedef unsigned vir_clicks; /* virtual addresses and lengths in clicks */

typedef long phys_bytes; /* physical addresses and lengths in bytes */
typedef unsigned phys_clicks; /* physical addresses and lengths in clicks */
typedef int signed_clicks; /* same length as phys_clicks, but signed */

TYPES RELATING TO MESSAGES.

#define M1 1
#define M3 3
#define M4 4
#define M3_STRING 14

typedef struct {int m1i1, m1i2, m1i3; char *m1p1, *m1p2, *m1p3;} mess_1;
typedef struct {int m2i1, m2i2, m2i3; long m2i1, m2i2; char *m2p1;} mess_2;
typedef struct {int m3i1, m3i2; char *m3p1; char m3cal[M3_STRING];} mess_3;
typedef struct {long m411, m412, m413, m414;} mess_4;
typedef struct {char m5c1, m5c2; int m5i1, m5i2; long m5i1l, m5i2l, m5i3l;} mess_5;
typedef struct {int m6i1, m6i2, m6i3; long m6i1l; int (*m6fl)();} mess_6;
typedef struct {
    int m_source;           /* who sent the message */
    int m_type;             /* what kind of message is it */
    union {
        mess_1 m_ml;
        mess_2 m_m2;
        mess_3 m_m3;
        mess_4 m_m4;
        mess_5 m_m5;
        mess_6 m_m6;
    } m_u;
} message;
#define MESS_SIZE (sizeof(message))
#define NIL_MESS (message *) 0

/* The following defines provide names for useful members. */
#define m1_i1 m_u.m_ml.mlil
#define m1_i2 m_u.m_ml.mlil2
#define m1_i3 m_u.m_ml.mlil3
#define m1_p1 m_u.m_ml.mlpl1
#define m1_p2 m_u.m_ml.mlpl2
#define m1_p3 m_u.m_ml.mlpl3
#define m2_i1 m_u.m_m2.mlil1
#define m2_i2 m_u.m_m2.mlil2
#define m2_i3 m_u.m_m2.mlil3
#define m2_p1 m_u.m_m2.mlpl1
#define m2_p2 m_u.m_m2.mlpl2
#define m2_p3 m_u.m_m2.mlpl3
#define m3_i1 m_u.m_m3.mlil1
#define m3_i2 m_u.m_m3.mlil2
#define m3_p1 m_u.m_m3.mlpl1
#define m3_p2 m_u.m_m3.mlpl2
#define m3_p3 m_u.m_m3.mlpl3
#define m4_i1 m_u.m_m4.mlil1
#define m4_i2 m_u.m_m4.mlil2
#define m4_i3 m_u.m_m4.mlil3
#define m4_i4 m_u.m_m4.mlil4
#define m5_c1 m_u.m_m5.mlil1
#define m5_c2 m_u.m_m5.mlil2
```c
#define m5_11 m_u.m_m5.m511
#define m5_12 m_u.m_m5.m512
#define m5_13 m_u.m_m5.m513
#define m6_11 m_u.m_m6.m611
#define m6_12 m_u.m_m6.m612
#define m6_13 m_u.m_m6.m613
#define m6_f1 m_u.m_m6.m6f1

struct mem_map {
    vir_clicks mem_vir;    /* virtual address */
    phys_clicks mem_phys;  /* physical address */
    vir_clicks mem_len;    /* length */
};

struct copy_info {
    int cp_src_proc;
    int cp_src_space;
    vir_bytes cp_src_vir;
    int cp_dst_proc;
    int cp_dst_space;
    vir_bytes cp_dst_vir;
    vir_bytes cp_bytes;
};
```
MINIX SOURCE CODE
File: kernel/const.h

0650 /* General constants used by the kernel. */
0651
0652 #ifdef i8088
0653 /* p_reg contains: ax, bx, cx, dx, si, di, bp, es, ds, cs, ss in that order. */
0654 #define NR_REGS 11 /* number of general regs in each proc slot */
0655 #define INIT_PSW 0x0200 /* initial psw */
0656 #define INIT_SP (int*)0x0010 /* initial sp: 3 words pushed by kernel */
0657
0658 /* The following values are used in the assembly code. Do not change the
0659 * values of 'ES_REG', 'DS_REG', 'CS_REG', or 'SS_REG' without making the
0660 * corresponding changes in the assembly code.
0661 */
0662 #define ES_REG 7 /* proc[i].p_reg[ESREG] is saved es */
0663 #define DS_REG 8 /* proc[i].p_reg[DSREG] is saved ds */
0664 #define CS_REG 9 /* proc[i].p_reg[CSREG] is saved cs */
0665 #define SS_REG 10 /* proc[i].p_reg[SSREG] is saved ss */
0666
0667 #define VECT0R_BYTES 260 /* bytes of interrupt vectors to save */
0668 #define MEM_BYTES 655360L /* memory size for /dev/mem */
0669
0670 /* Interrupt vectors */
0671 #define CLOCK_VECTOR 8 /* clock interrupt vector */
0672 #define KEYBOARD_VECTOR 9 /* keyboard interrupt vector */
0673 #define FLOPPY_VECTOR 14 /* floppy disk interrupt vector */
0674 #define PRINTER_VECTOR 15 /* line printer interrupt vector */
0675 #define SYS_VECTOR 32 /* system calls are made with int SYSVEC */
0676
0677 /* The 8259A interrupt controller has to be re-enabled after each interrupt. */
0678 #define INT_CTL 0x20 /* I/O port for interrupt controller */
0679 #define INT_CTL_MASK 0x21 /* setting bits in this port disables ints */
0680 #define ENABLE 0x20 /* code used to re-enable after an interrupt */
0681 #endif
0682
0683 #define TASK_STACK_BYTES 256 /* how many bytes for each task stack */
0684 #define K_STACK_BYTES 256 /* how many bytes for the kernel stack */
0685
0686 #define RET_REG 0 /* system call return codes go in this reg */
0687 #define IDLE -999 /* 'cur_proc' = IDLE means nobody is running */
0688
0689 /* The following items pertain to the 3 scheduling queues. */
0690 #define NQ 3 /* # of scheduling queues */
0691 #define TASK_Q 0 /* ready tasks are scheduled via queue 0 */
0692 #define SERVER_Q 1 /* ready servers are scheduled via queue 1 */
0693 #define USER_Q 2 /* ready users are scheduled via queue 2 */
0694
0695 #define printf printk /* the kernel really uses printk, not printf */
/* Global variables used in the kernel. */

/* Clocks and timers */
EXTERN real_time realtime;  /* real time clock */
EXTERN int lost_ticks;  /* incremented when clock int can’t send mess*/

/* Processes, signals, and messages. */
EXTERN int cur_proc;  /* current process */
EXTERN int prev Proc;  /* previous process */
EXTERN sig_procs;  /* number of procs with p_pending != 0 */
EXTERN message int_mess;  /* interrupt routines build message here */

/* The kernel and task stacks. */
EXTERN struct t_stack {
    int stk[TASK_STACK_BYTES/sizeof(int)];
} t_stack[NR_TASKS - 1];  /* task stacks; task = -1 never really runs */

EXTERN char k_stack[K_STACK_BYTES];  /* The kernel stack. */
/* Here is the declaration of the process table. Three assembly code routines
reference fields in it. They are restart(), save(), and csv(). When
changing 'proc', be sure to change the field offsets built into the code.
* It contains the process' registers, memory map, accounting, and message
* send/receive information.
*/

EXTERN struct proc {
    int p_reg[NR_REGS];          /* process' registers */
    int *p_sp;                    /* stack pointer */
    struct pc_psw p_pcpsw;       /* pc and psw as pushed by interrupt */
    int p_flags;                  /* P_SLOT_FREE, SENDING, RECEIVING, etc. */
    struct mem_map p_map[NR_SEGS];/* memory map */
    int *p_splimit;               /* lowest legal stack value */
    int p_pid;                    /* process id passed in from MM */
    real_time user_time;         /* user time in ticks */
    real_time sys_time;          /* sys time in ticks */
    real_time child_utime;       /* cumulative user time of children */
    real_time child_stime;       /* cumulative sys time of children */
    real_time p_alarm;           /* time of next alarm in ticks, or 0 */
    struct proc *p_callerq;      /* head of list of procs wishing to send */
    struct proc *p_sendlink;     /* link to next proc wishing to send */
    message *p_messbuf;          /* pointer to message buffer */
    int p_getfrom;               /* from whom does process want to receive? */
    struct proc *p_nextready;    /* pointer to next ready process */
    int p_pending;               /* bit map for pending signals 1-16 */
} proc[NR_TASKS+NR_PROCS];

/* Bits for p_flags in proc[]. A process is runnable iff p_flags == 0 */
#define P_SLOT_FREE 001        /* set when slot is not in use */
#define NO_MAP 002             /* keeps unmapped forked child from running */
#define SENDING 004            /* set when process blocked trying to send */
#define RECEIVING 010          /* set when process blocked trying to recv */

#define proc_addr(n) &proc[NR_TASKS + n]
#define NIL_PROC (struct proc *) 0

EXTERN struct proc *proc_ptr;     /* &proc[cur_proc] */
EXTERN struct proc *bill_ptr;     /* ptr to process to bill for clock ticks */
EXTERN struct proc *rdy_head[NQ];  /* pointers to ready list headers */
EXTERN struct proc *rdy_tail[NQ];  /* pointers to ready list tails */
EXTERN unsigned busy_map;         /* bit map of busy tasks */
EXTERN message *task_mess[NR_TASKS+l];  /* ptrs to messages for busy tasks */
/* The 'pc_psw' struct is machine dependent. It must contain the information passed onto the stack by an interrupt, in the same format as the hardware creates and expects. It is used for storing the interrupt status after a trap or interrupt, as well as for causing interrupts for signals. */

#ifdef i8088

struct pc_psw {
    int (*pc)();  /* storage for program counter */
    phys_clicks cs; /* code segment register */
    unsigned psw;  /* program status word */
};

/* This struct is used to build data structure pushed by kernel upon signal. */

struct sig_info {
    int signo;  /* sig number at end of stack */
    struct pc_psw sigpcpsw;
};

#endif
This file contains the main program of MINIX. The routine main() initializes the system and starts the ball rolling by setting up the proc table, interrupt vectors, and scheduling each task to run to initialize itself.

The entries into this file are:
- **main**: MINIX main program
- **unexpected_int**: called when an interrupt to an unused vector < 16 occurs
- **trap**: called when an unexpected trap to a vector >= 16 occurs
- **panic**: abort MINIX due to a fatal error

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "proc.h"

#define SAFETY 8 /* margin of safety for stack overflow (ints)*/
#define VERY_BIG 39328 /* must be bigger than kernel size (clicks) */
#define BASE 1536 /* address where MINIX starts in memory */
#define SIZES 8 /* sizes array has 8 entries */

PUBLIC main() {
    register struct proc *rp;
    register int t;
    vir_clicks size;
    phys_clicks base_click, mm_base, previous_base;
    phys_bytes phys_b;
    extern unsigned sizes[8]; /* table filled in by build */
    extern int color, vec_table[], get_chrome(), (*task[])();
    extern int s_call(), disk_int(), tty_int(), clock_int(), disk_int();
    extern int lpr_int(), surprise(), trp();
    extern phys_bytes umap();

    /* Set up proc table entry for user processes. Be very careful about
     * sp, since the 3 words prior to it will be clobbered when the kernel pushes
     * pc, cs, and psw onto the USER's stack when starting the user the first
     * time. This means that with initial sp = 0x10, user programs must leave
     * the words at 0x0000A, 0x0000C, and 0x0000E free.
lock();  /* we can't handle interrupts yet */
base_click = BASE >> CLICK_SHIFT;
size = sizes[0] + sizes[1];  /* kernel text + data size in clicks */
mm_base = base_click + size;  /* place where MM starts (in clicks) */

for (rp = &proc[0]; rp <= &proc[NR_TASKS+LOW_USER]; rp++) {
    for (t=0; t< NR_REGS; t++) rp->p_reg[t] = 0100*t;  /* DEBUG */
    t = rp - proc - NR_TASKS;  /* task number */
    rp->p_sp = (rp < &proc[NR_TASKS] ? t_stack[NR_TASKS+t].stk : INIT_SP);
    rp->p_splimit = rp->p_sp;
    if (rp->p_splimit != INIT_SP)
        rp->p_splimit -= (TASK_STACKBYTES - SAFETY)/sizeof(int);
    rp->p_pcpsw.pc = task[t + NR_TASKS];
    if (rp->p_pcpsw.pc != 0 || t >= 0) ready(rp);
    rp->p_pcpsw.psw = INIT_PSW;
    rp->p_pcpsw.psw = INIT_PSW;
    rp->p_splimit = rp->p_sp;
}

/* Set up memory map for tasks and MM, FS, INIT. */
if (t < 0) {
    /* I/O tasks. */
    rp->p_map[T].mem_len = VERY_BIG;
    rp->p_map[T].mem_phys = base_click;
    rp->p_map[D].mem_len = VERY_BIG;
    rp->p_map[D].mem_phys = base_click + sizes[0];
    rp->p_map[S].mem_len = VERY_BIG;
    rp->p_map[S].mem_phys = base_click + sizes[0] + sizes[1];
    rp->p_map[S].mem_vir = sizes[0] + sizes[1];
} else {
    /* MM, FS, and INIT. */
    previous_base = proc[NR_TASKS + t - 1].p_map[S].mem_phys;
    rp->p_map[T].mem_len = sizes[2*t + 2];
    rp->p_map[T].mem_phys = (t == 0 ? mm_base : previous_base);
    rp->p_map[D].mem_len = sizes[2*t + 3];
    rp->p_map[D].mem_phys = rp->p_map[T].mem_phys + sizes[2*t + 2];
    rp->p_map[S].mem_vir = sizes[2*t + 3];
    rp->p_map[S].mem_phys = rp->p_map[D].mem_phys + sizes[2*t + 3];
}

#define i8088
rp->p_reg[CS_REG] = rp->p_map[T].mem_phys;
rp->p_reg[DS_REG] = rp->p_map[D].mem_phys;
rp->p_reg[SS_REG] = rp->p_map[D].mem_phys;
rp->p_reg[ES_REG] = rp->p_map[D].mem_phys;

#undef i8088
proc[NR_TASKS+(HARDWARE)].p_sp = (int *) k_stack;
proc[NR_TASKS+(HARDWARE)].p_sp += K_STACK_BYTES/2;
proc[NR_TASKS+(HARDWARE)].p_splimit = (int *) k_stack;
proc[NR_TASKS+(HARDWARE)].p_splimit += SAFETY/2;
for (rp = proc_addr(LOWUSER+1); rp < proc_addr(NR_PROCS); rp++)
  rp->p_flags = P_SLOT_FREE;
/* Determine if display is color or monochrome. */
color = get_chrome();  /* 0 = mono, 1 = color */
/* Save the old interrupt vectors. */
phys_b = umap(proc_addr(HARDWARE), D, (vir_bytes) vec_table, VECTOR_BYTES);
phys_copy(0L, phys_b, (long) VECTOR_BYTES);  /* save all the vectors */
/* Set up the new interrupt vectors. */
for (t = 0; t < 16; t++) set_vec(t, surprise, base_click);
for (t = 16; t < 256; t++) set_vec(t, trp, base_click);
set_vec(SYS_VECTOR, s_call, base_click);
set_vec(CLOCK_VECTOR, clock_int, base_click);
set_vec(KEYBOARD_VECTOR, tty_int, base_click);
set_vec(FLOPPY_VECTOR, disk_int, base_click);
set_vec(PRINTER_VECTOR, lpr_int, base_click);
/* Put a ptr to proc table in a known place so it can be found in /dev/mem */
set_vec( (BASE - 4)/4, proc, (phys_clicks) 0);
bill_ptr = proc_addr(HARDWARE);  /* it has to point somewhere */
pick_proc();
/* Now go to the assembly code to start running the current process. */
port_out(INT_CTLMASK, 0);  /* do not mask out any interrupts in 8259A */
restart();
/*===========================================================================*
* unexpected_int
*===========================================================================*/
PUBLIC unexpected_int()
{
  /* A trap or interrupt has occurred that was not expected. */
  panic("Unexpected trap or interrupt. cur_proc =", cur_proc);
}
/*===========================================================================*
* trap
*===========================================================================*/
PUBLIC trap()
{
  /* A trap (vector >= 16) has occurred. It was not expected. */
printf("\nUnexpected trap. ");
printf("This may be due to accidentally including in your program\n");
printf("a non-MINIX library routine that is trying to make a system call.\n");
printf("pc = 0x%lx size of program = 0x%lx
",proc_ptr->p_pcsw.pc,
proc_ptr->p_map[D].mem_len<<4);
}

PUBLIC panic(s,n)
char *s;
int n;
{
/* The system has run aground of a fatal error. Terminate execution.
 * If the panic originated in MM or FS, the string will be empty and the
 * file system already synched. If the panic originates in the kernel, we are
 * kind of stuck.
 */
if (*s != 0) {
    printf("\nKernel panic: %s",s);
    if (n != NO_NUM) printf(" %d", n);
    printf("\n");
}
printf("\nType space to reboot\n");
reboot();
}

#ifdef i8088
PUBLIC set_vec(vec_nr, addr, base_click)
int vec_nr; /* which vector */
int (*addr)(); /* where to start */
phys_clicks base_click; /* click where kernel sits in memory */
{
    /* Set up an interrupt vector. */
    unsigned vec[2];
    unsigned u;
    phys_bytes phys_b;
    extern unsigned sizes[8];
    /* Build the vector in the array 'vec'. */
    vec[0] = (unsigned) addr;
vec[1] = (unsigned) base_click;

u = (unsigned) vec;

/* Copy the vector into place. */
phys_b = ( (phys_bytes) base_click + (phys_bytes) sizes[0] ) << CLICK_SHIFT;
phys_b += u;
phys_copy(phys_b, (phys_bytes) 4*vec_nr, (phys_bytes) 4);

#endif
This file is part of the lowest layer of the MINIX kernel. All processing switching and message handling is done here and in file "proc.c". This file is entered on every transition to the kernel, both for sending/receiving messages and for all interrupts. In all cases, the trap or interrupt routine first calls save() to store the machine state in the proc table. Then the stack is switched to k_stack. Finally, the real trap or interrupt handler (in C) is called. When it returns, the interrupt routine jumps to restart, to run the process or task whose number is in 'cur_proc'.

The external entry points into this file are:

- **s_call**: process or task wants to send or receive a message
- **tty_int**: interrupt routine for each key depression and release
- **lpr_int**: interrupt routine for each line printer interrupt
- **disk_int**: disk interrupt routine
- **clock_int**: clock interrupt routine (HZ times per second)
- **surprise**: all other interrupts < 16 are vectored here
- **trp**: all traps with vector >= 16 are vectored here
- **restart**: start running a task or process

```
#include "const.h"
#include "./h/com.h"

| The following procedures are defined in this file and called from outside it. |
| globl _tty_int, _lpr_int, _clock_int, _disk_int |
| globl _s_call, _surprise, _trp, _restart |

| The following external procedures are called in this file. |
| globl _main, _sys_call, _interrupt, _keyboard, _panic, _unexpected_int, _trap |
| globl _pr_char |

| Variables and data structures. |
| globl _cur_proc, _proc_ptr, _scan_code, _int_mess, _k_stack, splimit |
| globl _sizes |

| The following constants are offsets into the proc table. |
| esreg = 14 |
| dsreg = 16 |
| csreg = 18 |
| ssreg = 20 |
| SP = 22 |
| PC = 24 |
| PSW = 28 |
| SPLIM = 50 |
| OFF = 18 |
| ROFF = 12 |
| .text |
```
**MINIX SOURCE CODE**

**File:** kernel/px88.s

**1150**

`*  ********************************************************************
1151  MINIX:             this is the entry point for the MINIX kernel.
1152  *  ********************************************************************
1153
1154  JMP M.0            skip over the next few bytes
1155  .word 0,0          build puts DS at kernel text address 4
1156  M.0:               disable interrupts
1157  cli                set up segment registers
1158
1159  mov ax,cs          disable interrupts
1160  mov ds,ax          set up ds
1161
1162  mov ax,4           build has loaded this word with ds value
1163  mov ds,ax          ds now contains proper value
1164  mov ss,ax          ss now contains proper value
1165  mov _scan_code,bx  save scan code for '=' key from bootstrap
1166
1167  add sp,#_k_stack  set sp to point to the top of the
1168          kernel stack
1169
1170  call _main         start the main program of MINIX
1171
1172  M.1:               this should never be executed
1173  jmp M.1

**173**

`*  *************************************************************************
1174  *  *************************************************************************
1175  *  *************************************************************************
1176  *  *************************************************************************
1177  *  *************************************************************************
1178  *  *************************************************************************
1179
1180  _s_call:            System calls are vectored here.
1181
1182  call save           save the machine state
1183  mov bp,_proc_ptr    use bp to access sys call parameters
1184  push 2(bp)          push(pointer to user message) (was bx)
1185  push (bp)           push(src/dest) (was ax)
1186  push _cur_proc      push caller
1187  push 4(bp)          push(SEND/RECEIVE/BOTH) (was cx)
1188  call _sys_call      sys_call(function, caller, src_dest, m_ptr)
1189  jmp _restart        jump to code to restart proc/task running

**183**

`*  *************************************************************************
1190  *  *************************************************************************
1191  *  *************************************************************************
1192  *  *************************************************************************
1193  *  *************************************************************************
1194  *  *************************************************************************
1195
1196  _tty_int:           Interrupt routine for terminal input.
1197  call save           save the machine state
1198  call _keyboard      process a keyboard interrupt
1199  jmp _restart        continue execution

**192**

`*  *************************************************************************
1193  *  *************************************************************************
1194  *  *************************************************************************
1195  *  *************************************************************************
1196  *  *************************************************************************
1197  *  *************************************************************************
1198
1199  _lpr_int:           Interrupt routine for terminal input.
1200  call save           save the machine state
1201  call _pr_char        process a line printer interrupt
1202  jmp _restart        continue execution
disk_int:
    call save
    mov _int_mess+2,*DISKINT
    mov ax,#_int_mess
    push ax
    mov ax,*FLOPPY
    push ax
    call _interrupt
    jmp _restart

Clock_int:
    call save
    mov _int_mess+2,*CLOCK_TICK
    mov ax,#_int_mess
    push ax
    mov ax,*CLOCK
    push ax
    call _interrupt
    jmp _restart

Surprise:
    call save
    call _unexpected_int
    jmp _restart

Trp:
    call save
    call _trap
    jmp _restart

Save:
    save: save the machine state in the proc table.
push ds
push cs
pop ds
mov ds,4
pop ds_save
pop ret_save
mov bx_save,bx
mov bx,proc_ptr
add bx,*0FF
pop PC-OFF(bx)
pop csreg-OFF(bx)
pop PSW-OFF(bx)
mov ssreg-OFF(bx),ss
mov SP-OFF(bx),sp
mov bx,ds
mov ss,bx
push ds_save
push es
mov es,bx
push bp
push di
push si
push dx
push cx
push bx_save
push ax
mov sp,#_k_stack
add sp,#K_STACK_BYTES
mov splimit,#_k_stack
add splimit,#8
mov ax,ret_save
jmp (ax)
_cur_proc,#IDLE
je idle
cli
mov sp,proc_ptr
pop ax
pop bx
pop cx
pop dx
pop si
pop di
mov ldslow,bx
restart
restart
restart:

This routine sets up and runs a proc or task.

- If cur_proc = IDLE, go idle
- No user is runnable, jump to idle routine
disable interrupts
- Return to user, fetch regs from proc table
- Start restoring registers
- Restore bx
- Restore cx
- Restore dx
- Restore si
- Restore di
- lds_low contains bx
1300    mov bx,sp
1301    mov bp,SPLIM-ROFF(bx)   splimit = p_splimit
1302    mov splimit,bp
1303    mov bp,dsreg-ROFF(bx) bp = ds
1304    mov lds_low+2,bp       lds_low+2 contains ds
1305    pop bp
1306    pop es
1307    mov sp,SP-ROFF(bx)    ditto
1308    mov ss,ssreg-ROFF(bx) ditto
1309    push PSW-ROFF(bx)     push psw
1310    push csreg-ROFF(bx)  push cs
1311    push PC-ROFF(bx)     push pc
1312    lds bx,lds_low      restore ds and bx in one fell swoop
1313    iret

BX points to saved bp register
splimit = p_splimit
ditto
bp = ds
ldslow+2 contains ds
restore bp
restore es
restore sp
restore ss using the value of ds
push psw
push cs
push pc
restore ds and bx in one fell swoop
return to user or task

Idle:

Idle:

L3:    wait
   jmp L3

L3:    wait
just idle while waiting for interrupt
loop until interrupt

-data:

_sizes: .word 0x526F
   .zerow 7
bx_save: .word 0
ds_save: .word 0
ret_save: .word 0
lds_low: .word 0,0
ttyomess: .asciz "RS232 interrupt"

-data:

_bss
begbss:
This file contains a number of assembly code utility routines needed by the kernel. They are:

phys_copy: copies data from anywhere to anywhere in memory

cp_mess: copies messages from source to destination

port_out: outputs data on an I/O port

port_in: inputs data from an I/O port

lock: disable interrupts

unlock: enable interrupts

restore: restore interrupts (enable/disabled) as they were before lock()

build_sig: build 4 word structure pushed onto stack for signals

csv: procedure prolog to save the registers

cret: procedure epilog to restore the registers

get_chrome: returns 0 if display is monochrome, 1 if it is color

vid_copy: copy data to video ram (on color display during retrace only)

get_byte: reads a byte from a user program and returns it as value

reboot: reboot for CTRL-ALT-DEL

wreboot: wait for character then reboot

The following procedures are defined in this file and called from outside it.

.globl _phys_copy, _cp_mess, _port_out, _port_in, _lock, _unlock, _restore
.globl _build_sig, _csv, _cret, _get_chrome, _vid_copy, _get_byte, _reboot
.globl _wreboot

The following external procedure is called in this file.
.globl _panic

Variables and data structures
.globl _color, _cur_proc, _proc_ptr, splimit, _vec_table

*==================================================================*
* phys_copy
*==================================================================*

This routine copies a block of physical memory. It is called by:

phys_copy( (long) source, (long) destination, (long) bytecount)

phys_copy:

    pushf          save flags
    cli            disable interrupts
    push bp        save the registers
    save ax
    push bx
    save bx
    push cx
    save cx
    push dx
    save dx
    push si
    save si
    push di
    save di
    push ds
    save ds
    push es
    save es
    mov bp,sp      set bp to point to saved es
1400 L0: mov ax, 28(bp)  
1401 mov di, 26(bp)  
1402 mov cx, *4  
1403 L1: rcr ax, *1  
1404 rcr di, *1  
1405 loop L1  
1406 mov es, di  
1407  
1408 mov ax, 24(bp)  
1409 mov si, 22(bp)  
1410 mov cx, *4  
1411 L2: rcr ax, *1  
1412 rcr si, *1  
1413 loop L2  
1414 mov ds, si  
1415  
1416 mov di, 26(bp)  
1417 and di, *0000F  
1418 mov si, 22(bp)  
1419 and si,*0000F  
1420 mov dx, 32(bp)  
1421 mov cx, 30(bp)  
1422 test cx, #0x8000  
1423 jnz L3  
1424 test dx, #0xFFFF  
1425 jnz L3  
1426 jmp L4  
1427 mov cx, #0x8000  
1428 L3: mov ax,#0x8000  
1429 jz L5  
1430 rep movb  
1431 jmp L6  
1432 test cx, *0x0001  
1433 jz L5  
1434 rep  
1435 movb  
1436 jmp L6  
1437 shr cx, *1  
1438 rep  
1439 movw  
1440 mov dx, 32(bp)  
1441 mov cx, 30(bp)  
1442 xor bx, bx  
1443 sub cx, ax  
1444 sbb dx, bx  
1445 or cx, cx  
1446 jnz L7  
1447 decr count, incr src & dst, iterate if needed  
1448 dx || cx is 32-bit byte count  
1449 bx || ax is 32-bit actual count used  
1450 compute bytes - actual count  
1451 dx || cx is # bytes not yet processed  
1452 see if it is 0  
1453 if more bytes then go to L7
Msize = 12

*cp_mess*

This routine makes a fast copy of a message from anywhere in the address space to anywhere else. It also copies the source address provided as a parameter to the call into the first word of the destination message. It is called by:

\[
\text{cp_mess}(\text{src, src}\_\text{clicks, src}\_\text{offset, dst}\_\text{clicks, dst}\_\text{offset})
\]

where all 5 parameters are shorts (16-bits).

Note that the message size, 'Msize' is in WORDS (not bytes) and must be set correctly. Changing the definition of message in the type file and not changing it here will lead to total disaster.

This routine destroys ax. It preserves the other registers.
mov ax, 8(bp)  ; ax = process number of sender
mov di, 16(bp) ; di = offset of destination buffer
mov es, 14(bp) ; es = clicks of destination
mov si, 12(bp) ; si = offset of source message
mov ds, 10(bp) ; ds = clicks of source message
mov (di), ax   ; copy sender's process number to dest message
add si, *2     ; don't copy first word
add di, *2     ; don't copy first word
seg es          ; segment override prefix
mov cx, *size-1 ; remember, first word doesn't count
rep movw         ; iterate cx times to copy 11 words
...
1550 push ax           | save ax
1551 push dx           | save dx
1552 mov dx,4(bx)      | dx = port
1553 in                | input 1 byte
1554 xor ah,ah         | clear ah
1555 mov bx,6(bx)      | fetch address where byte is to go
1556 mov (bx),ax       | return byte to caller in param
1557 pop dx            | restore dx
1558 pop ax            | restore ax
1559 pop bx            | restore bx
1560 ret               | return to caller

1563 |===================================================================*
1564 *  lock       *
1565 |===================================================================*
1566 Disable CPU interrupts.
1567 _lock:
1568 pushf            | save flags on stack
1569 cli             | disable Interrupts
1570 pop lockvar     | save flags for possible restoration later
1571 ret             | return to caller
1572
1574 |===================================================================*
1575 *  unlock    *
1576 |===================================================================*
1577 Enable CPU interrupts.
1578 _unlock:
1579 sti             | enable interrupts
1580 ret             | return to caller
1581
1583 |===================================================================*
1584 *  restore   *
1585 |===================================================================*
1586 Restore enable/disable bit to the value it had before last lock.
1587 _restore:
1588 push lockvar     | push flags as they were before previous lock
1589 popf            | restore flags
1590 ret             | return to caller
1591
1593 |===================================================================*
1594 *  build_sig  *
1595 |===================================================================*
1596 * Build a structure that is pushed onto the stack for signals. It contains
1597 * pc, psw, etc., and is machine dependent. The format is the same as generated
1598 * by hardware interrupts, except that after the "interrupt", the signal number
1599 * is also pushed. The signal processing routine within the user space first
1600 * pops the signal number, to see which function to call. Then it calls the
1601 * function. Finally, when the function returns to the low-level signal
1602 * handling routine, control is passed back to where it was prior to the signal
1603 * by executing a return-from-interrupt instruction, hence the need for using
1604 * the hardware generated interrupt format on the stack. The call is:
1605 * build_sig(sig_stuff, rp, sig)
1606
1607 | Offsets within proc table
1608 PC = 24
1609 csreg = 18
1610 PSW = 28
1611
1612 _build_sig:
1613 push bp
1614 mov bp,sp
1615 push bx
1616 push si
1617 mov bx,4(bp)
1618 mov si,6(bp)
1619 mov ax,8(bp)
1620 mov (bx),ax
1621 mov ax,PC(si)
1622 mov 2(bx),ax
1623 mov ax,csreg(si)
1624 mov 4(bx),ax
1625 mov ax,PSW(si)
1626 mov 6(bx),ax
1627 pop si
1628 pop bx
1629 pop bp
1630 ret
1631
1632 |=====================================================================
1633 * csv & cret
1634 *=====================================================================
1635 This version of csv replaces the standard one. It checks for stack overflow
1636 within the kernel in a simpler way than is usually done. cret is standard.
1637
1638 csv:
1639 pop bx
1640 push bp
1641 mov bp,sp
1642 push di
1643 push si
1644 sub sp,ax
1645 cmp sp,sp\limit
1646 jbe csv.1
1647 jmp (bx)
1648
csv.1:

1649
MINIX SOURCE CODE  File: kernel/klib88.s  467

1650  mov splimit,#0              |  prevent call to panic from aborting in csv
1651  mov bx, _proc_ptr          |  update rp->p_splimit
1652  mov 50(bx), #0             |  rp->p_limit = 0
1653  push _cur_proc             |  task number
1654  mov ax, #stkoverrun       |  stack overran the kernel stack area
1655  push ax                    |  push first parameter
1656  call _panic                |  call is: panic(stkoverrun, cur_proc)
1657  jmp csv.l                  |  this should not be necessary
1658
1659  cret:                       |
1660  lea sp, *-4(bp)             |  set sp to point to saved si
1661  pop si                     |  restore saved si
1662  pop di                     |  restore saved di
1663  pop bp                     |  restore bp
1664  ret                         |  end of procedure
1665
1666 *====================================================================*
1667 *  get_chrome                  +
1668 *====================================================================*
1669 This routine calls the BIOS to find out if the display is monochrome or
1670 color. The drivers are different, as are the video ram addresses, so we
1671 need to know.
1672 _get_chrome:
1673    int 0x11                     |  call the BIOS to get equipment type
1674    andb al, #0x30             |  isolate color/mono field
1675    cmpb al, #0x30             |  0x30 is monochrome
1676    je getchrl                |  if monochrome then go to getchrl
1677    mov ax, #1                |  color = 1
1678    ret                      |  color return
1679 getchrl:                     |
1680    xor ax, ax               |  mono = 0
1681    ret                      |  monochrome return
1682
1683 *====================================================================*
1684 *  vid_copy                        +
1685 *====================================================================*
1686 This routine takes a string of (character, attribute) pairs and writes them
1687 onto the screen. For a color display, the writing only takes places during
1688 the vertical retrace interval, to avoid displaying garbage on the screen.
1689 The call is:
1690    vid_copy(buffer, videobase, offset, words)
1691 where
1692    'buffer' is a pointer to the (character, attribute) pairs
1693    'videobase' is 0x8800 for color and 0x8000 for monochrome displays
1694    'offset' tells where within video ram to copy the data
1695    'words' tells how many words to copy
1696 if buffer is zero, the fill char (BLANK) is used
1697 BLANK = 0x0700                 |  controls color of cursor on blank screen
_vid_copy:
push bp
mov bp,sp
push si
push di
push cx
push dx
push es
mov si,4(bp)
mov di,8(bp)
mov cx,10(bp)
mov dx,#0x3DA

test _color,*l
jz vid.3

vid.l:
in
test al,*010
jnz vid.l

vid.2:
in
testb al,*010
jz vid.2

vid.3:
pushf
cli
mov es,6(bp)
cmp si,#0
je vid.5
lock
nop
rep
movw

vid.4:
popf
pop es
pop dx
pop cx
pop di
pop si
pop bp
ret

vid.5:
mov ax,#BLANK
rep
stow
jmp vid.4

we need bp to access the parameters
set bp to sp for indexing
save the registers
save di
save cx
save dx
save es
si = pointer to data to be copied
di = offset within video ram
cx = word count for copy loop
prepare to see if color display is retraceing
skip vertical retrace test if display is monochrome then go to vid.2
with a color display, you can only copy to the video ram during vertical retrace, so wait for start of retrace period. Bit 3 of 0x3DA is set during retrace. First wait until it is off (no retrace), then wait until it comes on (start of retrace)
copying may now start; save flags interrupts just get in the way: disable them
load es now: int routines may ruin it
si = 0 means blank the screen
jump for blanking
this is a trick for the IBM PC simulator only
'lock' indicates a video ram access
this is the copy loop
ditto
restore flags
restore registers
restore dx
restore cx
restore di
restore si
restore bp
return to caller

ax = blanking character
list loop
blank screen
done
get_byte

This routine is used to fetch a byte from anywhere in memory.

The call is:

\[ c = \text{get}_\text{byte}(\text{seg}, \text{off}) \]

where

- `seg` is the value to put in es
- `off` is the offset from the es value

```assembly
_get_byte:
push bp
mov bp, sp
push es
mov es, 4(bp)
mov bx, 6(bp)
seg es
movb al, (bx)
xorb ah, ah
pop es
pop bp
ret
```

reboot & wreboot

This code reboots the PC

```assembly
_reboot:
cli
mov ax, #0x20
out 0x20
call resvec
int 0x19
```

```assembly
_wreboot:
cli
mov ax, #0x20
out 0x20
call resvec
xor ax, ax
int 0x16
int 0x19
```

| Restore the interrupt vectors in low core.
resvec: cld
mov cx, #2*65
mov si, #_vec_table
xor di,di
mov es,di
rep
movw
ret

.data
lockvar: .word 0  | place to store flags for lock()/restore()
splimit: .word 0  | stack limit for current task (kernel only)
stkoverrun: .asciz "Kernel stack overrun, task = "
_vec_table: .zerow 130 | storage for interrupt vectors
This file contains essentially all of the process and message handling. It has two main entry points from the outside: system_call, called when a process or task does SEND, RECEIVE or SENDREC; interrupt, called by interrupt routines to send a message to task. It also has five minor entry points: ready, put a process on one of the ready queues so it can be run; unready, remove a process from the ready queues; sched, a process has run too long; schedule another one; mini_send, send a message (used by interrupt signals, etc.); pick_proc, pick a process to run (used by system initialization).
```c
    task_mess[task] = m_ptr;        /* record message pointer */
}
} else {
    /* Hardware interrupt was successfully sent as a message. */
    busy_map &= ~this_bit;        /* turn off the bit in case it was on */
    old_map = busy_map;
}

/* See if any tasks that were previously busy are now listening for msgs. */
if (old_map != 0) {
    for (i = 2; i <= NR_TASKS; i++) {
        /* Check each task looking for one with a pending interrupt. */
        if ((old_map >> i) & 1) {
            /* Task 'i' has a pending interrupt. */
            n = mini_send(HARDWARE, -i, task_mess[i]);
            if (n == OK) busy_map &= ~(1 << i);
        }
    }
}

/* If a task has just been readied and a user is running, run the task. */
if (rdy_head[TASK_Q] != NIL_PROC && (cur_proc >= 0 || cur_proc == IDLE))
    pick_proc();

public

sys_call(function, caller, src_dest, m_ptr)
int function;    /* SEND, RECEIVE, or BOTH */
int caller;      /* who is making this call */
int src_dest;    /* source to receive from or dest to send to */
message *m_ptr;  /* pointer to message */
{
    /* The only system calls that exist in MINIX are sending and receiving
       messages. These are done by trapping to the kernel with an INT instruction
       * both).
       */

    register struct proc *rp;
    int n;
    /* Check for bad system call parameters. */
    rp = proc_addr(caller);
    if (src_dest < -NR_TASKS || (src_dest >= NR_PROCS && src_dest != ANY)) {
        rp->p_reg[RET_REG] = E_BAD_SRC;
        return;
    }
```
if (function != BOTH && caller >= LOW_USER) {
    rp->p_reg[RET_REG] = E_NO_PERM; /* users only do BOTH */
    return;
}

/* The parameters are ok. Do the call. */
if (function & SEND) {
    n = mini_send(caller, src_dest, m_ptr); /* func = SEND or BOTH */
    if (function == SEND || n != OK) rp->p_reg[RET_REG] = n;
    if (n != OK) return; /* SEND failed */
}

if (function & RECEIVE) {
    n = mini_rec(caller, src_dest, m_ptr); /* func = RECEIVE or BOTH */
    rp->p_reg[RET_REG] = n;
}

PUBLIC int mini_send(caller, dest, m_ptr)
int caller;
    /* who is trying to send a message? */
dest;
    /* to whom is message being sent? */
message *m_ptr;
    /* pointer to message buffer */
{
    /* Send a message from 'caller' to 'dest'. If 'dest' is blocked waiting for
    * this message, copy the message to it and unblock 'dest'. If 'dest' is not
    * waiting at all, or is waiting for another source, queue 'caller'.
    */
    register struct proc *caller_ptr, *dest_ptr, *next_ptr;
    vir_bytes vb;    /* message buffer pointer as vir_bytes */
    vir_clicks vlo, vhi;   /* virtual clicks containing message to send */
    vir_clicks len;   /* length of data segment in clicks */

    /* User processes are only allowed to send to FS and MM. Check for this. */
    if (caller > LOW_USER && (dest != FS_PROC_NR && dest != MM_PROC_NR))
        return(E_BAD_DEST);

caller_ptr = proc_addr(caller);    /* pointer to source's proc entry */
dest_ptr = proc_addr(dest);    /* pointer to destination's proc entry */
    if (dest_ptr->p_flags & P_SLOT_FREE) return(E_BAD_DEST);    /* dead dest */

    /* Check for messages wrapping around top of memory or outside data seg. */
    len = caller_ptr->p_map[D].mem_len;
    vb = (vir_bytes) m_ptr;
    vlo = vb >> CLICK_SHIFT;    /* vir click for bottom of message */
    vhi = (vb + MESS_SIZE - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;    /* vir click for top of message */
    if (vhi < vlo || vhi - caller_ptr->p_map[D].mem_vir >= len) return(E_BAD_ADDR);
2000 /* Check to see if 'dest' is blocked waiting for this message. */
2001 if ((dest_ptr->p_flags & RECEIVING) &&
    (dest_ptr->p_getfrom == ANY || dest_ptr->p_getfrom == caller))
2002 /* Destination is indeed waiting for this message. */
2003 cp_mess(caller, caller_ptr->p_map[dest].miem_phys, m_ptr,
2004     dest_ptr->p_map[dest].mem_phys, dest_ptr->p_messbuf;
2005 dest_ptr->p_flags &~ RECEIVING; /* deblock destination */
2006 if (dest_ptr->p_flags == 0) ready(dest_ptr);
2007 }
2008 else {
2009 /* Destination is not waiting. Block and queue caller. */
2010 if (caller == HARDWARE) return(E_OVERRUN);
2011 caller_ptr->p_messbuf = m_ptr;
2012 caller_ptr->p_flags |= SENDING;
2013 unready(caller_ptr);
2014 /* Process is now blocked. Put in on the destination's queue. */
2015 if ((next_ptr = dest_ptr->p_callerq) == NIL_PROC) {
2016     dest_ptr->p_callerq = caller_ptr;
2017 } else {
2018     while (next_ptr->p_sendlink != NIL_PROC)
2019         next_ptr = next_ptr->p_sendlink;
2020     next_ptr->p_sendlink = caller_ptr;
2021 }
2022 caller_ptr->p_sendlink = NIL_PROC;
2023 }
2024 return(OK);
2025 }
2026
2027 2028 #==================================================================
2029 2030 * mini_rec
2031 #==================================================================
2032 PRIVATE int mini_rec(caller, src, m_ptr)
2033 int caller;    /* process trying to get message */
2034 int src;      /* which message source is wanted (or ANY) */
2035 message *m_ptr;    /* pointer to message buffer */
2036 {
2037 /* A process or task wants to get a message. If one is already queued,
2038 * acquire it and deblock the sender. If no message from the desired source
2039 * is available, block the caller. No need to check parameters for validity.
2040 * Users calls are always sendrec(), and mini_send() has checked already.
2041 * Calls from the tasks, MM, and FS are trusted.
2042 */
2043
2044 register struct proc *caller_ptr, *sender_ptr, *prev_ptr;
2045 int sender;
2046
caller_ptr = proc_addr(caller);    /* pointer to caller's proc structure */
2048 /* Check to see if a message from desired source is already available. */
sender_ptr = caller_ptr->p_callerq;
while (sender_ptr != NIL_PROC) {
    sender = sender_ptr - proc - NR_TASKS;
    if (src == ANY || src == sender) {
        /* An acceptable message has been found. */
        cp_mess(sender, sender_ptr->p_map[0].mem_phys, sender_ptr->p_messbuf,
            caller_ptr->p_map[0].mem_phys, m_ptr);
        sender_ptr->p_flags &= ~SENDING; /* deblock sender */
        if (sender_ptr->p_flags == 0) ready(sender_ptr);
        if (sender_ptr == caller_ptr->p_callerq)
            caller_ptr->p_callerq = sender_ptr->p_sendlink;
        else
            prev_ptr->p_sendlink = sender_ptr->p_sendlink;
    } else
        prev_ptr = sender_ptr;
    return(OK);
    prev_ptr = sender_ptr;
    sender_ptr = sender_ptr->p_sendlink;
}
/* No suitable message is available. Block the process trying to receive. */
caller_ptr->p_getfrom = src;
caller_ptr->p_messbuf = m_ptr;
caller_ptr->p_flags |= RECEIVING;
unready(caller_ptr);
/* If MM has just blocked and there are kernel signals pending, now is the */
/* time to tell MM about them, since it will be able to accept the message. */
if (sig_procs > 0 && caller == MM_PROC_NR && src == ANY) inform(MM_PROC_NR);
return(OK);

/*==============================================*/
/* pick_proc */
/*==============================================*/
PUBLIC pick_proc()
{
    /* Decide who to run now. */
    register int q; /* which queue to use */
    if (rdy_head[TASK_Q] != NIL_PROC) q = TASK_Q;
    else if (rdy_head[SERVER_Q] != NIL_PROC) q = SERVER_Q;
    else q = USER_Q;
    /* Set 'cur_proc' and 'proc_ptr'. If system is idle, set 'cur_proc' to a */
    /* special value (IDLE), and set 'proc_ptr' to point to an unused proc table */
    /* slot, namely, that of task -1 (HARDWARE), so save() will have somewhere to */
    /* deposit the registers when an interrupt occurs on an idle machine. */
* Record previous process so that when clock tick happens, the clock task
  * can find out who was running just before it began to run. (While the
  * clock task is running, 'cur_proc' = CLOCKTASK). In addition, set 'bill_ptr'
  * to always point to the process to be billed for CPU time.

```c
prev_proc = cur_proc;
if (rdy_head[q] != NIL_PROC) {
  /* Someone is runnable. */
  cur_proc = rdy_head[q] - proc - NR_TASKS;
  proc_ptr = rdy_head[q];
  if (cur_proc >= LOW_USER) bill_ptr = proc_ptr;
} else {
  /* No one is runnable. */
  cur_proc = IDLE;
  proc_ptr = proc_addr(HARDWARE);
  bill_ptr = proc_ptr;
}
```

```c
PUBLIC ready(rp) {
  register struct proc *rp; /* this process is now runnable */
  */ Add 'rp' to the end of one of the queues of runnable processes. Three
  * queues are maintained:
  *   TASK_Q  - (highest priority) for runnable tasks
  *   SERVER_Q - (middle priority) for MM and FS only
  *   USER_Q   - (lowest priority) for user processes
  */
  register int q; /* TASK_Q, SERVER_Q, or USER_Q */
  int r;
  lock(); /* disable interrupts */
  r = (rp - proc) - NR_TASKS; /* task or proc number */
  q = (r < 0 ? TASK_Q : r < LOW_USER ? SERVER_Q : USER_Q);
  */ See if the relevant queue is empty. */
  if (rdy_head[q] == NIL_PROC) {
    rdy_head[q] = rp; /* add to empty queue */
  } else {
    rdy_tail[q]->p_nextready = rp; /* add to tail of nonempty queue */
    rdy_tail[q] = rp; /* new entry has no successor */
    rp->p_nextready = NIL_PROC;
    restore(); /* restore interrupts to previous state */
  }
```
unready(rp)  /* this process is no longer runnable */
{  /* A process has blocked. */
    register struct proc *xp;
    int r, q;
    lock();  /* disable interrupts */
    r = rp - proc - NR_TASKS;
    q = (r < 0 ? TASK_Q : r < LOW_USER ? SERVER_Q : USER_Q);
    if (xp = rdy_head[q]) == NIL_PROC) return;
    if (xp == rp) {
        /* Remove head of queue */
        rdy_head[q] = xp->p_nextready;
        pick_proc();
    } else {
        /* Search body of queue. A process can be made unready even if it is
         * not running by being sent a signal that kills it.
         */
        while (xp->p_nextready != rp)
            if (xp = xp->p_nextready) == NIL_PROC) return;
        xp->p_nextready = xp->p_nextready->p_nextready;
        while (xp->p_nextready != NIL_PROC) xp = xp->p_nextready;
        rdy_tail[q] = xp;
    }
    restore();  /* restore interrupts to previous state */
}

sched()  /* The current process has run too long. If another low priority (user)
  * process is runnable, put the current process on the end of the user queue,
  * possibly promoting another user to head of the queue. */
{
    lock();  /* disable interrupts */
    if (rdy_head[USER_Q] == NIL_PROC) {
        restore();  /* restore interrupts to previous state */
        return;
    }
    /* One or more user processes queued. */
2200  rdy_tail[USER_Q]->p_nextready = rdy_head[USER_Q];
2201  rdy_tail[USER_Q] = rdy_head[USER_Q];
2202  rdy_head[USER_Q] = rdy_head[USER_Q]->p_nextready;
2203  rdy_tail[USER_Q]->p_nextready = NIL_PROC;
2204  pick_proc();
2205  restore();                        /* restore interrupts to previous state */
2206  }
/* This file contains the drivers for four special files:
 * /dev/null - null device (data sink)
 * /dev/mem - absolute memory
 * /dev/kmem - kernel virtual memory
 * /dev/ram - RAM disk
 * It accepts three messages, for reading, for writing, and for
 * control. All use message format m2 and with these parameters:
 *
 * m_type    DEVICE  PROC_NR  COUNT  POSITION  ADDRESS
 * DISK_READ  device  | proc nr | bytes | offset | buf ptr
 * DISK_WRITE device  | proc nr | bytes | offset | buf ptr
 * DISK_IOCTL device | blocks | ram org
 *
 * The file contains one entry point:
 * mem_task: main entry when system is brought up
 */

#define NR_RAMS 4 /* number of RAM-type devices */

PRIVATE message mess; /* message buffer */
PRIVATE phys_bytes ram_origin[NR_RAMS]; /* origin of each RAM disk */
PRIVATE phys_bytes ram_limit[NR_RAMS]; /* limit of RAM disk per minor dev. */

PUBLIC mem_task()
{
    /* Main program of the disk driver task. */
    int r, caller, proc_nr;
    extern unsigned sizes[8];
    extern phys_clicks get_base();

/* Initialize this task. */
ram_origin[KMEM_DEV] = (phys_bytes) get_base() << CLICK_SHIFT;
ram_limit[KMEM_DEV] = (sizes[0] + sizes[1]) << CLICK_SHIFT;
ram_limit[MEM_DEV] = MEM_BYTES;

/* Here is the main loop of the memory task. It waits for a message, carries
* it out, and sends a reply. */
while (TRUE) {
    /* First wait for a request to read or write. */
    receive(ANY, &mess);
    if (mess.m_source < 0)
        panic("mem task got message from ", mess.m_source);
    caller = mess.m_source;
    proc_nr = mess.PROC_NR;

    /* Now carry out the work. It depends on the opcode. */
    switch(mess.m_type) {
        case DISK_READ:
            r = do_mem(&mess);
            break;
        case DISK_WRITE:
            r = do_mem(&mess);
            break;
        case DISK_IOCTL:
            r = do_setup(&mess);
            break;
        default:
            r = EINVAL;
            break;
    }

    /* Finally, prepare and send the reply message. */
    mess.m_type = TASK_REPLY;
    mess.REP_PROC_NR = proc_nr;
    mess.REP_STATUS = r;
    send(caller, &mess);
}

/* do_mem */
PRIVATE int do_mem(m_ptr)
register message *m_ptr; /* pointer to read or write message */
{
    int device, count;
    phys_bytes mem_phys, user_phys;
    struct proc *rp;
    extern phys_clicks get_base();
    extern phys_bytes umap();

    /* Get minor device number and check for /dev/null. */
    device = m_ptr->DEVICE;
if (device < 0 || device >= NR_RAMS) return(ENXIO); /* bad minor device */
if (device == NULL_DEV) return(m_ptr->m_type == DISK_READ ? 0 : m_ptr->CDUNT);

/* Set up 'mem_phys' for /dev/mem, /dev/kmem, or /dev/ram. */
if (m_ptr->POSITION < 0) return(ENXID);
mem_phys = ram_origin[device] + m_ptr->POSITION;
if (mem_phys > ram_limit[device]) return(0);
count = m_ptr->CDUNT;
if (mem_phys + count > ram_limit[device]) count = ram_limit[device] - mem_phys;

/* Determine address where data is to go or to come from. */
rp = proc_addr(m_ptr->PROC_NR);
user_phys = umap(rp, D, (vir_bytes) m_ptr->ADDRESS, (vir_bytes) count);
if (user_phys == 0) return(E_BAD_ADDR);

/* Copy the data. */
if (m_ptr->m_type == DISK_READ)
  phys_copy(mem_phys, user_phys, (long) count);
else
  phys_copy(user_phys, mem_phys, (long) count);
return(count);

/* Set parameters for one of the disk RAMs. */

int device;

device = m_ptr->DEVICE;
if (device < 0 || device >= NR_RAMS) return(ENXIO); /* bad minor device */
ram_origin[device] = m_ptr->POSITION;
ram_limit[device] = m_ptr->POSITION + (long) m_ptr->CDUNT * BLOCK_SIZE;
return(OK);
/* This file contains a driver for a Floppy Disk Controller (FDC) using the
NEC PD765 chip. The driver supports two operations: read a block and
write a block. It accepts two messages, one for reading and one for
writing, both using message format m2 and with the same parameters:
m_type DEVICE proc_nr bytes offset buf_ptr
m_type DEVICE proc_nr bytes offset buf_ptr

The file contains one entry point:
floppy_task: main entry when system is brought up

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../../../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "proc.h"

#define DOR 0x3F2 /* motor drive control bits */
#define FDC_STATUS 0x3F4 /* floppy disk controller status register */
#define FDC_DATA 0x3F5 /* floppy disk controller data register */
#define DMA_ADDR 0x004 /* port for low 16 bits of DMA address */
#define DMA_TOP 0x081 /* port for top 4 bits of 20-bit DMA addr */
#define DMA_COUNT 0x005 /* port for DMA count (count = bytes - 1) */
#define DMA_M2 0x00C /* DMA status port */
#define DMA_M1 0x00B /* DMA status port */
#define DMA_INIT 0x00A /* DMA init port */

/* Status registers returned as result of operation. */
#define ST0 0x00 /* status register 0 */
#define ST1 0x01 /* status register 1 */
#define ST2 0x02 /* status register 2 */
#define ST3 0x00 /* status register 3 (return by DRIVESENSE) */
#define ST_CYL 0x03 /* slot where controller reports cylinder */
#define ST_HEAD 0x04 /* slot where controller reports head */
#define ST_SEC 0x05 /* slot where controller reports sector */
#define ST_PCN 0x01 /* slot where controller reports present cyl */

/* Fields within the I/O ports. */
#define MASTER 0x80 /* used to see who is master */
/* floppy disk controller command bytes. */
#define DIRECTION 0x40 /* is FDC trying to read or write? */
#define CTL_BUSY 0x10 /* used to see when controller is busy */
#define CTL_ACCEPTING 0x80 /* bit pattern FDC gives when idle */
#define MOTOR_MASK 0xF0 /* these bits control the motors in DOR */
#define ENABLE_INT 0x0C /* used for setting DOR port */
#define ST0_BITS 0xF8 /* check top 5 bits of seek status */
#define ST3_FAULT 0x80 /* if this bit is set, drive is sick */
#define ST3_WR_PROTECT 0x40 /* set when diskette is write protected */
#define ST3_READY 0x20 /* set when drive is ready */
#define TRANS_ST0 0x00 /* top 5 bits of ST0 for READ/WRITE */
#define SEEK_ST0 0x20 /* top 5 bits of ST0 for SEEK */
#define BAD_SECTOR 0x05 /* if these bits are set in ST1, recalibrate */
#define BAD_CYL 0x1F /* if any of these bits are set, recalibrate */
#define WRITE_PROTECT 0x02 /* bit is set if diskette is write protected */
#define CHANGE 0xCO /* value returned by FDC after reset */

/* floppy disk controller command bytes. */
#define FDC_SEEK 0x0F /* command the drive to seek */
#define FDC_READ 0xE6 /* command the drive to read */
#define FDC_WRITE 0xC5 /* command the drive to write */
#define FDC_SENSE 0x08 /* command the controller to tell its status */
#define FDC_RECALIBRATE 0x07 /* command the drive to go to cyl 0 */
#define FDC_SPECIFY 0x03 /* command the drive to accept params */

/* DMA channel commands. */
#define DMA_READ 0x46 /* DMA read opcode */
#define DMA_WRITE 0x4A /* DMA write opcode */

/* Parameters for the disk drive. */
#define SECTOR_SIZE 512 /* physical sector size in bytes */
#define NR_SECTORS 0x09 /* number of sectors per track */
#define NR_HEADS 0x02 /* two heads (i.e., two tracks/cylinder) */
#define GAP 0x2A /* intersector gap size */
#define DTL 0xFF /* determines data length (sector size) */
#define SPEC1 0xDF /* first parameter to SPECIFY */
#define SPEC2 0x02 /* second parameter to SPECIFY */
#define MOTOR_OFF 3*HZ /* how long to wait before stopping motor */
#define MOTOR_START HZ/4 /* how long does it take motor to start up? */

/* Error codes */
#define ERR_SEEK -1 /* bad seek */
#define ERR_TRANSFER -2 /* bad transfer */
#define ERR_STATUS -3 /* something wrong when getting status */
#define ERR_RECALIBRATE -4 /* recalibrate didn't work properly */
#define ERR_WR_PROTECT -5 /* diskette is write protected */
#define ERR_DRIVE -6 /* something wrong with a drive */

/* Miscellaneous */
#define MOTOR_RUNNING 0xFF /* message type for clock interrupt */
#define MAX_ERRORS 10 /* how often to try rd/wt before quitting */
#define MAX_RESULTS 8 /* max number of bytes controller returns */
#define NR_DRIVES 2 /* maximum number of drives */
#define DIVISOR 128 /* used for sector size encoding */
#define MAX_FDC_RETRY 100 /* max # times to try to output to FDC */
#define NR_BLOCKS 720 /* number of blocks on 9 sector diskette */

#define UNCALIBRATED 0 /* drive needs to be calibrated at next use */
#define CALIBRATED 1 /* no calibration needed */

PRIVATE int motor_status; /* current motor status is in 4 high bits */
PRIVATE int motor_goal; /* desired motor status is in 4 high bits */
PRIVATE int prev_motor; /* which motor was started last */
PRIVATE int need_reset; /* set to 1 when controller must be reset */
PRIVATE int initialized; /* set to 1 after first successful transfer */
PRIVATE int steps_per_cyl = 1; /* # pulses to give stepping motor per cyl */

PRIVATE message mess; /* message buffer for in and out */
PRIVATE char len[] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9};

/*===========================================================================*
* floppy_task
*===========================================================================*/

PUBLIC floppy_task()
{
  /* Main program of the floppy disk driver task. */
  int r, caller, proc_nr;

  /* Here is the main loop of the disk task. It waits for a message, carries *
   * it out, and sends a reply. */
  while (TRUE) {

  /* Variables. */
  PRIVATE struct floppy {
    int fl_opcode; /* OISK_READ or DISK_WRITE */
    int fl_curcyl; /* current cylinder */
    int fl_procnr; /* which proc wanted this operation? */
    int fl_drive; /* drive number addressed */
    int fl_cylinder; /* cylinder number addressed */
    int fl_sector; /* sector addressed */
    int fl_head; /* head number addressed */
    int fl_count; /* byte count */
    vir_bytes fl_address; /* user virtual address */
    char fl_results[MAX_RESULTS]; /* the controller can give lots of output */
    char fl_calibration; /* CALIBRATED or UNCALIBRATED */
  } floppy[NR_DRIVES];

  #define UNCALIBRATED 0 /* drive needs to be calibrated at next use */
  #define CALIBRATED 1 /* no calibration needed */

  /* The main driver program. */
  while (TRUE) {
    /* Wait for a message. */
    /* If there is none, pass this call to mdisk */
    /* If there is a message, process it. */
    /* If it was a request for a transfer, carry it out. */
    /* If it was a request for a reset, reset the controller. */
    /* If it was a request for calibration, calibrate the controller. */
  }
}
/* First wait for a request to read or write a disk block. */
receive(ANY, &mess); /* get a request to do some work */
if (mess.m_source < 0)
    panic("disk task got message from ", mess.m_source);
caller = mess.m_source;
proc_nr = mess.PROC_NR;

/* Now carry out the work. */
switch(mess.m_type) {
    case DISK_READ: r = do_rdwt(&mess); break;
    case DISK_WRITE: r = do_rdwt(&mess); break;
    default: r = EINVAL; break;
}

/* Finally, prepare and send the reply message. */
mess.m_type = TASK_REPLY;
mess.REP_PROC_NR = proc_nr;
mess.REP_STATUS = r; /* # of bytes transferred or error code */
send(caller, &mess); /* send reply to caller */

PUBLIC int do_rdwt(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to read or write message */
{
    /* Carry out a read or write request from the disk. */
    register struct floppy *fp;
    int r, drive, errors, stop_motor();
    long block;

    /* Decode the message parameters. */
    drive = m_ptr->OVICE;
    if (drive < 0 || drive >= NR_DRIVES) return(EIO);
    fp = &floppy[drive]; /* 'fp' points to entry for this drive */
    fp->fl_drive = drive; /* save drive number explicitly */
    fp->fl_opcode = m_ptr->m_type; /* OISK_READ or OISK_WRITE */
    if (m_ptr->P0SITIO0N % BLOCK_SIZE != 0) return(EINVAL);
    block = m_ptr->P0SITIO0N/SECTOR_SIZE;
    if (block >= NR_BLOCKS) return(0);
    fp->fl_cylinder = (int) (block / (NR.HEADS * NR_SECTORS));
    fp->fl_sector = (int) interleave[block % NR_SECTORS];
    fp->fl_head = (int) (block % (NR.HEADS+NR_SECTORS)) /NR_SECTORS;
    fp->fl_count = m_ptr->C0UNT;
    fp->fl_address = (vir_bytes) m_ptr->ADDRESS;
    if (fp->fl_count != BLOCK_SIZE) return(EINVAL);
errors = 0;

/* This loop allows a failed operation to be repeated. */
while (errors <= MAX_ERRORS) {

    /* If a lot of errors occur when 'initialized' is 0, it probably
     * means that we are trying at the wrong density. Try another one.
     * Increment 'errors' here since loop is aborted on error.
     */
    errors++;       /* increment count once per loop cycle */
    if (initialized == 0 && errors == MAX_ERRORS && fp->fl_cylinder > 0) {
        if (steps_per_cyl > 1) {
            panic("Unreadable diskette (drive density?)", NO_NUM);
        } else {
            steps_per_cyl++;
            errors = 0;
        }
    }

    /* First check to see if a reset is needed. */
    if (need_reset) reset();

    /* Now set up the DMA chip. */
    dma_setup(fp);

    /* See if motor is running; if not, turn it on and wait */
    start_motor(fp);

    /* If we are going to a new cylinder, perform a seek. */
    r = seek(fp);
    if (r != OK) continue; /* if error, try again */

    /* Perform the transfer. */
    r = transfer(fp);
    if (r == OK) break;     /* if successful, exit loop */
    if (r == ERR_WR_PROTECT) break; /* retries won't help */
}

/* Start watch_dog timer to turn motor off in a few seconds */
motor_goal = ENABLE_INT;    /* when timer goes off, kill all motors */
clock_mess(MOTOR_OFF, stop_motor);
if (r == OK && fp->fl_cylinder > 0) initialized = 1; /* seek works */
return(r == OK ? BLOCK_SIZE : E10);
PRIVATE dma_setup(fp)
struct floppy *fp; /* pointer to the drive struct */
{
    /* The IBM PC can perform DMA operations by using the DMA chip. To use it,
    * the DMA (Direct Memory Access) chip is loaded with the 20-bit memory address
    * to be read from or written to, the byte count minus 1, and a read or write
    * opcode. This routine sets up the DMA chip. Note that the chip is not
    * capable of doing a DMA across a 64K boundary (e.g., you can't read a
    * 512-byte block starting at physical address 65520).
    */

    int mode, low_addr, high_addr, top_addr, low_ct, high_ct, top_end;
    vir_bytes vir, ct;
    phys_bytes user_phys;
    extern phys_bytes umap();

    mode = (fp->fl_opcode == DISK_READ ? DMA_READ : DMA_WRITE);
    vir = (vir_bytes) fp->fl_address;
    ct = (vir_bytes) fp->fl_count;
    user_phys = umap(proc_addr(fp->fl_procnr), D, vir, ct);
    low_addr = (int) (user_phys >> 0) & BYTE;
    high_addr = (int) (user_phys >> 8) & BYTE;
    top_addr = (int) (user_phys >> 16) & BYTE;
    low_ct = (int) (ct - 1) >> 0) & BYTE;
    high_ct = (int) (ct - 1) >> 8) & BYTE;

    /* Check to see if the transfer will require the DMA address counter to
    * go from one 64K segment to another. If so, do not even start it, since
    * the hardware does not carry from bit 15 to bit 16 of the DMA address.
    * Also check for bad buffer address. These errors mean F5 contains a bug.
    */
    if (user_phys == 0) panic("F5 gave floppy disk driver bad addr", (int) vir);
    top_end = (int) (((user_phys + ct - 1) >> 16) & BYTE);
    if (top_end != top_addr) panic("Trying to DMA across 64K boundary", top_addr);

    /* Now set up the DMA registers. */
    lock();
    port_out(DMA_M2, mode); /* set the DMA mode */
    port_out(DMA_M1, mode); /* set it again */
    port_out(DMA_ADDR, low_addr); /* output low-order 8 bits */
    port_out(DMA_ADDR, high_addr); /* output next 8 bits */
    port_out(DMA_Top, top_addr); /* output highest 4 bits */
    port_out(DMA_COUNT, low_ct); /* output low 8 bits of count - 1 */
    port_out(DMA_COUNT, high_ct); /* output high 8 bits of count - 1 */
    unlock();
    port_out(DMA_INIT, 2); /* initialize DMA */
}
/* Start the motor. */

PRIVATE start_motor(fp);

struct floppy *fp;

/* Control of the floppy disk motors is a big pain. If a motor is off, you
must turn it on first, which takes 1/2 second. You can't leave it on
all the time, since that would wear out the diskette. However, if you turn
the motor off after each operation, the system performance will be awful.
* The compromise used here is to leave it on for a few seconds after each
operation. If a new operation is started in that interval, it need not be
turned on again. If no new operation is started, a clock interrupt will
turn off the motor. I/O port DOR has bits to control each of 4 drives.
* Interrupts must be disabled temporarily to prevent a clock interrupt from
turning off motors while we are testing the bits. */

int motor_bit, running, send_mess();

lock();

motor_bit = 1 << (fp->fl_drive + 4); /* bit mask for this drive */

motor_goal = motor_bit | ENABLE_INT | fp->fl_drive;

if (motor_status & prev_motor) motor_goal |= prev_motor;

running = motor_status & motor_bit; /* nonzero if this motor is running */

port_out(DOR, motor_goal);

motor_status = motor_goal;

prev_motor = motor_bit; /* record motor started for next time */

unlock();

/* If the motor was already running, we don't have to wait for it. */

if (running) return; /* motor was already running */

clock_mess(MOTOR_START, send_mess); /* motor was not running */

receive(CLOCK, &mess); /* wait for clock interrupt */

/* Stop the motor. */

PRIVATE stop_motor()

/* This routine is called by the clock interrupt after several seconds have
eled with no floppy disk activity. It checks to see if any drives are
supposed to be turned off, and if so, turns them off. */

if ( (motor_goal & MOTOR_MASK) != (motor_status & MOTOR_MASK) ) {
    port_out(DOR, motor_goal);

    motor_status = motor_goal;
}
2750 } }
2751 }

2754 /*==================================*/
2755 * seek *
2756 /*==================================*/
2757 PRIVATE int seek(fp)
2758 struct floppy *fp; /* pointer to the drive struct */
2759 {
2760 /* Issue a SEEK command on the indicated drive unless the arm is already
2761 * positioned on the correct cylinder.
2762 */
2763 int r;
2764 /* Are we already on the correct cylinder? */
2765 if (fp->fl_calibration == UNCALIBRATED)
2766   if (recalibrate(fp) != OK) return(ERR_SEEK);
2767 if (fp->fl_curcyl == fp->fl_cylinder) return(OK);
2768 /* No. Wrong cylinder. Issue a SEEK and wait for interrupt. */
2769 fdc_out(FDC_SEEK); /* start issuing the SEEK command */
2770 fdc_out((fp->fl_head << 2) | fp->fl_drive);
2771 fdc_out((fp->fl_cylinder * steps_per_cyl);
2772 if (need_reset) return(ERR_SEEK); /* if controller is sick, abort seek */
2773 receive(HARDWARE, &mess);
2774 /* Interrupt has been received. Check drive status. */
2775 fdc_out(FDC_SENSE); /* probe FDC to make it return status */
2776 r = fdc_results(fp); /* get controller status bytes */
2777 if ( ((fp->fl_results[STO] & STO_BITS) != SEEK_STO) r = ERR_SEEK;
2778 if (fp->fl_results[ST1] != fp->fl_cylinder * steps_per_cyl) r = ERR_SEEK;
2779 if (r != OK)
2780   if (recalibrate(fp) != OK) return(ERR_SEEK);
2781 return(r);
2782 }

2783 /*==================================*/
2784 * transfer *
2785 /*==================================*/
2786 PRIVATE int transfer(fp)
2787 register struct floppy *fp; /* pointer to the drive struct */
2788 {
2789 /* The drive is now on the proper cylinder. Read or write 1 block. */
2790 int r, s, op;
2791 /* Never attempt a transfer if the drive is uncalibrated or motor is off. */
if (fp->fl_calibration == UNCALIBRATED) return(ERR_TRANSFER);
if ((motor_status>>(fp->fl_drive+4)) & 1) == 0) return(ERR_TRANSFER);

/* The command is issued by outputting 9 bytes to the controller chip. */
op = (fp->fl_opcode == DISK_READ ? FDC_READ : FDC_WRITE);
fdc_out(op);    /* issue the read or write command */
fdc_out((fp->fl_head << 2) | fp->fl_drive);
fdc_out(fp->fl_cylinder);    /* tell controller which cylinder */
fdc_out(fp->fl_head);    /* tell controller which head */
fdc_out((int) len[SECTOR_SIZE/DIVISOR]);    /* sector size */
fdc_out(NR_SECTORS);    /* tell controller how big a track is */
fdc_out(GAP);    /* tell controller how big sector gap is */
fdc_out(DTL);    /* tell controller about data length */

/* Block, waiting for disk interrupt. */
if (need_reset) return(ERR_TRANSFER);    /* if controller is sick, abort op */
receive(HARDWARE, &mess);

r = fdc_results(fp);
if (r != OK) return(r);

if ((fp->fl_results[ST1] & BAD_SECTOR || (fp->fl_results[ST2] & BAD_CYL))
fp->fl_calibration = UNCALIBRATED;
if ((fp->fl_results[ST1] & WRITE_PROTECT)
  printf("Diskette in drive %d is write protected.\n", fp->fl_drive);
  return(ERR_WR_PROTECT);

if ((fp->fl_results[ST0] & ST0_BITS) != TRANS_ST0)
return(ERR_TRANSFER);
if ((fp->fl_results[ST1] | fp->fl_results[ST2]) return(ERR_TRANSFER);

/* Compare actual numbers of sectors transferred with expected number. */
s = (fp->fl_results[ST_CYL] - fp->fl_cylinder) * NR_HEADS * NR_SECTORS;
s += (fp->fl_results[ST_HEAD] - fp->fl_head) * NR_SECTORS;
s += (fp->fl_results[ST_SEC] - fp->fl_sector);
if (s * SECTOR_SIZE != fp->fl_count) return(ERR_TRANSFER);
return(OK);

/******************************************************/
/* fdc_results */
/**
PRIVATE int fdc_results(fp)
register struct floppy *fp;    /* pointer to the drive struct */
{
/* Extract results from the controller after an operation. */
int i, j, status;
/* Loop, extracting bytes from FDC until it says it has no more. */
for (i = 0; i < MAX_RESULTS; i++) {
    port_in(FDC_STATUS, &status);
    if ((status & MASTER) == 0) return(ERR_STATUS);
    port_in(FDC_STATUS, &status); /* read it again */
    if ((status & DIRECTION) == 0) return(ERR_STATUS);
    port_in(FDC_DATA, &status);
    fp->fl_results[i] = status & BYTE;
    for (j = 0; j < 5; j++) /* delay loop */
        port_in(FDC_STATUS, &status);
    if ((status & CTL_BUSY) == 0) return(OK);
}

/* FDC is giving back too many results. */
need_reset = TRUE; /* controller chip must be reset */
return(ERR_STATUS);

/*=============================================*/
/* fdc_out */
/*=============================================*/
PRIVATE fdc_out(val)
    int val; /* write this byte to floppy disk controller */
{
    /* Output a byte to the controller. This is not entirely trivial, since you
    * can only write to it when it is listening, and it decides when to listen.
    * If the controller refuses to listen, the FDC chip is given a hard reset.
    */
    int retries, r;
    if (need_reset) return; /* if controller is not listening, return */
    retries = MAX_FDC_RETRY;

    /* It may take several tries to get the FDC to accept a command. */
    while (retries-- > 0) {
        port_in(FDC_STATUS, &r);
        r &= (MASTER | DIRECTION); /* just look at bits 2 and 3 */
        if (r != CTL_ACCEPTING) continue; /* FDC is not listening */
        port_out(FDC_DATA, val);
        return;
    }

    /* Controller is not listening. Hit it over the head with a hammer. */
    need_reset = TRUE;
}
PRIVATE int recalibrate(fp)

register struct floppy *fp;    /* pointer to the drive structure */

/* The floppy disk controller has no way of determining its absolute arm position (cylinder). Instead, it steps the arm a cylinder at a time and keeps track of where it thinks it is (in software). However, after a SEEK, the hardware reads information from the diskette telling where the arm actually is. If the arm is in the wrong place, a recalibration is done, which forces the arm to cylinder 0. This way the controller can get back into sync with reality. */

int r;

/* Issue the RECALIBRATE command and wait for the interrupt. */
start_motor(fp);    /* can't recalibrate with motor off */
fdc_out(FDC_RECALIBRATE);    /* tell drive to recalibrate itself */
fdc_out(fp->fl_drive);    /* specify drive */
if (need_reset) return(ERR_SEEK);    /* don't wait if controller is sick */
receive(HARDWARE, &mess);    /* wait for interrupt message */

/* Determine if the recalibration succeeded. */
fdc_out(FDC_SENSE);    /* issue SENSE command to see where we are */
r = fdc_results(fp);    /* get results of the SENSE command */
fp->fl_curcyl = -1;    /* force a SEEK next time */
if (r != OK ||    /* controller would not respond */
    (fp->fl_results[ST0] & ST0_BITS) != SEEK_ST0 || fp->fl_results[ST_PCN] != 0)
    /* Recalibration failed. FDC must be reset. */
    need_reset = TRUE;
    fp->fl_calibration = UNCALIBRATED;
    return(ERR_RECALIBRATE);
} else {    /* Recalibration succeeded. */
    fp->fl_calibration = CALIBRATED;
    return(OK);
}

/*===========================================================================*/
PRIVATE reset()

/* Issue a reset to the controller. This is done after any catastrophe, like the controller refusing to respond. */
int i, r, status;
register struct floppy *fp;

/* Disable interrupts and strobe reset bit low. */
need_reset = FALSE;
lock();
motor_status = 0;
motor_goal = 0;
port_out(DOR, 0); /* strobe reset bit low */
port_out(DOR, ENABLE_INT); /* strobe it high again */
unlock(); /* interrupts allowed again */
receive(HARDWARE, &mess); /* collect the RESET interrupt */

/* Interrupt from the reset has been received. Continue resetting. */
fp = &floppy[0]; /* use floppy[0] for scratch */
fp->fl_results[0] = 0; /* this byte will be checked shortly */
fdc_out(FDC_SENSE); /* did it work? */
r = fdc_results(fp); /* get results */
if (r != OK) panic("FDC won't reset", r);
status = fp->fl_results[0] & BYTE;
if (status != CHANGE)
    panic("FDC did not become ready after reset", fp->fl_results[0]);

/* Reset succeeded. Tell FDC drive parameters. */
fdc_out(FDC_SPECIFY); /* specify some timing parameters */
fdc_out(SPEC1); /* step-rate and head-unload-time */
fdc_out(SPEC2); /* head-load-time and non-dma */
for (i = 0; i < NR_DRIVES; i++) floppy[i].fl_calibration = UNCALIBRATED;

/*===========================================================================
* clock_mess
*===========================================================================*/

PRIVATE clock_mess(ticks, func)
int ticks; /* how many clock ticks to wait */
int (*func)(); /* function to call upon time out */
{
    mess.m_type = SET_ALARM;
    mess.CL0CK_PROC_NR = FLOPPY;
    mess.DELTA_TICKS = ticks;
    mess.FUNC_TO_CALL = func;
    sendrec(CL0CK, &mess);
}
3000  /*===============================================*/
3001  /* send_mess */
3002  /*===============================================*/
3003  PRIVATE send_mess()
3004  {
3005  /* This routine is called when the clock task has timed out on motor startup.*/
3006  mess.m_type = MOTOR_RUNNING;
3007  send(FLOPPY, &mess);
3008  }
This file contains the code and data for the clock task. The clock task
has a single entry point, clock_task(). It accepts four message types:

- CLOCK_TICK: a clock interrupt has occurred
- GET_TIME: a process wants the real time
- SET_TIME: a process wants to set the real time
- SET_ALARM: a process wants to be alerted after a specified interval

The input message is format m6. The parameters are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>m_type</th>
<th>CLOCK_PROC</th>
<th>FUNC</th>
<th>NEW_TIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SET_ALARM</td>
<td>proc_nr</td>
<td>f to call delta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOCK_TICK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GET_TIME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET_TIME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>newtime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an alarm goes off, if the caller is a user process, a SIGALRM signal
is sent to it. If it is a task, a function specified by the caller will
be invoked. This function may, for example, send a message, but only if
it is certain that the task will be blocked when the timer goes off.

Constant definitions.

#define MILLISEC 100 /* how often to call the scheduler (msec) */
#define SCHED_RATE (MILLISEC*HZ/1000) /* number of ticks per schedule */

#define TIMER0 0x40 /* port address for timer channel 0 */
#define TIMER_MODE 0x43 /* port address for timer channel 3 */
#define IBM_FREQ 1193182L /* IBM clock frequency for setting timer */
#define SQUARE_WAVE 0x36 /* mode for generating square wave */

PRIVATE real_time boot_time; /* time in seconds of system boot */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "proc.h"
PRIVATE real_time next_alarm; /* probable time of next alarm */
PRIVATE int sched_ticks = SCHED_RATE; /* counter: when 0, call scheduler */
PRIVATE struct proc *prev_ptr; /* last user process run by clock task */
PRIVATE message mc; /* message buffer for both input and output */
PRIVATE int (*watch_dog[NR_TASKS+1])(); /* watch_dog functions to call */

/*===========================================================================*
Public clock_task() *
===========================================================================*
int opcode;
init_clock(); /* initialize clock tables */

while (TRUE) {
receive(ANY, &mc); /* go get a message */
opcode = mc.m_type; /* extract the function code */

switch (opcode) {
  case SET_ALARM: do_setalarm(&mc); break;
  case GET_TIME: do_get_time(); break;
  case SET_TIME: do_set_time(&mc); break;
  case CLOCK_TICK: do_clocktick(); break;
  default: panic("clock task got bad message", mc.m_type);
}

/* Send reply, except for clock tick. */
mc.m_type = OK;
if (opcode != CLOCK_TICK) send(mc.m_source, &mc);
}

/*===========================================================================*
Private do_setalarm(m_ptr) *
===========================================================================*
PRIVATE *do_setalarm(m_ptr) /* pointer to request message */

/* A process wants an alarm signal or a task wants a given watch_dog function *
called after a specified interval. Record the request and check to see *
it is the very next alarm needed.
*/
3150 register struct proc *rp;
3151 int proc_nr;
3152 long delta_ticks; /* in how many clock ticks does he want it? */
3153 int (*function)(); /* function to call (tasks only) */
3154
3155 /* Extract the parameters from the message. */
3156 proc_nr = m_ptr->CLOCK_PROC_NR; /* process to interrupt later */
3157 delta_ticks = m_ptr->DELTA_TICKS; /* how many ticks to wait */
3158 function = m_ptr->FUNC_TO_CALL; /* function to call (tasks only) */
3159 rp = proc_addr(proc_nr);
3160 mc.SECONDS_LEFT = (rp->p_alarm == OL ? 0 : (rp->p_alarm - realtime)/HZ);
3161 rp->p_alarm = (delta_ticks == OL ? OL : realtime + delta_ticks);
3162 if (proc_nr < 0) watch_dog[-proc_nr] = function;
3163
3164 /* Which alarm is next? */
3165 next_alarm = MAX_P_LONG;
3166 for (rp = &proc[0]; rp < &proc[NR_TASKS+NR_PROCS]; rp++)
3167 if(rp->p_alarm != 0 && rp->p_alarm < next_alarm)next_alarm=rp->p_alarm;
3168
3169 }

3172 /*=============================================r=============================*/
3173 * do_get_time
3174 =============================================r=============================*/
3175 PRIVATE do_get_time()
3176 {
3177 /* Get and return the current clock time in ticks. */
3178 mc.m_type = REAL_TIME; /* set message type for reply */
3179 mc.NEW_TIME = boot_time + realtime/HZ; /* current real time */
3180 }

3184 /*=============================================r=============================*/
3185 * do_set_time
3186 =============================================r=============================*/
3187 PRIVATE do_set_time(m_ptr)
3188 message *m_ptr; /* pointer to request message */
3189 {
3190 /* Set the real time clock. Only the superuser can use this call. */
3191 boot_time = m_ptr->NEW_TIME - realtime/HZ;
3192 }

3196 /*=============================================r=============================*/
3197 * do_clocktick
3198 =============================================r=============================*/
3199 PRIVATE do_clocktick()
498
{ /* This routine is called on every clock tick. */
  register struct proc *rp;
  register int t, proc_nr;
  /* To guard against race conditions, first copy 'lost_ticks' to a local
   * variable, add this to 'realtime', and then subtract it from 'lost_ticks'. */
  t = lost_ticks; /* 'lost_ticks' counts missed interrupts */
  realtime += t + 1; /* update the time of day */
  lost_ticks -= t; /* these interrupts are no longer missed */
  if (next_alarm <= realtime) {
    /* An alarm may have gone off, but proc may have exited, so check. */
    next_alarm = MAX_P_LONG; /* start computing next alarm */
    for (rp = &proc[0]; rp < &proc[NR_TASKS+NR_PROCS]; rp++) {
      if (rp->p_alarm != (real_time) 0) {
        /* See if this alarm time has been reached. */
        if (rp->p_alarm <= realtime) {
          /* A timer has gone off. If it is a user proc
            * send it a signal. If it is a task, call the
            * function previously specified by the task. */
          proc_nr = rp - proc - NR_TASKS;
          if (proc_nr >= 0)
            cause_sig(proc_nr, SIGALRM);
          else
            (*watch_dog[-proc_nr]());
          rp->p_alarm = 0;
        }
      }
    }
    /* Work on determining which alarm is next. */
    if (rp->p_alarm != 0 & & rp->p_alarm < next_alarm)
      next_alarm = rp->p_alarm;
  }
  accounting(); /* keep track of who is using the cpu */
  if (--sched_ticks == 0) {
    if (bill_ptr == prev_ptr) sched(); /* process has run too long */
    sched_ticks = SCHED_RATE; /* reset quantum */
    prev_ptr = bill_ptr; /* new previous process */
  }
accounting

if (prev_proc >= LOW_USER)
    bill_ptr->user_time++; /* charge CPU time */
else
    bill_ptr->sys_time++; /* charge system time */

#ifdef i8088

init_clock:

PRIVATE init_clock()
{
/* Initialize channel 2 of the 8253A timer to e.g. 60 Hz. */

unsigned int count, low_byte, high_byte;

count = (unsigned) (IBM_FREQ/HZ); /* value to load into the timer */
low_byte = count & BYTE; /* compute low-order byte */
high_byte = (count >> 8) & BYTE; /* compute high-order byte */
port_out(TIMERO, low_byte); /* set timer to run continuously */
port_out(TIMERO, low_byte); /* load timer low byte */
port_out(TIMERO, low_byte); /* load timer high byte */
}
#endif
/* This file contains the terminal driver, both for the IBM console and regular ASCII terminals. It is split into two sections, a device-independent part and a device-dependent part. The device-independent part accepts characters to be printed from programs and queues them in a standard way for device-dependent output. It also accepts input and queues it for programs. This file contains 2 main entry points: tty_task() and keyboard().

When a key is struck on a terminal, an interrupt to an assembly language routine is generated. This routine saves the machine state and registers and calls keyboard(), which enters the character in an internal table, and then sends a message to the terminal task. The main program of the terminal task is tty_task(). It accepts not only messages about typed input, but also requests to read and write from terminals, etc.

The device-dependent part interfaces with the IBM console and ASCII terminals. The IBM keyboard is unusual in that keystrokes yield key numbers rather than ASCII codes, and furthermore, an interrupt is generated when a key is depressed and again when it is released. The IBM display is memory mapped, so outputting characters such as line feed, backspace and bell are tricky.

The valid messages and their parameters are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>m_type</th>
<th>TTY_LINE</th>
<th>PROC_NR</th>
<th>COUNT</th>
<th>TTY_SPEK</th>
<th>TTY_FLAGS</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TTY_CHAR_INT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>array ptr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY_O_DONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY_READ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY_WRITE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY_IOCTL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*/

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include ".h/s/tty.h"
#include ".h/signal.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "proc.h"

#define NR_TTYS 1  /* how many terminals can system handle */
#define TTY_IN_BYTES 200  /* input queue size */
#define TTY_RAM_WORDS 320  /* ram buffer size */
#define TTY_BUF_SIZE 256  /* unit for copying to/from queues */
#define TAB_SIZE 8  /* distance between tabs */
#define TAB_MASK 07  /* mask for tty_column when tabbing */
#define MAX_OVERFLOW 16  /* size of overrun input buffer */

#define ERASE_CHAR '\b'  /* default erase character */
#define KILL_CHAR '0'  /* default kill character */
#define INTR_CHAR (char)0177  /* default interrupt character */
#define QUIT_CHAR (char)034  /* default quit character */
#define XOFF_CHAR (char)023  /* default x-off character (CTRL-S) */
#define XON_CHAR (char)021  /* default x-on character (CTRL-Q) */
#define EOT_CHAR (char)004  /* CTRL-D */
#define MARKER (char)000  /* non-escaped CTRL-D stored as MARKER */
#define DEL_CODE (char)83  /* DEL for use in CTRL-ALT-DEL reboot */
#define AT_SIGN 0220  /* code to yield for CTRL-@ */

#define F1 59  /* scan code for function key F1 */
#define F2 60  /* scan code for function key F2 */
#define F10 68  /* scan code for function key F10 */
#define TOP_ROW 14  /* codes below this are shifted if CTRL */

PRIVATE struct tty_struct {
    /* Input queue. Typcd characters are stored here until read by a program. */
    char tty_inqueue[TTY_IN_BYTES];  /* array used to store the characters */
    char *tty_inhead;  /* pointer to place where next char goes */
    char *tty_intail;  /* pointer to next char to be given to prog */
    int tty_incount;  /* # chars in tty_inqueue */
    int tty_lfct;  /* # line feeds in tty_inqueue */

    /* Output section. */
    int tty_ramqueue[TTY_RAM_WORDS];  /* buffer for video RAM */
    int tty_rwords;  /* number of WORDS (not bytes) in outqueue */
    int tty_org;  /* location in RAM where 6845 base points */
    int tty_vid;  /* current position of cursor in video RAM */
    char tty_esc_state;  /* 0-normal, 1 = ESC seen, 2 = ESC + x seen */
    char tty_esc;  /* first character following an ESC */
    int tty_attribute;  /* current attribute byte << 8 */
    int (*tty_devstart)();  /* routine to start actual device output */

    /* Terminal parameters and status. */
    int tty_mode;  /* terminal mode set by IOCTL */
}
int tty_column;     /* current column number (0-origin) */
int tty_row;       /* current row (0 at bottom of screen) */
char tty_busy;     /* 1 when output in progress, else 0 */
char tty_escaped;  /* 1 when \ just seen, else 0 */
char tty_inhibited; /* 1 when CTRL-S just seen (stops output) */
char tty_makebreak; /* 1 for terminals that interrupt twice/key */
char tty_waiting;  /* 1 when output process waiting for reply */

/* User settable characters: erase, kill, interrupt, quit, x-on; x-off. */
char tty_erase;    /* char used to erase 1 char (init \H) */
char tty_kill;     /* char used to erase a line (init @) */
char tty_INTR;     /* char used to send SIGINT (init DEL) */
char tty_quit;     /* char used for core dump (init CTRL-D) */
char tty_xoff;     /* char used to stop output (init CTRL-Q) */
char tty_xon;      /* char used to start output (init CTRL-S) */
char tty_eof;      /* char used to stop output (init CTRL-D) */

/* Information about incomplete I/O requests is stored here. */
char tty_incaller; /* process that made the call (usually FS) */
char tty_inproc;   /* process that wants to read from tty */
char *tty_in_vir;  /* virtual address where data is to go */
int tty_inleft;    /* how many chars are still needed */
char tty_outcaller; /* process that made the call (usually FS) */
char tty_outproc;  /* process that wants to write to tty */
char *tty_out_vir; /* virtual address where data comes from */
phys_bytes tty_phys; /* physical address where data comes from */
int tty_outleft;   /* # chars yet to be copied to tty_outqueue */
int tty_cum;       /* # chars copied to tty_outqueue so far */

/* Miscellaneous. */
/* I/O port number for this terminal */
}
tty_struct[NR_TTYS];

/* Values for the fields. */
#define NOT_ESCAPED 0  /* previous character on this line not \ */
#define ESCAPED 1    /* previous character on this line was \ */
#define RUNNING 0    /* no CTRL-S has been typed to stop the tty */
#define STOPPED 1    /* CTRL-S has been typed to stop the tty */
#define INACTIVE 0   /* the tty is not printing */
#define BUSY 1        /* the tty is printing */
#define ONE_INT 0     /* regular terminals interrupt once per char */
#define TWO_INTS 1    /* IBM console interrupts two times per char */
#define NOT_WAITING 0 /* no output process is hanging */
#define WAITING 1     /* an output process is waiting for a reply */

PRIVATE char tty_driver_buf[2*MAX_OVERRUN+2]; /* driver collects chars here */
PRIVATE char tty_copy_buf[2*MAX_OVERRUN];     /* copy buf used to avoid races */
PRIVATE char tty_buf[TTY_BUF_SIZE];             /* scratch buffer to/from user space */
PRIVATE int shift1, shift2, capslock, numlock;  /* keep track of shift keys */
PRIVATE int control, alt;                      /* keep track of key statii */
MINIX SOURCE CODE

PRIVATE int olivetti; /* flag set for Olivetti M24 keyboard */
PUBLIC scan_code; /* scan code for '=' saved by bootstrap */

/* Scan codes to ASCII for unshifted keys */
PRIVATE char unsh[] = {
   0,033,'1','2','3','4','5','6',     '7','8','9','0','-','+','\b','\t',
   'q','w','e','r','t','y','u','i',    'o','p','[',']',015,0202,\a,\s',
   'd','f','g','h','j','k','l',      047,0140,0200,0134,\z,\x,\c,\v',
   'b','n','m',',',, 0201,*,0203,' ',0204,0241,0242,0243,0244,0245,
   0246,0247,0250,0251,0252,0205,0210,0267, 0270,0271,0211,0264,0265,0266,0214
   0260,0262,0263,'0',0177
};

/* Scan codes to ASCII for shifted keys */
PRIVATE char sh[] = {
   0,033,'!', '@', '#', '$', '%', '
   '&', '*', '(', ')', '-', '_','+','\b','\t',
   'Q','W','E','R','T','Y','U','I', 'O','P','[',']',015,0202,'A','S',
   'D','F','G','H','J','K','L',      042,0200,\z,\x,\c,\v',
   'B','N','M','<','>','?',0201,*,0203,' ',0204,0221,0222,0223,0224,0225,
   0226,0227,0230,0231,0232,0204,0213,'7', '8','9','0111,4','5','6',0214,'1',
   '2','3','0',0177
};

/* Scan codes to ASCII for Olivetti M24 for unshifted keys. */
PRIVATE char unshM24[] = {
   0,033,'1','2','3','4','5','6',     '7','8','9','0','-',',','\b','\t',
   'q','w','e','r','t','y','u','i',    'o','p','[',']',015,0202,'A','S',
   'D','F','G','H','J','K','L',      042,0200,\z,\x,\c,\v',
   'B','N','M','<','>','?',0201,*,0203,' ',0204,0214,0241,0242,0243,0244,0245,
   0246,0247,0250,0251,0252,0205,0210,0267, 0270,0271,0211,0264,0265,0266,0214,0268,0215,0216,0217
};

/* Scan codes to ASCII for Olivetti M24 for shifted keys. */
PRIVATE char shM24[] = {
   0,033,'!', '@', '#', '$', '%', '&',     047,0140,0200,0134,\z,\x,\c,\v',
   'Q','W','E','R','T','Y','U','I',    'O','P','[',']',015,0202,'A','S',
   'D','F','G','H','J','K','L',      042,0200,\z,\x,\c,\v',
   'B','N','M','<','>','?',0201,*,0203,' ',0204,0221,0222,0223,0224,0225,
   0226,0227,0230,0231,0232,0204,0213,'7', '8','9','0111,4','5','6',0214,'1',
   '2','3','0',0177
};

/*============================================================================*/

*  tty_task
*============================================================================*/
PUBLIC tty_task()
{
    /* Main routine of the terminal task. */
    message tty_mess; /* buffer for all incoming messages */
    register struct tty_struct *tp;
    tty_init(); /* initialize */
    while (TRUE) {
        receive(ANY, &tty_mess);
        tp = &tty_struct[tty_mess.TTY_LINE];
        switch(tty_mess.m_type) {
            case TTY_CHAR_INT: do_charint(&tty_mess); break;
            case TTY_READ: do_read(tp, &tty_mess); break;
            case TTY_WRITE: do_write(tp, &tty_mess); break;
            case TTY_IOCTL: do_ioctl(tp, &tty_mess); break;
            case CANCEL: do_cancel(tp, &tty_mess); break;
            case TTY_D_DN0E: /* reserved for future use (RS-232 terminals)*/
                default: tty_reply(TASK_REPLY, tty_mess.m_source,
                                  tty_mess.PROC_NR, EINVAL, OL, OL);
        }
    }
}

/*===========================================================================*
* do_charint
* ==========================================================================* 
PRIVATE do_charint(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr; /* message containing pointer to char(s) */
{
    /* A character has been typed. If a character is typed and the tty task is
     * not able to service it immediately, the character is accumulated within
     * the tty driver. Thus multiple chars may be accumulated. A single message
     * to the tty task may have to process several characters.
     */
    int m, n, count, replyee, caller;
    char *ptr, *copy_ptr, ch;
    struct tty_struct *tp;
    lock(); /* prevent races by disabling interrupts */
    ptr = m_ptr->ADDRESS; /* pointer to accumulated char array */
    copy_ptr = tty_copy_buf; /* ptr to shadow array where chars copied */
    n = *ptr; /* how many chars have been accumulated */
    count = n; /* save the character count */
    n = n + n; /* each char occupies 2 bytes */
    ptr += 2; /* skip count field at start of array */
    while (n-- > 0)
        *copy_ptr++ = *ptr++; /* copy the array to safety */
ptr = m_ptr->ADDRESS;
*ptr = 0;            /* accumulation count set to 0 */
unlock();           /* re-enable interrupts */

/* Loop on the accumulated characters, processing each in turn. */
copy_ptr = tty_copy_buf;
while (count-- > 0) {
    ch = *copy_ptr++;       /* get the character typed */
n = *copy_ptr++;          /* get the line number it came in on */
in_char(n, ch);            /* queue the char and echo it */

    /* See if a previously blocked reader can now be satisfied. */
    tp = &tty_struct[n];    /* pointer to struct for this character */
    if (tp->tty_inleft > 0) {
        /* does anybody want input? */
        m = tp->tty_mode & (CBREAK | RAW);
        if (tp->tty_lfct > 0 || (m != 0 && tp->tty_incount > 0)) {
            m = rd_chars(tp);
            /* Tell hanging reader that chars have arrived. */
            replyee = (int) tp->tty_incaller;
            caller = (int) tp->tty_inproc;
            tty_reply(REVIVE, replyee, caller, m, OL, OL);
        }
    }
}

/*===================================================================*/
*in_char
*===================================================================*/
PRIVATE in_char(line, ch)
int line;    /* line number on which char arrived */
char ch;     /* scan code for character that arrived */
{
    /* A character has just been typed in. Process, save, and echo it. */
    register struct tty_struct *tp;
    int mode, sig;
    char make_break();
    tp = &tty_struct[line];   /* set 'tp' to point to proper struct */
    /* Function keys are temporarily being used for debug dumps. */
    if (ch >= F1 && ch <= F10) {
        /* Check for function keys F1, F2, ... F10 */
        func_key(ch);        /* process function key */
        return;
    }
    if (tp->tty_incount >= TTY_IN_BYTES) return; /* no room, discard char */
    mode = tp->tty_mode & (RAW | CBREAK);
    if (tp->tty_makebreak)
        ch = make_break(ch);  /* console give 2 ints/ch */
else
    if (mode != RAW) ch &= 0177;  /* 7-bit chars except in raw mode */
    if (ch == 0) return;
/* Processing for COOKED and CBREAK mode contains special checks. */
if (mode == COOKED || mode == CBREAK) {
    /* Handle erase, kill and escape processing. */
    if (mode == COOKED) {
        /* First erase processing (rub out of last character). */
        if (ch == tp->tty_erase && tp->tty_escaped == NOT_ESCAPED) {
            chuck(tp);  /* remove last char entered */
            echo(tp, '\b');  /* remove it from the screen */
            echo(tp, '\');
            echo(tp, '\b');
            return;
        }
    }
    /* Now do kill processing (remove current line). */
    if (ch == tp->tty_kill && tp->tty_escaped == NOT_ESCAPED) {
        while( chuck(tp) == OK) /* keep looping */;
        echo(tp, tp->tty_kill);
        echo(tp, 'n');
        return;
    }
    /* Handle EOT and the escape symbol (backslash). */
    if (tp->tty_escaped == NOT_ESCAPED) {
        /* Normal case: previous char was not backslash. */
        if (ch == '\') {
            /* An escaped symbol has just been typed. */
            tp->tty_escaped = ESCAPED;
            echo(tp, ch);
            return;  /* do not store the ' ' */
        }
        /* CTRL-D means end-of-file, unless it is escaped. It
        * is stored in the text as MARKER, and counts as a
        * line feed in terms of knowing whether a full line
        * has been typed already.
        */
        if (ch == tp->tty_eof) ch = MARKER;
    } else {
        /* Previous character was backslash. */
        tp->tty_escaped = NOT_ESCAPED;  /* turn escaping off */
        if (ch != tp->tty_erase && ch != tp->tty_kill &&
            ch != tp->tty_eof) {
            /* Store the escape previously skipped over */
            *tp->tty_inhead++ = '\';
            *tp->tty_incount++;
            if (tp->tty_inhead ==
                &tp->tty_inqueue[TTY_IN_BYTES])
tp->tty_inhead = tp->tty_inqueue;
}

/* Both COOKED and CBREAK modes come here; first map CR to \n. */
if (ch == '\r' && (tp->tty_mode & CRMOD)) ch = '\n';

/* Check for interrupt and quit characters. */
if (ch == tp->tty_intr || ch == tp->tty_quit) {
    sig = (ch == tp->tty_intr ? SIGINT : SIGQUIT);
    tp->tty_inhibited = RUNNING;          /* do implied CRT-Q */
    finish(tp, EINTR);                  /* send reply */
    echo(tp, '\n');
    cause_sig(LOW_USER + 1 + line, sig);
    return;
}

/* Check for and process CTRL-S (terminal stop). */
if (ch == tp->tty_xoff) {
    tp->tty_inhibited = STOPPED;
    return;
}

/* Check for and process CTRL-Q (terminal start). */
if (ch == tp->tty_xon) {
    tp->tty_inhibited = RUNNING;
    (*tp->tty_devstart)(tp);         /* resume output */
    return;
}

/* All 3 modes come here. */
if (ch == '\n' || ch == MARKER) tp->tty_lfct++;
    /* count line feeds */
*tp->tty_inhead++ = ch;          /* save the character in the input queue */
if (tp->tty_inhead == &tp->tty_inqueue[TTY_IN_BYTES])
    tp->tty_inhead = tp->tty_inqueue; /* handle wraparound */
    tp->tty_incount++;
    echo(tp, ch);
}

#ifndef i8088
/*------------------------------------------------------------*
 * make_break
 *------------------------------------------------------------*/
PRIVATE char make_break(ch) char ch;          /* scan code of key just struck or released */
{
    /* This routine can handle keyboards that interrupt only on key depression,
     * as well as keyboards that interrupt on key depression and key release.

For efficiency, the interrupt routine filters out most key releases.

```c
int c, make, code;

if (olivetti == FALSE) {
    code = (shift1 | shift2 | capslock ? sh[c] : unsh[c]);
    if (control && c < TOP_ROW) code = sh[c];  /* CTRL-(top row) */
    if (c > 70 && numlock) code = m24[c];  /* numlock depressed */
} else {
    code &= BYTE;
    if (code < 0200 || code >= 0206) {
        if (alt) code |= 0200;  /* alt key ORs 0200 into code */
        if (make) code &= 037;  /* num lock */
        if (make) capslock = 1 - capslock;  /* caps lock */
        if (make) numlock = 1 - numlock;  /* num lock */
    }
}
```

Table entries 0200 - 0206 denote special actions.

```c
switch(code - 0200) {
    case 0:    shift1 = make;  break;  /* shift key on left */
    case 1:    shift2 = make;  break;  /* shift key on right */
    case 2:    control = make; break;  /* control */
    case 3:    alt = make;         break;  /* alt key */
    case 4:    if (make) capslock = 1 - capslock; break;  /* caps lock */
    case 5:    if (make) numlock = 1 - numlock; break;  /* num lock */
}
```

return(0);
/* Echo a character on the terminal. */
if ((tp->tty_mode & ECHO) == 0) return;  /* if no echoing, don't echo */
if (c != MARKER) out_char(tp, c);
flush(tp);  /* force character out onto the screen */
}

PRIVATE int chuck(tp)
register struct tty_struct *tp; /* from which tty should chars be removed */
{
   /* Delete one character from the input queue. Used for erase and kill. */
   char *prev;
   /* If input queue is empty, don't delete anything. */
   if (tp->tty_incount == 0) return(-1);
   /* Don't delete \n or \r. */
   prev = (tp->tty_inhead != tp->tty_inqueue ? tp->tty_inhead - 1 : &tp->tty_inqueue[TTY_IN_BYTES-1]);
   if (*prev == '\n' || *prev == '\r') return(-1);
   tp->tty_inhead = prev;
   tp->tty_incount--;
   return(OK);  /* char erasure was possible */
}

PRIVATE do_read(tp, m_ptr)
register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty struct */
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to message sent to the task */
{
   /* A process wants to read from a terminal. */
   int code, caller;
   if (tp->tty_inleft > 0) {
      /* if someone else is hanging, give up */
tty_reply(TASK_REPLY, m_ptr->m_source, m_ptr->PROC_NR, E_TRY_AGAIN, OL, OL);
      return;
   }
   /* Copy information from the message to the tty struct. */
   tp->tty_incaller = m_ptr->m_source;
   tp->tty_inproc = m_ptr->PROC_NR;
}
tp->tty_in_vir = m_ptr->ADDRESS;
3801  tp->tty_inleft = m_ptr->COUNT;
3802
3803  /* Try to get chars. This call either gets enough, or gets nothing. */
3804  code = rd_chars(tp);
3805  caller = (int) tp->tty_inproc;
3806  tty_reply(TASK_REPLY, m_ptr->m_source, caller, code, OL, OL);
3807 }

3810  /*============================================:r====r==================:======*/
3811  /*rd_chars*/
3812  PRIVATE rd_chars(tp)
3813  register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to terminal to read from */
3814  {
3815     /* A process wants to read from a terminal. First check if enough data is
3816      * available. If so, pass it to the user. If not, send FS a message telling
3817      * it to suspend the user. When enough data arrives later, the tty driver
3818      * copies it to the user space directly and notifies FS with a message.
3819      */
3820
3821     int cooked, ct, user_ct, buf_ct, cum, enough, eot_seen;
3822     vir_bytes in_vir, left;
3823     phys_bytes user_phys, ttyphys;
3824     char ch, *tty_ptr;
3825     struct proc *rp;
3826     extern phys_bytes umap();
3827
3828     cooked = ( (tp->tty_mode & (RAW | CBREAK)) ? 0 : 1); /* 1 iff COOKED mode */
3829     if (tp->tty_incount == 0 || (cooked && tp->tty_lfct == 0)) return(SUSPEND);
3830     rp = proc_addr(tp->tty_inproc);
3831     in_vir = (vir_bytes) tp->tty_in_vir;
3832     left = (vir_bytes) tp->tty_inleft;
3833     if ( (user_phys = umap(rp, D, in_vir, left)) == 0) return(E_BAD_ADDR);
3834     ttyphys = umap(proc_addr(TTY), D, (vir_bytes) tty_buf, TTY_BUF_SIZE);
3835     cum = 0;
3836     enough = 0;
3837     eot_seen = 0;
3838
3839     /* The outer loop iterates on buffers, one buffer load per iteration. */
3840     while (tp->tty_inleft > 0) {
3841         buf_ct = MIN(tp->tty_inleft, tp->tty_incount);
3842         buf_ct = MIN(buf_ct, TTY_BUF_SIZE);
3843         ct = 0;
3844         tty_ptr = tty_buf;
3845
3846         /* The inner loop fills one buffer. */
3847         while(buf_ct-- > 0) {
3848             ch = *tp->tty_intail++;
if (tp->tty_intail == &tp->tty_inqueue[TTY_IN_BYTES])
    tp->tty_intail = tp->tty_inqueue;
*tty_ptr++ = ch;
ct++;
if (ch == '\n' || ch == MARKER) {
    tp->tty_lfct--;
    if (cooked && ch == MARKER) eot_seen++;
    enough++; /* exit loop */
    if (cooked) break; /* only provide 1 line */
}
/* Copy one buffer to user space. Be careful about CTRL-D. In cooked
 * mode it is not transmitted to user programs, and is not counted as
 * a character as far as the count goes, but it does occupy space in
 * the driver's tables and must be counted there. *
 */
user_ct = (eot_seen ? ct - 1 : ct); /* bytes to copy to user */
phys_copy(tpy_phys, user_phys, (phys_bytes) user_ct);
user_phys += user_ct;
cum += user_ct;
if (tp->tty_inleft == ct)
    if (tp->tty_incount == 0 || enough) break;
}
if (tp->tty_inleft == 0)
    return(cum);

/*=============================================*/
* finish
*=============================================*/
PRIVATE finish(tp, code)
register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty struct */
int code; /* reply code */
{
    /* A command has terminated (possibly due to DEL). Tell caller. */
    int replyee, caller;
    tp->tty_rwords = 0;
    tp->tty_outleft = 0;
    if (tp->tty_waiting == NOT_WAITING) return;
    replyee = (int) tp->tty_otcaller;
    caller = (int) tp->tty_outproc;
    tty_reply(TASK_REPLY, replyee, caller, code, OL, OL);
    tp->tty_waiting = NOT_WAITING;
/* ==do_write== */
do_write(tp, m_ptr)

register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty struct */
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to message sent to the task */
{
    /* A process wants to write on a terminal. */
    vir_bytes out_vir, out_left;
    struct proc *rp;
    extern phys_bytes umap();
    /* Copy message parameters to the tty structure. */
    tp->tty_otcaller = m_ptr->m_source;
    tp->tty_outproc = m_ptr->PROC_NR;
    tp->tty_out_vir = m_ptr->ADDRESS;
    tp->tty_outleft = m_ptr->COUNT;
    tp->tty_waiting = WAITING;
    tp->tty_cum = 0;
    /* Compute the physical address where the data is in user space. */
    rp = proc_addr(tp->tty_outproc);
    out_vir = (vir_bytes) tp->tty_out_vir;
    out_left = (vir_bytes) tp->tty_outleft;
    if ( (tp->ttyphys = umap(rp, D, out_vir, out_left)) == 0 ) {
        /* Buffer address provided by user is outside its address space. */
        tp->tty_cum = E_BAD_ADDR;
        tp->tty_outleft = 0;
    }
    /* Copy characters from the user process to the terminal. */
    (*tp->tty_devstart)(tp); /* copy data to queue and start I/O */
}

/* ==do_ioctl== */
do_ioctl(tp, m_ptr)

register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty_struct */
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to message sent to task */
{
    /* Perform IOCTL on this terminal. */
    long flags, erki, erase, kill, intr, quit, xon, xoff, eof;
    int r;
3950     r = OK;
3951     flags = 0;
3952     erki = 0;
3953     switch (m_ptr->TTY_REQUEST) {
3954         case TIOCSETP:
3955             /* Set erase, kill, and flags. */
3956             tp->tty_erase = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_SPEK >> 8) & BYTE); /* erase */
3957             tp->tty_kill = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_SPEK >> 0) & BYTE); /* kill */
3958             tp->tty_mode = (int)m_ptr->TTY_FLAGS; /* mode word */
3959             break;
3960         case TIOCSETC:
3961             /* Set intr, quit, xon, xoff, eof (brk not used). */
3962             tp->tty_intr = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_SPEK >> 24) & BYTE); /* interrupt */
3963             tp->tty_quit = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_SPEK >> 16) & BYTE); /* quit */
3964             tp->tty_xon = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_SPEK >> 8) & BYTE); /* CTRL-S */
3965             tp->tty_xoff = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_SPEK >> 0) & BYTE); /* CTRL-Q */
3966             tp->tty_eof = (char)((m_ptr->TTY_FLAGS >> 8) & BYTE); /* CTRL-D */
3967             break;
3968         case TIOCGETP:
3969             /* Get erase, kill, and flags. */
3970             erase = ((long)tp->tty_erase) & BYTE;
3971             kill = ((long)tp->tty_kill) & BYTE;
3972             erki = (erase << 8) | kill;
3973             flags = (long)tp->tty_mode;
3974             break;
3975         case TIOCGETC:
3976             /* Get intr, quit, xon, xoff, eof. */
3977             intr = ((long)tp->tty_intr) & BYTE;
3978             quit = ((long)tp->tty_quit) & BYTE;
3979             xon = ((long)tp->tty_xon) & BYTE;
3980             xoff = ((long)tp->tty_xoff) & BYTE;
3981             eof = ((long)tp->tty_eof) & BYTE;
3982             erki = (intr << 24) | (quit << 16) | (xon << 8) | (xoff << 0);
3983             flags = (eof << 8);
3984             break;
3985         default:
3986             r = EINVAL;
3987     }
3988     /* Send the reply. */
3989     tty_reply(TASK_REPLY, m_ptr->m_source, m_ptr->PROC_NR, r, flags, erki);
3990 }
PRIVATE do_cancel(tp, m_ptr)

register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty_struct */
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to message sent to task */
{
    /* A signal has been sent to a process that is hanging trying to read or write.
    * The pending read or write must be finished off immediately.
    */
    if (tp->tty_left == 0 && tp->tty_outleft == 0) return;
    /* Kill off input and output. */
    tp->tty_inhead = tp->tty_inqueue; /* discard all input */
    tp->tty_intail = tp->tty_inqueue;
    tp->tty_incount = 0;
    tp->tty_lfct = 0;
    tp->tty_inleft = 0;
    tp->tty_outleft = 0;
    tp->tty_waiting = NOT_WAITING; /* don't send reply */
    tty_reply(TASK_REPLY, m_ptr->m_source, m_ptr->PROC_NR, EINTR, OL, OL);
}

PRIVATE tty_reply(code, replyee, proc_nr, status, extra, other)
{
    /* Send a reply to a process that wanted to read or write data. */
    message tty_mess;
    tty_mess.m_type = code;
    tty_mess.REP_PROC_NR = proc_nr;
    tty_mess.REP_STATUS = status;
    tty_mess.TTY_FLAGS = extra; /* used by IOCTL for flags (mode) */
    tty_mess.TTY_SPEK = other; /* used by IOCTL for erase and kill chars */
    send(replyee, &tty_mess);
}
4050 /**************************************************************************/
4051 /**** Definitions used by the console driver. */
4052 #define COLOR_BASE 0x8000 /* video ram paragraph for color display */
4053 #define MONO_BASE 0x8000 /* video ram address for mono display */
4054 #define MONO_INDEX 0x01 /* index characters */
4055 #define MONO_INDEX 0x64 /* index 64 characters */
4056 #define C_VID_MASK 0x3fff /* mask for 16K video RAM */
4057 #define M_VID_MASK 0x0fff /* mask for 4K video RAM */
4058 #define C_RETRACE 0x0700 /* how many characters to display at once */
4059 #define M_RETRACE 0x0f00 /* how many characters to display at once */
4060 #define WORD_MASK 0xffff /* mask for 16 bits */
4061 #define OFF_MASK 0x000f /* mask for 4 bits */
4062 #define BEEP_FREQ 0x0533 /* value to put into timer to set beep freq */
4063 #define B_TIME 0x2000 /* how long to sound the CTRL-G beep tone */
4064 #define BLANK 0x0700 /* determines cursor color on blank screen */
4065 #define TITLE_WIDTH 80 /* # characters on a line */
4066 #define SCR_LINES 25 /* # lines on the screen */
4067 #define CTRL_S 31 /* scan code for letter S (for CRTL-S) */
4068 #define MONOCHROME 1 /* value for tty_ioport tells color vs. mono */
4069 #define CONSOLE 0 /* line number for console */
4070 #define GO_FORWARD 0 /* scroll forward */
4071 #define GO_BACKWARD 1 /* scroll backward */
4072 #define TIMER2 0x42 /* I/O port for timer channel 2 */
4073 #define TIMER3 0x43 /* I/O port for timer channel 3 */
4074 #define KEYBD 0x60 /* I/O port for keyboard data */
4075 #define PORT_B 0x61 /* I/O port for 8255 port B */
4076 #define KBIT 0x80 /* bit used to ack characters to keyboard */
4077 #define KB_STATUS 0x64 /* Olivetti keyboard status port */
4078 #define BYTE_AVAIL 0x01 /* there is something in KEYBD port */
4079 #define KB_BUSY 0x02 /* KEYBD port ready to accept a command */
4080 #define DELUXE 0x01 /* this bit is set up iff deluxe keyboard */
4081 #define DELUXE 0x01 /* command to get keyboard type */
4082 #define OLVETTI_Equal 12 /* the '=' key is 12 on Olivetti, 13 on IBM */
/* Global variables used by the console driver. */
PUBLIC int color;    /* 1 if console is color, 0 if it is mono */
PUBLIC message keyboard_mess; /* message used for console input chars */
PRIVATE const char *retrace;    /* how many characters to display per burst */
PRIVATE unsigned vid_base;      /* base of video ram (0xB000 or 0xBB00) */
PRIVATE int vid_mask;           /* 077777 for color (16K) or 07777 for mono */
PRIVATE int vid_port;           /* I/O port for accessing 6845 */

/*================================================================*/
PRIVATE keyboard
/*================================================================*/
PUBLIC keyboard()
{
    /* A keyboard interrupt has occurred. Process it. */
    int val, code, k, raw_bit;
    char stopc;

    /* Fetch the character from the keyboard hardware and acknowledge it. */
    port_in(KBD, &code);   /* get the scan code for the key struck */
    port_in(PORT_B, &val); /* strobe the keyboard to ack the char */
    port_out(PORT_B, val | KBIT); /* strobe the bit high */
    port_out(PORT_B, val);   /* now strobe it low */

    /* The IBM keyboard interrupts twice per key, once when depressed, once when released. Filter out the latter, ignoring all but the shift-type keys. */
    if (k > 0) {
        if (k != 29 && k != 42 && k != 54 && k != 56 && k != 69) {
            port_out(INT_CTL, ENABLE);  /* re-enable interrupts */
            return; /* don’t call tty_task() */
        }
    } else {
        /* Check to see if character is CTRL-S, to stop output. Setting xoff */
        /* to anything other than CTRL-S will not be detected here, but will */
        /* be detected later, in the driver. A general routine to detect any */
        /* xoff character here would be complicated since we only have the */
        /* scan code here, not the ASCII character. */
        /* */
        raw_bit = tty_struct[CONSOLE].tty_mode & RAW;
        stopc = tty_struct[CONSOLE].tty_xoff;
        if (raw_bit == 0 && control && code == CTRL_S && stopc == XOFF_CHAR) {
            tty_struct[CONSOLE].tty_inhibited = STOPPED;
            port_out(INT_CTL, ENABLE);
        }
        return;
4150   }
4151 }
4152
4153  /* Check for CTRL-ALT-DEL, and if found, reboot the computer. */
4154  if (control && alt && code == DEI_CODE) reboot();  /* CTRL-ALT-DEL */
4155
4156  /* Store the character in memory so the task can get it later. */
4157  if (k = tty_driver_buf[0] < tty_driver_buf[1]) {
4158    /* There is room to store this character; do it. */
4159    k = k + 1;
4160    tty_driver_buf[k+2] = code;  /* store the scan code */
4161    tty_driver_buf[k+3] = CONSOLE;  /* tell which line it came from */
4162    tty_driver_buf[0]++;
4163  }/* Build and send the interrupt message. */
4164  keybd_mess.m_type = TTY_CHAR_INT;
4165  keybd_mess.ADDRESS = tty_driver_buf;
4166  interrupt(TTY, &keybd_mess);  /* send a message to the tty task */
4167  } else {
4168    /* Too many characters have been buffered. Discard excess. */
4169    port_out(INT_CTL, ENABLE);  /* re-enable 8259A controller */
4170  }
4171
4172
4173  /*================================================================*/
4174  /* Console */
4175  /*================================================================*/
4176  PRIVATE console(tp)
4177  register struct tty_struct *tp;  /* tells which terminal is to be used */
4178  {
4179    int count;
4180    char c;
4181    unsigned segment, offset, offset1;
4182    /* Loop over the user bytes one at a time, outputting each one. */
4183    segment = (tp->tty_phys >> 4) & WORD_MASK;
4184    offset = tp->tty_phys & OFF_MASK;
4185    offset1 = offset;
4186    count = 0;
4187    while (tp->tty_outleft > 0 && tp->tty_inhibited == RUNNING) {
4188      c = get_byte(segment, offset);  /* fetch 1 byte from user space */
4189      out_char(tp, c);  /* write 1 byte to terminal */
4190      offset++;  /* advance one character in user buffer */
tp->tty_outleft--; /* decrement count */
flush(tp); /* clear out the pending characters */

/* Update terminal data structure. */
count = offset - offset1; /* # characters printed */
tp->tty_phys += count; /* advance physical data pointer */
tp->tty_cum += count; /* number of characters printed */

/* If all data has been copied to the terminal, send the reply. */
if (tp->tty_outleft == 0) finish(tp, tp->tty_cum);

/***********************************************************/
PRIVATE out_char(tp, c)
register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty struct */
char c; /* character to be output */
{
  /* Output a character on the console. Check for escape sequences, including
   * ESC 32+2 32+y to move cursor to (x, y)
   * ESC ~ 0 to clear from cursor to end of screen
   * ESC ~ 1 to reverse scroll the screen 1 line
   * ESC z x to set the attribute byte to x (z is a literal here)
   */

  /* Check to see if we are part way through an escape sequence. */
  if (tp->tty_esc_state == 1) {
    tp->tty_echar = c;
    tp->tty_esc_state = 2;
    return;
  }

  if (tp->tty_esc_state == 2) {
    escape(tp, tp->tty_echar, c);
    tp->tty_esc_state = 0;
    return;
  }

  switch(c) {
  case 007: /* ring the bell */
    flush(tp); /* print any chars queued for output */
    beep(BEEP_FREQ); /* BEEP_FREQ gives bell tone */
    return;
  case 013: /* CTRL-K */
    move_to(tp, tp->tty_column, tp->tty_row + 1);
    return;
  }
case 014: /* CTRL-L */
      move_to(tp, tp->tty_column + 1, tp->tty_row);
      return;

case 016: /* CTRL-N */
      move_to(tp, tp->tty_column + 1, tp->tty_row);
      return;

case '\b': /* backspace */
      move_to(tp, tp->tty_column - 1, tp->tty_row);
      return;

case '\n': /* line feed */
      if (tp->tty_mode & CRMOD) out_char(tp, '\r');
      if (tp->tty_row == 0)
          scroll_screen(tp, GO_FORWARD);
      else
          tp->tty_row--;
      move_to(tp, tp->tty_column, tp->tty_row);
      return;

case '\r': /* carriage return */
      move_to(tp, 0, tp->tty_row);
      return;

case '\t': /* tab */
      if ((tp->tty_mode & XTABS) == XTABS) {
          do {
              out_char(tp, ' ');
          } while (tp->tty_column & TA8_MASK);
          return;
      } /* Ignore tab if XTABS is off--video RAM has no hardware tab */
      return;

case 033: /* ESC - start of an escape sequence */
      flush(tp); /* print any chars queued for output */
      tp->tty_esc_state = 1; /* mark ESC as seen */
      return;

default: /* printable chars are stored in ramqueue */
      if (tp->tty_column >= LINE_WIDTH) return; /* long line */
      if (tp->tty_rwords == TTY_RAM_WORDS) flush(tp);
      tp->tty_ramqueue[tp->tty_rwords++] = tp->tty_attribute | c;
      tp->tty_column++; /* next column */
      return;
  }
}
/* Scroll a line of characters on the screen. */
scroll_screen(tp, dir)

/* move to location (x, y) on the screen. */
move_to(tp, x, y)
flush(tp); /* flush any pending characters */
if (x < 0 || x >= LINE_WIDTH || y < 0 || y >= SCR_LINES) return;
tp->tty_column = x; /* set x co-ordinate */
tp->tty_row = y; /* set y co-ordinate */
tp->tty_vid = (tp->tty_org + 2*(SCR_LINES-1-y)* LINE_WIDTH + 2*x);
set_6845(CURS0R, tp->tty_vid >> 1); /* cursor counts in words */
}

/*=============================================*/
/* escape */
/*=============================================*/
PRIVATE escape(tp, x, y)
register struct tty_struct *tp; /* pointer to tty struct */
char x; /* escape sequence is ESC x y; this is x */
char y; /* escape sequence is ESC x y; this is y */
{
  /* Handle an escape sequence. */
  int n, ct, vx;

  /* Check for ESC z attribute - used to change attribute byte. */
  if (x == 'z') {
    /* Set attribute byte */
    tp->tty_attribute = y << 8;
    return;
  }

  /* Check for ESC \n - used for clear screen, reverse scroll. */
  if (x == '\n') {
    if (y == '0') {
      /* Clear from cursor to end of screen */
      n = 2 * LINE_WIDTH * (tp->tty_row + 1) - 2 * tp->tty_column;
      vx = tp->tty_vid;
      while (n > 0) {
        ct = MIN(n, vid_retrace);
        vid_copy(NIL_PTR, vid_base, vx, ct/2);
        vx += ct;
        n -= ct;
      }
    } else if (y == '1') {
      /* Reverse scroll. */
      scroll_screen(tp, GO_BACKWARD);
    }
  }
  return;
}

/* Must be cursor movement (or invalid). */
move_to(tp, x - 32, y - 32);
PRIVATE set_6845(reg, val)

int reg; /* which register pair to set */
int val; /* 16-bit value to set it to */
{
/* Set a register pair inside the 6845. */
* Registers 10-11 control the format of the cursor (how high it is, etc).
* Registers 12-13 tell the 6845 where in video ram to start (in WORDS)
* Registers 14-15 tell the 6845 where to put the cursor (in WORDS)
* Note that registers 12-15 work in words, i.e. 0x0000 is the top left
* character, but 0x0001 (not 0x0002) is the next character. This addressing
* is different from the way the 8088 addresses the video ram, where 0x0002
* is the address of the next character.
*/
port_out(vid_port + INDEX, reg); /* set the index register */
port_out(vid_port + DATA, (val>>8) & BYTE); /* output high byte */
port_out(vid_port + INDEX, reg + 1); /* again */
port_out(vid_port + DATA, val&BYTE); /* output low byte */

/*====================================================================*/
PRIVATE beep(f)
int f; /* this value determines beep frequency */
{
/* Making a beeping sound on the speaker (output for CTRL-G). The beep is
* kept short, because interrupts must be disabled during beeping, and it
* is undesirable to keep them off too long. This routine works by turning
* on the bits in port B of the 8255 chip that drive the speaker.
*/
int x, k;
lock(); /* disable interrupts */
port_out(TIMER3,0xB6); /* set up timer channel 2 mode */
port_out(TIMER2, f&BYTE); /* load low-order bits of frequency in timer */
port_out(TIMER2,(f>>8)&BYTE); /* now high-order bits of frequency in timer */
port_in(PORT_8,&x); /* acquire status of port 8 */
port_out(PORT_B, x|3); /* turn bits 0 and 1 on to beep */
for (k = 0; k < B_TIME; k++); /* delay loop while beeper sounding */
port_out(PORT_B, x); /* restore port B the way it was */
unlock(); /* re-enable interrupts */
PRIVATE tty_init()
{
    /* Initialize the tty tables. */
    register struct tty_struct *tp;
    for (tp = &tty_struct[0]; tp < &tty_struct[NR_TTYS]; tp++) {
        tp->tty_inhead = tp->tty_inqueue;
        tp->tty_intail = tp->tty_inqueue;
        tp->tty_mode = CRMOD | XTABS | ECHO;
        tp->tty_devstart = console;
        tp->tty_erase = ERASE_CHAR;
        tp->tty_kill = KILL_CHAR;
        tp->tty_intr = INTR_CHAR;
        tp->tty_quit = QUIT_CHAR;
        tp->tty_xon = X0N_CHAR;
        tp->tty_xoff = X0FF_CHAR;
        tp->tty_eof = EDT_CHAR;
    }
    tty_struct[0].tty_makebreak = TWO_INTS; /* tty 0 is console */
    if (color) {
        vid_base = COLOR_BASE;
        vid_mask = C_VID_MASK;
        vid_port = C_6845;
        vid_retrace = C_RETRACE;
    } else {
        vid_base = MONO_BASE;
        vid_mask = M_VID_MASK;
        vid_port = M_6845;
        vid_retrace = M_RETRACE;
    }
    tty_struct[0].tty_attribute = BLANK;
    tty_driver_buf[1] = MAX_OVERRUN; /* set up limit on keyboard buffering */
    set_6845(CUR_SIZE, 31); /* set cursor shape */
    set_6845(VID_ORG, 0); /* use page 0 of video ram */
    move_to(&tty_struct[0], 0, 0); /* move cursor to lower left corner */
    /* Determine which keyboard type is attached. The bootstrap program asks
     * the user to type an '='. The scan codes for '=' differ depending on the
     * keyboard in use.
     */
    if (scan_code == OIVIETTI_EQUAL) olivetti = TRUE;
}
$$\text{PUBLIC \texttt{putc}(c)}$$

```c
char c; /* character to print */
```

/* This procedure is used by the version of printf() that is linked with
* the kernel itself. The one in the library sends a message to FS, which is
* not what is needed for printing within the kernel. This version just queues
* the character and starts the output. */

```c
out_char(&tty struct[0], c);
```

$$\text{PRIVATE \texttt{func_key}(ch)}$$

```c
char ch; /* scan code for a function key */
```

/* This procedure traps function keys for debugging purposes. When MINIX is
* fully debugged, it should be removed. */

```c
if (ch == F1) p_dmp(); /* print process table */
if (ch == F2) map_dmp(); /* print memory map */
```
/* This task handles the interface between file system and kernel as well as
between memory manager and kernel. System services are obtained by sending
sys_task() a message specifying what is needed. To make life easier for
MM and FS, a library is provided with routines whose names are of the
form sys_xxx, e.g. sys_xit sends the SYS_XIT message to sys_task. The
message types and parameters are:

SYS_FORK informs kernel that a process has forked
SYS_NEWMAP allows MM to set up a process memory map
SYS_EXEC sets program counter and stack pointer after EXEC
SYS_XIT informs kernel that a process has exited
SYS_GETSP caller wants to read out some process’ stack pointer
SYS_TIMES caller wants to get accounting times for a process
SYS_ABORT MM or FS cannot go on; abort MINIX
SYS_SIG send a signal to a process
SYS_COPY requests a block of data to be copied between processes

Message type ml is used for all except SYS_SIG and SYS_COPY, both of
which need special parameter types.

m_type PROC1 PROC2 PID MEM_PTR

SYS_FORK parent child pid |
SYS_NEWMAP proc nr | map ptr |
SYS_EXEC proc nr | new sp |
SYS_XIT parent | exitee |
SYS_GETSP proc nr |
SYS_TIMES proc nr | buf ptr |
SYS_ABORT |

m_type m6_i1 m6_i2 m6_i3 m6_f1
SYS_SIG proc_nr | sig | handler |

m_type m5_c1 m5_i1 m5_i3 m5_c2 m5_i2 m5_i2 m5_i3
SYS_COPY src seg src proc src vir | dst seg dst proc dst vir | byte ct |

In addition to the main sys_task() entry point, there are three other minor
* entry points:
* cause_sig: take action to cause a signal to occur, sooner or later
* inform: tell MM about pending signals
* umap: compute the physical address for a given virtual address
 */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/signal.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "proc.h"

#define COPY_UNIT 65534L  /* max bytes to copy at once */
extern phys_bytes umap();

PRIVATE message m;
PRIVATE char sig_stuff[SIG_PUSH_BYTES]; /* used to send signals to processes */

/*=============================================*/
/* sys_task */
/*=============================================*/
PUBLIC sys_task()
{
    /* Main entry point of sys_task. Get the message and dispatch on type. */
    register int r;

    while (TRUE) {
        receive(ANY, &m);
        switch (m.m_type) { /* which system call */
            case SYS_FORK: r = do_fork(&m); break;
            case SYS_NEWMAP: r = do_newmap(&m); break;
            case SYS_EXEC: r = do_exec(&m); break;
            case SYS_XIT: r = do_xit(&m); break;
            case SYS_GETSP: r = do_getsp(&m); break;
            case SYS_TIMES: r = do_times(&m); break;
            case SYS_ABORT: r = do_abort(&m); break;
            case SYS_SIG: r = do_sig(&m); break;
            case SYS_COPY: r = do_copy(&m); break;
            default: r = E_BAD_FCN;
        }
        m.m_type = r; /* 'r' reports status of call */
send(m.m_source, &m);         /* send reply to caller */
}

/*==========================================================================*
*do_fork
*==========================================================================*/
PRIVATE int do_fork(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr;        /* pointer to request message */
{
    /* Handle sys_fork(). 'kl' has forked. The child is 'k2'. */

    register struct proc *rpc;
    register char *sptr, *dptr;       /* pointers for copying proc struct */
    int kl;                           /* number of parent process */
    int k2;                           /* number of child process */
    int pid;                          /* process id of child */
    int bytes;                        /* counter for copying proc struct */

    kl = m_ptr->PR0Cl;                 /* extract parent slot number from msg */
    k2 = m_ptr->PR0C2;                 /* extract child slot number */
    pid = m_ptr->PID;                  /* extract child process id */

    if (kl < 0 || kl >= NR_PROCS || k2 < 0 || k2 >= NR_PROCS)return(E_BAD_PR0C);
    rpc = proc_addr(k2);

    /* Copy parent 'proc' struct to child. */
    sptr = (char *)proc_addr(kl);      /* parent pointer */
    dptr = (char *)proc_addr(k2);      /* child pointer */
    bytes = sizeof(struct proc);      /* # bytes to copy */
    while (bytes--) *dptr++ = *sptr++;

    rpc->p_flags |= NCLMAP;            /* inhibit the process from running */
    rpc->p_pid = pid;                  /* install child's pid */
    rpc->p_reg[RET_REG] = 0;           /* child sees pid = 0 to know it is child */
    rpc->user_time = 0;                /* set all the accounting times to 0 */
    rpc->sys_time = 0;
    rpc->child_utime = 0;
    rpc->child_stime = 0;
    return(OK);
}

/*==========================================================================*
*do_newmap
*==========================================================================*/
PRIVATE int do_newmap(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr;        /* pointer to request message */
528

529 { /* Handle sys_newmap(). Fetch the memory map from MM. */
530
531 register struct proc *rp, *rsrc;
532 phys_bytes src_phys, dst_phys, pn;
533 vir_bytes vmm, vsys, vn;
534 int caller; /* whose space has the new map (usually MM) */
535 int k; /* process whose map is to be loaded */
536 int old_flags; /* value of flags before modification */
537 struct mem_map *map_ptr; /* virtual address of map inside caller (MM) */
538
539 /* Extract message parameters and copy new memory map from MM. */
540 caller = m_ptr->m_source;
541 k = m_ptr->PROC1;
542 map_ptr = (struct mem_map *) m_ptr->MEM_PTR;
543 if (k < -NR_TASKS || k >= NR_PROCS) return(E_BAD_PROC);
544 rp = proc_addr(k); /* ptr to entry of user getting new map */
545 rsrc = proc_addr(caller); /* ptr to MM’s proc entry */
546 vn = NR_SEGS * sizeof(struct mem_map);
547 pn = vn;
548 vmm = (vir_bytes) map_ptr; /* careful about sign extension */
549 vsys = (vir_bytes) rp->p_map; /* again, careful about sign extension */
550 if ((src_phys = umap(rsrc, 0, vmm, vn)) == 0)
551 panic("bad call to sys_newmap (src)", NO_NUM);
552 if ((dst_phys = umap(proc_addr(SYSTASK), D, vsys, vn)) == 0)
553 panic("bad call to sys_newmap (dst)", NO_NUM);
554 phys_copy(src_phys, dst_phys, pn);
555
556 #ifdef i8088
557 /* On 8088, set segment registers. */
558 rp->p_reg[CS_REG] = rp->p_map[T].mem_phys; /* set cs */
559 rp->p_reg[DS_REG] = rp->p_map[0].mem_phys; /* set ds */
560 rp->p_reg[ES_REG] = rp->p_map[0].mem_phys; /* set ss */
561 rp->p_reg[ES_REG] = rp->p_map[0].mem_phys; /* set es */
562 #endif
563
564 old_flags = rp->p_flags; /* save the previous value of the flags */
565 rp->p_flags &= ~NO_MAP;
566 if (old_flags != 0 && rp->p_flags == 0) ready(rp);
567 return(OK);
568}

569/*===========================================================================*
570 * do_exec *
571/*===========================================================================*
572PRIVATE int do_exec(m_ptr)
573 message *m_ptr; /* pointer to request message */
574{
575 /* Handle sys_exec(). A process has done a successful EXEC. Patch it up. */
register struct proc *rp;
int k;  /* which process */
int *sp;  /* new sp */
k = m_ptr->PR0Cl;  /* 'k' tells which process did EXEC */
sp = (int *) m_ptr->STACK_PTR;
if (k < 0 || k >= NR_PROCS) return(E_BAD_PROC);

t = m_ptr->PR0C2;
if (t < 0 || t >= NR_PROCS)
    return(E_BAD_PROC);

rp = proc_addr(k);

rp->p_sp = sp;  /* set the stack pointer */
rp->p_pcpsw.pc = (int (*)()) 0;  /* reset pc */
rp->p_alarm = 0;  /* reset alarm timer */
rp->p_flags &= ~RECEIVING;  /* MM does not reply to EXEC call */
if (rp->p_flags == 0) ready(rp);
return(OK);

/*=============================================*/
do_xit
/*===============================================*/
PRIVATE int do_xit(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr;  /* pointer to request message */
{
    register struct proc *rp, *rc;
    struct proc *np, *xp;
    int parent;  /* number of exiting proc's parent */
    int proc_nr;  /* number of process doing the exit */

    parent = m_ptr->PR0Cl;  /* slot number of parent process */
    proc_nr = m_ptr->PR0C2;  /* slot number of exiting process */
    if (parent < 0 || parent >= NR_PROCS || proc_nr < 0 || proc_nr >= NR_PROCS)
        return(E_BAD_PROC);
    rp = proc_addr(parent);
    rc = proc_addr(proc_nr);
    rp->child_utime += rc->user_time + rc->child_utime;  /* accum child times */
    rp->child_stime += rc->sys_time + rc->child_stime;
    unready(rc);
    rc->p_alarm = 0;  /* turn off alarm timer */

    if (rc->p_flags & SENDING) {
        /* Check all proc slots to see if the exiting process is queued. */
        for (rp = &proc[0]; rp < &proc[NR_TASKS + NR_PROCS]; rp++)
            if (rp->p_callerq == NIL_PROC) continue;

    /* If the process being terminated happens to be queued trying to send a
    message (i.e., the process was killed by a signal, rather than it doing an
    EXIT), then it must be removed from the message queues. */
    /**/
}
if (rp->p_callerq == rc) {
    /* Exiting process is on front of this queue. */
    rp->p_callerq = rc->p_sendlink;
    break;
} else {
    /* See if exiting process is in middle of queue. */
    np = rp->p_callerq;
    while ((xp = np->p_sendlink) != NIL_PROC)
        if (xp == rc)
            np->p_sendlink = xp->p_sendlink;
        break;
    } else {
        np = xp;
    }
}
rc->p_flags = P_SLOT_FREE;
return(OK);

PRIVATE int do_getsp(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to request message */
{
    /* Handle sys_getsp(). MM wants to know what sp is. */
    register struct proc *rp;
    int k; /* whose stack pointer is wanted? */
    k = m_ptr->PROC;
    if (k < 0 || k >= NR_PROCS) return(E_BAD_PROC);
    rp = proc_addr(k);
    m.STACK_PTR = (char *) rp->p_sp; /* return sp here */
    return(OK);
}

PRIVATE int do_times(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr; /* pointer to request message */
{
    /* Handle sys_times(). Retrieve the accounting information. */
    register struct proc *rp;
int k;

k = m_ptr->PROC1;       /* k tells whose times are wanted */
if (k < 0 || k >= NR_PROCS) return(E_BAD_PROC);

rp = proc_addr(k);

/* Insert the four times needed by the TIMES system call in the message. */
m_ptr->USER_TIME = rp->user_time;
m_ptr->SYSTEM_TIME = rp->sys_time;
m_ptr->CHILD_UTIME = rp->child_utime;
m_ptr->CHILD_STIME = rp->child_stime;
return(OK);

int do_abort(m_ptr)
message *m_ptr;       /* pointer to request message */
{
/* Handle sys_abort.  MINIX is unable to continue.  Terminate operation. */
    panic("", NO_NUM);
}

register struct proc *rp;
phys_bytes src_phys, dst_phys;
vir_bytes vir_addr, sig_size, new_sp;
int proc_nr;       /* process number */
int sig;       /* signal number 1-16 */
int (*sig_handler)();   /* pointer to the signal handler */

/* Extract parameters and prepare to build the words that get pushed. */
proc_nr = m_ptr->PR;       /* process being signalled */
sig = m_ptr->SIGNUM;       /* signal number, 1 to 16 */
sig_handler = m_ptr->FUNC;  /* run time system addr for catching sigs */
if (proc_nr < LOW_USER || proc_nr >= NR_PROCS) return(E_BAD_PROC);

rp = proc_addr(proc_nr);
vir_addr = (vir_bytes) sig_stuff;   /* info to be pushed is in 'sig_stuff' */
new_sp = (vir_bytes) rp->p_sp;
4900    /* Actually build the block of words to push onto the stack. */
4901    build_sig(sig_stuff, rp, sig);    /* build up the info to be pushed */
4902
4903    /* Prepare to do the push, and do it. */
4904    sig_size = SIG_PUSH_BYTES;
4905    new_sp -= sig_size;
4906    src_phys = umap(proc_addr(SYSTASK), D, vir_addr, sig_size);
4907    dst_phys = umap(rp, S, new_sp, sig_size);
4908    if (dst_phys == 0) panic("do_sig can't signal; SP bad", NO_NUM);
4909    if (dst_phys == 0) panic("do_sig can't signal; SP bad", NO_NUM);
4910    phys_copy(src_phys, dst_phys, (phys_bytes) sig_size); /* push pc, psw */
4911
4912    /* Change process' sp and pc to reflect the interrupt. */
4913    rp->p_sp = (int*) new_sp;
4914    rp->p_pcpsw.pc = sig_handler;
4915    return(OK);
4916  }
4917
4918  /*==============================================*/
4919  *
4920  *==============================================*/
4921  PRIVATE int do_copy(m_ptr)
4922  message *m_ptr;    /* pointer to request message */
4923  {
4924    /* Handle sys_copy().  Copy data for MM or FS. */
4925
4926    int src_proc, dst_proc, src_space, dst_space;
4927    vir_bytes src_vir, dst_vir;
4928    phys_bytes src_phys, dst_phys, bytes;
4929
4930    /* Dismember the command message. */
4931    src_proc = m_ptr->SRC_PROC_NR;
4932    dst_proc = m_ptr->DST_PROC_NR;
4933    src_space = m_ptr->SRC_SPACE;
4934    dst_space = m_ptr->DST_SPACE;
4935    src_vir = (vir_bytes) m_ptr->SRC_BUFFER;
4936    dst_vir = (vir_bytes) m_ptr->DST_BUFFER;
4937    bytes = (phys_bytes) m_ptr->COPY_BYTES;
4938
4939    /* Compute the source and destination addresses and do the copy. */
4940    if (src_proc == ABS)
4941      src_phys = (phys_bytes) m_ptr->SRC_BUFFER;
4942    else
4943      src_phys = umap(proc_addr(src_proc), src_space, src_vir, (vir_bytes) bytes);
4944
4945    if (dst_proc == ABS)
4946      dst_phys = (phys_bytes) m_ptr->DST_BUFFER;
4947    else
4948      dst_phys = umap(proc_addr(dst_proc), dst_space, dst_vir, (vir_bytes) bytes);
if (src_phys == 0 || dst_phys == 0) return(EFAULT);
phys_copy(src_phys, dst_phys, bytes);
return(OK);

/* A task wants to send a signal to a process. Examples of such tasks are:
 * TTY wanting to cause SIGINT upon getting a DEL
 * CLOCK wanting to cause SIGALRM when timer expires
 * Signals are handled by sending a message to MM. The tasks don't dare do
 * that directly, for fear of what would happen if MM were busy. Instead they
 * call cause_sig, which sets bits in p_pending, and then carefully checks to
 * see if MM is free. If so, a message is sent to it. If not, when it becomes
 * free, a message is sent. The calling task always gets control back from
 * cause_sig() immediately.
 */

register struct proc *rp;
rp = proc_addr(proc_nr);
if (rp->p_pending == 0) sig_procs++;
/* incr if a new proc is now pending */
rp->p_pending |= 1 << (sig_nr - 1);
inform(MM_PROC_NR);
/* see if MM is free */

/* When a signal is detected by the kernel (e.g., DEL), or generated by a task
 * (e.g. clock task for SIGALRM), cause_sig() is called to set a bit in the
 * p_pending field of the process to signal. Then inform() is called to see
 * if MM is idle and can be told about it. Whenever MM blocks, a check is
 * made to see if 'sig_procs' is nonzero; if so, inform() is called.
 */

register struct proc *rp, *mmp;
/* If MM is not waiting for new input, forget it. */
mmp = proc_addr(proc_nr);
if ( ((mmp->p_flags & RECEIVING) == 0) || mmp->p_getfrom != ANY) return;

/* MM is waiting for new input. Find a process with pending signals. */
for (rp = proc_addr(0); rp < proc_addr(NR_PROCS); rp++)
  if (rp->p_pending != 0) {
    m.m_type = KSIG;
    m.PROC1 = rp - proc - NR_TASKS;
    sig_procs--;
    if (mini_send(HARDWARE, proc_nr, &m) != OK)
      panic("can't inform MM", NO_NUM);
    rp->p_pending = 0; /* the ball is now in MM's court */
    return;
  }
}

PUBLIC phys_bytes umap(rp, seg, vir_addr, bytes)
register struct proc *rp; /* pointer to proc table entry for process */
int seg; /* T, D, or S segment */
vir_bytes vir_addr; /* virtual address in bytes within the seg */
vir_bytes bytes; /* # of bytes to be copied */
{
  vir_clicks vc; /* the virtual address in clicks */
  phys_bytes seg_base, pa; /* intermediate variables as phys_bytes */

  /* If 'seg' is D it could really be S and vice versa. T really means T.
   * If the virtual address falls in the gap, it causes a problem. On the
   * 8088 it is probably a legal stack reference, since "stackfaults" are
   * not detected by the hardware. On 8086s, the gap is called S and
   * accepted, but on other machines it is called D and rejected.
   */
  if (bytes < 0) return((phys_bytes) 0);
  vc = (vir_addr + bytes - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT; /* last click of data */

  ifdef i8088
    if (seg != T)
      seg = (vc < rp->p_map[D].mem_vir + rp->p_map[D].mem_len ? D : S);
  else
    if (seg != T)
      seg = (vc < rp->p_map[S].mem_vir ? D : S);
  endif

  if((vir_addr>>CLICK_SHIFT) >= rp->p_map[seg].mem_vir + rp->p_map[seg].mem_len)
    return((phys_bytes) 0);
seg_base = (phys_bytes) rp->p_map[seg].mem_phys;
seg_base = seg_base << CLICK_SHIFT; /* segment origin in bytes */
pa = (phys_bytes) vir_addr;
pa -= rp->p_map[seg].mem_vir << CLICK_SHIFT;
return(seg_base + pa);
/ The object file of "table.c" contains all the data. In the *.h files, declared variables appear with EXTERN in front of them, as in

EXTERN int x;

Normally EXTERN is defined as extern, so when they are included in another file, no storage is allocated. If the EXTERN were not present, but just say,

int x;

then including this file in several source files would cause 'x' to be declared several times. While some linkers accept this, others do not, so they are declared extern when included normally. However, it must be declared for real somewhere. That is done here by redefining EXTERN as the null string, so the inclusion of all the *.h files in table.c actually generates storage for them. All the initialized variables are also declared here, since extern int x = 4;

is not allowed. If such variables are shared, they must also be declared in one of the *.h files without the initialization.

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#undef EXTERN
#define EXTERN
#include "glo.h"
#include "proc.h"

extern int sys_task(), clock_task(), mem_task(), floppy_task(),
    winchester_task(), tty_task(), printer_task;
/*
The startup routine of each task is given below, from -NR_TASKS upwards. The order of the names here MUST agree with the numerical values assigned to the tasks in ../h/com.h.
*/
int (*task[NR_TASKS+INIT_PROC_NR+1])() = {
    printer_task, tty_task, winchester_task, floppy_task, mem_task,
    clock_task, sys_task, 0, 0, 0, 0
};
/* Constants used by the Memory Manager. */

#define ZEROBUF_SIZE 1024 /* buffer size for erasing memory */

/* Size of MM's stack depends mostly on do_exec(). */
#if ZEROBUF_SIZE > MAX_PATH
#define MM_STACK_BYTES MAX_ISTACK_BYTES + ZEROBUF_SIZE + 384
#else
#define MM_STACK_BYTES MAX_ISTACK_BYTES + MAX_PATH + 384
#endif

#define NO_MEM (phys_clicks)0 /* returned by alloc_mem() with mem is up */

#ifdef i8088
#define PAGE_SIZE 16 /* how many bytes in a page */
#define MAX_PAGES 4096 /* how many pages in the virtual addr space */
#define HDR_SIZE 32 /* # bytes in the exec file header */
#endif

#define printf printk
5200 /* Global variables. */
5201 EXTERN struct mproc *mp; /* ptr to 'mproc' slot of current process */
5202 EXTERN int dont_reply; /* normally 0; set to 1 to inhibit reply */
5203 EXTERN int procs_in_use; /* how many processes are marked as IN_USE */
5204
5205 /* The parameters of the call are kept here. */
5206 EXTERN message mm_in; /* the incoming message itself is kept here. */
5207 EXTERN message mm_out; /* the reply message is built up here. */
5208 EXTERN int who; /* caller's proc number */
5209 EXTERN int mm_call; /* system call number */
5210
5211 /* The following variables are used for returning results to the caller. */
5212 EXTERN int err_code; /* temporary storage for error number */
5213 EXTERN int result2; /* secondary result */
5214 EXTERN char *res_ptr; /* result, if pointer */
5215
5216 EXTERN char mm_stack[MM_STACK_BYTES]; /* MM's stack */
/* This table has one slot per process. It contains all the memory management
information for each process. Among other things, it defines the text, data
and stack segments, uids and gids, and various flags. The kernel and file
systems have tables that are also indexed by process, with the contents
of corresponding slots referring to the same process in all three.
*/

EXTERN struct mproc {
    struct mem_map mp_seg[NR_SEGS]; /* points to text, data, stack */
    char mp_exitstatus; /* storage for status when process exits */
    char mp_sigstatus; /* storage for signal # for killed processes */
    int mp_pid; /* process id */
    int mp_parent; /* index of parent process */
    int mp_procgrp; /* process group (used for signals) */

    /* Real and effective uids and gids. */
    uid mp_realuid; /* process' real uid */
    uid mp_effuid; /* process' effective uid */
    gid mp_realgid; /* process' real gid */
    gid mp_effgid; /* process' effective gid */

    /* Bit maps for signals. */
    unshort mp_ignore; /* 1 means ignore the signal, 0 means don't */
    unshort mp_catch; /* 1 means catch the signal, 0 means don't */
    int (*mp_func)(); /* all signals vectored to a single user func */

    unsigned mp_flags; /* flag bits */
} mproc[NR_PROCS];

/* Flag values */
#define IN_USE 001 /* set when 'mproc' slot in use */
#define WAITING 002 /* set by WAIT system call */
#define HANGING 004 /* set by EXIT system call */
#define PAUSED 010 /* set by PAUSE system call */
#define ALARM_ON 020 /* set when SIGALRM timer started */
#define SEPARATE 040 /* set if file is separate I & D space */
```c
5300  /* The following names are synonyms for the variables in the input message. */
5301  #define addr    mm_in.ml_pl
5302  #define exec_name mm_in.ml_pl
5303  #define exec_len  mm_in.ml_il
5304  #define func     mm_in.ml6_fl
5305  #define grp_id   (gid) mm_in.ml_il
5306  #define kill_sig mm_in.ml12
5307  #define namelen  mm_in.ml_il
5308  #define pid      mm_in.ml_il
5309  #define seconds mm_in.ml_il
5310  #define sig      mm_in.ml6_il
5311  #define stack_bytes mm_in.ml12
5312  #define stack_ptr  mm_in.ml_p2
5313  #define status mm_in.ml_il
5314  #define usr_id   (uid) mm_in.ml_il
5315  /* The following names are synonyms for the variables in the output message. */
5316  #define reply_type mm_out.m_type
5317  #define reply_il  mm_out.m2_il
5318  #define reply_pl  mm_out.m2_pl
```
/ * If there were any type definitions local to the Memory Manager, they would
5351 /* be here. This file is included only for symmetry with the kernel and File
5352 /* System, which do have some local type definitions.
5353 */
5354
5355 #include "../h/type.h"
/* This file contains the main program of the memory manager and some related
procedures. When MINIX starts up, the kernel runs for a little while,
initializing itself and its tasks, and then it runs MM. MM at this point
does not know where FS is in memory and how big it is. By convention, FS
must start at the click following MM, so MM can deduce where it starts at
least. Later, when FS runs for the first time, FS makes a pseudo-call,
BRK2, to tell MM how big it is. This allows MM to figure out where INIT
is.

* The entry points into this file are:
main: starts MM running
reply: reply to a process making an MM system call
do_brk2: pseudo-call for FS to report its size
*/

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "gio.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

#define ENOUGH (phys_clicks) 4096 /* any # > max(FS size, INIT size) */
define CLICK_TO_K (1024L/CLICK_SIZE) /* convert clicks to K */

PRIVATE phys_clicks tot_mem;
extern (*mm_callvec[])();
extern char *sp_limit; /* stack limit register; checked on calls */

main
PUBLIC main()
{
/* Main routine of the memory manager. */

int error;

mm_init(); /* initialize memory manager tables */

/* This is MM's main loop- get work and do it, forever and forever. */
while (TRUE) {
/* Wait for message. */
get_work(); /* wait for an MM system call */
mp = &mproc[who];
/* Set some flags. */
error = OK;
dont_reply = FALSE;
err_code = -999;

/* If the call number is valid, perform the call. */
if (mm_call < 0 || mm_call >= NCALLS)
error = E_BAD_CALL;
else
    error = (*mm_callvec[mm_call])();

/* Send the results back to the user to indicate completion. */
if (dont_reply) continue;  /* no reply for EXIT and WAIT */
if (mm_call == EXEC && error == OK) continue;
reply(who, error, result2, res_ptr);

/*===========================================================================*/
PRIVATE get_work()
{
    /* Wait for the next message and extract useful information from it. */
    if (receive(ANY, &mm_in) != OK) panic("MM receive error", NO_NUM);
    who = mm_in.m_source;    /* who sent the message */
    if (who < HARDWARE || who >= NR_PROCS) panic("MM called by", who);
    mm_call = mm_in.m_type;    /* system call number */
}

/*===========================================================================*/
PUBLIC reply(proc_nr, result, res2, respt)
{
    proc_ptr = &mproc[proc_nr];
    if ( (proc_ptr->mp_flags&IN_USE) == 0 || (proc_ptr->mp_flags&HANGING)) return;
    reply_type = result;
    reply_il = res2;
reply_pl = respt;
if (send(proc_nr, &mm_out) != OK) panic("MM can't reply", NO_NUM);
}

PRIVATE mm_init()
{
/* Initialize the memory manager. */
extern phys_clicks get_tot_mem(), alloc_mem();
/* Find out how much memory the machine has and set up core map. MM and FS
* are part of the map. Tell the kernel. */
tot_mem = get_tot_mem(); /* # clicks in mem starting at absolute 0 */
mem_init(tot_mem); /* initialize tables to all physical mem */
/* Initialize MM's tables. */
mproc[MM_PROC_NR].mp_flags |= IN_USE;
mproc[FS_PROC_NR].mp_flags |= IN_USE;
mproc[INIT_PROC_NR].mp_flags |= IN_USE;
procs_in_use = 3;
/* Set stack limit, which is checked on every procedure call. */
sp_limit = mm_stack - 32;

PUBLIC do_brk2()
{
/* This "call" is made once by F5 during system initialization and then never
* again by anyone. It contains the origin and size of INIT, and the combined
* size of the 1536 bytes of unused mem, MINIX and RAM disk.
* ml_11 = size of INIT text in clicks
* ml_12 = size of INIT data in clicks
* ml_13 = number of bytes for MINIX + RAM DISK
* ml_pl = origin of INIT in clicks
*/
int mem1, mem2, mem3;
register struct mproc *rmp;
phys_clicks init_org, init_clicks, ram_base, ram_clicks, tot_clicks;
phys_clicks init_text_clicks, init_data_clicks;
if (who != FS_PROC_NR) return(EPERM); /* only FS make do BRK2 */

/* Remove the memory used by MINIX and RAM disk from the memory map. */

init_text_clicks = mm_in.ml_i1;    /* size of INIT in clicks */
init_data_clicks = mm_in.ml_i2;    /* size of INIT in clicks */
tot_clicks = mm_in.ml_i3;          /* total size of MINIX + RAM disk */
init_org = (phys_clicks) mm_in.ml_pl;  /* addr where INIT begins in memory */
init_clicks = init_text_clicks + init_data_clicks;
ram_base = init_org + init_clicks;  /* start of RAM disk */
ram_clicks = tot_clicks - ram_base;  /* size of RAM disk */
alloc_mem(tot_clicks);            /* remove RAM disk from map */

/* Print memory information. */

mem1 = tot_mem/CLICK_TO_K;
mem2 = (ram_base + 512/CLICK_SIZE)/CLICK_TO_K;    /* MINIX, rounded */
mem3 = ram_clicks/CLICK_TO_K;
print("%c &c"O",033, 033); /* go to top of screen and clear screen */
printf("Memory size = %dK", mem1);  
printf("MINIX = %dK", mem2);      
printf("RAM disk = %dK", mem3);    
printf("Available = %dK\n\n", mem1 - mem2 - mem3);
if (mem1 - mem2 - mem3 < 32) {
    printf("\nNot enough memory to run MINIX\n\n", NO_NUM);
    sys_abort();
}

/* Initialize INIT's table entry. */

rmp = &mproc[INIT_PROC_NR];
rmp->mp_segment[T].mem_phys = init_org;
rmp->mp_segment[T].mem_len   = init_text_clicks;
rmp->mp_segment[D].mem_phys = init_org + init_text_clicks;
rmp->mp_segment[D].mem_len   = init_data_clicks;
rmp->mp_segment[S].mem_vir   = init_clicks;
rmp->mp_segment[S].mem_phys = init_org + init_clicks;
if (init_text_clicks != 0) rmp->mp_flags |= SEPARATE;

return(OK);

/*==========================================================================*/

set_map

/*==========================================================================*/

PRIVATE set_map(proc_nr, base, clicks)

int proc_nr;    /* whose map to set? */
phys_clicks base;  /* where in memory does the process start? */
phys_clicks clicks;  /* total size in clicks (sep I & D not used) */
{
    /* Set up the memory map as part of the system initialization. */
register struct mproc *rmp;

vir_clicks vclicks;

rmp = &mproc[proc_nr];

clicks = (vir_clicks) clicks;

rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_vir = 0;

rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_len = 0;

rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_phys = base;

rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_vir = 0;

rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_len = vclicks;

rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_phys = base;

rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_vir = vclicks;

rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_len = 0;

rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_phys = base + vclicks;

sys_newmap(proc_nr, rmp->mp_seg);

}
This file deals with creating processes (via FORK) and deleting them (via EXIT/WAIT). When a process forks, a new slot in the 'mproc' table is allocated for it, and a copy of the parent's core image is made for the child. Then the kernel and file system are informed. A process is removed from the 'mproc' table when two events have occurred: (1) it has exited or been killed by a signal, and (2) the parent has done a WAIT. If the process exits first, it continues to occupy a slot until the parent does a WAIT.

The entry points into this file are:

- do_fork: perform the FORK system call
- do_mm_exit: perform the EXIT system call (by calling mm_exit())
- mm_exit: actually do the exiting
- do_wait: perform the WAIT system call

/* This file deals with creating processes (via FORK) and deleting them (via EXIT/WAIT). When a process forks, a new slot in the 'mproc' table is allocated for it, and a copy of the parent's core image is made for the child. Then the kernel and file system are informed. A process is removed from the 'mproc' table when two events have occurred: (1) it has exited or been killed by a signal, and (2) the parent has done a WAIT. If the process exits first, it continues to occupy a slot until the parent does a WAIT. The entry points into this file are:

- do_fork: perform the FORK system call
- do_mm_exit: perform the EXIT system call (by calling mm_exit())
- mm_exit: actually do the exiting
- do_wait: perform the WAIT system call

#include "./h/const.h"
#include "./h/type.h"
#include "./h/callnr.h"
#include "./h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

#define LAST_FEW 2 /* last few slots reserved for superuser */
PRIVATE next_pid = INIT_PROC_NR+1; /* next pid to be assigned */

*/

#include "./h/const.h"
#include "./h/type.h"
#include "./h/callnr.h"
#include "./h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

#define LAST_FEW 2 /* last few slots reserved for superuser */
PRIVATE next_pid = INIT_PROC_NR+1; /* next pid to be assigned */

/* Some C compilers require static declarations to precede their first use. */
PUBLIC int do_fork()
{
  /* The process pointed to by 'mp' has forked. Create a child process. */
  register struct mproc *mp; /* pointer to parent */
  register struct mproc *mpc; /* pointer to child */
  int i, child_nr, t;
  char *sptr, *dptr;
  long prog_bytes;
  phys_clicks prog_clicks, child_base;
  long parent_abs, child_abs;
  extern phys_clicks alloc_mem();

  /* If tables might fill up during FORK, don't even start since recovery half way through is such a nuisance. */
  */
rmp = mp;
if (procs_in_use == NR_PROCS) return(EAGAIN);
if (procs_in_use >= NR_PROCS - LAST_FEW && rmp->mp_effuid != 0) return(EAGAIN);

/* Determine how much memory to allocate. */
prog_clicks = (phys_clicks) rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_len + rmp->mp_seg[0].mem_len +
              rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_len;
#if defined i8088
  prog_clicks += rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_vir - rmp->mp_seg[0].mem_len; /* gap too */
#endif
prog_bytes = (long) prog_clicks << CLICK_SHIFT;
if ((child_base = alloc_mem(prog_clicks)) == NO_MEM) return(EAGAIN);

/* Create a copy of the parent's core image for the child. */
child_base = (long) base <<= CLICK_SHIFT;
parent_base = (long) rmp->mpseg[T].memPhys <<= CLICK_SHIFT;
i = mem_copy(ABS, 0, parent_base, ABS, 0, child_base, prog_bytes);
if (i < 0) panic("do_fork can't copy", i);

/* Find a slot in 'mproc' for the child process. A slot must exist. */
for (rmc = &mproc[0]; rmc < &mproc[NR_PROCS]; rmc++)
  if ((rmc->mp_flags & INUSE) == 0) break;

/* Set up the child and its memory map; copy its 'mproc' slot from parent. */
child_nr = rmc - mproc;  /* slot number of the child */
procs_in_use++;
sptr = (char *) rmp;  /* pointer to parent's 'mproc' slot */
dptr = (char *) rmc;  /* pointer to child's 'mproc' slot */
i = sizeof(struct mproc);  /* number of bytes in a proc slot. */
while (i-- *dptr++ = *sptr++);  /* copy from parent slot to child's */

rmc->mp_parent = who;  /* record child's parent */
rmc->mpseg[T].mem_phys = child_base;
rmc->mpseg[0].mem_phys = child_base + rmc->mpseg[T].mem_len;
rmc->mpseg[S].mem_phys = rmc->mpseg[0].mem_phys +
  (rmp->mpseg[S].mem_phys - rmp->mpseg[0].mem_phys);
rmc->mp_exitstatus = 0;
rmc->mp_sigstatus = 0;

/* Find a free pid for the child and put it in the table. */
do {
  t = 0;  /* 't' = 0 means pid still free */
  next_pid = (next_pid < 30000 ? next_pid + 1 : INIT_PROC_NR + 1);
  for (rmc = &mproc[0]; rmc < &mproc[NR_PROCS]; rmc++)
    if (rmc->mp_pid == next_pid) {
      t = 1;
      break;
    }
  rmc->mp_pid = next_pid;  /* assign pid to child */
} while (t);
/* Tell kernel and file system about the (now successful) FORK. */
sys_forked(who, child_nr, rmc->mp_pid);
tell_fs(FORK, who, child_nr, 0);

/* Report child's memory map to kernel. */
sys_newmap(child_nr, rmc->mp_seg);

/* Reply to child to wake it up. */
reply(child_nr, 0, 0, NIL_PTR);

return(next_pid);  /* child's pid */

PUBLIC int do_mm_exit()
{
    mm_exit(mp, status);
dont_reply = TRUE;  /* don't reply to newly terminated process */
return(OK);  /* pro forma return code */
}

PUBLIC mm_exit(rmp, exit_status)
{
    register struct mproc *rmp;  /* pointer to the process to be terminated */
    int exit_status;  /* the process' exit status (for parent) */

    /* A process is done. If parent is waiting for it, clean it up, else hang. */
    /* How to terminate a process is determined by whether or not the
     * parent process has already done a WAIT. Test to see if it has.
     */
    rmp->mp_exitstatus = (char) exit_status;  /* store status in 'mproc' */

    if (mproc[rmp->mp_parent].mp_flags & WAITING)
      cleanup(rmp);  /* release parent and tell everybody */
    else
      rmp->mp_flags |= HANGING;  /* Parent not waiting. Suspend proc */

    /* If the exited process has a timer pending, kill it. */
    if (rmp->mp_flags & ALARM_0N) set_alarm(rmp - mproc, (unsigned) 0);
5800  /* Tell the kernel that the process is no longer runnable. */
5801  sys_xit(rmp->mp_parent, rmp - mproc);
5802
5803  }
5804
5805  /*==================================*/
5806  *
5807  *          do_wait
5808  *==================================*/
5809  PUBLIC int do_wait()
5810  {
5811  /* A process wants to wait for a child to terminate. If one is already waiting, *
5812  * go clean it up and let this WAIT call terminate. Otherwise, really wait. */
5813  
5814  register struct mproc *rp;
5815  register int children;
5816
5817  /* A process calling WAIT never gets a reply in the usual way via the  *
5818  * reply() in the main loop. If a child has already exited, the routine *
5819  * cleanup() sends the reply to awaken the caller. */
5820  
5821  /* Is there a child waiting to be collected? */
5822  children = 0;
5823  for (rp = &mproc[0]; rp < &mproc[NR_PROCS]; rp++) {
5824    if ((rp->mp_flags & IN_USE) && rp->mp_parent == who) {
5825      children++;
5826      if (rp->mp_flags & HANGING) {
5827        cleanup(rp); /* a child has already exited */
5828        dont_reply = TRUE;
5829        return(OK);
5830      }
5831    }
5832  }
5833
5834  /* No child has exited. Wait for one, unless none exists. */
5835  if (children > 0) {
5836    if (children > 0) [/* does this process have any children? */
5837      mp->mp_flags |= WAITING;
5838      dont_reply = TRUE;
5839      return(OK); /* yes - wait for one to exit */
5840    }
5841    else
5842    return(ECHILD); /* no - parent has no children */
5843  }
5844
5845  /*==================================*/
5846  *
5847  *          cleanup
5848  *==================================*/
5849  PRIVATE cleanup(child)
register struct mproc *child; /* tells which process is exiting */
{
/* Clean up the remains of a process. This routine is only called if two
 * conditions are satisfied:
 * 1. The process has done an EXIT or has been killed by a signal.
 * 2. The process' parent has done a WAIT.
 */
/* It tells everyone about the process' demise and also releases the memory, if
 * that has not yet been done. (Whether it has or has not been done depends on
 * the order the EXIT and WAIT were done in.)
 */

register struct mproc *parent, *rp;
int init_waiting, child_nr;
unsigned int r;
phys_clicks s;

child_nr = child - mproc;
parent = &mproc[child->mp_parent];

/* Wakeup the parent and tell the file system that the process is dead. */
r = child->mp_sigstatus & 0377;
r = r | (child->mp_exitstatus << 8);
reply(child->mp_parent, child->mp_pid, r, NIL_PTR);
tell_fs(EXIT, child_nr, 0, 0); /* file system can free the proc slot */

/* Release the memory occupied by the child. */
s = (phys_clicks) child->mp_seg[S].mem_vir + child->mp_seg[S].mem_len;
if (child->mp_flags & SEPARATE) s += child->mp_seg[T].mem_len;
free_mem(child->mp_seg[T].mem_phys, s); /* free the memory */

/* Update flags. */
child->mp_flags &= ~HANGING; /* turn off HANGING bit */
parent->mp_flags &= ~WAITING; /* turn off WAITING bit */
child->mp_flags &= ~IN_USE; /* release the table slot */
procs_in_use--;

/* If exiting process has children, disinherit them. INIT is new parent. */
init_waiting = (mproc[INIT_PROC_NR].mp_flags & WAITING ? 1 : 0);
for (rp = &mproc[0]; rp < &mproc[NR_PROCS]; rp++) {
    if (rp->mp_parent == child_nr) {
        /* 'rp' points to a child to be disinherited. */
        rp->mp_parent = INIT_PROC_NR; /* init takes over */
        if (init_waiting && (rp->mp_flags & HANGING)) {
            /* Init was waiting. */
            cleanup(rp); /* recursive call */
            init_waiting = 0;
        }
    }
}
}
/* This file handles the EXEC system call. It performs the work as follows:
 - see if the permissions allow the file to be executed
 - read the header and extract the sizes
 - fetch the initial args and environment from the user space
 - allocate the memory for the new process
 - copy the initial stack from MM to the process
 - read in the text and data segments and copy to the process
 - take care of setuid and setgid bits
 - fix up 'mproc' table
 - tell kernel about EXEC
 * The only entry point is do_exec. */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/stat.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

#define MAGIC 0x04000301L  /* magic number with 2 bits masked off */
#define SEP 0x00200000L  /* value for separate I & D */
#define TEXTB 2  /* location of text size in header */
#define DATAB 3  /* location of data size in header */
#define BSSB 4  /* location of bss size in header */
#define TOTB 6  /* location of total size in header */

/*===============================================*/
do_exec
/*===============================================*/
PUBLIC int do_exec()
{
/* Perform the execve(name, argv, envp) call. The user library builds a
 * complete stack image, including pointers, args, environ, etc. The stack
 * is copied to a buffer inside MM, and then to the new core image. */

register struct mproc *rmp;
int m, r, fd, ft;
char mbuf[MAX_ISTACK_BYTES];  /* buffer for stack and zeroes */
union u {
    char name_buf[MAX_PATH];  /* the name of the file to exec */
    char zb[ZER0BUF_SIZE];  /* used to zero bss */
} u;
char *new_sp;
vir_bytes src, dst, text_bytes, data_bytes, bss_bytes, stk_bytes, vsp;
phys_bytes tot_bytes;  /* total space for program, including gap */

vir_clicks sc;
struct stat s_buf;

/* Do some validity checks. */
rmp = mp;
stk_bytes = (vir_bytes) stack_bytes;
if (stk_bytes > MAXSTACKBYTES) return(ENOMEM);  /* stack too big */
if (exec_len <= 0 || exec_len > MAXPATH) return(EINVAL);

/* Get the exec file name and see if the file is executable. */
src = (vir_bytes) execname;
dst = (vir_bytes) u.name_buf;
r = mem_copy(who, D, (long) src, MM_PROC_NR, 0, (long) dst, (long) exec_len);
if (r != OK) return(r);  /* file name not in user data segment */
tell_fs(CHDIR, who, 0, 0);  /* temporarily switch to user's directory */
fd = allowed(u.name_buf, &s_buf, X_BIT);  /* is file executable? */
tell_fs(CHDIR, 0, 1, 0);  /* switch back to MM's own directory */
if (fd < 0) return(EACCES);  /* file was not executable */

/* Read the file header and extract the segment sizes. */
sc = (stk_bytes + CLICKSIZE - 1) >> CLICKSHIFT;
m = read_header(fd, &ft, &text_bytes, &data_bytes, &bss_bytes, &tot_bytes, sc);
if (m < 0) {
    close(fd);  /* something wrong with header */
    return(ENOEXEC);
}

/* Fetch the stack from the user before destroying the old core image. */
src = (vir_bytes) stack_ptr;
dst = (vir_bytes) mbuf;
r = mem_copy(who, D, (long) src, MM_PROC_NR, 0, (long) dst, (long) stk_bytes);
if (r != OK) {
    close(fd);  /* can't fetch stack (e.g. bad virtual addr) */
    return(EACCES);
}

/* Allocate new memory and release old memory. Fix map and tell kernel. */
r = new_mem(text_bytes, data_bytes, bss_bytes, stk_bytes, tot_bytes,
            u.zb, ZEROBUF_SIZE);
if (r != OK) {
    close(fd);  /* insufficient core or program too big */
    return(r);
}

/* Patch up stack and copy it from MM to new core image. */
vsp = (vir_bytes) rmp->mp_seg[5].mem_vir << CLICKSHIFT;
patch_ptr(mbuf, vsp);
src = (vir_bytes) mbuf;
r = mem_copy(MM_PROC_NR, D, (long) src, who, D, (long) vsp, (long) stk_bytes);
if (r != OK) panic("do_exec stack copy err", NO_NUM);
/* Read in text and data segments. */
load_seg(fd, T, text_bytes);
load_seg(fd, D, data_bytes);
close(fd); /* don't need exec file any more */

/* Take care of setuid/setgid bits. */
if (s_buf.st_mode & I_SET_UID_BIT) {
    rmp->mp_effuid = s_buf.st_uid;
tell_fs(SETUID, who, (int) rmp->mp_realuid, (int) rmp->mp_effuid);
}
if (s_buf.st_mode & I_SET_GID_BIT) {
    rmp->mp_effgid = s_buf.st_gid;
tell_fs(SETGID, who, (int) rmp->mp_realgid, (int) rmp->mp_effgid);
}

/* Fix up some 'mproc' fields and tell kernel that exec is done. */
rmp->mp_catch = 0; /* reset all caught signals */
rmp->mp_flags &= ~SEPARATE; /* turn off SEPARATE bit */
rmp->mp_flags |= ft; /* turn it on for separate I & D files */
new_sp = (char *) vsp;
sys_exec(who, new_sp);
return(OK);

read_header(fd, &ft, text_bytes, data_bytes, bss_bytes, tot_bytes, &sc)
int fd; /* file descriptor for reading exec file */
int *ft; /* place to return ft number */
vir_bytes *text_bytes; /* place to return text size */
vir_bytes *data_bytes; /* place to return initialized data size */
vir_bytes *bss_bytes; /* place to return bss size */
phys_bytes *tot_bytes; /* place to return total size */
vir_clicks sc; /* stack size in clicks */

/* Read the header and extract the text, data, bss and total sizes from it. */
int m, ct;
vir_clicks tc, dc, s_vir, dvir;
phys_clicks totc;
long buf[HDR_SIZE/sizeof(long)];

/* Read the header and check the magic number. The standard MINIX header *
* consists of 8 longs, as follows:
* 0: 0x04100301L (combined I & D space) or 0x04200301L (separate I & D)
* 1: 0x00000020L
*/
if (read(fd, buf, HDR_SIZE) != HDR_SIZE) return(ENOEXEC);
if ((buf[0] & 0xFF0FFFFFL) != MAGIC) return(ENOEXEC);
*ft = (buf[0] & SEP ? SEPARATE : 0); /* separate I & D or not */

/* Get text and data sizes. */
text_bytes = (vir_bytes) buf[TEXTB]; /* text size in bytes */
data_bytes = (vir_bytes) buf[DATA8]; /* data size in bytes */
if (*ft != SEPARATE) {
    /* If I & D space is not separated, it is all considered data. Text=0 */
    *data_bytes += *text_bytes;
    *text_bytes = 0;
}

/* Get bss and total sizes. */
bss_bytes = (vir_bytes) buf[BSSB]; /* bss size in bytes */
tot_bytes = buf[TOTB]; /* total bytes to allocate for program */
if (*tot_bytes == 0) return(ENOEXEC);

/* Check to see if segment sizes are feasible. */
tc = (*text_bytes + CLICK_SHIFT - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
dc = (*data_bytes + *bss_bytes + CLICK_SHIFT - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
totc = (*tot_bytes + CLICK_SIZE - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
if (dc >= totc) return(ENOEXEC); /* stack must be at least 1 click */
dvir = (*ft == SEPARATE ? 0 : tc);
s_vir = dvir + (totc - sc);
m = size_ok(*ft, tc, dc, sc, dvir, s_vir);
ct = buf[1] & BYTE; /* header length */
if (ct > HDR_SIZE) read(fd, buf, ct - HDR_SIZE); /* skip unused hdr */
return(m);

/* ============================================================== */
new_mem(^ text_bytes, data_bytes, bss_bytes, stk_bytes, tot_bytes, bf, zs)
/* text segment size in bytes */
/* size of initialized data in bytes */
vir_bytes bss_bytes; /* size of bss in bytes */
vir_bytes stk_bytes; /* size of initial stack segment in bytes */
phys_bytes tot_bytes; /* total memory to allocate, including gap */
char bf[ZEROBUF_SIZE]; /* buffer to use for zeroing data segment */
int zs; /* true size of 'bf' */

{ /* Allocate new memory and release the old memory. Change the map and report */
  * the new map to the kernel. Zero the new core image's bss, gap and stack.
*/
  register struct mproc *rmp;
  char *rzp;
  vir_bytes vzb;
  vir_clicks text_clicks, data_clicks, gap_clicks, stack_clicks, tot_clicks;
  phys_clicks new_base, old_clicks;
  phys_bytes bytes, base, count, bss_offset;
  extern phys_clicks alloc_mem();
  extern phys_clicks max_hole();

  /* Acquire the new memory. Each of the 4 parts: text, (data+bss), gap, */
  * and stack occupies an integral number of clicks, starting at click */
  * boundary. The data and bss parts are run together with no space. */
  
  text_clicks = (text_bytes + CLICK_SIZE - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
  data_clicks = (data_bytes + bss_bytes + CLICK_SIZE - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
  stack_clicks = (stk_bytes + CLICK_SIZE - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
  tot_clicks = (tot_bytes + CLICK_SIZE - 1) >> CLICK_SHIFT;
  gap_clicks = tot_clicks - data_clicks - stack_clicks;
  if ( (int) gap_clicks < 0) return(ENOMEM);

  /* Check to see if there is a hole big enough. If so, we can risk first */
  * releasing the old core image before allocating the new one, since we */
  * know it will succeed. If there is not enough, return failure. */
  if (text_clicks + tot_clicks > max_hole() ) return(EAGAIN);

  /* There is enough memory for the new core image. Release the old one. */
  rmp = mp;
  old_clicks = (phys_clicks) rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_vir + rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_len;
  if (rmp->mp_flags & SEPARATE) old_clicks += rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_len;
  free_mem(rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_phys, old_clicks); /* free the memory */

  /* We have now passed the point of no return. The old core image has been */
  * forever lost. The call must go through now. Set up and report new map. */
  new_base = alloc_mem(text_clicks + tot_clicks); /* new core image */
  if (new_base == NO_MEM) panic("MM hole list is inconsistent", NO_NUM);
  rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_vir = 0;
  rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_len = text_clicks;
6150     rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_phys = new_base;
6151     rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_vir = 0;
6152     rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_len = data_clicks;
6153     rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_phys = new_base + text_clicks;
6154     rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_vir = rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_vir + data_clicks + gap_clicks;
6155     rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_len = stack_clicks;
6156     rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_phys = rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_phys + data_clicks + gap_clicks;
6157     sys_newmap(wha, rmp->mp_seg);

6158     /* Zero the bss, gap, and stack segment. Start just above text. */
6159     for (rzp = &bf[0]; rzp < &bf[zs]; rzp++) *rzp = 0; /* clear buffer */
6160     bytes = (phys_bytes) (data_clicks + gap_clicks + stack_clicks) << CLICK_SHIFT;
6161     vzb = (vir_bytes) bf;
6162     base = (long) rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_phys + rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_len;
6163     base = base << CLICK_SHIFT;
6164     bss_offset = (data_bytes >> CLICK_SHIFT) << CLICK_SHIFT;
6165     base += bss_offset;
6166     base = base - bss_offset;
6167     bytes -= count;
6168     while (bytes > 0) {
6169     count = (long) MIN(bytes, (phys_bytes) zs);
6170     if (mem_copy(MM_PROC_NR, D, (long) vzb, ABS, 0, base, count) != OK)
6171     panic("new_mem can't zero", NO_NUM);
6172     base += count;
6173     bytes -= count;
6174     }
6175     return(OK);
6176 }
6177 }

6180 /*********************************************************************************/
6181 *  patch_ptr
6182 /*********************************************************************************/
6183 PRIVATE patch_ptr(stack, base)
6184 char stack[MAX_ISTACK_BYTES]; /* pointer to stack image within MM */
6185 vir_bytes base; /* virtual address of stack base inside user */
6186 {
6187     /* When doing an exec(name, argv, envp) call, the user builds up a stack
6188     * image with arg and env pointers relative to the start of the stack. Now
6189     * these pointers must be relocated, since the stack is not positioned at
6190     * address 0 in the user's address space.
6191     */
6192     char **ap, flag;
6193     vir_bytes v;
6194     flag = 0;
6195     ap = (char **) stack; /* points initially to 'nargs' */
6196     ap++;
6197     ap++;
6198     while (flag < 2) {
if (ap >= (char **) &stack[MAX_ISTACK_BYTES]) return; /* too bad */
if (*ap != NIL_PTR) {
    v = (vir_bytes) *ap; /* v is relative pointer */
    v += base; /* relocate it */
    *ap = (char *) v; /* put it back */
} else {
    flag++;
}
ap++;
}
}

#define CLICK_SHIFT 10

/*===============================================*
 * load_seg
 *===============================================*/
PRIVATE load_seg(fd, seg, seg_bytes)
int fd; /* file descriptor to read from */
int seg; /* T or D */
int vir_bytes, seg_bytes; /* how big is the segment */
{
/* Read in text or data from the exec file and copy to the new core image.
 * This procedure is a little bit tricky. The logical way to load a segment
 * would be to read it block by block and copy each block to the user space
 * one at a time. This is too slow, so we do something dirty here, namely
 * send the user space and virtual address to the file system in the upper
 * 10 bits of the file descriptor, and pass it the user virtual address
 * instead of a MM address. The file system copies the whole segment
 * directly to user space, bypassing MM completely. */

    int new_fd, bytes;
    char *ubuf_ptr;
    if (seg_bytes == 0) return; /* text size for combined I & D is 0 */
    new_fd = (who << 8) | (seg << 6) | fd;
    ubuf_ptr = (char *) (mp->mp_seg[seg].mem_vir << CLICK_SHIFT);
    bytes = (int) seg_bytes;
    read(new_fd, ubuf_ptr, bytes);
/* The MINIX model of memory allocation reserves a fixed amount of memory for
 * the combined text, data, and stack segments. The amount used for a child
 * process created by FORK is the same as the parent had. If the child does
 * an EXEC later, the new size is taken from the header of the file EXEC'ed.
 * The layout in memory consists of the text segment, followed by the data
 * segment, followed by a gap (unused memory), followed by the stack segment.
 * The data segment grows upward and the stack grows downward, so each can
 * take memory from the gap. If they meet, the process must be killed. The
 * procedures in this file deal with the growth of the data and stack segments.
 * The entry points into this file are:
 * do_brk: BRK/SBRK system calls to grow or shrink the data segment
 * adjust: see if a proposed segment adjustment is allowed
 * size_ok: see if the segment sizes are feasible
 * stack_fault: grow the stack segment
 */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/mproc.h"
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/glo.h"
#include "../h/param.h"

#define DATA_CHANGED 1 /* flag value when data segment size changed */
#define STACK_CHANGED 2 /* flag value when stack size changed */

/*------------------------------*/
* do_brk *
------------------------------*/
PUBLIC int do_brk()
{
  /* Perform the brk(addr) system call.
   * The call is complicated by the fact that on some machines (e.g., 8088),
   * the stack pointer can grow beyond the base of the stack segment without
   * anybody noticing it. For a file not using separate I & D space,
   * the parameter, 'addr' is the total size, text + data. For a file using
   * separate text and data spaces, it is just the data size. Files using
   * separate I & D space have the SEPARATE bit in mp_flags set.
   */

  register struct mproc *rmp;
  int r;
  vir_bytes v, new_sp;
  vir_clicks new_clicks;
6300    rmp = mp;
6301    v = (vir_bytes) addr; /* 'addr' is the new data segment size */
6302    new_clicks = (vir_clicks) \((\text{long}) v + \text{CLICK\_SIZE - 1}) \gg \text{CLICK\_SHIFT}\);  
6303    sys_getsp(who, &new_sp); /* ask kernel for current sp value */
6304    r = adjust(rmp, new_clicks, new_sp);
6305    res_ptr = (r == OK ? addr : (char *) -1);
6306    return(r); /* return new size or -1 */
6307  
6310  /*=========================================================================*/
6311  *
6312  /*=========================================================================*/
6313  PUBLIC int adjust(rmp, data_clicks, sp)
6314  register struct mproc *rmp; /* whose memory is being adjusted? */
6315  vir_clicks data_clicks; /* how big is data segment to become? */
6316  vir_bytes sp; /* new value of sp */
6317  {
6318  /* See if data and stack segments can coexist, adjusting them if need be.
6319  * Memory is never allocated or freed. Instead it is added or removed from the
6320  * gap between data segment and stack segment. If the gap size becomes
6321  * negative, the adjustment of data or stack fails and ENOMEM is returned.
6322  */
6323  
6324  register struct mem_map *mem_sp, *mem_dp;
6325  vir_clicks sp_click, gap_base, lower, old_clicks;
6326  int changed, r, ft;
6327  long base_of_stack, delta; /* longs avoid certain problems */
6328  mem_dp = &rmp->mp_seg[D]; /* pointer to data segment map */
6329  mem_sp = &rmp->mp_seg[S]; /* pointer to stack segment map */
6330  changed = 0;
6331  /* set when either segment changed */
6332  /* See if stack size has gone negative (i.e., sp too close to OxFFFF...) */
6333  base_of_stack = (long) mem_sp->mem_vir + (long) mem_sp->mem_len;
6334  sp_click = sp >> CLICK\_SHIFT; /* click containing sp */
6335  if (sp_click >= base_of_stack) return(ENOMEM); /* sp too high */
6337  /* Compute size of gap between stack and data segments. */
6338  delta = (long) mem_sp->mem_vir - (long) sp_click;
6339  lower = (delta > 0 ? sp_click : mem_sp->mem_vir);
6340  gap_base = mem_dp->mem_vir + data_clicks;
6341  if (lower < gap_base) return(ENOMEM); /* data and stack collided */
6343  /* Update data length (but not data orgin) on behalf of brk() system call. */
6344  old_clicks = mem_dp->mem_len;
6345  if (data_clicks != mem_dp->mem_len) {
6346      mem_dp->mem_len = data_clicks;
6347      changed |= DATA\_CHANGED;
6348  }
/* Update stack length and origin due to change in stack pointer. */
if (delta > 0) {
    mem_sp->mem_vir -= delta;
    mem_sp->mem_phys -= delta;
    mem_sp->mem_len += delta;
    changed |= STACK_CHANGED;
}

/* Do the new data and stack segment sizes fit in the address space? */
ft = size_ok(file_type, tc, dc, sc, dvir, s_vir);
r = size_ok(tc, rmp->mp_seg[T].mem_len, rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_len,
            dc, rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_len, rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_vir, rmp->mp_seg[S].mem_vir);
if (r == OK) {
    if (changed) sys_newmap(rmp - mproc, rmp->mp_seg);
    return(OK);
}

/* New sizes don't fit or require too many page/segment registers. Restore. */
if (changed & DATA_CHANGED) mem_dp->mem_len = old_clicks;
if (changed & STACK_CHANGED) {
    mem_sp->mem_vir += delta;
    mem_sp->mem_phys += delta;
    mem_sp->mem_len -= delta;
}
return(ENOMEM);

/* Check to see if the sizes are feasible and enough segmentation registers
* exist. On a machine with eight 8K pages, text, data, stack sizes of
* (32K, 16K, 16K) will fit, but (33K, 17K, 13K) will not, even though the
* former is bigger (64K) than the latter (63K). Even on the 8088 this test
* is needed, since the data and stack may not exceed 4096 clicks.
*/
int pt, pd, ps; /* segment sizes in pages */
pt = ((tc << CLICK_SHIFT) + PAGE_SIZE - 1)/PAGE_SIZE;
pd = ( (dc << CLICK_SHIFT) + PAGE_SIZE - 1)/PAGE_SIZE;
ps = ( (sc << CLICK_SHIFT) + PAGE_SIZE - 1)/PAGE_SIZE;

if (file_type == SEPARATE) {
    if (pt > MAX_PAGES || pd + ps > MAX_PAGES) return(ENOMEM);
} else {
    if (pt + pd + ps > MAX_PAGES) return(ENOMEM);
}

if (dvir + dc > s_vir) return(ENOMEM);

return(OK);

/*================================== stack_fault ================================*
 *===========================================================================*/
PUBLIC stack_fault(procnr)

int proc_nr;        /* tells who got the stack fault */

/* Handle a stack fault by growing the stack segment until sp is inside of it.
* If this is impossible because data segment is in the way, kill the process.
*/

register struct mproc *rmp;
int r;
vir_bytes new_sp;

rmp = &mproc[proc_nr];
sys_getsp(rmp - mproc, &new_sp);
r = adjust(rmp, rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_len, new_sp);
if (r == OK) return;

/* Stack has bumped into data segment. Kill the process. */
rmp->mp_catch = 0;        /* don't catch this signal */
sig_proc(rmp, SIGSEGV);    /* terminate process */
This file handles signals, which are asynchronous events and are generally a messy and unpleasant business. Signals can be generated by the KILL system call, or from the keyboard (SIGINT) or from the clock (SIGALRM). In all cases control eventually passes to check_sig() to see which processes can be signalled. The actual signalling is done by sig_proc().

The entry points into this file are:
do_signal: perform the SIGNAL system call
do_kill: perform the KILL system call
do_ksig: accept a signal originating in the kernel (e.g., SIGINT)
sig_proc: interrupt or terminate a signalled process
set_alarm: tell the clock task to start or stop a timer
do_pause: perform the PAUSE system call
unpause: check to see if process is suspended on anything

```
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/signal.h"
#include "../h/stat.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

#define DUMP_SIZE 256  /* buffer size for core dumps */
#define CORE_MODE 0777 /* mode to use on core image files */
#define DUMPED 0200   /* bit set in status when core dumped */

PRIVATE message m_sig;

/*@*************************************************************************/
@do_signal
/**************************************************************************/

PUBLIC int do_signal()
{
    /* Perform the signal(sig, func) call by setting bits to indicate that a signal
    * is to be caught or ignored.
    */

    int mask;

    if (sig < 1 || sig > NR_SIGS) return(EINVAL);
    if (sig == SIGKILL) return(OK);  /* SIGKILL may not ignored/caught */
    mask = 1 << (sig - 1);           /* singleton set with 'sig' bit on */
```
That rmp->mp_f
do_ksig
else
PUBLIC
mask;
mp->mp_catch
mp->mp_ignore
return
return(OK);
*/
{                                    
/* PROC1 who
is mask;
rmp->mp_pid;
also
bit *
mm_in
FS_PROC_NR)
/*

MINIX
sets
proc_id,
if
message
HARDWARE
The
awaiting

/*
*
- *
*
*
* unshort
the
"mask;
*
HANGING)
= mp->mp_ignore &amp; mproc[proc_nr]
(func
{               

16
return(OK);
}

PUBLIC int do_kill()
{
    /* Perform the kill(pid, kill_sig) system call. */
    return check_sig(pid, kill_sig, mp->mp_effuid);
}

PUBLIC int do_ksig()
{
    /* Certain signals, such as segmentation violations and DEL, originate in the 
   * kernel. When the kernel detects such signals, it sets bits in a bit map. 
   * As soon as MM is awaiting new work, the kernel sends MM a message containing 
   * the process slot and bit map. That message comes here. The File System 
   * also uses this mechanism to signal writing on broken pipes (SIGPIPE).
   */

    register struct mproc *rmp;
    int i, proc_id, proc_nr, id;
    unshort sig_map;          /* bits 0 - 15 for sigs 1 - 16 */
                  
    /* Only kernel and FS may make this call. */
    if (who != HARDWARE &amp; who != FS_PROC_NR) return(EPERM);

    proc_nr = mm_in.PROC1;
    rmp = &amp;mproc[proc_nr];
    if ( (rmp-&gt;mp_flags &amp; IN_USE) == 0 || (rmp-&gt;mp_flags &amp; HANGING) ) return(OK)
    proc_id = rmp-&gt;mp_pid;
MINIX SOURCE CODE

File: mm/signal.c

6550 sig_map = (unshort) mm_in.SIG_MAP;
6551 mp = &mproc[0];  /* pretend kernel signals are from MM */
6552
6553 /* Stack faults are passed from kernel to MM as pseudo-signal 16. */
6554 if (sig_map == 1 << (STACK_FAULT - 1)) {
6555    stack_fault(proc_nr);
6556    return(OK);
6557 }
6558
6559 /* Check each bit in turn to see if a signal is to be sent. Unlike
6560  * kill(), the kernel may collect several unrelated signals for a process
6561  * and pass them to MM in one blow. Thus loop on the bit map. For SIGINT
6562  * and SIGQUIT, use proc_id 0, since multiple processes may have to signaled.
6563 */
6564 for (i = 0; i < NR_SIGS; i++) {
6565    id = (i+1 == SIGINT || i+1 == SIGQUIT ? 0 : proc_id);
6566    if ((sig_map >> i) & 1) check_sig(id, i + 1, SUPER_USER);
6567 }
6568
dont_reply = TRUE;  /* don't reply to the kernel */
6569 return(OK);
6570
6571
6572 /*====================================================================*/
6573 *====================================================================*/
6574 PRIVATE int check_sig(proc_id, sig_nr, send_uid)
6575 
6576 int proc_id;  /* pid of process to signal, or 0 or -1 */
6577 int sig_nr;  /* which signal to send (1-16) */
6578 uid send_uid;  /* identity of process sending the signal */
6579 {
6580 /* Check to see if it is possible to send a signal. The signal may have to be
6581  * sent to a group of processes. This routine is invoked by the KILL system
6582  * call, and also when the kernel catches a DEL or other signal. SIGALRM too.
6583 */
6584
6585 register struct mproc *rmp;
6586 int count, send_sig;
6587 unshort mask;
6588 extern unshort core_bits;
6589
6590 if (sig_nr < 1 || sig_nr > NR_SIGS) return(EINVAL);
6591 count = 0;  /* count # of signals sent */
6592 mask = 1 << (sig_nr - 1);
6593
6594 /* Search the proc table for processes to signal. Several tests are made:
6595  * - if proc's uid != sender's, and sender is not superuser, don't signal
6596  * - if specific process requested (i.e., 'procpid' > 0), check for match
6597  * - if a process has already exited, it can't receive signals
6598 */
6599
* - if 'proc_id' is 0 signal everyone in same process group except caller
*/

for (rmp = &mproc[INIT_PROC_NR + 1]; rmp < &mproc[NR_PROCS]; rmp++) {
    if ((rmp->mp_flags & IN_USE) == 0) continue;
    send_sig = TRUE;  // if it's FALSE at end of loop, don't signal *
    if (send_uid != rmp->mp_effuid & send_uid != SUPER_USER) send_sig = FALSE;
    if (proc_id > 0 & proc_id != mp->mp_pid) send_sig = FALSE;
    if (rmp->mp_flags & HANGING) send_sig = FALSE;  // don't wake the dead*
    if (proc_id == 0 & mp->mp_procgrp != mp->mp_procgrp) send_sig = FALSE;
    if (send_uid == SUPER_USER & proc_id == -1) send_sig = TRUE;

    /* SIGALARM is a little special. When a process exits, a clock signal
     * can arrive just as the timer is being turned off. Also, turn off
     * ALARM_ON bit when timer goes off to keep it accurate.
     */
    if (sig_nr == SIGALRM) {
        if ((rmp->mp_flags & ALARM_ON) == 0) continue;
        rmp->mp_flags &= ~ALARM_ON;
    }
    if (send_sig == FALSE || rmp->mp_ignore & mask) continue;

    /* If process is hanging on PAUSE, WAIT, tty, pipe, etc. release it. */
    unpause(rmp - mproc);  // check to see if process is paused */
    count++;
    unpause(rmp - mproc);  // check to see if process is paused */
    count++;

    /* Send the signal or kill the process, possibly with core dump. */
    sig_proc(rmp, sig_nr);
    if (proc_id > 0) break;  // only one process being signalled */

    /* If the calling process has killed itself, don't reply. */
    if ((mp->mp_flags & IN_USE) == 0 || (mp->mp_flags & HANGING)) dont_reply = TRUE;
    return(count > 0 ? OK : ESRCH);
}

/*===========================================================================*
# sig_proc
===========================================================================*/

PUBLIC sig_proc(rmp, sig_nr)
register struct mproc *rmp;  // pointer to the process to be signalled */
int sig_nr;  // signal to send to process (1-16) */

{ /* Send a signal to a process. Check to see if the signal is to be caught.
   * If so, the pc, psw, and signal number are to be pushed onto the process' *
   * stack. If the stack cannot grow or the signal is not to be caught, kill
   * the process. */

    ...
unshort mask;
int core_file;
vir_bytes new_sp;
extern unshort core_bits;

if ((rmp->mp_flags & INUSE) == 0) return; /* if already dead forget it */
mask = 1 << (sig_nr - 1);
if ((rmp->mp_catch & mask) {
    /* Signal should be caught. */
    rmp->mp_catch &= ~mask; /* disable further signals */
    sys_getsp(rmp - mproc, &new_sp);
    new_sp -= SIG_PUSH_BYTES;
    if (adjust(rmp, rmp->mp_seg[D].mem_len, new_sp) == OK) {
        sys_sig(rmp - mproc, sig_nr, rmp->mp_func);
        return; /* successful signal */
    }
}

/* Signal should not or cannot be caught. Take default action. */
core_file = (core_bits >> (sig_nr - 1)) & 1;
rmp->mpsigstatus = (char) sig_nr;
mm_exit(rmp, 0); /* terminate process */
if (core_file) dump_core(rmp); /* dump core */

PUBLIC int do_alarm()
{
    /* Perform the alarm(seconds) system call. */
    register int r;
    unsigned sec;
    sec = (unsigned) seconds;
    r = set_alarm(who, sec);
    return(r);
}

PUBLIC int set_alarm(proc_nr, sec)
{
    /* This routine is used by do_alarm() to set the alarm timer. It is also used
* to turn the timer off when a process exits with the timer still on. *

```c
int remaining;

m_sig.m_type = SET_ALARM;
m_sig.PROC_NR = proc_nr;
m_sig.ELTA_TICKS = HZ * sec;
if (sec != 0)
    mproc[proc_nr].mp_flags |= ALARM_ON; /* turn ALARM_ON bit on */
else
    mproc[proc_nr].mp_flags &= ~ALARM_ON; /* turn ALARM_ON bit off */

/* Tell the clock task to provide a signal message when the time comes. */
if (sendrec(CL0CK, &m_sig) != OK) panic("alarm er", NO_NUM);
remaining = (int) m_sig.SECONDS_LEFT;
return(remaining);
}
```

```c
PUBLIC int do_pause()
{
    /* Perform the pause() system call. */
    mp->mp_flags |= PAUSEO;   /* turn on PAUSE bit */
dont_reply = TRUE;
return(OK);
}
```

```c
PUBLIC int do_pause()
{
    /* A signal is to be sent to a process. If that process is hanging on a
    * system call, the system call must be terminated with EINTR. Possible
    * calls are PAUSE, WAIT, READ and WRITE, the latter two for pipes and ttys.
    * First check if the process is hanging on PAUSE or WAIT. If not, tell FS,
    * so it can check for READs and WRITEs from pipes, ttys and the like.
    */

    register struct mproc *rmp;
    rmp = &mproc[pro];
```

/* Check to see if process is hanging on a PAUSE call. */
if (rmp->mp_flags & PAUSED) {
    rmp->mp_flags &= ~PAUSED;  /* turn off PAUSED bit */
    reply(pro, EINTR, 0, NIL_PTR);
    return;
}

/* Check to see if process is hanging on a WAIT call. */
if (rmp->mp_flags & WAITING) {
    rmp->mp_flags &= ~WAITING;  /* turn off WAITING bit */
    reply(pro, EINTR, 0, NIL_PTR);
    return;
}

/* Process is not hanging on an MM call. Ask FS to take a look. */
tell_fs(UNPAUSE, pro, 0, 0);
return;

/*============================================r
PRIVATE dump_core(rmp)
register struct mproc *rmp;  /* whose core is to be dumped */
{
    /* Make a core dump on the file "core", if possible. */
    struct stat s_buf, d_buf;
    char buf[DUMP_SIZE];
    int i, r, s, er1, er2, slot;
    vir_bytes v_buf;
    long len, a, c, ct, dest;
    struct mproc *xmp;
    extern char core_name[];

    slot = rmp - mproc;
tell_fs(CHDIR, slot, 0, 0);

    /* Change to working directory of dumpee. */
    if (rmp->mp_realuid != rmp->mp_effuid) {tellfs(CHDIR,0,1,0); return;}
xmp = mp;  /* allowed() looks at 'mp' */
mp = rmp;
r = allowed(core_name, &s_buf, W_BIT);  /* is core_file writable */
s = allowed(".", &d_buf, W_BIT);  /* is directory writable */
mp = xmp;
if (r >= 0) close(r);
if (s >= 0) close(s);
if (rmp->mp EFFUID == SUPER_USER) r = 0;  /* su can always dump core */

if (r >= 0 || (r == ENOENT && s >= 0)) {
    /* Either file is writable or it doesn't exist & dir is writable */
    r = creat(core_name, CORE_MODE);
    tell_fs(CHDIR, 0, 1, 0);  /* go back to MM's own dir */
    if (r < 0) return;
    rmp->mp sigstatus |= DUMPED;
}

/* First loop through segments and write each length on core file. */
for (i = 0; i < NR_SEGS; i++) {
    len = rmp->mp seg[i].mem_len << CLICK_SHIFT;
    if (write(r, (char *) &len, sizeof len) < 0) {
        close(r);
        return;
    }
}

/* Now loop through segments and write the segments themselves out. */
v_buf = (vir_bytes) buf;
dest = (long) v_buf;
for (i = 0; i < NR_SEGS; i++) {
    a = (phys_bytes) rmp->mp seg[i].mem_vir << CLICK_SHIFT;
    c = (phys_bytes) rmp->mp seg[i].mem_len << CLICK_SHIFT;

    /* Loop through a segment, dumping it. */
    while (c > 0) {
        ct = MIN(c, DUMP_SIZE);
        erl = mem_copy(slot, i, a, MM_PR0C_NR, D, dest, ct);
        er2 = write(r, buf, (int) ct);
        if (erl < 0 || er2 < 0) {
            close(r);
            return;
        }
        a += ct;
        c -= ct;
    }
}

} else {
    tell_fs(CHDIR, 0, 1, 0);  /* go back to MM's own dir */
    close(r);
    return;
}
}
close(r);
/* This file handles the 4 system calls that get and set uids and gids.
 * It also handles getpid(). The code for each one is so tiny that it hardly
 * seemed worthwhile to make each a separate function.
 */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

PUBLIC int do_getset()
{
    /* Handle GETUID, GETGID, GETPID, SETUID, SETGID. The three GETs return
     * their primary results in 'r'. GETUID and GETGID also return secondary
     * results (the effective IDs) in 'result2', which is returned to the user.
     */

    register struct mproc *rmp = mp;
    register int r;

    switch(mm_call) {
        case GETUID:
            r = rmp->mp_realuid;
            result2 = rmp->mp_effuid;
            break;

        case GETGID:
            r = rmp->mp_realgid;
            result2 = rmp->mp_effgid;
            break;

        case GETPID:
            r = mproc[who].mp_pid;
            result2 = mproc[rmp->mp_parent].mp_pid;
            break;

        case SETUID:
            if (rmp->mp_realuid != usr_id && rmp->mp_effuid != SUPER_USER)
                return(EPERM);
            rmp->mp_realuid = usr_id;
            rmp->mp_effuid = usr_id;
tell_fs(SETUID, who, usr_id, usr_id);
            r = OK;
            break;
    }
    return(r);
}
break;

case SETGID:
    if (rmp->mp_realgid != grpid && rmp->mp_effuid != SUPER_USER)
        return(EPERM);
    rmp->mp_realgid = grpid;
    rmp->mp_effgid = grpid;
    tell_fs(SETGID, who, grpid, grpid);
    r = OK;
    break;

return(r);
/* This file is concerned with allocating and freeing arbitrary-size blocks of physical memory on behalf of the FORK and EXEC system calls. The key data structure used is the hole table, which maintains a list of holes in memory.

It is kept sorted in order of increasing memory address. The addresses it contains refer to physical memory, starting at absolute address 0 (i.e., they are not relative to the start of MM). During system initialization, that part of memory containing the interrupt vectors, kernel, and MM are "allocated" to mark them as not available and to remove them from the hole list.

* The entry points into this file are:
- alloc_mem: allocate a given sized chunk of memory
- free_mem: release a previously allocated chunk of memory
- mem_init: initialize the tables when MM starts up
- max_hole: returns the largest hole currently available
*/

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "const.h"

#define NR_HOLES 128 /* max # entries in hole table */
#define NIL_HOLE (struct hole *) 0

PRIVATE struct hole {
  phys_clicks h_base; /* where does the hole begin? */
  phys_clicks h_len; /* how big is the hole? */
  struct hole *h_next; /* pointer to next entry on the list */
} hole[NR_HOLES];

PRIVATE struct hole *hole_head; /* pointer to first hole */
PRIVATE struct hole *free_slots; /* ptr to list of unused table slots */

/*=============================================*/

PUBLIC phys_clicks alloc_mem(phys_clicks clicks)

phys_clicks clicks; /* amount of memory requested */

{ /* Allocate a block of memory from the free list using first fit. The block consists of a sequence of contiguous bytes, whose length in clicks is given by 'clicks'. A pointer to the block is returned. The block is always on a click boundary. This procedure is called when memory is needed for FORK or EXEC. */

  register struct hole *hp, *prev_ptr;
  phys_clicks old_base;

  ...
7000    hp = hole_head;
7001    while (hp != NIL_HOLE) {
7002        if (hp->h_len >= clicks) {
7003            /* We found a hole that is big enough. Use it. */
7004                old_base = hp->h_base; /* remember where it started */
7005                hp->h_base += clicks; /* bite a piece off */
7006                hp->h_len -= clicks; /* ditto */
7007
7008            /* If hole is only partly used, reduce size and return. */
7009                if (hp->h_len != 0) return(old_base);
7010        }
7011        /* The entire hole has been used up. Manipulate free list. */
7012                del_slot(prev_ptr, hp);
7013                return(old_base);
7014    }
7015    prev_ptr = hp;
7016    hp = hp->h_next;
7017    }
7018    return(NO_MEM);
7019
7020
7023    /***************************************************************************/
7024    * free_mem
7025    /***************************************************************************/
7026    PUBLIC free_mem(base, clicks)
7027    phys_clicks base;       /* base address of block to free */
7028    phys_clicks clicks;    /* number of clicks to free */
7029    {
7030        /* Return a block of free memory to the hole list. The parameters tell where
7031           * the block starts in physical memory and how big it is. The block is added
7032           * to the hole list. If it is contiguous with an existing hole on either end,
7033           * it is merged with the hole or holes.
7034           */
7035
7036        register struct hole *hp, *new_ptr, *prev_ptr;
7037
7038        if ( (new_ptr = free_slots) == NIL_HOLE) panic("Hole table full", NO_NUM);
7039        new_ptr->h_base = base;
7040        new_ptr->h_len = clicks;
7041        free_slots = new_ptr->h_next;
7042        hp = hole_head;
7043
7044        /* If this block's address is numerically less than the lowest hole currently
7045           * available, or if no holes are currently available, put this hole on the
7046           * front of the hole list.
7047           */
7048        if (hp == NIL_HOLE || base <= hp->h_base) {
7049            /* Block to be freed goes on front of hole list. */
new_ptr->h_next = hp;
hole_head = new_ptr;
merge(new_ptr);
return;
}

/* Block to be returned does not go on front of the hole list. */
while (hp != NIL_HOLE && base > hp->h_base) {
    prev_ptr = hp;
    hp = hp->h_next;
}

/* We found where it goes. Insert block after 'prev_ptr'. */
new_ptr->h_next = prev_ptr->h_next;
prev_ptr->h_next = new_ptr;
merge(prev_ptr);  /* sequence is 'prev_ptr', 'new_ptr', 'hp' */
}

/*==============================================*/
* del_slot
* ==============================================*/
PRIVATE del_slot(prev_ptr, hp)
register struct hole *prev_ptr;  /* pointer to hole entry just ahead of 'hp' */
register struct hole *hp;  /* pointer to hole entry to be removed */
{
    /* Remove an entry from the hole list. This procedure is called when a 
       * request to allocate memory removes a hole in its entirety, thus reducing 
       * the numbers of holes in memory, and requiring the elimination of one 
       * entry in the hole list. 
       */
    if (hp == hole_head)
        hole_head = hp->h_next;
    else
        prev_ptr->h_next = hp->h_next;
    hp->h_next = free_slots;
    free_slots = hp;
}

/*==============================================*/
* merge
* ==============================================*/
PRIVATE merge(hp)
register struct hole *hp;  /* ptr to hole to merge with its successors */
{
    /* Check for contiguous holes and merge any found. Contiguous holes can occur 
       * when a block of memory is freed, and it happens to abut another hole on 

* either or both ends. The pointer 'hp' points to the first of a series of
* three holes that can potentially all be merged together.
*/

    register struct hole *next_ptr;

    /* If 'hp' points to the last hole, no merging is possible. If it does not,
    * try to absorb its successor into it and free the successor's table entry.
    */
    if ((next_ptr = hp->h_next) == NIL_HOLE) return;
    if (hp->h_base + hp->h_len == next_ptr->h_base) {
        hp->h_len += next_ptr->h_len; /* first one gets second one's mem */
        del_slot(hp, next_ptr);
    } else {
        hp = next_ptr;
    }

    /* If 'hp' now points to the last hole, return; otherwise, try to absorb its
    * successor into it.
    */
    if ((next_ptr = hp->h_next) == NIL_HOLE) return;
    if (hp->h_base + hp->h_len == next_ptr->h_base) {
        hp->h_len += next_ptr->h_len;
        del_slot(hp, next_ptr);
    }

    // ==============
    * max_hole
    // ==============

    PUBLIC phys_clicks max_hole()
    {
        /* Scan the hole list and return the largest hole. */
        register struct hole *hp;
        register phys_clicks max;
        hp = hole_head;
        max = 0;
        while (hp != NIL_HOLE) {
            if (hp->h_len > max) max = hp->h_len;
            hp = hp->h_next;
        }
        return(max);
    }
PUBLIC mem_init(clicks) phys_clicks clicks; /* amount of memory available */
{
    /* Initialize hole lists. There are two lists: 'hole_head' points to a linked
    * list of all the holes (unused memory) in the system; 'free_slots' points to
    * a linked list of table entries that are not in use. Initially, the former
    * list has one entry, a single hole encompassing all of memory, and the second
    * list links together all the remaining table slots. As memory becomes more
    * fragmented in the course of time (i.e., the initial big hole breaks up into
    * many small holes), new table slots are needed to represent them. These
    * slots are taken from the list headed by 'free_slots'.
    */
    register struct hole *hp;
    for (hp = &hole[0]; hp < &hole[NR_HOLES]; hp++) hp->h_next = hp + 1;
    hole[0].h_next = NIL_HOLE; /* only 1 big hole initially */
    hole[NR_HOLES-1].h_next = NIL_HOLE;
    hole_head = &hole[0];
    free_slots = &hole[1];
    hole[0].h_base = 0;
    hole[0].h_len = clicks;
/* This file contains some useful utility routines used by MM. */

/* The entries into the file are: */

* allowed: see if an access is permitted
* mem_copy: copy data from somewhere in memory to somewhere else
* no_sys: this routine is called for invalid system call numbers
* panic: MM has run aground of a fatal error and cannot continue

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/stat.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"

PRIVATE message copy_mess;

PUBLIC int allowed(name_buf, s_buf, mask)
{
    char *name_buf;  /* pointer to file name to be EXECed */
    struct stat *s_buf;  /* buffer for doing and returning stat struct */
    int mask;  /* R_BIT, W_BIT, or X_BIT */

    register int fd, shift;
    int mode;
    extern errno;

    /* Open the file and stat it. */
    if ((fd = open(name_buf, 0)) < 0) return(-errno);
    if (fstat(fd, s_buf) < 0) panic("allowed: fstat failed", NO_NUM);

    /* Only regular files can be executed. */
    mode = s_buf->st_mode & I_TYPE;
    if (mask == X_BIT && mode != I_REGULAR) {
        close(fd);
        return(EACCES);
    }

    /* Even for superuser, at least 1 X bit must be on. */
    if (mp->mp_effuid == 0 && mask == X_BIT &&
        (s_buf->st_mode & (X_BIT << 6 | X_BIT << 3 | X_BIT))) return(fd);
/* Right adjust the relevant set of permission bits. */
if (mp->mp_effuid == s_buf->st_uid) shift = 6;
else if (mp->mp_effgid == s_buf->st_gid) shift = 3;
else shift = 0;

if (s_buf->st_mode >> shift & mask) /* test the relevant bits */
   return(fd); /* permission granted */
else {
   close(fd); /* permission denied */
   return(EACCES);
}

/* Transfer a block of data. The source and destination can each either be a */
/* process (including MM) or absolute memory, indicated by setting 'src_proc' */
/* or 'dst_proc' to ABS. */

if (bytes == 0L) return(OK);

sys_copy(&copy_mess);
return(copy_mess.m_type);

/* Transfer a block of data. The source and destination can each either be a */
/* process (including MM) or absolute memory, indicated by setting 'src_proc' */
/* or 'dst_proc' to ABS. */

sys_copy(&copy_mess);
return(copy_mess.m_type);

/* Transfer a block of data. The source and destination can each either be a */
/* process (including MM) or absolute memory, indicated by setting 'src_proc' */
/* or 'dst_proc' to ABS. */

sys_copy(&copy_mess);
return(copy_mess.m_type);
/* A system call number not implemented by MM has been requested. */

return(EINVAL);

PUBLIC panic(format, num)
char *format;        /* format string */
int num;            /* number to go with format string */
{
    /* Something awful has happened. Panics are caused when an internal
    * inconsistency is detected, e.g., a programming error or illegal value of a
    * defined constant. */
    printf("Memory manager panic: %s ", format);
    if (num != NO_NUM) printf("%d", num);
    printf("\n");
    tell_fs(SYNC, 0, 0, 0);    /* flush the cache to the disk */
    sys_abort();
}
/* MM must occasionally print some message. It uses the standard library
 * routine prink(). (The name "printf" is really a macro defined as "printk").
 * Printing is done by calling the TTY task directly, not going through FS.
 */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#define STD_OUTPUT 1 /* file descriptor for standard output */
#define BUF_SIZE 100 /* print buffer size */

PRIVATE int buf_count; /* # characters in the buffer */
PRIVATE char print_buf[BUF_SIZE]; /* output is buffered here */
PRIVATE message putch_msg; /* used for message to TTY task */

PUBLIC putc(c)
char c;
{
    /* Accumulate another character. If '\n' or buffer full, print it. */
    print_buf[buf_count++] = c;
    if (buf_count == BUF_SIZE) F_l_u_s_h();
    if (c == '\n') F_l_u_s_h();
}

PUBLIC F_l_u_s_h()
{
    /* Flush the print buffer by calling TTY task. */
    if (buf_count == 0) return;
    putch_msg.m_type = TTY_WRITE;
    putch_msg.PROC_NR = 0;
    putch_msg.TTY_LINE = 0;
    putch_msg.ADDRESS = print_buf;
    putch_msg.COUNT = buf_count;
    sendrec(TTY, &putch_msg);
    buf_count = 0;
}
/* This file contains the table used to map system call numbers onto the
+ routines that perform them. */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "const.h"

#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "mproc.h"
#include "param.h"

#include "h/const.h"
#include "h/type.h"
#include "const.h"

#define EXTERN

#include "h/callnr.h"

extern char mm_stack[];
char *stackpt = &mm_stack[MM_STACK_BYTES];
extern do_mm_exit(), do_fork(), do_wait(), do_brk(), do_getset(), do_exec();
extern do_signal(), do_kill(), do_pause(), do_alarm();
extern no_sys(), unpauseO, do_ksig(), do_brk2();

int (*mm_callvec[NCALLS])()
    = {
        no_sys,  /* 0 = unused */
        do_mm_exit,  /* 1 = exit */
        do_fork,  /* 2 = fork */
        no_sys,  /* 3 = read */
        no_sys,  /* 4 = write */
        no_sys,  /* 5 = open */
        no_sys,  /* 6 = close */
        do_wait,  /* 7 = wait */
        no_sys,  /* 8 = creat */
        no_sys,  /* 9 = link */
        no_sys,  /* 10 = unlink */
        no_sys,  /* 11 = exec */
        no_sys,  /* 12 = chdir */
        no_sys,  /* 13 = time */
        no_sys,  /* 14 = mknod */
        no_sys,  /* 15 = chmod */
        no_sys,  /* 16 = chown */
        do_brk,  /* 17 = break */
        no_sys,  /* 18 = stat */
        no_sys,  /* 19 = lseek */
        do_getset,  /* 20 = getpid */
        no_sys,  /* 21 = mount */
    };
MINIX SOURCE CODE

File: mm/table.c

```c
7450  no_sys,    /* 22 = umount */
7451  do_getset, /* 23 = setuid */
7452  do_getset, /* 24 = getuid */
7453  no_sys,    /* 25 = stime */
7454  no_sys,    /* 26 = (ptrace)*/
7455  do_alarm,  /* 27 = alarm */
7456  no_sys,    /* 28 = fstat */
7457  do_pause,  /* 29 = pause */
7458  no_sys,    /* 30 = utime */
7459  no_sys,    /* 31 = (stty) */
7460  no_sys,    /* 32 = (getty) */
7461  no_sys,    /* 33 = access */
7462  no_sys,    /* 34 = (nice) */
7463  no_sys,    /* 35 = (ftime) */
7464  no_sys,    /* 36 = sync */
7465  do_kill,   /* 37 = kill */
7466  no_sys,    /* 38 = unused */
7467  no_sys,    /* 39 = unused */
7468  no_sys,    /* 40 = unused */
7469  no_sys,    /* 41 = dup */
7470  no_sys,    /* 42 = pipe */
7471  no_sys,    /* 43 = times */
7472  no_sys,    /* 44 = (prof) */
7473  no_sys,    /* 45 = unused */
7474  do_getset, /* 46 = setgid */
7475  do_getset, /* 47 = getgid */
7476  do_signal, /* 48 = sig */
7477  no_sys,    /* 49 = unused */
7478  no_sys,    /* 50 = unused */
7479  no_sys,    /* 51 = (acct) */
7480  no_sys,    /* 52 = (phys) */
7481  no_sys,    /* 53 = (lock) */
7482  no_sys,    /* 54 = ioctl */
7483  no_sys,    /* 55 = unused */
7484  no_sys,    /* 56 = (mpx) */
7485  no_sys,    /* 57 = unused */
7486  no_sys,    /* 58 = unused */
7487  do_exec,   /* 59 = exece */
7488  no_sys,    /* 60 = umask */
7489  no_sys,    /* 61 = chroot */
7490  no_sys,    /* 62 = unused */
7491  no_sys,    /* 63 = unused */
7492  do_ksig,   /* 64 = KSIG: signals originating in the kernel */
7493  no_sys,    /* 65 = UNPAUSE */
7494  do_brk2,   /* 66 = BRK2 (used to tell MM size of FS,INIT) */
7495  no_sys,    /* 67 = REVIVE */
7496  no_sys,    /* 68 = TASK_REPLY */
7497  no_sys      
7498  });
```

/* Tables sizes */
#define NR_ZONE_NUMS 9 /* # zone numbers in an inode */
#define NR_BUFFS 30 /* # blocks in the buffer cache */
#define NR_BUF_HASH 32 /* size of buf hash table; MUST BE POWER OF 2 */
#define NR_FDS 20 /* max file descriptors per process */
#define NR_FILPS 64 /* # slots in filp table */
#define I_MAP_SLOTS 4 /* max # of blocks in the inode bit map */
#define ZMAP_SLOTS 6 /* max # of blocks in the zone bit map */
#define NR_INDODES 32 /* # slots in "in core" inode table */
#define NR_SUPER 3 /* # slots in super block table */
#define NAME_SIZE 14 /* # bytes in a directory component */
#define FS_STACK_BYTES 512 /* size of file system stack */

/* Miscellaneous constants */
#define SUPER_MAGIC 0x137f /* magic number contained in super-block */
#define SUPER_USER (uid) 0 /* super-user's uid */
#define SYS_USER (uid) 0 /* uid for processes MM and INIT */
#define SYS_GID (gid) 0 /* gid for processes MM and INIT */
#define NORMAL 0 /* forces get_block to do disk read */
#define ND_READ 1 /* prevents get_block from doing disk read */
#define XPIPE 0 /* used in fp_task when suspended on pipe */
#define NO_BIT (bit_nr) 0 /* returned by alloc_bit() to signal failure */
#define DUP_MASK 0100 /* mask to distinguish dup2 from dup */
#define LOOK_UP 0 /* tells search_dir to lookup string */
#define ENTER 1 /* tells search_dir to make dir entry */
#define DELETE 2 /* tells search_dir to delete entry */
#define CLEAN 0 /* disk and memory copies identical */
#define DIRTY 1 /* disk and memory copies differ */

#define BOOT_BLOCK (block_nr) D /* block number of boot block */
#define SUPERBLOCK (block_nr) 1 /* block number of super block */
#define ROOT_INODE (inode_nr) 1 /* inode number for root directory */

/* Derived sizes */
#define ZONE_NUM_SIZE sizeof(zone_nr) /* # bytes in zone nr */
#define NR_DZONE_NUM (NR_ZONE_NUMS-2) /* # zones in inode */
#define DIR_ENTRY_SIZE sizeof(dir_struct) /* # bytes/dir entry */
#define INODES_PER_BLOCK (BLOCK-size/INODE_SIZE) /* # inodes/disk blk */
#define INODE_SIZE (sizeof(d_inode)) /* bytes in disk inode */
#define NR_DIR_ENTRIES (BLOCK-size/DIR_ENTRY_SIZE) /* # dir entries/blk */
#define NR_INDETS (BLOCK-size/ZONE_NUM_SIZE) /* # zones/indir blk */
#define INTS_PER_BLOCK (BLOCK-size/sizeof(int)) /* # integers/blk */
#define SUPER_SIZE (sizeof(struct super_block)) /* super_block size */
#define PIPE_SIZE (NR_DZONE_NUM*BLOCkSIZE) /* pipe size in bytes */
#define MAX_ZONES (NR_DZONE_NUM+NR_INDRECTS*(long)NR_INDRECTS*NR_INDRECTS) /* max # of zones in a file */
/* Buffer (block) cache.  To acquire a block, a routine calls get_block(),
* telling which block it wants.  The block is then regarded as "in use"
* and has its 'b_count' field incremented.  All the blocks, whether in use
* or not, are chained together in an LRU list, with 'front' pointing
* to the least recently used block, and 'rear' to the most recently used
* block.  A reverse chain, using the field b_prev is also maintained.
* Usage for LRU is measured by the time the put_block() is done.  The second
* parameter to put_block() can violate the LRU order and put a block on the
* front of the list, if it will probably not be needed soon.  If a block
* is modified, the modifying routine must set b_dirt to OIRTY, so the block
* will eventually be rewritten to the disk.
*/

EXTERN struct buf {

/* Data portion of the buffer. */
union {
    char b_data[BLOCK_SIZE];    /* ordinary user data */
    struct b_dev;    /* directory block */
    struct dir_struct b_dir[NR_OIR_ENTRIES];    /* directory block */
    int b_dir[NR_OIR_ENTRIES];    /* directory block */
    int b_inode[NR_INDIRECTS];    /* directory block */
    int b_int[NR_INDIRECTS];    /* directory block */
    union {
            struct block b_blocknr,
            struct zone_nr b_ind[NR_INOIRECTS];    /* indirect block */
            struct d_inode b_inode[NR_INDIRECTS];    /* directory block */
            struct d_inode b_inode[NR_INDIRECTS];    /* directory block */
        } b;
    } b;

/* Header portion of the buffer. */
struct buf *b_next;    /* used to link bufs in a chain */
struct buf *b_prev;    /* used to link bufs the other way */
struct buf *b_hash;    /* used to link bufs on hash chains */
struct block *b_inode;    /* block number of its (minor) device */
struct zone_nr b_dev;    /* major | minor device where block resides */
struct char b_dirt;    /* CLEAN or OIRTY */
struct char b_count;    /* number of users of this buffer */
} buf[NR_BUFS];

/* A block is free if b_dev == NO_DEV. */
define NILBUF (struct buf *) 0    /* indicates absence of a buffer */

/* These defs make it possible to use to bp->b_data instead of bp->b_b_data */
define b_data b_b_data
#define b_b_data
#define b_ireg b_b_ireg
#define b_ireg b_b_ireg
#define b_inode b_b_inode
#define b_inode b_b_inode
#define b_int b_b_int
#define b_int b_b_int

EXTERN struct buf *buf_hash[NR_BUF_HASH];    /* the buffer hash table */

EXTERN struct buf *front;    /* points to least recently used free block */
EXTERN struct buf *rear;    /* points to most recently used free block */
EXTERN int bufs_in_use;    /* # bufs currently in use (not on free list) */
/* When a block is released, the type of usage is passed to put_block(). */
#define WRITE_IMMED 0100 /* block should be written to disk now */
#define ONE_SHOT 0200 /* set if block not likely to be needed soon */
#define INODE_BLOCK 0 + WRITE_IMMED /* inode block */
#define DIRECTORY_BLOCK 1 + WRITE_IMMED /* directory block */
#define INDIRECT_BLOCK 2 + WRITE_IMMED /* pointer block */
#define I_MAP_BLOCK 3 + WRITE_IMMED + ONE_SHOT /* inode bit map */
#define ZMAP_BLOCK 4 + WRITE_IMMED + ONE_SHOT /* free zone map */
#define I_MAP_BLOCK 5 + WRITE_IMMED + ONE_SHOT /* super block */
#define FULL_DATA_BLOCK 6 /* data, fully used */
#define PARTIAL_DATA_BLOCK 7 /* data, partly used */
Device table. This table is indexed by major device number. It provides the link between major device numbers and the routines that process them.

*EXTERNAL struct dmap {
  int (*dmap_open)();
  int (*dmap_rw)();
  int (*dmap_close)();
  int dmap_task;
} dmap[];
/* This is the filp table. It is an intermediary between file descriptors and
 * inodes. A slot is free if filp_count == 0.
 */
EXTERN struct filp {
    mask_bits filp_mode;    /* RW bits, telling how file is opened */
    int filp_count;          /* how many file descriptors share this slot */
    struct inode *filp_ino;  /* pointer to the inode */
    file_pos filp_pos;       /* file position */
} filp[NR_FILPS];
This is the per-process information. A slot is reserved for each potential process. Thus NR_PROCS must be the same as in the kernel. It is not possible or even necessary to tell when a slot is free here.

EXTERN struct fproc {
    mask_bits fp_umask; /* mask set by umask system call */
    struct inode *fp_workdir; /* pointer to working directory's inode */
    struct inode *fp_rootdir; /* pointer to current root dir (see chroot) */
    struct filp *fp_filp[NR_FDS]; /* the file descriptor table */
    uid fp_realuid; /* real user id */
    uid fp_effuid; /* effective user id */
    gid fp_realgid; /* real group id */
    gid fp_effgid; /* effective group id */
    dev_nr fs_tty; /* major/minor of controlling tty */
    int fp_fd; /* place to save fd if rd/wr can't finish */
    char *fp_buffer; /* place to save buffer if rd/wr can't finish */
    int fp_nbytes; /* place to save bytes if rd/wr can't finish */
    char fp_suspended; /* set to indicate process hanging */
    char fp_revived; /* set to indicate process being revived */
    char fp_task; /* which task is proc suspended on */
    } fproc[NR_PROCS];

/* Field values. */
#define NOT_SUSPENDED 0 /* process is not suspended on pipe or task */
#define SUSPENDED 1 /* process is suspended on pipe or task */
#define NOT_REVIVING 0 /* process is not being revived */
#define REVIVING 1 /* process is being revived from suspension */
/* File System global variables */
EXTERN struct fproc *fp; /* pointer to caller's fproc struct */
EXTERN int super_user; /* 1 if caller is super_user, else 0 */
EXTERN int dont_reply; /* normally 0; set to 1 to inhibit reply */
EXTERN int susp_count; /* number of procs suspended on pipe */
EXTERN int reviving; /* number of pipe processes to be revived */
EXTERN file_pos rdahedpos; /* position to read ahead */
EXTERN struct inode *rdahed_inode; /* pointer to inode to read ahead */
EXTERN message m; /* the input message itself */
EXTERN message ml; /* the output message used for reply */
EXTERN int who; /* caller's proc number */
EXTERN int fs_call; /* system call number */
EXTERN char user_path[MAX_PATH]; /* storage for user path name */
EXTERN int err_code; /* temporary storage for error number */
EXTERN char fstack[FS_STACK_BYTES]; /* the File System's stack. */
*/ Inode table. This table holds inodes that are currently in use. In some
* cases they have been opened by an open() or creat() system call, in other
* cases the file system itself needs the inode for one reason or another,
* such as to search a directory for a path name.
* The first part of the struct holds fields that are present on the
* disk; the second part holds fields not present on the disk.
* The disk inode part is also declared in "type.h" as 'd_inode'.
*/

EXTERN struct inode {
    short i_mode; /* file type, protection, etc. */
    uid i_uid; /* user id of the file's owner */
    file_pos i_size; /* current file size in bytes */
    real_time i_modtime; /* when was file data last changed */
    gid i_gid; /* group number */
    int i_nlinks; /* how many links to this file */
    zone_nr i_zone[NR_ZONE_NUMS]; /* zone numbers for direct, ind, and dbl ind */
    
    /* The following items are not present on the disk. */
    dev_nr i_dev; /* which device is the inode on */
    inode_nr i_num; /* inode number on its (minor) device */
    short int i_count; /* # times inode used; 0 means slot is free */
    char i_dirt; /* CLEAN or DIRTY */
    char i_pipe; /* set to I_PIPE if pipe */
    char i_mount; /* this bit is set if file mounted on */
    char i_seek; /* set on LSEEK, cleared on READ/WRITE */

    } inode[NR_INODES];

#define NIL_INODE (struct inode *) 0 /* indicates absence of inode slot */

/* Field values. Note that CLEAN and DIRTY are defined in "const.h" */
#define NO_PIPE 0 /* i_pipe is NO_PIPE if inode is not a pipe */
#define I_PIPE 1 /* i_pipe is I_PIPE if inode is a pipe */
#define NO_MOUNT 0 /* i_mount is NO_MOUNT if file not mounted on */
#define MOUNT 1 /* i_mount is MOUNT if file mounted on */
#define NO_SEEK 0 /* i_seek = NO_SEEK if last op was not SEEK */
#define SEEK 1 /* i_seek = SEEK if last op was SEEK */

#define N1_PIPE /* i_pipe is NO_PIPE if inode is not a pipe */
#define I1_PIPE /* i_pipe is I_PIPE if inode is a pipe */
#define N1_MOUNT /* i_mount is NO_MOUNT if file not mounted on */
#define M1_MOUNT /* i_mount is MOUNT if file mounted on */
#define N1_SEEK /* i_seek = NO_SEEK if last op was not SEEK */
#define S1_SEEK /* i_seek = SEEK if last op was SEEK */
7900 /* The following names are synonyms for the variables in the input message. */
7901#define acc_time m.m2_ll
7902#define addr m.ml_i3
7903#define buffer m.ml_p1
7904#define cd_flag m.ml_i2
7905#define child m.ml_i2
7906#define co_mode m.ml_i1
7907#define eff_grp_id m.ml_i3
7908#define eff_user_id m.ml_i3
7909#define erki m.ml_p1
7910#define fd m.ml_i1
7911#define fd2 m.ml_i2
7912#define ioflags m.ml_i3
7913#define group m.ml_i3
7914#define real_grp_id m.ml_i2
7915#define ls_fd m.m2_i1
7916#define mk_mode m.ml_i2
7917#define mode m.m3_i2
7918#define name m.m3_p1
7919#define namel m.ml_p1
7920#define name2 m.ml_p2
7921#define name_length m.m3_i1
7922#define namel_length m.ml_i1
7923#define name2_length m.ml_i2
7924#define nbytes m.ml_i2
7925#define offset m.m2_i1
7926#define owner m.ml_i2
7927#define parent m.ml_i1
7928#define pathname m.m3_cal
7929#define pro m.ml_i1
7930#define rd_only m.ml_i3
7931#define real_user_id m.ml_i2
7932#define request m.ml_i2
7933#define sig m.ml_i2
7934#define slotl m.ml_i1
7935#define tp m.m2_i1
7936#define update_time m.m2_i2
7937#define utime_file m.m2_p1
7938#define utime_length m.m2_i1
7939#define whence m.m2_i2
7940 /* The following names are synonyms for the variables in the output message. */
7941#define reply_type m1.m_type
7942#define reply_type m1.m_type
7943#define reply_type m.m2_i1
7944#define reply_type m.m2_i1
7945#define reply_type m.ml_p1
7946#define reply_type m.ml_i2
7947#define reply_type m.ml_i2
7948#define reply_type m.ml_i3
7949#define reply_type m.ml_i4
Super block table. The root file system and every mounted file system + has an entry here. The entry holds information about the sizes of the bit + maps and inodes. The s_ninodes field gives the number of inodes available + for files and directories, including the root directory._inode 0 is + on the disk, but not used. Thus s_ninodes = 4 means that 5 bits will be + used in the bit map, bit 0, which is always 1 and not used, and bits 1-4 + for files and directories. The disk layout is:

* Item # blocks
+ boot block 1
+ super block 1
+ inode map s_imap_blocks
+ zone map s_zmap_blocks
+ inodes (s_ninodes + 1 + INODES_PER_BLOCK - 1)/INODES_PER_BLOCK
+ unused whatever is needed to fill out the current zone
+ data zones (s_nzones - s_firstdatazone) << s_log_zone_size

* A super_block slot is free if s_dev == NO_DEV.

EXTERN struct super_block {
    inode_nr s_ninodes; /* # usable inodes on the minor device */
    zone_nr s_nzones; /* total device size, including bit maps etc */
    unshort s_imap_blocks; /* # of blocks used by inode bit map */
    unshort s_zmap_blocks; /* # of blocks used by zone bit map */
    zone_nr s_firstdatazone; /* number of first data zone */
    short int s_log_zone_size; /* log2 of blocks/zone */
    file_pos s_max_size; /* maximum file size on this device */
    int s_magic; /* magic number to recognize super-blocks */
    dev_nr s_dev; /* whose super block is this? */
    struct inode *s_isup; /* inode for root dir of mounted file sys */
    struct inode *s_imount; /* inode mounted on */
    real_time s_time; /* time of last update */
    char s_rd_only; /* set to 1 iff file sys mounted read only */
    char s_dirt; /* CLEAN or DIRTY */
    struct super_block[NR_SUPERS];
}

#define NIL_SUPER (struct super_block *) 0
8000 /* Type definitions local to the File System. */
8001
typedef struct {
8002    inode_nr d_inum; /* inode number */
8003    char d_name[NAME_SIZE]; /* character string */
8004 } dir_struct;
8005
8006 /* Declaration of the disk inode used in rw_inode(). */
8007
typedef struct {
8008    mask_bits i_mode; /* file type, protection, etc. */
8009    uid i_uid; /* user id of the file's owner */
8010    file_pos i_size; /* current file size in bytes */
8011    real_time i_modtime; /* when was file data last changed */
8012    gid i_gid; /* group number */
8013    links i_nlinks; /* how many links to this file */
8014    zone_nr i_zone[NR_ZONE_NUMS]; /* block nums for direct, ind, and dbl ind */
8015 } d_inode;
/ The file system maintains a buffer cache to reduce the number of disk accesses needed. Whenever a read or write to the disk is done, a check is first made to see if the block is in the cache. This file manages the cache.

The entry points into this file are:

- get_block: request to fetch a block for reading or writing from cache
- put_block: return a block previously requested with get_block
- alloc_zone: allocate a new zone (to increase the length of a file)
- free_zone: release a zone (when a file is removed)
- rw_block: read or write a block from the disk itself
- invalidate: remove all the cache blocks on some device

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "super.h"

/* The file system maintains a buffer cache to reduce the number of disk accesses needed. Whenever a read or write to the disk is done, a check is first made to see if the block is in the cache. This file manages the cache. */

PUBLIC struct buf *get_block(dev, block, only_search)

register dev_nr dev; /* on which device is the block? */
register block_nr block; /* which block is wanted? */
int only_search; /* if NO_READ, don't read, else act normal */
{
    /* Check to see if the requested block is in the block cache. If so, return a pointer to it. If not, evict some other block and fetch it (unless 'only_search' is 1). All blocks in the cache, whether in use or not, are linked together in a chain, with 'front' pointing to the least recently used block and 'rear' to the most recently used block. If 'only_search' is 1, the block being requested will be overwritten in its entirety, so it is only necessary to see if it is in the cache; if it is not, any free buffer will do. It is not necessary to actually read the block in from disk. In addition to the LRU chain, there is also a hash chain to link together blocks whose block numbers end with the same bit strings, for fast lookup. */

    register struct buf *bp, *prev_ptr;
    bp = buf_hash[block & (NR_BUF_HASH - 1)]; /* search the hash chain */
if (dev != NO_DEV) {
    while (bp != NIL_BUF) {
        if (bp->b_blocknr == block && bp->b_dev == dev) {
            /* Block needed has been found. */
            if (bp->b_count == 0) buf_in_use++;
            bp->b_count++; /* record that block is in use */
            return(bp);
        } else {
            /* This block is not the one sought. */
            bp = bp->b_hash; /* move to next block on hash chain */
        }
    }
}

/* Desired block is not on available chain. Take oldest block ('front').
 * However, a block that is already in use (b_count > 0) may not be taken.
 * /
if (bufs_in_use == NR_BUFFS) panic("All buffers in use", NR_BUFS);
bufs_in_use++;
/* one more buffer in use now */
bp = front;
while (bp->b_count > 0 && bp->b_next != NIL_BUF) bp = bp->b_next;
if (bp == NIL_BUF || bp->b_count > 0) panic("No free buffer", NO_NUM);

/* Remove the block that was just taken from its hash chain. */
prev_ptr = buf_hash[bp->b_blocknr & (NR_BUF_HASH - 1)];
if (prev_ptr == bp) {
    buf_hash[bp->b_blocknr & (NR_BUF_HASH - 1)] = bp->b_hash;
} else {
    /* The block just taken is not on the front of its hash chain. */
    while (prev_ptr->b_hash != NIL_BUF)
        if (prev_ptr->b_hash == bp) {
            prev_ptr->b_hash = bp->b_hash; /* found it */
            break;
        } else {
            prev_ptr = prev_ptr->b_hash; /* keep looking */
        }
}

/* If the block taken is dirty, make it clean by rewriting it to disk. */
if (bp->b_dirt == DIRTY && bp->b_dev != NO_DEV) rw_block(bp, WRITING);

/* Fill in block's parameters and add it to the hash chain where it goes. */
bp->b_dev = dev; /* fill in device number */
bp->b_blocknr = block; /* fill in block number */
bp->b_count++; /* record that block is being used */
bp->b_hash = buf_hash[bp->b_blocknr & (NR_BUF_HASH - 1)];
buf_hash[bp->b_blocknr & (NR_BUF_HASH - 1)] = bp; /* add to hash list */

/* Go get the requested block, unless only_search = NO_READ. */
if (dev != NO_DEV && only_search == NORMAL) rw_block(bp, READING);
8150     return(bp);           // return the newly acquired block */
8151 }

8154     /*-----------------------------------------------*/
8155     */
8156     put_block
8157     /*-----------------------------------------------*/
8158     PUBLIC put_block(bp, block_type)
8159     register struct buf *bp;       // pointer to the buffer to be released */
8160     int block_type;     // INODE_BLOCK, DIRECTORY_BLOCK, or whatever */
8161     {
8162     /* Return a block to the list of available blocks. Depending on 'block_type'
8163     * it may be put on the front or rear of the LRU chain. Blocks that are
8164     * expected to be needed again shortly (e.g., partially full data blocks)
8165     * go on the rear; blocks that are unlikely to be needed again shortly
8166     * (e.g., full data blocks) go on the front. Blocks whose loss can hurt
8167     * the integrity of the file system (e.g., inode blocks) are written to
8168     * disk immediately if they are dirty.
8169     */
8170     register struct buf *next_ptr, *prev_ptr;
8171     if (bp == NIL_BUF) return;      // it is easier to check here than in caller */
8172     /* If block is no longer in use, first remove it from LRU chain. */
8173     bp->b_count--;                  // there is one use fewer now */
8174     if (bp->b_count > 0) return;   // block is still in use */
8175     bufs_in_use--;                 // one fewer block buffers in use */
8176     next_ptr = bp->b_next;         // successor on LRU chain */
8177     prev_ptr = bp->b_prev;         // predecessor on LRU chain */
8178     if (prev_ptr != NIL_BUF)
8179     prev_ptr->b_next = next_ptr;
8180     else
8181     front = next_ptr;             // this block was at front of chain */
8182     if (next_ptr != NIL_BUF)
8183     next_ptr->b_prev = prev_ptr;
8184     else
8185     rear = prev_ptr;              // this block was at rear of chain */
8186     /* Put this block back on the LRU chain. If the ONE_SHOT bit is set in
8187     * 'block_type', the block is not likely to be needed again shortly, so put
8188     * it on the front of the LRU chain where it will be the first one to be
8189     * taken when a free buffer is needed later.
8190     */
8191     if (block_type & ONE_SHOT) {
8192     /* Block probably won't be needed quickly. Put it on front of chain.
8193     * It will be the next block to be evicted from the cache.
8194     */

bp->b_prev = NIL_BUF;
bp->b_next = front;
if (front == NIL_BUF)
    rear = bp; /* LRU chain was empty */
else
    front->b_prev = bp;
front = bp;
} else {
    /* Block probably will be needed quickly. Put it on rear of chain. * It will not be evicted from the cache for a long time. */
    bp->b_prev = rear;
    bp->b_next = NIL_BUF;
    if (rear == NIL_BUF)
        front = bp;
    else
        rear->b_next = bp;
    rear = bp;
}
/* Some blocks are so important (e.g., inodes, indirect blocks) that they should be written to the disk immediately to avoid messing up the file system in the event of a crash. */
if ((block_type & WRITE_IMMED) && bp->b_dirt == DIRTY && bp->b_dev != NO_DEV)
    rw_block(bp, WRITING);
/* Super blocks must not be cached, lest mount use cached block. */
if (block_type == SUPER_BLOCK) bp->b_dev = NO_DEV;

/*=================================================================* *
* alloc_zone
*=================================================================* */
PUBLIC zone_nr alloc_zone(dev, z)
dev_nr dev; /* device where zone wanted */
zone_nr z; /* try to allocate new zone near this one */
{
    /* Allocate a new zone on the indicated device and return its number. */
    bit_nr b, bit;
    struct super_block *sp;
    int major, minor;
    extern bit_nr alloc_bit();
    extern struct super_block *get_super();
    /* Note that the routine alloc_bit() returns 1 for the lowest possible * zone, which corresponds to sp->s_firstdatazone. To convert a value * between the bit number, 'b', used by alloc_bit() and the zone number, 'z',
stored in the inode, use the formula:
* Alloc_bit() never returns 0, since this is used for NO_BIT (failure).
*/
sp = get_super(dev);  /* find the super_block for this device */
b = alloc_bit(sp->s_zmap, (bit_nr) sp->s_nzones - sp->s_firstdatazone + 1,  
                 sp->s_zmap_blocks, bit);
if (b == NO_BIT) {
    err_code = ENOSPC;
    major = (int) (sp->s_dev >> MAJOR) & BYTE;
    minor = (int) (sp->s_dev >> MINOR) & BYTE;
    if (sp->s_dev == ROOT_DEV)
        printf("No space on root device (RAM disk)\n");
    else
        printf("No space on device %d/%d\n", major, minor);
    return(NO_ZONE);
}
return(sp->s_firstdatazone - 1 + (zone_nr) b);

/* Return a zone. */
register struct super_block *sp;
extern struct super_block *get_super();
if (numb == NO_ZONE) return;  /* checking here easier than in caller */
/* Locate the appropriate super_block and return bit. */
sp = get_super(dev);
free_bit(sp->s_zmap, (bit_nr) numb - (sp->s_firstdatazone - 1));

/* Read or write a disk block. This is the only routine in which actual disk 

I/O is invoked. If an error occurs, a message is printed here, but the error is not reported to the caller. If the error occurred while purging a block from the cache, it is not clear what the caller could do about it anyway.

```c
int r;
long pos;
dev_nr dev;

if (bp->b_dev != NO_DEV) {
    pos = (long) bp->b_blocknr * BLOCK_SIZE;
    r = dev_io(rw_flag, bp->b_dev, pos, BLOCK_SIZE, FS_PROC_NR, bp->b_data);
    if (r < 0) {
        dev = bp->b_dev;
        printf("Unrecoverable disk error on device %d/%d, block %d\n",
                (dev>>MAJOR)&BYTE, (dev>>MINOR)&BYTE, bp->b_blocknr);
    }
}
bp->b_dirt = CLEAN;
```

---

invalidate

```c
PUBLIC invalidate(device)

dev_nr device;        /* device whose blocks are to be purged */

/* Remove all the blocks belonging to some device from the cache. */

register struct buf *bp;

for (bp = &buf[0]; bp < &buf[NR_BUFS]; bp++)
    if (bp->b_dev == device) bp->b_dev = NO_DEV;
```
8350 /* This file manages the inode table. There are procedures to allocate and
8351 * deallocate inodes, acquire, erase, and release them, and read and write
8352 * them from the disk.
8353 *
8354 * The entry points into this file are
8355 * get_inode: search inode table for a given inode; if not there, read it
8356 * put_inode: indicate that an inode is no longer needed in memory
8357 * alloc_inode: allocate a new, unused inode
8358 * wipe_inode: erase some fields of a newly allocated inode
8359 * free_inode: mark an inode as available for a new file
8360 * ino_inode: read a disk block and extract an inode, or corresp. write
8361 * dup_inode: indicate that someone else is using an inode table entry
8362 */
8363
8364 #include "../h/const.h"
8365 #include "../h/type.h"
8366 #include "../h/error.h"
8367 //include "const.h"
8368 #include "type.h"
8369 #include "buf.h"
8370 #include "file.h"
8371 #include "fproc.h"
8372 #include "glo.h"
8373 #include "inode.h"
8374 #include "super.h"
8375 /#===========================================================================*/
8376 */
8377 get_inode
8378 */
8379 PUBLIC struct inode *get_inode(dev, numb)
8380 dev_nr dev; /* device on which inode resides */
8381 inode_nr numb; /* inode number */
8382 {
8383 /* Find a slot in the inode table, load the specified inode into it, and
8384 * return a pointer to the slot. If 'dev' == NO_DEV, just return a free slot.
8385 */
8386 register struct inode *rip, *xp;
8387
8388 /* Search the inode table both for (dev, numb) and a free slot. */
8389 xp = NIL_INODE;
8390 for (rip = &inode[0]; rip < &inode[NR_INODES]; rip++) {
8391 if (rip->i_count > 0) { /* only check used slots for (dev, numb) */
8392 if (rip->i_dev == dev && rip->i_num == numb) {
8393 /* This is the inode that we are looking for. */
8394rip->i_count++;
8395return(rip); /* (dev, numb) found */
8396}
8397else
8398xp = rip; /* remember this free slot for later */
8399}
/* Inode we want is not currently in use. Did we find a free slot? */
if (xp == NIL_INODE) {
    /* inode table completely full */
    err_code = ENFILE;
    return(NIL_INODE);
}

/* A free inode slot has been located. Load the inode into it. */
xp->i_dev = dev;
xp->i_num = numb;
xp->i_count = 1;
if (dev != NCLDEV) rw_inode(xp, READING);  /* get inode from disk */
return(xp);

/*===========================================================================*
# put_inode */
PUBLIC put_inode(rip)

register struct inode *rip;  /* pointer to inode to be released */

{ /* The caller is no longer using this inode. If no one else is using it either */
    /* write it back to the disk immediately. If it has no links, truncate it and */
    /* return it to the pool of available inodes. */
    if (rip == NIL_INODE) return; /* checking here is easier than in caller */
    if (--rip->i_count == 0) {  /* i_count == 0 means no one is using it now */
        if ((rip->i_nlinks & BYTE) == 0) {
            /* i_nlinks == 0 means free the inode. */
            truncate(rip);  /* return all the disk blocks */
            rip->i_mode = I_NOTALLOC;  /* clear I_TYPE field */
            rip->i_pipe = NCLPIPE;
            free_inode(rip->i_dev, rip->i_num);
        }
        if (rip->i_dirt == DIRTY) rw_inode(rip, WRITING);
    }
}

/*===========================================================================*
# alloc_inode */
PUBLIC struct inode *alloc_inode(dev, bits)

dev_nr dev;  /* device on which to allocate the inode */
mask_bits bits;  /* mode of the inode */
Allocate a free inode on 'dev', and return a pointer to it.

```c
register struct inode *rip;
register struct super_block *sp;
int major, minor;
inode_nr numb;
bit_nr b;
extern bit_nr alloc_bit();
extern struct inode *get_inode();
extern struct super_block *get_super();

/* Acquire an inode from the bit map. */
sp = get_super(dev); /* get pointer to super_block */
b = alloc_bit(sp->s imap, (bit_nr)sp->s ninodes+1, sp->s imap_blocks,(bit_nr)0);
if (b == NO_BIT) {
  err_code = ENFILE;
  major = (int)(sp->s_dev >> MAJOR) & BYTE;
  minor = (int)(sp->s_dev >> MINOR) & BYTE;
  if (sp->s_dev == ROOT_DEV)
    printf("Out of i-nodes on root device (RAM disk)\n");
  else
    printf("Out of i-nodes on device %d/%d\n", major, minor);
  free_inode(NIL_INODE);
} else {
  /* An inode slot is available. Put the inode just allocated into it. */
  rip->i_mode = bits;
  rip->i_nlinks = (links) 0;
  rip->i_uid = fp->fp_ef
  rip->i_gid = fp->fp_effgid;
  rip->i_dev = dev; /* was provisionally set to NO_DEV */
  /* The fields not cleared already are cleared in wipe_inode(). They have
  * been put there because truncate() needs to clear the same fields if
  * the file happens to be open while being truncated. It saves space
  * not to repeat the code twice.
  */
  wipe_inode(rip);
}
return(rip);
```
8500     /*==============================================-============================*/
8501     /* wipe_inode */
8502     /*==============================================-============================*/
8503 PUBLIC wipe_inode(rip)
8504     register struct inode *rip; /* The inode to be erased. */
8505 {
8506     /* Erase some fields in the inode. This function is called from alloc_inode()
8507     * when a new inode is to be allocated, and from truncate(), when an existing
8508     * inode is to be truncated.
8509     */
8510     register int i;
8511     extern real_time clock_time();
8512     rip->i_size = 0;
8513     rip->i_modtime = clock_time();
8514     rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
8515     for (i = 0; i < NR_ZONE_NUMS; i++)
8516         rip->i_zone[i] = NO_ZONE;
8517 }
8518
8522     /*==============================================-============================*/
8523     /* free_inode */
8524     /*==============================================-============================*/
8525 PUBLIC free_inode(dev, numb)
8526     dev_nr dev; /* on which device is the inode */
8527     inode_nr numb; /* number of inode to be freed */
8528 {
8529     /* Return an inode to the pool of unallocated inodes. */
8530     register struct super_block *sp;
8531     extern struct super_block *get_super();
8532     sp = get_super(dev);
8533     free_bit(sp->s_imap, (bit_nr) numb);
8534 }
8535
8540     /*==============================================-============================*/
8541     /* rw_inode */
8542     /*==============================================-============================*/
8543 PUBLIC rw_inode(rip, rw_flag)
8544     register struct inode *rip; /* pointer to inode to be read/written */
8545     int rw_flag; /* READING or WRITING */
8546 {
8547     /* An entry in the inode table is to be copied to or from the disk. */
8548     register struct buf *bp;
register d_inode *dip;
register struct super_block *sp;
block_nr b;
extern struct buf *get_block();
extern struct super_block *get_super();

/* Get the block where the inode resides. */
sp = get_super(rip->i_dev);
b = (block_nr) (rip->i_num - 1)/INODES_PER_BLOCK +
   sp->s_imap_blocks + sp->s_zmap_blocks + 2;
bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, NORMAL);
dip = bp->b_inode + (rip->i_num - 1) % INODES_PER_BLOCK;

/* Do the read or write. */
if (rw_flag == READING) {
   copy((char *)rip, (char *) dip, INODE_SIZE); /* copy from blk to inode */
} else {
   copy((char *)dip, (char *) rip, INODE_SIZE); /* copy from inode to blk */
   bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
}
put_block(bp, INODE_BLOCK);
rip->i_dirt = CLEAN;

/*==============================================*)
dup_inode
*/
PUBLIC dup_inode(ip)
struct inode *ip;          /* The inode to be duplicated. */

/* This routine is a simplified form of get_inode() for the case where
 * the inode pointer is already known. */
ip->i_count++;
/* This file manages the super block table and the related data structures,
   namely, the bit maps that keep track of which zones and which inodes are
   allocated and which are free. When a new inode or zone is needed, the
   appropriate bit map is searched for a free entry.

   The entry points into this file are
   load_bit_maps: get the bit maps for the root or a newly mounted device
   unload_bit_maps: write the bit maps back to disk after an UMount
   alloc_bit: somebody wants to allocate a zone or inode; find one
   free_bit: indicate that a zone or inode is available for allocation
   get_super: search the 'superblock' table for a device
   mounted: tells if file inode is on mounted (or ROOT) file system
   scale_factor: get the zone-to-block conversion factor for a device
   rw_super: read or write a superblock

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "super.h"
#define INT_BITS (sizeof(int)<<3)
#define BIT_MAP_SHIFT 13 /* (log2 of BLOCK_SIZE) + 3; 13 for lk blocks */

PUBLIC int load_bit_maps(dev)
dev_nr dev; /* which device? */
{
    register int i;
    register struct super_block *sp;
    block_nr zbase;
    extern struct buf *get_block();
    extern struct super_block *get_super();
    sp = get_super(dev); /* get the superblock pointer */
    if (bufs_in_use + sp->s_imap_blocks + sp->s_zmap_blocks >= NR_BUFS - 3)
        return(ERROR); /* insufficient buffers left for bit maps */
    if (sp->s_imap_blocks > I_MAP_SLOTS || sp->s_zmap_blocks > ZMAP_SLOTS)
        panic("too many map blocks", NO_NUM);
    /* Load the inode map from the disk. */
    for (i = 0; i < sp->s_imap_blocks; i++)
sp->s imap[i] = get_block(dev, SUPER_BLOCK + 1 + i, NORMAL);

/* Load the zone map from the disk. */
zbase = SUPER_BLOCK + 1 + sp->s imap_blocks;
for (i = 0; i < sp->s zmap_blocks; i++)
sp->s zmap[i] = get_block(dev, zbase + i, NORMAL);

/* inodes 0 and 1, and zone 0 are never allocated. Mark them as busy. */
sp->s imap[0]->b_int[0] = 3; /* inodes 0, 1 busy */
sp->s zmap[0]->b_int[0] = 1; /* zone 0 busy */

bufs_in_use -= sp->s imap_blocks + sp->s zmap_blocks;
return(OK);

//===
PUBLIC unload_bit_maps(dev)
dev_nr dev;       /* which device is being unmounted? */
[
/* Unload the bit maps so a device can be unmounted. */
  register int i;
  register struct super_block *sp;
  struct super_block *get_super();
  sp = get_super(dev);   /* get the superblock pointer */
  for (i = 0; i < sp->s imap_blocks; i++) put_block(sp->s imap[i], I_MAP_BLOCK);
  for (i = 0; i < sp->s zmap_blocks; i++) put_block(sp->s zmap[i], ZMAP_BLOCK);
  return(OK);
]

===
PUBLIC bit_nr alloc_bit(map_ptr, map_bits, bit_blocks, origin)
struct buf* map_ptr[];  /* pointer to array of bit block pointers */
bit_nr map_bits;  /* how many bits are there in the bit map? */
unshort bit_blocks;  /* how many blocks are there in the bit map? */
bit_nr origin;  /* number of bit to start searching at */
[
/* Allocate a bit from a bit map and return its bit number. */
  register unsigned k;
  register int *wptr, *wlim;
  int i, a, b, w, o, block_count;
]
```c
struct buf *bp;
/* Figure out where to start the bit search (depends on 'origin'). */
if (origin >= map_bits) origin = 0; /* for robustness */
b = origin >> BIT_MAP_SHIFT;
o = origin - (b << BIT_MAP_SHIFT);
w = o/INT_BITS;
block_count = (w == 0 ? bit_blocks : bit_blocks + 1);

/* The outer while loop iterates on the blocks of the map. The inner
 * while loop iterates on the words of a block. The for loop iterates
 * on the bits of a word.
 */
while (block_count--){
    /* If need be, loop on all the blocks in the bit map. */
    bp = map_ptr[b];
    wptr = &bp->b_int[w];
    wlim = &bp->b_int[INTS_PER_BLOCK];
    while (wptr != wlim) {
        /* Loop on all the words of one of the bit map blocks. */
        if (((k = (unsigned) *wptr) != (unsigned) ~0)) {
            /* This word contains a free bit. Allocate it. */
            for (i = 0; i < INT_BITS; i++)
                if (((k >> i) & 1) == 0) {
                    a = i + (wptr - &bp->b_int[0]) * INT_BITS
                        + (b << BIT_MAP_SHIFT);
                    /* If 'a' beyond map check other blks*/
                    if (a >= map_bits) {
                        wptr = wlim - 1;
                        break;
                    }
                    *wptr |= 1 << i;
                    bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
                    return((bit_nr) a);
                }
        }
        wptr++;
        /* examine next word in this bit map block */
    }
    /* we have wrapped around */
    if (++b == bit_blocks) b = 0;
    w = 0;
}
return(NO_BIT);
/* no bit could be allocated */

/*=== free_bit *******************************************************
 * free_bit(map_ptr, bit_returned)
 *================================================================***/
```
/* Return a zone or inode by turning off its bitmap bit. */
int b, r, w, bit;
struct buf *bp;

b = bit_returned >> BIT_MAP_SHIFT;  /* 'b' tells which block it is in */
r = bit_returned - (b << BIT_MAP_SHIFT);
bit = r % INT_BITS;  /* 'w' tells which word it is in */
bp = map_ptr[b];
if (((bp->b_int[w] >> bit) & 1) == 0)
    panic("trying to free unused block--check file sys", (int)bit_returned);
bp->b_int[w] &= ~(1 << bit);  /* turn the bit off */
bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;

PUBLIC struct super_block *get_super(dev)
{  /* device number whose super_block is sought */
    register struct super_block *sp;
    dev_nr dev;
    dev = rip->i_dev;
    if (dev == ROOT_DEV) return(TRUE);  /* inode is on root file system */
    return(sp);
}

PUBLIC int mounted(rip)
{  /* pointer to inode */
    register struct super_block *sp;
    register dev_nr dev;
    return(sp);
}
for (sp = &super_block[0]; sp < &super_block[NR_SUPERS]; sp++)
    if (sp->s_dev == dev) return(TRUE);
return(FALSE);

PUBLIC int scale_factor(ip)
    struct inode *ip; /* pointer to inode whose superblock needed */
{
    register struct super_block *sp;
    extern struct super_block *get_super();
    sp = get_super(ip->i_dev);
    return(sp->s_log_zone_size);
}

PUBLIC rw_super(sp, rw_flag)
    register struct super_block *sp; /* pointer to a superblock */
    int rw_flag; /* READING or WRITING */
{
    register struct buf *bp;
    dev_nr dev;
    extern struct buf *get_block();
    /* Check if this is a read or write, and do it. */
    if (rw_flag == READING) {
        dev = sp->s_dev; /* save device; it will be overwritten by copy*/
        bp = get_block(sp->s_dev, (block_nr) SUPER_BLOCK, NORMAL);
        copy((char *) sp, bp->b_data, SUPER_SIZE);
        sp->s_dev = dev; /* restore device number */
    } else {
        /* On a write, it is not necessary to go read superblock from disk. */
        bp = get_block(sp->s_dev, (block_nr) SUPER_BLOCK, NO_READ);
        copy(bp->b_data, (char *) sp, SUPER_SIZE);
        bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
    }
    sp->s_dirt = CLEAN;
    put_block(bp, SUPER_BLOCK);
This file contains the procedures that manipulate file descriptors.

The entry points into this file are:

- `get_fd`: look for free file descriptor and free filp slots
- `get_filp`: look up the filp entry for a given file descriptor
- `find_filp`: find a filp slot that points to a given inode

```c
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glob.h"
#include "inode.h"

PUBLIC int get_fd(uint32_t mode, int *k, struct filp **fpt)

register struct filp *f;
register int i;

*k = -1; /* we need a way to tell if file desc found */

for (i = 0; i < NR_FDS; i++) {
    if (fp->fp_filp[i] == NIL_FILP) {
        /* A file descriptor has been located. */
        *k = i;
        break;
    }
}

if (*k < 0) return(EMFILE); /* this is why we initialized k to -1 */

/* Now that a file descriptor has been found, look for a free filp slot. */
for (f = &filp[0]; f < &filp[NR_FILPS]; f++) {
```
if (f->filp_count == 0) {
    f->filp_mode = bits;
    f->filp_pos = 0L;
    *fpt = f;
    return(OK);
}

/* If control passes here, the filp table must be full. Report that back. */
return(ENFILE);

PUBLIC struct filp *get_filp(fild)
int fild;  /* file descriptor */
{
    err_code = EBADF;
    if (fild < 0 || fild >= NR_FDS ) return(NIL_FILP);
    return(fp->fp_filp[fild]);  /* may also be NIL_FILP */
}

PUBLIC struct filp *find_filp(rip, bits)
register struct inode *rip;  /* inode referred to by the filp to be found */
int bits;  /* mode of the filp to be found (RWX bits) */
{
    register struct filp *f;
    for (f = &filp[0]; f < &filp[NR_FILPS]; f++) {
        if (f->filp_count == 0 && f->filp_ino == rip && (f->filp_mode & bits))
            return(f);
    }
    /* If control passes here, the filp wasn’t there. Report that back. */
    return(NIL_FILP);
}
This file contains the main program of the File System. It consists of a loop that gets messages requesting work, carries out the work, and sends replies.

The entry points into this file are:
- main: main program of the File System
- reply: send a reply to a process after the requested work is done

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"
#include "super.h"

#define M64K 0xFFFF0000L  /* 16 bit mask for DMA check */
#define INFO 2  /* where in data_org is info from build */

PUBLIC main()
{
    int error;
    extern int (*call_vector[NCALLS])();
    fs_init();

    while (TRUE) {
        get_work();  /* sets who and fs_call */

        fp = &fproc[who];  /* pointer to proc table struct */
        super_user = (fp->fp_efUid == SU_UID ? TRUE : FALSE);  /* su? */
        dont_reply = FALSE;  /* in other words, do reply is default */

        /* Call the internal function that does the work. */
if (fs_call < 0 || fs_call >= NCALLS)
    error = E_BAD_CALL;
else
    error = (*call_vector[fs_call])();

/* Copy the results back to the user and send reply. */
if (dont_reply) continue;
reply(who, error);
if (rdahed_inode != NIL_INODE) read_ahead(); /* do block read ahead */
{
    /*===============================================*/
    *===============================================*
    *===============================================*/
    PRIVATE get_work()
    {
    /* Normally wait for new input. However, if 'reviving' is
     * nonzero, a suspended process must be awakened.
     */
    register struct fproc *rp;
    if (reviving != 0) {
        /* Revive a suspended process. */
        for (rp = &fproc[0]; rp < &fproc[NR_PROCS]; rp++)
            if (rp->fp_revived == REVIVING) {
                who = rp - fproc;
                fs_call = rp->fp_fd & BYTE;
                fd = (rp->fp_fd >> 8) & BYTE;
                buffer = rp->fp_buffer;
                nbytes = rp->fp_nbytes;
                rp->fp_suspended = NOT_SUSPENDED; /* no longer hanging*/
                rp->fp_revived = NOT_REVIVING;
                reviving--;
                return;
            }
    panic("get_work couldn't revive anyone", NO_NUM);
    }
    /* Normal case. No one to revive. */
    if (receive(ANY, &m) != OK) panic("fs receive error", NO_NUM);
    who = m.m_source;
    fs_call = m.m_type;
}
PUBLIC reply(whom, result)

int whom;            /* process to reply to */
int result;          /* result of the call (usually OK or error #) */
{
/* Send a reply to a user process. It may fail (if the process has just
* been killed by a signal), so don’t check the return code. If the send
* fails, just ignore it.
*/

reply_type = result;
send(whom, &ml);
}

PRIVATE fs_init()
{
/* Initialize global variables, tables, etc. */

register struct inode *rip;
int i;
extern struct inode *get_inode();

buf_pool();            /* initialize buffer pool */
load_ram();            /* Load RAM disk from root diskette. */
load_super();          /* Load super block for root device */

/* Initialize the 'fproc' fields for process 0 and process 2. */
for (i = 0; i < 3; i+= 2) {
    fp = &fproc[i];
    rip = get_inode(ROOT_DEV, ROOT_INODE);
    fp->fp_rootdir = rip;
    dup_inode(rip);
    fp->fp_workdir = rip;
    fp->fp_realuid = (uid) SYS_UID;
    fp->fp_effuid = (uid) SYS_UID;
    fp->fp_realgid = (gid) SYS_GID;
    fp->fp_effgid = (gid) SYS_GID;
    fp->fp_umask = "0;"
}

/* Certain relations must hold for the file system to work at all. */
if (ZONE_NUM_SIZE != 2) panic("ZONE_NUM_SIZE != 2", NO_NUM);
if (SUPER_SIZE > BLOCK_SIZE) panic("SUPER_SIZE > BLOCK_SIZE", NO_NUM);
if (BLOCK_SIZE % INODE_SIZE != 0) panic("BLOCK_SIZE % INODE_SIZE != 0", NO_NUM);
if (NR_FDS > 127) panic("NR_FDS > 127", NO_NUM);
if (NR_BUFS < 6) panic("NR_BUFS < 6", NO_NUM);
if (sizeof(d_inode) != 32) panic("inode size != 32", NO_NUM);

PRIVATE buf_pool()
{
/* Initialize the buffer pool. On the IBM PC, the hardware DMA chip is
not able to cross 64K boundaries, so any buffer that happens to lie
across such a boundary is not used. This is not very elegant, but all
the alternative solutions are as bad, if not worse. The fault lies with
* the PC hardware. */

register struct buf *bp;

for (bp = &buf[0]; bp < &buf[NR_BUFS]; bp++) {
    bp->b_blocknr = NO_BLOCK;
    bp->b_dev = NO_DEV;
    bp->b_next = bp + 1;
    bp->b_prev = bp - 1;
}

buf[0].b_prev = NIL_BUF;
buf[NR_BUFS - 1].b_next = NIL_BUF;

/* Delete any buffers that span a 64K boundary. */

for (bp = &buf[0]; bp < &buf[NR_BUFS]; bp++) {
    org = get_base() << CLICK_SHIFT; /* phys addr where FS is */
    low_off = (vir_bytes) bp->b_data;
    high_off = low_off + BLOCK_SIZE - 1;
    if (((org + low_off) & M64K) != ((org + high_off) & M64K)) {
        if (bp == &buf[0]) {
            front = &buf[1];
            buf[1].b_prev = NIL_BUF;
        } else if (bp == &buf[NR_BUFS - 1]) {
            rear = &buf[NR_BUFS - 2];
            buf[NR_BUFS - 2].b_next = NIL_BUF;
        } else {
            /* Delete a buffer in the middle. */
            bp->b_prev->b_next = bp + 1;
            bp->b_next->b_prev = bp - 1;
        }
    } else if (bp == &buf[NR_BUFS - 1]) {
        rear = &buf[NR_BUFS - 2];
        buf[NR_BUFS - 2].b_next = NIL_BUF;
    } else {
        /* Delete a buffer in the middle. */
        bp->b_prev->b_next = bp + 1;
        bp->b_next->b_prev = bp - 1;
    }
}
for (bp = &buf[0]; bp < &buf[NR_BUFS]; bp++) bp->b_hash = bp->b_next;
        buf_hash[NO_BLOCK & (NR_BUF_HASH - 1)] = front;
    }

    /*===============================================
     * load_ram
     *===============================================*/
    PRIVATE load_ram()
    {
        /* The root diskette contains a block-by-block image of the root file system
        + starting at 0. Go get it and copy it to the RAM disk.
        */

        register struct buf *bp, *bpl;
        int count;
        long k_loaded;
        struct super_block *sp;
        block_nr i;
        phys_clicks ram_clicks, init_org, init_text_clicks, init_data_clicks;
        extern phys_clicks data_org[INFO + 2];
        extern struct buf #get_block();

        /* Get size of INIT by reading block on diskette where 'build' put it. */
        init_org = data_org[INFO];
        init_text_clicks = data_org[INFO + 1];
        init_data_clicks = data_org[INFO + 2];

        /* Get size of RAM disk by reading root file system's super block */
        bp = get_block(BOOT_DEV, SUPER_BLOCK, NORMAL); /* get RAM super block */
        copy(super_block, bp->b_data, sizeof(struct super_block));
        sp = &super_block[0];
        if (sp->s_magic != SUPER_MAGIC)
            panic("Diskette in drive 0 is not root file system", NO_NUM);
        count = sp->s_nzones << sp->s_log_zone_size; /* # blocks on root dev */
        ram_clicks = count * (BLOCK_SIZE/CLICK_SIZE);
        put_block(bp, FULL_DATA_BLOCK);

        /* Tell MM the origin and size of INIT, and the amount of memory used for the
        + system plus RAM disk combined, so it can remove all of it from the map.
        */
        ml.m_type = BRK2;
        ml.ml_i1 = init_text_clicks;
        ml.ml_i2 = init_data_clicks;
        ml.ml_i3 = init_org + init_text_clicks + init_data_clicks + ram_clicks;
ml.pl = (char *) init.org;
if (sendrec(MM_PROC_NR, &ml) != OK) panic("FS Can't report to MM", NO_NUM);

/* Tell RAM driver where RAM disk is and how big it is. */
ml.m_type = DISK_IOCTL;
ml.DEVICE = RAM_DEV;
ml.POSITION = (long) init.org + (long) init_text.clicks + init.data.clicks;
ml.POSITION = ml.POSITION << CLICK_SHIFT;
ml.COUNT = count;
if (sendrec(MEM, &ml) != OK) panic("Can't report size to MEM", NO_NUM);

/* Copy the blocks one at a time from the root diskette to the RAM */
printf("Loading RAM disk from root diskette.  Loaded: OK ");
for (i = 0; i < count; i++) {
    bp = get_block(BOOT_DEV, (block_nr) i, NORMAL);
    bpl = get_block(ROOT_DEV, i, NO_READ);
    copy(bpl->b_data, bp->b_data, BLOCK_SIZE);
    bpl->b_dirt = DIRTY;
    put_block(bp, I_MAP_BLOCK);
    put_block(bpl, I_MAP_BLOCK);
    k_loaded = ((long) i * BLOCK_SIZE) / 1024L;  /* K loaded so far */
    if (k_loaded % 5 == 0) printf("\b\b\b\b\b\b\b\b%3DK %c", k_loaded, 0);
}
printf("RAM disk loaded.  Please remove root diskette. \n\n");

/*=============================================*/
/* load_super */
/*=============================================*/
PRIVATE load_super()
{
    register struct super_block *sp;
    register struct inode *rip;
    extern struct inode *get_inode();

    /* Initialize the super_block table. */
    for (sp = &super_block[0]; sp < &super_block[NR_SUPERS]; sp++)
        sp->s_dev = NO_DEV;

    /* Read in super_block for the root file system. */
    sp = &super_block[0];
    sp->s_dev = ROOT_DEV;
    rw_super(sp, READING);
    rip = get_inode(ROOT_DEV, ROOT_INODE);  /* inode for root dir */

    /* Check super_block for consistency (is it the right diskette?). */
    if ( (rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) != I_DIRECTORY || rip->i_nlinks < 3 ||
Minix Source Code  File: fs/main.c  619

9250   if (sp->s_magic != SUPER_MAGIC)
9251       panic("Root file system corrupted. Possibly wrong diskette.", NO_NUM);
9252
9253   sp->s_imount = rip;
9254   dup_inode(rip);
9255   sp->s_isup = rip;
9256   sp->s_rd_only = 0;
9257   if (load_bit_maps(ROOT_DEV) != OK)
9258       panic("init: can't load root bit maps", NO_NUM);
9259   }
/ * This file contains the table used to map system call numbers onto the 
 * routines that perform them.*/
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/stat.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "dev.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "super.h"

#define EXTERN
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "dev.h"
#endif

EXTERN if/define EXTERN
#include ".h/const.h"
#include ".h/type.h"
#include ".h/stat.h"
const ".h/const.h"

extern do_access(), do_chdir(), do_chmod(), do_chown(), do_chroot();
extern do_close(), do_creat(), do_dup(), do_exit(), do_fork(), do_fstat();
extern do_ioctl(), do_link(), do_lseek(), do_mknod(), do_mount(), do_open();
extern do_pipe(), do_read(), do_revive(), do_set(), do_stat(), do_stime();
extern do_sync(), do_time(), do_tims(), do_umask(), do_umount(), do_unlink();
extern do_unpause(), do_utime(), do_write(), no_call(), no_sys();
extern char fstack[];
char *stackpt = &fstack[FS_STACK_BYTES]; /* initial stack pointer */

int (*call_vector[NCALLS])() = {
    no_sys, /* 0 = unused */
    do_exit, /* 1 = exit */
    do_fork, /* 2 = fork */
    do_read, /* 3 = read */
    do_write, /* 4 = write */
    do_open, /* 5 = open */
    do_close, /* 6 = close */
    no_sys, /* 7 = wait */
    do_creat, /* 8 = creat */
    do_link, /* 9 = link */
    do_unlink, /* 10 = unlink */
    no_sys, /* 11 = exec */
    do_chdir, /* 12 = chdir */
    do_time, /* 13 = time */
    do_mknod, /* 14 = mknod */
};
do_chmod, /* 15 = chmod */
do_chown, /* 16 = chown */
no_sys, /* 17 = break */
do_stat, /* 18 = stat */
do_lseek, /* 19 = lseek */
no_sys, /* 20 = getpid */
do_mount, /* 21 = mount */
do_umount, /* 22 = umount */
do_setuid, /* 23 = setuid */
no_sys, /* 24 = getuid */
do_stime, /* 25 = stime */
no_sys, /* 26 = (ptrace)*/
o_sys, /* 27 = alarm */
do_fstat, /* 28 = fstat */
o_sys, /* 29 = pause */
do_utime, /* 30 = utime */
o_sys, /* 31 = (stty)*/
o_sys, /* 32 = (getty)*/
do_access, /* 33 = access */
o_sys, /* 34 = (nice)*/
o_sys, /* 35 = (ftime)*/
do_sync, /* 36 = sync */
o_sys, /* 37 = kill */
o_sys, /* 38 = unused */
o_sys, /* 39 = unused */
o_sys, /* 40 = unused */
do_dup, /* 41 = dup */
do_pipe, /* 42 = pipe */
do_tims, /* 43 = times */
o_sys, /* 44 = (prof)*/
o_sys, /* 45 = unused */
do_set, /* 46 = setgid */
o_sys, /* 47 = getgid */
o_sys, /* 48 = sig */
o_sys, /* 49 = unused */
o_sys, /* 50 = unused */
o_sys, /* 51 = (acct)*/
o_sys, /* 52 = (phys)*/
o_sys, /* 53 = (lock)*/
do_ioctl, /* 54 = ioctl */
o_sys, /* 55 = unused */
o_sys, /* 56 = (mpx) */
o_sys, /* 57 = unused */
o_sys, /* 58 = unused */
o_sys, /* 59 = exece */
do_umask, /* 60 = umask */
do_chroot, /* 61 = chroot */
o_sys, /* 62 = unused */
o_sys, /* 63 = unused */
no_sys,  /* 64 = KSIG: signals originating in the kernel */
no_sys,  /* 65 = UNPAUSE */
no_sys,  /* 66 = BRK2 (used to tell MM size of FS,INIT) */
do_revive,  /* 67 = REVIVE */
no_sys  /* 68 = TASK_REPLY */
};

extern rw_dev(), rw_dev2();

/* The order of the entries here determines the mapping between major device
 * numbers and tasks. The first entry (major device 0) is not used. The
 * next entry is major device 1, etc. Character and block devices can be
 * intermixed at random. If this ordering is changed, BOOT_DEV and ROOT_DEV
 * must be changed to correspond to the new values.
 */
struct dmap dmap[] = {
    /* Open Read/Write Close Task # Device File */
    ---- ------ ----- ---- ---- ---- ---- ---- ---- */
    0,    0,    0,    0,    MEM,    /* 0 = not used */
    no_call,    rw_dev,    no_call,    MEM,    /* 1 = /dev/mem */
    no_call,    rw_dev,    no_call,    FLOPPY,    /* 2 = /dev/fd0 */
    no_call,    rw_dev,    no_call,    WINCHESTER,    /* 3 = /dev/hd0 */
    no_call,    rw_dev,    no_call,    TTY,    /* 4 = /dev/tty0 */
    no_call,    rw_dev2,    no_call,    TTY,    /* 5 = /dev/tty */
    no_call,    rw_dev,    no_call,    PRINTER,    /* 6 = /dev/lp */
};

int max_major = sizeof(dmap)/sizeof(struct dmap);
This file contains the procedures for creating, opening, closing, and seeking on files.

The entry points into this file are:
- `do_creat`: perform the CREAT system call
- `do_mknod`: perform the MKNOD system call
- `do_open`: perform the OPEN system call
- `do_close`: perform the CLOSE system call
- `do_lseek`: perform the LSEEK system call

```c
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"

PRIVATE char mode_map[] = {R_BIT, W_BIT, R_BIT, W_BIT, 0};

PUBLIC int do_creat()
{
    register struct inode *rip;
    register int r;
    register mask_bits bits;
    struct filp *fil_ptr;
    int file_d;
    extern struct inode *new_node();

    /* See if name ok and file descriptor and filp slots are available. */
    if (fetch_name(name, name_length, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
    if ((r = get_fd(W_BIT, &file_d, &fil_ptr)) != OK) return(r);

    /* Create a new inode by calling new_node(). */
    bits = I_REGULAR | (mode & ALL_MODES & fp->fp_umask);
    rip = new_node(user_path, bits, NO_ZONE);
    r = err_code;
    if (r != OK && r != EEXIST) return(r);
}
/* At this point two possibilities exist: the given path did not exist
* and has been created, or it pre-existed. In the latter case, truncate
* if possible, otherwise return an error. */
if (r == EEXIST) {
    /* File exists already. */
    switch (rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) {
    case I_REGULAR: /* truncate regular file */
        if ( (r = forbidden(rip, W_BIT, 0)) == OK) truncate(rip);
        break;
    case I_DIRECTORY: /* can't truncate directory */
        r = EISDIR;
        break;
    case I_CHAR_SPECIAL: /* special files are special */
        case I_BLOCK_SPECIAL: 
            if ( (r = forbidden(rip, W_BIT, 0)) != OK) break;
            r = dev_open( (dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0], W_BIT);
            break;
    }
}
/* If error, return inode. */
if (r != OK) {
    put_inode(rip);
    return(r);
}
/* Claim the file descriptor and filp slot and fill them in. */
fp->fp_filp[file_d] = fil_ptr;
fil_ptr->filp_count = 1;
fil_ptr->filp_ino = rip;
return(file_d);

PUBLIC int do_mknod()
{
    /* Perform the mknod(name, mode, addr) system call. */
    register mask_bits bits;
    if (!super_user) return(EPERM); /* only super_user may make nodes */
    if (fetch_name(namel, namel_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code);
    bits = (mode & I_TYPE) | (mode & ALL_MODES & fp->fp_umask);
put_inode(new_node(user_path, bits, (zone_nr) addr));
return(err_code);
}

/*===========================================================================*
* new_node
*===========================================================================*/
PRIVATE struct inode *new_node(path, bits, zO)
char *path; /* pointer to path name */
mask_bits bits; /* mode of the new inode */
zone_nr zO; /* zone number for new inode */
{
/* This function is called by do_creat() and do_mknod(). In both cases it
* allocates a new inode, makes a directory entry for it on the path 'path',
* and initializes it. It returns a pointer to the inode if it can do this;
* 'err_code' is set to OK or EEXIST. If it can't, it returns NIL_INODE and
* 'err_code' contains the appropriate message. */

register struct inode *rlast_dir_ptr, *rip;
register int r;
char string[NAME_SIZE];
extern struct inode *alloc_inode(), *advance(), *last_dir();

/* See if the path can be opened down to the last directory. */
if ((rlast_dir_ptr = last_dir(path, string)) == NIL_INODE) return(NIL_INODE);

/* The final directory is accessible. Get final component of the path. */
rip = advance(rlast_dir_ptr, string);
if (rip == NIL_INODE && err_code == ENOENT) {
/* Last path component does not exist. Make new directory entry. */
if ((rip = alloc_inode(rlast_dir_ptr->i_dev, bits)) == NIL_INODE) {
/* Can't creat new inode: out of inodes. */
put_inode(rlast_dir_ptr);
return(NIL_INODE);
}

/* Force inode to the disk before making directory entry to make
* the system more robust in the face of a crash: an inode with
* no directory entry is much better than the opposite. */
rip->i_nlinks++;
rip->i_zone[0] = zO;
rw_inode(rip, WRITING); /* force inode to disk now */
}

/* New inode acquired. Try to make directory entry. */
if ((r = search_dir(rlast_dir_ptr, string, &rip->i_num, ENTER)) != OK) {
put_inode(rlast_dir_ptr);
rip->i_nlinks--; /* pity, have to free disk inode */
rip->i_dirt = DIRTY; /* dirty inodes are written out */
put_inode(rip); /* this call frees the inode */
err_code = r;
return(NIL_INODE);
}

} else {
  /* Either last component exists, or there is some problem. */
  if (rip != NIL_INODE)
    r = EEXIST;
  else
    r = err_code;
}

/* Return the directory inode and exit. */
put_inode(rlast_dir_ptr);
err_code = r;
return(rip);
}

/*==================================================================*/
PUBLIC int do_open()
{
/* Perform the open(name, mode) system call. */
register struct inode *rip;
struct filp *fil_ptr;
register int r;
register mask_bits bits;
int file_d;
extern struct inode *eat_path();

/* See if file descriptor and filp slots are available. The variable 
 * 'mode' is 0 for read, 1 for write, 2 for read+write. The variable 
 * 'bits' needs to be R_BIT, W_BIT, and R_BIT|W_BIT respectively. */
if (mode < 0 || mode > 2) return(EINVAL);
if (fetch_name(name, name_length, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
bits = (mask_bits) mode_map[mode];
if ( (r = get_fd(bits, &file_d, &fil_ptr)) != OK) return(r);

/* Scan path name. */
if ((rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);
if ((r = forbidden(rip, bits, 0)) != OK) {
  put_inode(rip);        /* can't open: protection violation */
  return(r);
}
/* Opening regular files, directories and special files are different. */

switch (rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) {
        case I_DIRECTORY:
            if (bits & W_BIT) {
                put_inode(rip);
                return(EISDIR);
            }
            break;
        case I_CHAR_SPECIAL:
            /* Assume that first open of char special file is controlling tty. */
            if (fp->fs_fsy == 0) fp->fs_fsy = (dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0];
            dev_open((dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0], (int) bits);
            break;
        case I_BLOCK_SPECIAL:
            dev_open((dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0], (int) bits);
            break;
}

/* Claim the file descriptor and filp slot and fill them in. */
fp->fp_filp[file_d] = fil_ptr;
fil_ptr->filp_count = 1;
fil_ptr->filp_ino = rip;
return(file_d);
}

/*=============================================*
 * do_close                                     *
 *=============================================*/
PUBLIC int do_close()
{
    register struct filp *rfilp;
    register struct inode *rip;
    int rw;
    int mode_word;
    extern struct filp *get_filp();

    /* First locate the inode that belongs to the file descriptor. */
    rip = rfilp->filp_ino; /* 'rip' points to the inode */

    /* Check to see if the file is special. */
    mode_word = rip->i_mode & I_TYPE;
    if (mode_word == I_CHAR_SPECIAL || mode_word == I_BLOCK_SPECIAL) {
        /* Invalidate cache entries unless special is mounted or Root. */
        do_sync(); /* purge cache */
    }
}
if (mounted(rip) == FALSE) invalidate((dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0]);
    
    dev_close((dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0]);
    
    if (mounted(rip) == FALSE)
    
      invalidate((dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0]);
    
    dev_close((dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0]);

    /* If the inode being closed is a pipe, release everyone hanging on it. */
    
    if (rfilp->filp_ino->i_pipe)
      
      rw = (rfilp->filp_mode & R_BIT ? WRITE : READ);
      
      release(rfilp->filp_ino, rw, NR_PROCS);
    
    */
    
    /* If a write has been done, the inode is already marked as DIRTY. */
    
    if (--rfilp->filp_count == 0) put_inode(rfilp->filp_ino);

    fp->fp_filp[fd] = NIL_FILP;
    return(OK);
  }

  /*======================================*/
  
  /* do_lseek */
  
  public int do_lseek()
  
  {
    register struct filp *rfilp;
    register file_pos pos;
    extern struct filp *get_filp();

    /* Check to see if the file descriptor is valid. */
    
    if ((rfilp = get_filp(ls_fd)) == NIL_FILP) return(err_code);

    /* No lseek on pipes. */
    
    if (rfilp->filp_ino->i_pipe == I_PIPE) return(ESPIPE);

    /* The value of 'whence' determines the algorithm to use. */
    
    switch(whence)
    {
      case 0:
        pos = offset; break;
      case 1:
        pos = rfilp->filp_pos + offset; break;
      case 2:
        pos = rfilp->filp_ino->i_size + offset; break;
      default:
        return(EINVAL);
    }

    if (pos < (file_pos) 0) return(EINVAL);

    rfilp->filp_ino->i_seek = ISEEK; /* inhibit read ahead */
    
    rfilp->filp_pos = pos;
    
    reply_ll = pos; /* insert the long into the output message */
    
    return(OK);
  }
/* This file contains the heart of the mechanism used to read (and write)
files. Read and write requests are split up into chunks that do not cross
block boundaries. Each chunk is then processed in turn. Reads on special
files are also detected and handled.

* The entry points into this file are
  * do_read: perform the READ system call by calling read_write
  * read_write: actually do the work of READ and WRITE
  * read_map: given an inode and file position, look up its zone number
  * rw_user: call the kernel to read and write user space
  * read_ahead: manage the block read ahead business

#define FD_MASK 077 /* max file descriptor is 63 */

PRIVATE message umess; /* message for asking SYSTASK for user copy */

PUBLIC int do_read()
{
  return(read_write(READING));
}

PUBLIC int read_write(rw_flag)
{
  /* Perform read(fd, buffer, nbytes) or write(fd, buffer, nbytes) call. */
  register struct inode *rip;

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
define const.
h
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"
#include "super.h"
register struct filp *f;
register file_pos bytes_left, f_size;
register unsigned off, cum_io;
file_pos position;
int r, chunk, virg, mode_word, usr, seg;
struct filp *f;
extern struct super_block *get_super();
extern struct filp *find_fildp(), *get_filp();
extern real_time clock_time();

/* MM loads segments by putting funny things in upper 10 bits of 'fd'. */
if (who == MM_PROC_NR & (fd & ~BYTE)) {
    usr = (fd >> 8) & BYTE;
    seg = (fd >> 6) & 03;
    fd &= FD_MASK; /* get rid of user and segment bits */
} else {
    usr = who; /* normal case */
    seg = 0;
}

/* If the file descriptor is valid, get the inode, size and mode. */
if (nbytes == 0) return(0); /* so char special files need not check for 0*/
if (who != MM_PROC_NR && nbytes < 0) return(EINVAL); /* only MM > 32K */
if ((f = get_filp(fd)) == NIL_FILP) return(err_code);
if (((f->filp_mode) & (rw_flag == READING ? R_BIT : W_BIT)) == 0)
    return(EBADF);
position = f->filp_pos;
if (position < (file_pos)) return(EINVAL);
rip = f->filp_ino;
f_size = rip->i_size;
r = OK;
cum_io = 0;
virg = TRUE;
mode_word = rip->i_mode & I_TYPE;

/* Check for character special files. */
if (mode_word == I_CHAR_SPECIAL) {
    if ((r = dev_io(rw_flag, (dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0], (long) position,
        nbytes, who, buffer)) >= 0) {
        cum_io = r;
        position += r;
        r = OK;
    }
} else {
    if (rw_flag == WRITING && mode_word != I_BLOCK_SPECIAL) {
        /* Check in advance to see if file will grow too big. */
        if (position > get_super(rip->i_dev)->s_max_size - nbytes )
            return(EBADFD);
    }
/* Clear the zone containing present EOF if hole about
* to be created. This is necessary because all unwritten
* blocks prior to the EOF must read as zeros.
*/
if (position > f_size) clear_zone(rip, f_size, 0);
}

/* Pipes are a little different. Check. */
if (rip->i_pipe && (r = pipe_check(rip, rw_flag, virg,
    nbytes, &position)) <= 0) return(0);

/* Split the transfer into chunks that don't span two blocks. */
while (nbytes != 0) {
    off = position % BLOCK_SIZE; /* offset within a block */
    chunk = MIN(nbytes, BLOCK_SIZE - off);
    if (chunk < 0) chunk = BLOCK_SIZE - off;
    if (rw_flag == READING) {
        if ((bytes_left = f_size - position) <= 0)
            break;
        else
            if (chunk > bytes_left) chunk = bytes_left;
    }

    /* Read or write 'chunk' bytes. */
    r = rw_chunk(rip, position, off, chunk, rw_flag, buffer, seg, usr);
    if (r != OK) break; /* EOF reached */

    /* Update counters and pointers. */
    buffer += chunk; /* user buffer address */
    nbytes -= chunk; /* bytes yet to be read */
    cum_io += chunk; /* bytes read so far */
    position += chunk; /* position within the file */
    virg = FALSE; /* tells pipe_check() that data has been copied */
}

/* On write, update file size and access time. */
if (rw_flag == WRITING) {
    if (mode_word == I_CHAR_SPECIAL && mode_word != I_BLOCK_SPECIAL &&
        position > f_size)
        rip->i_size = position;
    rip->i_modtime = clock_time();
    rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
} else {
    if (rip->i_pipe && position >= rip->i_size) {
        /* Reset pipe pointers. */
        rip->i_size = 0; /* no data left */
        position = 0; /* reset reader(s) */
        if ((wf = find_filp(rip, W_BIT)) != NIL_FILP) wf->filp_pos = 0;
    }
}
f->filp_pos = position;

/* Check to see if read-ahead is called for, and if so, set it up. */
if (rw_flag == READING && rip->i_seek == NO_SEEK && position % BLOCK_SIZE == 0 &&
    (mode_word == I_REGULAR || mode_word == I_DIRECTORY)) {
    rdahead_inode = rip;
    rdaheadpos = position;
}
if (mode_word == I_REGULAR) rip->i_seek = NO_SEEK;
return(r == OK ? cum_io : r);

/*===========================================================================*
* rw_chunk                     *                                      *
*===========================================================================*/
PRIVATE int rw_chunk(reg rip, position, off, chunk, rw_flag, buff, seg, usr)

{ /* Read or write (part of) a block. */
    register struct buf *bp;
    register int r;
    int dir, n, block_spec;
    block_nr b;
    dev_nr dev;
    extern struct buf *get_block(), *new_block();
    extern block_nr read_map();

    block_spec = (rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) == I_BLOCK_SPECIAL;
    if (block_spec) {
        b = position/BLOCK_SIZE;
        dev = (dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0];
    } else {
        b = read_map(rip, position);
        dev = rip->i_dev;
    }

    if (!block_spec && b == NO_BLOCK) {
        if (rw_flag == READING) {

        }

        /* Check to see if read-ahead is called for, and if so, set it up. */
        if (rw_flag == READING && rip->i_seek == NO_SEEK && position % BLOCK_SIZE == 0 &&
            (mode_word == I_REGULAR || mode_word == I_DIRECTORY)) {
            rdahead_inode = rip;
            rdaheadpos = position;
        }
        if (mode_word == I_REGULAR) rip->i_seek = NO_SEEK;
        return(r == OK ? cum_io : r);
    }

    register struct inode *rip; /* pointer to inode for file to be rd/wr */
    file_pos position; /* position within file to read or write */
    unsigned off; /* off within the current block */
    int chunk; /* number of bytes to read or write */
    int rw_flag; /* READING or WRITING */
    char *buff; /* virtual address of the user buffer */
    int seg; /* T or D segment in user space */
    int usr; /* which user process */
}
9950 /* Reading from a nonexistent block. Must read as all zeros. */
9951 bp = get_block(NO_DEV, NO_BLOCK, NORMAL); /* get a buffer */
9952 zero_block(bp);
9953 }
9954 /* Writing to a nonexistent block. Create and enter in inode. */
9955 if ((bp = new_block(rip, position)) == NIL_BUF) return(err_code);
9956 }
9957 }
9958 /* Normally an existing block to be partially overwritten is first read
9959 * in. However, a full block need not be read in. If it is already in
9960 * the cache, acquire it, otherwise just acquire a free buffer.
9961 */
9962 n = (rw_flag == WRITING && chunk == BLOCK_SIZE ? NO_READ : NORMAL);
9963 if(rw_flag == WRITING && off == 0 && position >= rip->i_size) n=NO_READ;
9964 bp = get_block(dev, b, n);
9965 }
9966 
9967 /* In all cases, bp now points to a valid buffer. */
9968 if (rw_flag == WRITING && chunk != BLOCK_SIZE && !block_spec &&
9969 position >= rip->i_size && off == 0)
9970 zero_block(bp);
9971 dir = (rw_flag == READING ? TO_USER : FROM_USER);
9972 r = rw_user(seg,usr,(vir_bytes)buff,(vir_bytes)chunk,bp->b_data+off,dir);
9973 if(rw_flag == WRITING) bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
9974 n = (off + chunk == BLOCK_SIZE ? FULL_DATA_BLOCK : PARTIAL_DATA_BLOCK);
9975 put_block(bp, n);
9976 return(r);
9977 }

9981 /**************************************************************************
9982 * read_map
9983 /**************************************************************************
9984 PUBLIC block_nr read_map(rip, position)
9985 register struct inode *rip; /* ptr to inode to map from */
9986 file_pos position; /* position in file whose blk wanted */
9987 {
9988 /* Given an inode and a position within the corresponding file, locate the
9989 * block (not zone) number in which that position is to be found and return it.
9990 */
9991 register struct buf *bp;
9992 register zone_nr z;
9993 register block_nr b;
9994 register long excess, zone, block_pos;
9995 register int scale, boff;
9996 extern struct buf *get_block();
9997 scale = scale_factor(rip); /* for block-zone conversion */
block_pos = position/BLOCK_SIZE; /* relative blk # in file */
zone = block_pos >> scale;    /* position's zone */
boff = block_pos - (zone << scale); /* relative blk # within zone */

/* Is 'position' to be found in the inode itself? */
if (zone < NR_DZONE_NUM) {
    if ( (z = rip->i_zone[zone]) == NO_ZONE) return(NO_BLOCK);
    b = ((block_nr) z << scale) + boff;
    return(b);
}

/* It is not in the inode, so it must be single or double indirect. */
excess = zone - NR_DZONE_NUM; /* first NR_DZONE_NUM don't count */

/* 'position' can be located via the single indirect block. */
z = rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM];

} else {
    /* 'position' can be located via the double indirect block. */
    if ( (z = rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM+1]) == NO_ZONE) return(NO_BLOCK);
    excess -= NR INDIRECTS; /* single indir doesn't count */
    b = (block_nr) z << scale;
    bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, NORMAL); /* get double indirect block */
    z = bp->b_ind[excess/NR INDIRECTS]; /* z is zone # for single ind */
    put_block(bp, INDIRECT_BLOCK); /* release double ind block */
    excess = excess % NR INDIRECTS; /* index into single ind blk */
    b = ((block_nr) z << scale) + boff;
    return(b);
}

/* 'z' is zone number for single indirect block; 'excess' is index into it. */
if (z == NO_ZONE) return(NO_BLOCK);

b = (block_nr) z << scale;
bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, NORMAL); /* get single indirect block */

z = bp->b_ind[excess];
put_block(bp, INDIRECT_BLOCK); /* release single indirect blk */

if (z == NO_ZONE) return(NO_BLOCK);

b = ((block_nr) z << scale) + boff;
return(b);

/*==========================================================================*/
* rw_user *
/*==========================================================================*/
PUBLIC int rw_user(s, u, vir, bytes, buff, direction)
{  
  int s;          /* 0 or 1 space (stack is also D) */
  int u;          /* process number to r/w (usually = 'who') */
  vir_bytes vir;  /* virtual address to move to/from */
  vir_bytes bytes; /* how many bytes to move */
  char *buff;     /* pointer to FS space */
  int direction;  /* TO_USER or FROM_USER */

  /*==========================================================================*/
  * rw_user *
  /*==========================================================================*/
  int result = 0;
  int error = 0;

  /*==========================================================================*/
  * rw_user *
  /*==========================================================================*/
  if (s) {
      /* User mode */
      result = read(s, buff, bytes); /* Read from file */
      error = result < 0; /* Error */

      /*==========================================================================*/
      * rw_user *
      /*==========================================================================*/
      if (error) {
          /* Error */
          return(result);
      }

      /*==========================================================================*/
      * rw_user *
      /*==========================================================================*/
      if (direction) {
          /* User mode */
          result = write(s, buff, bytes); /* Write to file */
          error = result < 0; /* Error */

      /*==========================================================================*/
      * rw_user *
      /*==========================================================================*/
      if (error) {
          /* Error */
          return(result);
      }
  }

  /*==========================================================================*/
  * rw_user *
  /*==========================================================================*/
  return(result);
}
/* Transfer a block of data. Two options exist, depending on 'direction':
10051  * TO_USER: Move from FS space to user virtual space
10052  * FROM_USER: Move from user virtual space to FS space
10053 */
10054
10055  if (direction == TO_USER ) {
10056      /* Write from FS space to user space. */
10057      umess.SRC_SPACE = 0;
10058      umess.SRC_PROC_NR = FS_PROC_NR;
10059      umess.SRC_BUFFER = (long) buff;
10060      umess.DST_SPACE = s;
10061      umess.DST_PROC_NR = u;
10062      umess.DST_BUFFER = (long) vir;
10063  } else {
10064      /* Read from user space to FS space. */
10065      umess.SRC_SPACE = s;
10066      umess.SRC_PROC_NR = u;
10067      umess.SRC_BUFFER = (long) vir;
10068      umess.DST_SPACE = 0;
10069      umess.DST_PROC_NR = FS_PROC_NR;
10070      umess.DST_BUFFER = (long) buff;
10071  }
10072
10073  umess.COPY_BYTES = (long) bytes;
10074  sys_copy(&umess);
10075  return(umess.m_type);
10076 }
10077
10078  /*===========================================================================
10079          PUBLIC read_ahead()
10080  */
10081  read_ahead
10082  /*===========================================================================*/
10083
10084  /* Read a block into the cache before it is needed. */
10085
10086  register struct inode *rip;
10087  struct buf *bp;
10088  block_nr b;
10089  extern struct buf *get_block();
10090
10091  rip = rdahed_inode;       /* pointer to inode to read ahead from */
10092  rdahed_inode = NIL_INODE; /* turn off read ahead */
10093  if ( (b = read_map(rip, rdahedpos)) == NO_BLOCK) return;       /* at EOF */
10094  bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, NORMAL);
10095  put_block(bp, PARTIAL_DATA_BLOCK);
This file is the counterpart of "read.c". It contains the code for writing insofar as this is not contained in read_write().

The entry points into this file are:
- do_write: call read_write to perform the WRITE system call
- write_map: add a new zone to an inode
- clear_zone: erase a zone in the middle of a file
- new_block: acquire a new block

```
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "super.h"

/*=============================*/
PUBLIC int do_write()
{
  return(read_write(WRITING));
}

/*=============================*/
PRIVATE int write_map(rip, position, new_zone)
{  
  file_pos position;  
  zone_nr new_zone;  
}

/* Write a new zone into an inode. */
int scale;
zone_nr z, *zp;
register block_nr b;
long excess, zone;
int index;
struct buf *bp;
int new_ind, new_dbl;

extern zone_nr alloc_zone();
```
10150 extern struct buf *get_block();
10151 extern real_time clock_time();
10152
10153 rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;          /* inode will be changed */
10154 bp = NIL_BUF;
10155 scale = scale_factor(rip);   /* for zone-block conversion */
10156 zone = (position/BLOCK_SIZE) >> scale;  /* relative zone # to insert */
10157
10158 /* Is 'position' to be found in the inode itself? */
10159 if (zone < NR_DZONE_NUM) {
10160    rip->i_zone[zone] = new_zone;
10161    rip->i_modtime = clock_time();
10162    return(OK);
10163 }
10164/* It is not in the inode, so it must be single or double indirect. */
10165 excess = zone - NR_DZONE_NUM; /* first NR_DZONE_NUM don't count */
10166 new_ind = FALSE;
10167 new_dbl = FALSE;
10168
10169 if (excess < NR_INDIRECTS) {
10170    /* 'position' can be located via the single indirect block. */
10171    zp = &rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM];
10172    }
10173 else {
10174    /* 'position' can be located via the double indirect block. */
10175    if ((z = rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM+1]) == NO_ZONE) {
10176       /* Create the double indirect block. */
10177       if ((z = alloc_zone(rip->i_dev, rip->i_zone[0])) == NO_ZONE)
10178          return(err_code);
10179       rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM+1] = z;
10180       new_dbl = TRUE; /* set flag for later */
10181   }
10182   /* Either way, 'z' is zone number for double indirect block. */
10183   excess = excess / NR_INDIRECTS;  /* single indirect doesn't count */
10184   index = excess / NR_INDIRECTS;
10185   excess = excess % NR_INDIRECTS;
10186   if (index >= NR_INDIRECTS) return(EBIG);
10187   b = (block_nr) z << scale;
10188   bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, (new_dbl ? NO_READ : NORMAL));
10189   if (new_dbl) zero_block(bp);
10190   zp = &bp->b_ind[index];
10191   }
10192
10193 /* 'zp' now points to place where indirect zone # goes; 'excess' is index. */
10194 if (*zp == NO_ZONE) {
10195   /* Create indirect block. */
10196   *zp = alloc_zone(rip->i_dev, rip->i_zone[0]);
10197   new_ind = TRUE;
10198   if (bp != NIL_BUF) bp->b_dirt = DIRTY; /* if double ind, it is dirty */
if (*zp == NO_ZONE) {
    put_block(bp, INDIRECT_BLOCK); /* release dbl indirect blk */
    return(err_code);        /* couldn't create single ind */
}

put_block(bp, INDIRECT_BLOCK);    /* release double indirect blk */

/* 'zp' now points to indirect block's zone number. */
b = (block_nr) *zp << scale;
bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, (new_ind ? NO_READ : NORMAL));
    
if (new_ind) zero_block(bp);
bp->b_ind[excess] = new_zone;
rip->i_modtime = clock_time();
bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
put_block(bp, INDIRECT_BLOCK);

return(OK);
}

PUBLIC clear_zone(rip, pos, flag)
register struct inode *rip;    /* inode to clear */
file_pos pos;                /* points to block to clear */
int flag;                   /* 0 if called by read_write, 1 by new_block */
{
    /* Zero a zone, possibly starting in the middle. The parameter 'pos' gives
     * a byte in the first block to be zeroed. Clearzone() is called from
     * read_write and new_block(). */
    
    register struct buf *bp;
    register block_nr b, blo, bhi;
    register file_pos next;
    register int scale;
    register zone_type zone_size;
    extern struct buf *get_block();
    extern block_nr read_map();

    /* If the block size and zone size are the same, clear_zone() not needed. */
    if ( (scale = scale_factor(rip)) == 0) return;

    zone_size = (zone_type) BLOCK_SIZE << scale;
    if (flag == 1) pos = (pos/zone_size) * zone_size;
    next  = pos + BLOCK_SIZE - 1;

    /* If 'pos' is in the last block of a zone, do not clear the zone. */
    if (next/zone_size != pos/zone_size) return;
if ( (bio = read_map(rip, next)) == NO_BLOCK) return;
bhi = ( ((bio)\(\times\)scale)+1) \(\times\) scale - 1;

/* Clear all the blocks between 'bio' and 'bhi'. */
for (b = bio; b <= bhi; b++) {
    bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, NO_READ);
    zero_block(bp);
    put_block(bp, FULL_DATA_BLOCK);
}

PUBLIC struct buf *new_block(rip, position)
register struct inode *rip; /* pointer to inode */
file_pos position; /* file pointer */

register struct buf *bp;
block_nr b, base_block;
zone_nr z;
zone_type zone_size;
int scale, r;
struct super_block *sp;
extern struct buf *get_block();
extern struct super_block *get_super();
extern block_nr read_map();
extern zone_nr alloc_zone();

/* Is another block available in the current zone? */
if ( (b = read_map(rip, position)) == NO_BLOCK) {
    /* Choose first zone if need be. */
    if (rip->i_size == 0) {
        sp = get_super(rip->i_dev);
        z = sp->s_firstdatazone;
    } else {
        z = rip->i_zone[0];
    }
    if ( (z = alloc_zone(rip->i_dev, z)) == NO_ZONE) return(NIL_BUF);
    if ( (r = write_map(rip, position, z)) != OK) {
        free_zone(rip->i_dev, z);
        err_code = r;
        return(NIL_BUF);
    }
10300     /* If we are not writing at EOF, clear the zone, just to be safe. */
10301     if (position != rip->i_size) clear_zone(rip, position, 1);
10302     scale = scale_factor(rip);
10303     base_block = (block_nr) z << scale;
10304     zone_size = (zone_type) BLOCK_SIZE << scale;
10305     b = base_block + (block_nr)((position % zone_size)/BLOCK_SIZE);
10306     }
10307     }
10308
10309     bp = get_block(rip->i_dev, b, NO_READ);
10310     zero_block(bp);
10311     return(bp);
10312     }

10315     /***************************************************************************/
10316     /* zero_block */
10317     /***************************************************************************/
10318     PUBLIC zero_block(bp)
10319     register struct buf *bp; /* pointer to buffer to zero */
10320     {
10321     /* Zero a block. */
10322     register int n;
10323     register int *zip;
10324     n = INTS_PER_BLOCK; /* number of integers in a block */
10325     zip = bp->b_int; /* where to start clearing */
10326     do { *zip++ = 0;} while (--n);
10327     bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
10328     }
This file deals with the suspension and revival of processes. A process can be suspended because it wants to read or write from a pipe and can't, or because it wants to read or write from a special file and can't. When a process can't continue it is suspended, and revived later when it is able to continue.

The entry points into this file are:
- do_pipe: perform the PIPE system call
- pipe_check: check to see that a read or write on a pipe is feasible now
- suspend: suspend a process that cannot do a requested read or write
- release: check to see if a suspended process can be released and do it
- revive: mark a suspended process as able to run again
- do_unpause: a signal has been sent to a process; see if it suspended

/*

Perform the pipe(fil_des) system call.

Acquire two file descriptors.

Register struct fproc *rfp;
Register struct inode *rip;
int r;
dev_nr device;
struct filp *fil_ptr0, *fil_ptr1;
int fil_des[2]; /* reply goes here */
extern struct inode *alloc_inode();
*/

rfp = fp;
if ( (r = get_fd(R_BIT, &fil_des[0], &fil_ptr0)) != OK) return(r);
rfp->fp_filp[fil_des[0]] = fil_ptr0;
10400  fil_ptr0->filp_count = 1;
10401  if ((r = get_fd(W_BIT, &fil_des[1], &fil_ptr1)) != OK) {
10402     rfp->fp_filp[fil_des[0]] = NIL_FILP;
10403     fil_ptr0->filp_count = 0;
10404     return(r);
10405  }
10406  rfp->fp_filp[fil_des[1]] = fil_ptr1;
10407  fil_ptr1->filp_count = 1;
10408  /* Make the inode in the current working directory. */
10409  if ( device = rfp->fp_workdir->i_dev; /* inode dev is same as working dir */
10410     (rip = alloc_inode(device, I_REGULAR)) == NIL_INODE) {
10411        rfp->fp_filp[fil_des[0]] = NIL_FILP;
10412        fil_ptr0->filp_count = 0;
10413        rfp->fp_filp[fil_des[1]] = NIL_FILP;
10414        fil_ptr1->filp_count = 0;
10415        return(err_code);
10416    }
10417  }
10418  rip->i_pipe = IPIPE;
10419  fil_ptr0->filp_ino = rip;
10420  dup_inode(rip); /* for double usage */
10421  fil_ptr1->filp_ino = rip;
10422  rw_inode(rip, WRITING); /* mark inode as allocated */
10423  reply_il = fil_des[0];
10424  reply_i2 = fil_des[1];
10425  return(OK);
10426  }
10427
10428  /*============================================*/
10429  /* pipe_check */
10430  /*============================================*/
10431  PUBLIC int pipe_check(rip, rw_flag, virgin, bytes, position)
10432  {  
10433      register struct inode *rip; /* the inode of the pipe */
10434      int rw_flag; /* READING or WRITING */
10435      int virgin; /* 1 if no data transferred yet, else 0 */
10436      register int bytes;  /* bytes to be read or written (all chunks) */
10437      register file_pos *position; /* pointer to current file position */
10438      extern struct filp *find_filp();
10439      if (rw_flag == READING) {
10440         /* Pipes are a little different. If a process reads from an empty pipe for
10441            * a writer still exists, suspend the reader. If the pipe is empty
10442            * and there is no writer, return 0 bytes. If a process is writing to a
10443            * pipe and no one is reading from it, give a broken pipe error.
10444            */
10445        if (find_filp(rw_flag) == NULL) {
10446            if (read(rip, bytes, position)) {
10447                if (bytes == 0) {
10448                    return(EPIPE);
10449                }
10450            }
10451            else {
10452                if (rw_flag == READING) {
10453                    if (read(rip, bytes, position)) {
10454                        if (bytes == 0) {
10455                            return(EPIPE);
10456                        }
10457                    }
10458                
10459                }
10460            }
10461        }
10462    }
if (*position >= rip->i_size) {
    /* Process is reading from an empty pipe. */
    if (find_filp(rip, W_BIT) != NIL_FILP) {
        /* Writer exists; suspend rdr if no data already read. */
        if (virgin) suspend(XPIPE); /* block reader */
        /* If need be, activate sleeping writer. */
        if (susp_count > 0) release(rip, WRITE, 1);
    }
    return(O);
}
else {
    /* Process is writing to a pipe. */
    if (find_filp(rip, R_BIT) == NIL_FILP) {
        /* Tell MM to generate a SIGPIPE signal. */
        mess.m_type = KSIG;
        mess.PROCI = fp - fproc;
        mess.SIG_MAP = 1 << (SIGPIPE - 1);
        send(MM_PROC_NR, &mess);
        return(EPIPE);
    }

    if (*position + bytes > PIPE_SIZE) {
        suspend(XPIPE); /* stop writer -- pipe full */
        return(0);
    }

    /* Writing to an empty pipe. Search for suspended reader. */
    if (*position == 0) release(rip, READ, 1);
}
return(l);

PUBLIC suspend(task)
int task; /* who is proc waiting for? (PIPE = pipe) */
{
    /* Take measures to suspend the processing of the present system call.
    * Store the parameters to be used upon resuming in the process table.
    * (Actually they are not used when a process is waiting for an I/O device,
    * but they are needed for pipes, and it is not worth making the distinction.)
    */
    if (task == XPIPE) susp_count++;
    fp->fp_suspended = SUSPENDED;
    fp->fp_fd = fd << 8 | fs_call;
fp->fp_buffer = buffer;
fp->fp_nbytes = nbytes;
fp->fp_task = -task;
dont_reply = TRUE; /* do not send caller a reply message now */
}

PUBLIC release(ip, call_nr, count)
register struct inode *ip; /* inode of pipe */
int call_nr; /* READ or WRITE */
int count; /* max number of processes to release */
{}
/* Check to see if any process is hanging on the pipe whose inode is in 'ip'.
* If one is, and it was trying to perform the call indicated by 'call_nr'
* (READ or WRITE), release it.
*/
register struct fproc *rp;
{}
for (rp = &fproc[0]; rp < &fproc[NR_PROCS]; rp++) {
    if (rp->fp_suspended == SUSPENDED && (rp->fp_fd & BYTE) == call_nr &&
        rp->fp_filp[rp->fp_fd >> 8]->filp_ino == ip) {
        revive(rp - fproc, 0);
        susp_count--; /* keep track of who is suspended */
        if (--count == 0) return;
    }
}

PUBLIC revive(proc_nr, bytes)
int proc_nr; /* process to revive */
int bytes; /* if hanging on task, how many bytes read */
{}
/* Revive a previously blocked process. When a process hangs on tty, this
* is the way it is eventually released.
*/
register struct fproc *rfp;
{}
if (proc_nr < 0 || proc_nr >= NR_PROCS) panic("revive err", proc_nr);
rfp = &fproc[proc_nr];
if (rfp->fp_suspended == NOT_SUSPENDED) return;
/* The 'reviving' flag only applies to pipes. Processes waiting for TTY get
a message right away. The revival process is different for TTY and pipes.
For TTY revival, the work is already done, for pipes it is not: the proc
must be restarted so it can try again. */

if (rfp->fp_task == XPIPE) {
  /* Revive a process suspended on a pipe. */
  rfp->fp_revived = REVIVING;
  reviving++;
} else {
  /* Revive a process suspended on TTY or other device. */
  rfp->fp_suspended = NOT_SUSPENDED;
  rfp->fp_nbytes = bytes; /* pretend it only wants what there is */
  reply(proc_nr, bytes); /* unblock the process */
}

PUBLIC int do_unpause()
{
  register struct fproc *rfp;
  int proc_nr, task;
  struct filp *f;
  dev_nr dev;
  extern struct filp *get_filp();
  int

  if (who > MM_PROC_NR) return(EPERM);
  proc_nr = proc;
  if (proc_nr < 0 || proc_nr >= NR_PROCS) panic("unpause err 1", proc_nr);
  rfp = &fproc[proc_nr];
  if (rfp->fp_suspended == NOT_SUSPENDED) return(OK);
  task = -rfp->fp_task;
  if (task != XPIPE) {
    f = get_filp(rfp->fp_fd);
    dev = f->filp_ino->i_zone[0]; /* device on which proc is hanging */
    mess.TTY_LINE = (dev >> MINOR) & BYTE;
    mess.PROC_NR = proc_nr;
    mess.m_type = CANCEL;
    if (sendrec(task, &mess) != OK) panic("unpause err 2", NO_NUM);
    while (mess.REP_PROC_NR != proc_nr) {
      revive(mess.REP_PROC_NR, mess.REP_STATUS);
    }
if (receive(task, &m) != OK) panic("unpause err 3", NO_NUM);
revive(proc_nr, EINTR); /* signal interrupted call */
return(OK);
This file contains the procedures that look up path names in the directory system and determine the inode number that goes with a given path name.

The entry points into this file are:
- `eat_path`: the 'main' routine of the path-to-inode conversion mechanism
- `last_dir`: find the final directory on a given path
- `advance`: parse one component of a path name
- `search_dir`: search a directory for a string and return its inode number

```
#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h" 
#include "super.h"

PUBLIC struct inode *eat_path(path)
{
    char *path; /* the path name to be parsed */

    register struct inode *ldip, *rip;
    char string[NAME_SIZE]; /* hold 1 path component name here */
    extern struct inode *last_dir(), *advance();

    /* First open the path down to the final directory. */
    if ((ldip = last_dir(path, string)) == NIL_INODE)
        return(NIL_INODE); /* we couldn't open final directory */

    /* The path consisting only of "/" is a special case, check for it. */
    if (string[0] == '\0') return(ldip);

    /* Get final component of the path. */
    rip = advance(ldip, string);
    put_inode(ldip);

    return(rip);
}
```
PUBLIC struct inode *last_dir(path, string)
char *path; /* the path name to be parsed */
char string[NAME_SIZE]; /* the final component is returned here */
{
   register struct inode *rip;
    register char *new_name;
    register struct inode *new_ip;
    extern struct inode *advance();
    extern char *get_name();

    /* Is the path absolute or relative? Initialize 'rip' accordingly. */
    rip = (*path == '/' ? fp->fp_rootdir : fp->fp_workdir);
    dup_inode(rip); /* inode will be returned with put_inode */

    /* Scan the path component by component. */
    while (TRUE) {
        /* Extract one component. */
        if ((new_name = get_name(path, string)) == (char*) 0) {
            put_inode(rip); /* bad path in user space */
            return(NIL_INODE);
        }
        if (*new_name == '\0') return(rip); /* normal exit */
        /* There is more path. Keep parsing. */
        new_ip = advance(rip, string);
        put_inode(rip); /* rip either obsolete or irrelevant */
        if (new_ip == NIL_INODE) return(NIL_INODE);
    }
    /* The call to advance() succeeded. Fetch next component. */
    path = new_name;
    rip = new_ip;
}

PRIVATE char *get_name(old_name, string)
char *old_name;  /* path name to parse */
char string[NAME_SIZE];  /* component extracted from 'old_name' */
{
/* Given a pointer to a path name in fs space, 'old_name', copy the next */
* component to 'string' and pad with zeros. A pointer to that part of */
* the name as yet unparsed is returned. Roughly speaking, */
* 'get_name' = 'old_name' - 'string'. */
* This routine follows the standard convention that /usr/ast, /usr//ast, */
* //usr///ast and /usr/ast/ are all equivalent. */

register int c;
register char *np, *rnp;

np = string;  /* 'np' points to current position */
rnp = old_name;  /* 'rnp' points to unparsed string */
while ( (c = *rnp) == '/') rnp++;  /* skip leading slashes */

/* Copy the unparsed path, 'old_name', to the array, 'string'. */
while (rnp < &user_path[MAX_PATH] && c != '/' && c != '\0') {
    if (np < &string[NAME_SIZE]) *np++ = c;
    c = +++rnp;  /* advance to next character */
}

/* To make /usr/ast/ equivalent to /usr/ast, skip trailing slashes. */
while (c == '/' && rnp < &user_path[MAX_PATH]) c = +++rnp;

/* Pad the component name out to NAME_SIZE chars, using 0 as filler. */
while (np < &string[NAME_SIZE]) *np++ = '\0';

if (rnp >= &user_path[MAX_PATH]) {
    err_code = E_LONG_STRING;
    return((char *) 0);
}

return(rnp);

PUBLIC struct inode *advance(dirp, string)
{
struct inode *dirp;  /* inode for directory to be searched */
char string[NAME_SIZE];  /* component name to look for */
{
/* Given a directory and a component of a path, look up the component in */
* the directory, find the inode, open it, and return a pointer to its inode */
* slot. If it can't be done, return NIL_inode. */
register struct inode *rip;
register struct super_block *sp;
register int r;
dev_nr mnt_dev;
inode_nr numb;
extern struct inode *get_inode();

/* If 'string' is empty, yield same inode straight away. */
if (string[0] == '\0') return(get_inode(dirp->i_dev, dirp->i_num));

/* If 'string' is not present in the directory, signal error. */
if ((r = search_dir(dirp, string, &numb, LOOK_UP)) != OK) {
    err_code = r;
    return(NIL_INODE);
}

/* The component has been found in the directory. Get inode. */
if (rip->i_num == ROOT_INODE)
    if (dirp->i_num == ROOT_INODE) {
        if (string[1] == '\0') {
            for (sp = &super_block[1]; sp < &super_block[NR_SUPERS]; sp++)
                if (sp->s_dev == rip->i_dev) {
                    /* Release the root inode. Replace by the *
                      * inode mounted on. */
                    put_inode(rip);
                    mnt_dev = sp->s_imount->i_dev;
                    rip = get_inode(mnt_dev, sp->s_imount->i_num);
                    rip = advance(rip, string);
                    break;
                }
        }
    }

/* See if the inode is mounted on. If so, switch to root directory of the *
 * mounted file system. The super_block provides the linkage between the *
 * inode mounted on and the root directory of the mounted file system. */
while (rip->i_mount == I_MOUNT) {
    /* The inode is indeed mounted on. */
    for (sp = &super_block[0]; sp < &super_block[NR_SUPERS]; sp++) {
        if (sp->s_imount == rip) {
            /* Release the inode mounted on. Replace by the *
             * inode of the root inode of the mounted device. */
            put_inode(rip);
            rip = get_inode(sp->s_dev, ROOT_INODE);
break;
}
return(rip); /* return pointer to inode's component */

PUBLIC int search_dir(ldir_ptr, string, numb, flag)
{
    register struct inode *ldir_ptr; /* ptr to inode for dir to search */
    char string[NAME_SIZE]; /* component to search for */
   inode_nr *numb; /* pointer to inode number */
    int flag; /* LOOK_UP, ENTER, or DELETE */
    
    register dir_struct *dp;
    register struct buf *bp;
    register int r;
    mask_bits bits;
    file_pos pos;
    unsigned new_slots, old_slots;
    block_nr b;
    int e_hit;
    extern struct buf *get_block(), *new_block();
    extern block_nr read_map();
    extern real_time clock_time();
    
    /* This function searches the directory whose inode is pointed to by 'ldip': */
    if (flag == LOOK_UP) search for 'string' and return inode # in 'numb';
    if (flag == ENTER) enter 'string' in the directory with inode # 'numb';
    if (flag == DELETE) delete 'string' from the directory;
    
    if ('ldir_ptr' is not a pointer to a searchable dir inode, error. */
    if (! (ldir_ptr->i_mode & I_TYPE) || I_DIRECTORY) return(ENOTDIR);
    bits = (flag == LOOK_UP ? X_BIT : W_BIT|X_BIT);
    if (! (r = forbidden(ldir_ptr, bits, 0)) || OK)
        return(r);
    
    /* Step through the directory one block at a time. */
    old_slots = ldir_ptr->i_size/DIR_ENTRY_SIZE;
    new_slots = 0;
    e_hit = FALSE;
    for (pos = 0; pos < ldir_ptr->i_size; pos += BLOCK_SIZE) {
        b = read_map(ldir_ptr, pos); /* get block number */
        
        /* Since directories don't have holes, 'b' cannot be NO_BLOCK. */
        bp = get_block(ldir_ptr->i_dev, b, NORMAL); /* get a dir block */
for (dp = &bp->b_dir[0]; dp < &bp->b_dir[NR_DIR_ENTRIES]; dp++) {
    if (++new_slots > old_slots) { /* not found, but room left */
        if (flag == ENTER) e_hit = TRUE;
        break;
    }
    if (flag != ENTER && dp->d_inum != 0 && cmp_string(dp->d_name, string, NAME_SIZE)) {
        /* LOOK_UP or DELETE found what it wanted. */
        if (flag == DELETE) {
            dp->d_inum = 0; /* erase entry */
            bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
            ldir_ptr->i_modtime = clock_time();
        } else {
            *numb = dp->d_inum; /* 'flag' is LOOK_UP */
            put_block(bp, OIRECTORY_BLOCK);
            return(OK);
        }
    }
    /* Check for free slot for the benefit of ENTER. */
    if (flag == ENTER && dp->d_inum == 0) {
        e_hit = TRUE; /* we found a free slot */
        break;
    }
    } /* The whole directory has now been searched. */
  if (e_hit) break; /* e_hit set if ENTER can be performed now */
  put_block(bp, OIRECTORY_BLOCK); /* otherwise, continue searching dir */
  } /* This call is for ENTER. If no free slot has been found so far, try to */
  /* extend directory. */
  if (e_hit == FALSE) { /* directory is full and no room left in last block */
    new_slots ++; /* increase directory size by 1 entry */
    if (new_slots == 0) return(EFBIG); /* dir size limited by slot count */
    if ( (bp = new_block(ldir_ptr, ldir_ptr->i_size)) == NIL_BUF)
      return(err_code);
    dp = &bp->b_dir[0];
  } /* 'bp' now points to a directory block with space. 'dp' points to slot. */
  copy(dp->d_name, string, NAME_SIZE);
  dp->d_inum = *numb;
  bp->b_dirt = DIRTY;
10950       put_block(bp, DIRECTORY_BLOCK);
10951       ldir_ptr->i_modtime = clock_time();
10952       ldir_ptr->i_dirt = DIRTY;
10953       if (new_slots > old_slots)
10954           ldir_ptr->i_size = (file_pos) new_slots * DIR_ENTRY_SIZE;
10955       return(OK);
10956     }

/ This file performs the MOUNT and U_MOUNT system calls.

The entry points into this file are

do_mount: perform the MOUNT system call

do_umount: perform the U_MOUNT system call

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"
#include "super.h"

PUBLIC int do_mount()
{
    /* Perform the mount(name, mfile, rd_only) system call. */
    register struct inode *rip, *root_ip;
    register struct super_block *xp, *sp;
    register dev_nr dev;
    register mask_bits bits;
    register int r;
    int found;
    extern struct inode *get_inode(), *eat_path();
    extern dev_nr name_to_dev();

    /* Only the super-user may do MOUNT. */
    if (!super_user) return(EPERM);

    /* If 'name' is not for a block special file, return error. */
    if (fetch_name(namel, namel_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code);
    if ((dev = name_to_dev(user_path)) == NO_DEV) return(err_code);

    /* Scan super block table to see if dev already mounted & find a free slot. */
    sp = NIL_SUPER;
    found = FALSE;
    for (xp = &super_block[0]; xp < &super_block[NR_SUPERS]; xp++) {
        if (xp->s_dev == dev) found = TRUE;  /* is it mounted already? */
        if (xp->s_dev == NO_DEV) sp = xp;  /* record free slot */
    }

    /* Perform mount operation: */
    if (found)
        /* Mounted device */
    else
        /* Find free slot and perform mount operation */
    }

    return(OK);
}
if (found) return(EBUSY); // already mounted */
if (sp == NIL_SUPER) return(ENFILE); /* no super block available */

/* Fill in the super block. */
sp->s_dev = dev; // rw_super() needs to know which dev */
rw_super(sp, READING);
sp->s_dev = dev; /* however, rw_super() overwrites s_dev */

/* Make a few basic checks to see if super block looks reasonable. */
if (sp->s_magic != SUPER_MAGIC || sp->s_ninodes < 1 ||
sp->s_nzones < 1 ||
sp->s imap_blocks < 1 || sp->s zmap_blocks < 1) {
    sp->s_dev = NO_DEV;
    return(EINVAL);
}

/* Now get the inode of the file to be mounted on. */
if (fetch_name(name2, name2_length, M1) != OK) {
    sp->s_dev = NO_DEV;
    return(err_code);
}

if (rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) {
    sp->s_dev = NO_OEV;
    return(err_code);
}

/* It may not be busy. */
r = OK;
if (rip->i_count > 1) r = EBUSY;

/* It may not be special. */
bits = rip->i_mode & I_TYPE;
if (bits == I BLOCK SPECIAL || bits == I CHAR SPECIAL) r = ENOTDIR;

/* Get the root inode of the mounted file system. */
root_ip = NIL_INODE; /* if 'r' not OK, make sure this is defined */
if (r == OK) {
    if ((root_ip = get_inode(dev, ROOT_INODE)) == NIL_INODE) r = err_code;
}

/* Load the i-node and zone bit maps from the new device. */
if (r == OK) {
    if (load_bit_maps(dev) != OK) r = ENFILE; /* load bit maps */
}

/* If error, return the super block and the inodes. */
if (r != OK) {
    sp->s_dev = NO_OEV;
    put_inode(rip);
    put_inode(root_ip);
    return(r);
/* File types of 'rip' and 'root_ip' may not conflict. */
if ((rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) == I_DIRECTORY &&
    (root_ip->i_mode & I_TYPE) != I_DIRECTORY) r = ENOTDIR;

/* If error, return the super block and both inodes. */
if (r != OK) {
    sp->s_dev = NO_DEV;
    put_inode(rip);
    put_inode(root_ip);
    return(r);
}

/* Nothing else can go wrong. Perform the mount. */
rip->i_mount = I_MOUNT;   /* this bit says the inode is mounted on */
sp->s_imount = rip;
sp->s_isup = root_ip;
sp->s_rd_only = rd_only;
return(OK);

PUBLIC int do_umount()
{
    /* Only the super-user may do U Mount. */
    if (!super_user) return(EPERM);

    /* If 'name' is not for a block special file, return error. */
    if (fetch_name(name, name_length, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
    dev = name_to_dev(user_path);
    if ( (dev = name_to_dev(user_path)) == NO_DEV) return(err_code);

    /* See if the mounted device is busy. Only 1 inode using it should be */
    /* * open -- the root inode -- and that inode only 1 time. */
    count = 0;
    for (rip = &inode[0]; rip < &inode[NR_INODES]; rip++)
        if ((rip->i_count > 0) && (rip->i_dev == dev)) count += rip->i_count;

    /*====================================*/
    do_umount
    /*====================================*/
if (count > 1) return(EBUSY); /* can't umount a busy file system */

/* Find the super block. */
sp = NIL_SUPER;
for (spl = &super_block[0]; spl < &super_block[NR_SUPERS]; spl++) {
    if (spl->s_dev == dev) {
        sp = spl;
        break;
    }
} 
if (sp == NIL_SUPER) return(EINVAL);

/* Release the bit maps, sync the disk, and invalidate cache. */
if (unload_bit_maps(dev) != OK) panic("do_umount", NO_NUM);
do_sync(); /* force any cached blocks out of memory */
 invalidate(dev); /* invalidate cache entries for this dev */

/* Finish off the umount. */
sp->s_imount->i_mount = NO_M0UNT; /* inode returns to normal */
put_inode(sp->s_imount); /* release the inode mounted on */
put_inode(sp->s_isup); /* release the root inode of the mounted fs */
sp->s_imount = NIL_INODE;
sp->s_dev = NO_DEV;
return(OK);
}

/*************************************************************************/
/* name_to_dev                                                        */
/*************************************************************************/
PRIVATE dev_nr name_to_dev(path)
char *path; /* pointer to path name */
{
    /* Convert the block special file 'path' to a device number. If 'path'
    * is not a block special file, return error code in 'err_code'.
    */
    register struct inode *rip;
    register dev_nr dev;
    extern struct inode *eat_path();

    /* If 'path' can't be opened, give up immediately. */
    if ((rip = eat_path(path)) == NIL_INODE) return(NO_DEV);

    /* If 'path' is not a block special file, return error. */
    if ((rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) != I_BLOCK_SPECIAL) {
        err_code = ENOTBLK;
        put_inode(rip);
        return(NO_DEV);
    }
/* Extract the device number. */
dev = (dev_nr) rip->i_zone[0];
put_inode(rip);
return(dev);
}
/ * This file handles the LINK and UNLINK system calls. It also deals with 
* deallocating the storage used by a file when the last UNLINK is done to a 
* file and the blocks must be returned to the free block pool. 
* 
* The entry points into this file are 
* do_link: perform the LINK system call 
* do_unlink: perform the UNLINK system call 
* truncate: release all the blocks associated with an inode 
*/ 

#include "../h/const.h" 
#include "../h/type.h" 
#include "../h/error.h" 
#include "const.h" 
#include "type.h" 
#include "buf.h" 
#include "file.h" 
#include "fproc.h" 
#include "glo.h" 
#include "inode.h" 
#include "param.h" 

PUBLIC int do_link() 
{ 
/* Perform the link(namel, name2) system call. */ 

register struct inode *ip, *rip; 
register int r; 
char string[NAMESIZE]; 
struct inode *new_ip; 
extern struct inode *advance(), *list_dir(), *eat_path(); 

/* See if 'name' (file to be linked) exists. */ 
if (fetch_name(namel, namel_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code); 
if ((rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code); 

/* Check to see if the file has maximum number of links already. */ 
if (rip->i_nlinks & BYTE) return(EMLINK); 

/* Only super_user may link to directories. */ 
if (r == OK) 
  if ( (rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) == I_DIRECTORY ) 
    r = EPERM; 

/* If error with 'name', return the inode. */ 
if (r != OK) { 
  put_inode(rip); 
}
return(r);

/* Does the final directory of 'name2' exist? */
if (fetch_name(name2, name2_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code);
if ((ip = last_dir(user_path, string)) == NIL_INODE) r = err_code;

/* If 'name2' exists in full (even if no space) set 'r' to error. */
if (r == OK) {
    if ((new_ip = advance(ip, string)) == NIL_INODE) {
        r = err_code;
        if (r == ENOENT) r = OK;
    } else {
        put_inode(new_ip);
        r = EEXIST;
    }
}

/* Check for links across devices. */
if (r == OK)
    if (rip->i_dev != ip->i_dev) r = EXDEV;

/* Try to link. */
if (r == OK)
    r = search_dir(ip, string, &rip->i_num, ENTER);

/* If success, register the linking. */
if (r == OK) {
    rip->i_nlinks++;
    rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
}

/* Done. Release both inodes. */
put_inode(rip);
put_inode(ip);
return(r);

*=============================================================================*
PUBLIC int do_unlink()
{
    /* Perform the unlink(name) system call. */
    register struct inode *rip, *rlast_dir_ptr;
    register int r;
    inode_nr numb;
    char string[NAME_SIZE];
extern struct inode *advance(), *last_dir();

/* Get the last directory in the path. */
if (fetch_name(name, name_length, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
if ( (rlast_dir_ptr = last_dir(user_path, string)) == NIL_INODE)
    return(err_code);

/* The last directory exists. Does the file also exist? */
if ((rip = advance(rlast_dir_ptr, string)) == NIL_INODE) r = err_code;

/* If error, return inode. */
if (r != OK) {
    put_inode(rlast_dir_ptr);
    return(r);
}

/* See if the file is a directory. */
if ( (rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) == I_DIRECTORY && !super_user)
    r = EPERM; /* only super_user can unlink directory */
if (r == OK)
    r = search_dir(rlast_dir_ptr, string, &numb, DELETE);

if (r == OK) {
    rip->i_nlinks--;
    rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
}

/* If unlink was possible, it has been done, otherwise it has not. */
put_inode(rip);
put_inode(rlast_dir_ptr);
return(r);


*/

PUBLIC truncate(rip)

register struct inode *rip;     /* pointer to inode to be truncated */

{ /* Remove all the zones from the inode 'rip' and mark it dirty. */

    register file_pos position;
    register zone_type zone_size;
    register block_nr b;
    register zone_nr z, *iz;
    register int scale;
    register struct buf *bp;
    register dev_nr dev;
extern struct buf *get_block();
extern block_nr read_map();

dev = rip->i_dev;  /* device on which inode resides */
scale = scale_factor(rip);
zone_size = (zone_type) BLOCK_SIZE << scale;
if (rip->i_pipe == IPIPE) rip->i_size = PIPE_SIZE;  /* pipes can shrink */

/* Step through the file a zone at a time, finding and freeing the zones. */
for (position = 0; position < rip->i_size; position += zone_size) {
    if ((b = read_map(rip, position)) != NO_BLOCK) {
        z = (zone_nr) b >> scale;
        free_zone(dev, z);
    }
}

/* All the data zones have been freed. Now free the indirect zones. */
free_zone(dev, rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM]);  /* single indirect zone */
if ((z = rip->i_zone[NR_DZONE_NUM+1]) != NO_ZONE) {
    b = (block_nr) z << scale;
    bp = get_block(dev, b, NORMAL); /* get double indirect zone */
    for (iz = &bp->b_ind[0]; iz < &bp->b_ind[NR_INDIRECTS]; iz++) {
        free_zone(dev, *iz);
    }
}

/* Now free the double indirect zone itself. */
put_block(bp, INDIRECT_BLOCK);
free_zone(dev, z);
}

/* The inode being truncated might currently be open, so certain fields must
be cleared immediately, even though these fields are also cleared by
alloc_inode(). The function wipe_inode() does the dirty work in both cases */
wipe_inode(rip);
/* This file contains the code for performing four system calls relating to * status and directories. * The entry points into this file are * do_chdir: perform the CHDIR system call * do_chroot: perform the CHROOT system call * do_stat: perform the STAT system call * do_fstat: perform the FSTAT system call */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "../h/stat.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"

/* Change directory. This function is also called by MM to simulate a chdir * in order to do EXEC, etc. */

register struct fproc *rfp;

if (who == MM_PROC_NR) {
    rfp = &fproc[slot1];
    put_inode(fp->fp_workdir);
    fp->fp_workdir = (cd_flag ? fp->fp_rootdir : rfp->fp_workdir);
    dup_inode(fp->fp_workdir);
    fp->fp_effuid = (cd_flag ? SUPER_USER : rfp->fp_effuid);
    return(OK);
}

/* Perform the chdir(name) system call. */
return change(&fp->fp_workdir, name, name_length);

/*============================================= do_chdir */

PUBLIC int do_chdir()
{
/*============================================= do_chroot */
PUBLIC int do_chroot()
{
    /* Perform the chroot(name) system call. */
    register int r;
    if (!super_user) return(EPERM); /* only su may chroot() */
    r = change(&fp->fp_rootdir, name, name_length);
    return(r);
}

/* Do the actual work for chdir() and chroot(). */

struct inode **iip; /* pointer to the inode pointer for the dir */
char *name_ptr; /* pointer to the directory name to change to */
int len; /* length of the directory name string */
{
    /* Try to open the new directory. */
    if (fetch_name(name_ptr, len, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
    if (! (rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);
    /* It must be a directory and also be searchable. */
    if (!(rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) != I_DIRECTORY)
        r = ENOTDIR;
    else
        r = forbidden(rip, X_BIT, 0); /* check if dir is searchable */
    /* If error, return inode. */
    if (r != OK)
        put_inode(rip);
    return(r);
}

/* Everything is OK. Make the change. */
put_inode(*iip); /* release the old directory */
iip = rip; /* acquire the new one */
return(OK);
PUBLIC int do_stat()
{
    register struct inode *rip;
    register int r;
    extern struct inode *eat_path();
    /* 80th stat() and fstat() use the same routine to do the real work. That
    * routine expects an inode, so acquire it temporarily. */
    if (fetch_name(name1, name1_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code);
    if ((rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);
    r = stat_inode(rip, NIL_FILP, name2); /* actually do the work. */
    put_inode(rip); /* release the inode */
    return(r);
}

PUBLIC int do_fstat()
{
    register struct filp *rfilp;
    extern struct filp *get_filp();
    /* Is the file descriptor valid? */
    if ((rfilp = get_filp(fd)) == NIL_FILP) return(err_code);
    return(stat_inode(rfilp->filp_ino, rfilp, buffer));
}

PRIVATE int stat_inode(rip, fil_ptr, user_addr)
{
    register struct stat *stp;
    /* Common code for stat and fstat system calls. */
    struct filp *fil_ptr; /* filp pointer, supplied by 'fstat' */
    char *user_addr; /* user space address where stat buf goes */
    {
        /* pointer to inode to stat */
        stat_inode
    }
}
struct stat statbuf;
int r;

vir_bytes v;

/* Fill in the statbuf struct. */
stp = &statbuf; /* set up pointer to the buffer */
stp->st_dev = (int) rip->i_dev;
stp->st_ino = rip->i_num;
stp->st_mode = rip->i_mode;
stp->st_nlink = rip->i_nlinks & BYTE;
stp->st_uid = rip->i_uid;
stp->st_gid = rip->i_gid & BYTE;
stp->st_rdev = rip->i_zone[0];
stp->st_size = rip->i_size;

if ((rip->i_pipe == I_PIPE) && /* IF it is a pipe */
    (fil_ptr != NIL_FILP) && /* AND it was fstat */
    (fil_ptr->filp_mode == R_BIT)) /* on the reading end, */
stp->st_size -= fil_ptr->filp_pos; /* adjust the visible size. */
stp->st_atime = rip->i_modtime;
stp->st_mtime = rip->i_modtime;
stp->st_ctime = rip->i_modtime;

/* Copy the struct to user space. */

v = (vir_bytes) user_addr;
r = rw_user(0, who, v, (vir_bytes) sizeof statbuf, (char *) stp, TO_USER);
return(r);
}
11650 /* This file deals with protection in the file system. It contains the code
11651 * for four system calls that relate to protection.
11652 *
11653 * The entry points into this file are
11654 *  do_chmod: perform the CHMOD system call
11655 *  do_chown: perform the CHOWN system call
11656 *  do_umask: perform the UMASK system call
11657 *  do_access: perform the ACCESS system call
11658 *  forbidden: check to see if a given access is allowed on a given inode
11659 */
11660 #include "../h/const.h"
11661 #include "../h/type.h"
11662 #include "../h/error.h"
11663 #include "const.h"
11664 //include "type.h"
11665 #include "buf.h"
11666 #include "file.h"
11667 #include "fproc.h"
11668 #include "glo.h"
11669 #include "inode.h"
11670 #include "param.h"
11671 #include "super.h"
11672 /*============================================================================*/
11673 /* do_chmod
11674 *============================================================================*/
11675 PUBLIC int do_chmod()
11676 {
11677 /* Perform the chmod(name, mode) system call. */
11678 register struct inode *rip;
11679 register int r;
11680 extern struct inode *eat_path();
11681 /* Temporarily open the file. */
11682 if (fetch_name(name, name_length, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
11683 if ( (rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);
11684 /* Only the owner or the super_user may change the mode of a file.
11685 * No one may change the mode of a file on a read-only file system.
11686 */
11687 if (rip->i_uid != fp->fp_effuid && !super_user)
11688     r = EPERM;
11689 else
11690     r = read_only(rip);
11691 /* If error, return inode. */
11692 if (r != OK) {
11693     put_inode(rip);
11694 */
11695 }
11700        return(r);
11701 }
11702 /* Now make the change. */
11703 rip->i_mode = (rip->i_mode & ~ALL_MODES) | (mode & ALL_MODES);
11704 rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
11705 put_inode(rip);
11706 return(OK);
11707 }
11708 /*====================r====:==================================================*
11709 /* do_chown */
11710 /*===========================================================================*/
11711 PUBLIC int do_chown()
11712 {
11713    /* Perform the chown(name, owner, group) system call. */
11714    register struct inode *rip;
11715    register int r;
11716    extern struct inode *eat_path();
11717    /* Only the super_user may perform the chown() call. */
11718    if (!super_user) return(EPERM);
11719    /* Temporarily open the file. */
11720    if (fetch_name(namel, namel_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code);
11721    if ((rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);
11722    /* Not permitted to change the owner of a file on a read-only file sys. */
11723    r = read_only(rip);
11724    if (r == OK) {
11725       rip->i_uid = owner;
11726       rip->i_gid = group;
11727       rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
11728    }
11729    put_inode(rip);
11730    return(r);
11731 }
11732 /*==============================================*/
11733 /* do_umask */
11734 /*==============================================*/
11735 PUBLIC int do_umask()
11736 {
11737    /* Perform the umask(co_mode) system call. */
11738    register_mask_bits r;
r = ~fp->fp_umask;       /* set 'r' to complement of old mask */
fp->fp_umask = ~(co_mode & RWX_MODES);
return(r);               /* return complement of old mask */
}

PUBLIC int do_access()
{
    /* Perform the access(name, mode) system call. */
    struct inode *rip;
    register int r;
    extern struct inode *eat_path();
    /* Temporarily open the file whose access is to be checked. */
    if (fetch_name(name, name_length, M3) != OK) return(err_code);
    if ((rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);
    /* Now check the permissions. */
    r = forbidden(rip, (mask_bits) mode, 1);
    put_inode(rip);
    return(r);
}

PUBLIC int forbidden(rip, access_desired, real_uid)
{
    register struct inode *rip;   /* pointer to inode to be checked */
    mask_bits access_desired;    /* RWX bits */
    int real_uid;                /* set iff real uid to be tested */

    /* Given a pointer to an inode, 'rip', and the access desired, determine
     * if the access is allowed, and if not why not. The routine looks up the
     * caller's uid in the 'fproc' table. If the access is allowed, OK is returned
     * if it is forbidden, EACCES is returned.
     */
    register mask_bits bits, perm_bits, xmask;
    int r, shift, test_uid, test_gid;

    /* Isolate the relevant rwx bits from the mode. */
    bits = rip->i_mode;
    test_uid = (real_uid ? fp->fp_realuid : fp->fp_effuid);
    test_gid = (real_uid ? fp->fp_realgid : fp->fp_effgid);
if (super_user) {
    perm_bits = 07;
} else {
    if (test_uid == rip->i_uid) shift = 6; /* owner */
    else if (test_gid == rip->i_gid) shift = 3; /* group */
    else shift = 0; /* other */
    perm_bits = (bits >> shift) & 07;
}

/* If access desired is not a subset of what is allowed, it is refused. */
r = OK;
if ((perm_bits | access_desired) != perm_bits) r = EACCES;
/* If none of the X bits are on, not even the super-user can execute it. */
xmask = (X_BIT << 6) | (X_BIT << 3) | X_BIT; /* all 3 X bits */
if ((access_desired & X_BIT) & (bits & xmask) == 0) r = EACCES;
/* Check to see if someone is trying to write on a file system that is */
/* mounted read-only. */
if (r == OK)
    if (access_desired & W_BIT) r = read_only(rip);
return(r);

/*===========================================================================*
* read_only
*===========================================================================*/
PRIVATE int read_only(ip)
struct inode *ip;          /* ptr to inode whose file sys is to be cked */
{
    /* Check to see if the file system on which the inode 'ip' resides is mounted */
    /* read only. If so, return EROFS, else return OK. */
    register struct super_block *sp;
    extern struct super_block *get_super();
    sp = get_super(ip->i_dev);
    return(sp->s_rd_only ? EROFS : OK);
}
/* This file takes care of those system calls that deal with time.
 * The entry points into this file are
 * do_utime: perform the UTIME system call
 * do_time: perform the TIME system call
 * do_stime: perform the STIME system call
 * do_tims: perform the TIMES system call */

#include "../h/const.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/callnr.h"
#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"

PRIVATE message clock_mess;

/*=============================================*/
/* do_utime */
/*=============================================*/
PUBLIC int do_utime()
{
    /* Perform the utime(name, timep) system call. */

    register struct inode *rip;
    register int r;
    extern struct inode *eat_path();

    /* Temporarily open the file. */

    if (fetch_name(utime_file, utime_length, M1) != OK) return(err_code);
    if ((rip = eat_path(user_path)) == NIL_INODE) return(err_code);

    /* Only the owner of a file or the super_user can change its time. */
    r = OK;
    if (rip->i_uid != fp->fp_effuid && !super_user) r = EPERM;
    if (r == OK) {
        rip->i_modtime = update_time;
        rip->i_dirt = DIRTY;
    }

    put_inode(rip);
    return(r);
}
do_time

PUBLIC int do_time()
{
    /* Perform the time(tp) system call. */
    extern real_time clock_time();
    reply_ll = clock_time(); /* return time in seconds */
    return(OK);
}

do_stime

PUBLIC int do_stime()
{
    /* Perform the stime(tp) system call. */
    register int k;
    if (!super_user) return(EPERM);
    clock_mess.m_type = SET_TIME;
    clock_mess.NEW_TIME = (long) tp;
    if((k = sendrec(CL0CK, &clock_mess)) != OK) panic("do_stime error", k);
    return (OK);
}

do_tims

PUBLIC int do_tims()
{
    /* Perform the times(buffer) system call. */
    real_time t[4];
    sys_times(who, t);
    reply_t1 = t[0];
    reply_t2 = t[1];
    reply_t3 = t[2];
    reply_t4 = t[3];
    return(OK);
}
/* This file contains a collection of miscellaneous procedures. Some of them
* perform simple system calls. Some others do a little part of system calls
* that are mostly performed by the Memory Manager.
* The entry points into this file are
* do_dup: perform the DUP system call
* do_sync: perform the SYNC system call
* do_fork: adjust the tables after MM has performed a FORK system call
* do_exit: a process has exited; note that in the tables
* do_set: set uid or gid for some process
* do_revive: revive a process that was waiting for something (e.g. TTY)
*/

#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/error.h"
#include "const.h"
#include "type.h"
#include "buf.h"
#include "file.h"
#include "fproc.h"
#include "glo.h"
#include "inode.h"
#include "param.h"
#include "super.h"

/*====================================
* do_dup
* PUBLIC int do_dup()
*/

PUBLIC int do_dup()
{

register int rfd;
register struct fproc *rfp;
struct filp *dummy;
int r;
extern struct filp *get_filp();

/* Is the file descriptor valid? */
rfd = fd & DUP_MASK;  /* kill off dup2 bit, if on */
rfp = fp;
if (get_filp(rfd) == NIL_FILP) return(err_code);

/* Distinguish between dup and dup2. */
if (fd == rfd) {  /* bit not on */
  /* dup(fd) */
  if ((r = get_fd(0, &fd2, &dummy)) != OK) return(r);
} else {
  /* dup2(fd, fd2) */
  if (fd2 < 0 || fd2 >= NR_FDS) return(EBADF);
  if (rfd == fd2) return(fd2); /* ignore the call: dup2(x, x) */
  fd = fd2; /* prepare to close fd2 */
  do_close(); /* cannot fail */
}

/* Success. Set up new file descriptors. */
rfp->fp_filp[fd2] = rfp->fp_filp[rfd];
rfp->fp_filp[fd2]->filp_count++;
return(fd2);

/*===========================================================================*
* do_sync
*===========================================================================*
PUBLIC int do_sync()
{
  /* Perform the sync() system call. Flush all the tables. */
  register struct inode *rip;
  register struct buf *bp;
  register struct super_block *sp;
  extern real_time clock_time();
  extern struct super_block *get_super();

  /* The order in which the various tables are flushed is critical. The *
   * blocks must be flushed last, since rw_inode() and rw_super() leave their *
   * results in the block cache. */

  /* Update the time in the root super_block. */
  sp = get_super(ROOT_DEV);
  sp->s_time = clock_time();
  sp->s_dirt = DIRTY;

  /* Write all the dirty inodes to the disk. */
  for (rip = &inode[0]; rip < &inode[NR_INODES]; rip++)
    if (rip->i_count > 0 && rip->i_dirt == DIRTY) rw_inode(rip, WRITING);

  /* Write all the dirty super_blocks to the disk. */
  for (sp = &super_block[0]; sp < &super_block[NR_SUPER]; sp++)
    if (sp->s_dev != NO_DEV && sp->s_dirt == DIRTY) rw_super(sp, WRITING);

  /* Write all the dirty blocks to the disk. */
  for (bp = &buf[0]; bp < &buf[NR_BUFS]; bp++)
    if (bp->b_dev != NO_DEV && bp->b_dirt == DIRTY) rw_block(bp, WRITING);
return(OK);  /* sync() can't fail */

/*===============================================
 * do_fork
 *===============================================*/

PUBLIC int do_fork()
{
    /* Perform those aspects of the fork() system call that relate to files.
    * In particular, let the child inherit its parent's file descriptors.
    * The parent and child parameters tell who forked off whom. The file
    * system uses the same slot numbers as the kernel. Only MM makes this call.
    */

    register struct fproc *cp;
    register char *sptr, *dptr;
    int i;

    if (who != MM_PROC_NR) return(ERROR);

    sptr = (char *) &fproc[parent];    /* pointer to parent's 'fproc' struct */
    dptr = (char *) &fproc[child];    /* pointer to child's 'fproc' struct */
    i = sizeof(struct fproc);        /* how many bytes to copy */
    while (i--) *dptr++ = *sptr++;    /* fproc[child] = fproc[parent] */

    /* Increase the counters in the 'filp' table. */
    cp = &fproc[child];
    for (i = 0; i < NR_FDS; i++)
        if (cp->fp_filp[i] != NIL_FILP) cp->fp_filp[i]->filp_count++;
    dup_inode(cp->fp_rootdir);     /* Record the fact that both root and working dir have another user. */
    dup_inode(cp->fp_workdir);
    return(OK);
}

/*===============================================
 * do_exit
 *===============================================*/

PUBLIC int do_exit()
{
    /* Perform the file system portion of the exit(status) system call. */

    register int i;
    /* Only MM may do the EXIT call directly. */
if (who != MM_PROC_NR) return(ERRDR);

/* Nevertheless, pretend that the call came from the user. */
fp = &fproc[slotl]; /* get_filp() needs 'fp' */

/* Loop on file descriptors, closing any that are open. */
for (i=0; i < NR_FDS; i++) {
    fd = i;
    do_close();
}

/* Release root and working directories. */
put_inode(fp->fp_rootdir);
put_inode(fp->fp_workdir);

if (fp->fp_suspended == SUSPENDED && fp->fp_task == XPIPE) susp_count--;
fp->fp_suspended = NOT_SUSPENDED;
return(OK);

/**===========================================================================*/
PUBLIC int do_set()
{
    register struct fproc *tfp;

    /* Only MM may make this call directly. */
    if (who != MM_PROC_NR) return(ERRDR);

    tfp = &fproc[slotl];
    if (fs_call == SETUID) {
        tfp->fp_realuid = (uid) real_user_id;
        tfp->fp_effuid = (uid) eff_user_id;
    }
    if (fs_call == SETGID) {
        tfp->fp_effgid = (gid) eff_grp_id;
        tfp->fp_realgid = (gid) real_grp_id;
    }
    return(OK);
}

/**===========================================================================*/
PUBLIC int do_revive()
A task, typically TTY, has now gotten the characters that were needed for a previous read. The process did not get a reply when it made the call. Instead it was suspended. Now we can send the reply to wake it up. This business has to be done carefully, since the incoming message is from a task (to which no reply can be sent), and the reply must go to a process that blocked earlier. The reply to the caller is inhibited by setting the 'dont_reply' flag, and the reply to the blocked process is done explicitly in revive().

```c
if (who > 0) return(EPERM);
revive(m.REP_PROC_NR, m.REP_STATUS);
dont_reply = TRUE; /* don't reply to the TTY task */
return(OK);
```
When a needed block is not in the cache, it must be fetched from the disk. Special character files also require I/O. The routines for these are here.

The entry points in this file are:

- **dev_open**: called when a special file is opened
- **dev_close**: called when a special file is closed
- **dev_io**: perform a read or write on a block or character device
- **do_ioctl**: perform the IOCTL system call
- **rw_dev**: procedure that actually calls the kernel tasks
- **rw_dev2**: procedure that actually calls task for /dev/tty
- **no_call**: dummy procedure (e.g., used when device need not be opened)

```
PRIVATE message dev_mess;
PRIVATE major, minor, task;
extern max_major;

PUBLIC int dev_open(dev, mod)
{ find_dev(dev);
  (*dmap[major].dmap_open)(task, &dev_mess);
  return(dev_mess.REP_STATUS);
}

PUBLIC dev_close(dev)
{ /* which device to close */
  dev_nr dev;
```
12250     { 
12251     /* This procedure can be used when a special file needs to be closed. */
12252     find_dev(dev);
12253     (*dmap[major].dmap_close)(task, &dev_mess);
12254     }
12255
12258     /*====================================================================*/
12259     *                          dev_io
12260     *---------------------------------------------------------------------*/
12261     PUBLIC int dev_io(rw_flag, dev, pos, bytes, proc, buff)
12262     int rw_flag;            /* READING or WRITING */
12263     dev_nr dev;            /* major-minor device number */
12264     long pos;             /* byte position */
12265     int bytes;            /* how many bytes to transfer */
12266     int proc;            /* in whose address space is buff? */
12267     char *buff;           /* virtual address of the buffer */
12268     {
12269     /* Read or write from a device. The parameter 'dev' tells which one. */
12270     find_dev(dev);
12271     
12272     /* Set up the message passed to task. */
12273     dev_mess.m_type = (rw_flag == READING ? DISK_READ : DISK_WRITE);
12274     dev_mess.DEVICE = (dev >> MINOR) & BYTE;
12275     dev_mess.POSITION = pos;
12276     dev_mess.PROC_NR = proc;
12277     dev_mess.ADDRESS = buff;
12278     dev_mess.COUNT = bytes;
12279     
12280     /* Call the task. */
12281     (*dmap[major].dmap_rw)(task, &dev_mess);
12282     
12283     /* Task has completed. See if call completed. */
12284     if (dev_mess.REP_STATUS == SUSPEND) suspend(task); /* suspend user */
12285     
12286     return(dev_mess.REP_STATUS);
12287     }
12288
12289     /*====================================================================*/
12290     *                          do_ioctl
12291     *---------------------------------------------------------------------*/
12292     PUBLIC do_ioctl()
12293     {
12294     /* Perform the ioctl(ls_fd, request, argx) system call (uses m2 fmt). */
12295     struct filp *f;
12296     register struct inode *rip;
extern struct filp *get_filp();
if ((f = get_filp(ls_fd)) == NIL_FILP) return(err_code);
rip = f->filp_inode;  /* get inode pointer */
if ((rip->i_mode & I_TYPE) != I_CHAR_SPECIAL) return(ENOTTY);
find_dev(rip->i_zone[0]);

dev_mess.m_type = TTY_IOCTL;
dev_mess.PROC_NR = who;
dev_mess.TTY_LINE = dev_nr;
dev_mess.TTY_REQUEST = m.TTY_REQUEST;
dev_mess.TTY_SPEK = m.TTY_SPEK;
dev_mess.TTY_FLAGS = m.TTY_FLAGS;

/* Call the task. */
(*dmap[major].dmap_rw)(task, &dev_mess);

/* Task has completed. See if call completed. */
if (dev_mess.m_type == SUSPEND) suspend(task);  /* User must be suspended. */
ml.TTY_SPEK = dev_mess.TTY_SPEK;  /* erase and kill */
ml.TTY_FLAGS = dev_mess.TTY_FLAGS;  /* flags */
return(dev_mess.REP_STATUS);

/* Find the major and minor device number from the parameter. */
major = (dev >> MAJOR) & BYTE;  /* major device number */
minor = (dev >> MINOR) & BYTE;  /* minor device number */
if (major == 0 || major >= max_major) panic("bad major dev", major);
task = dmap[major].dmap_task;  /* which task services the device */
dev_mess.DEVICE = minor;

PUBLIC rw_dev(task_nr, mess_ptr)
int task_nr;
message *mess_ptr;

/* All file system I/O ultimately comes down to I/O on major/minor device
* pairs. These lead to calls on the following routines via the dmap table.
*/
int proc_nr;
proc_nr = mess_ptr->PROC_NR;
if (sendrec(task_nr, mess_ptr) != OK) panic("rw_dev: can't send", NO_NUM);
while (mess_ptr->REP_PROC_NR != proc_nr) {
    /* Instead of the reply to this request, we got a message for an
    * earlier request. Handle it and go receive again.
    */
    revive(mess_ptr->REP_PROC_NR, mess_ptr->REP_STATUS);
    receive(task_nr, mess_ptr);
}

PUBLIC rw_dev2(dummy, mess_ptr)
int dummy; /* not used - for compatibility with rw_dev() */
message *mess_ptr; /* pointer to message for task */
{
    /* This routine is only called for one device, namely /dev/tty. Its job
    * is to change the message to use the controlling terminal, instead of the
    * major/minor pair for /dev/tty itself.
    */
    int task_nr, major_device;
    major_device = (fp->fs_tty >> MAJOR) & BYTE;
task_nr = dmap[major_device].dmap_task; /* task for controlling tty */
mess_ptr->DEVICE = (fp->fs_tty >> MINOR) & BYTE;
rw_dev(task_nr, mess_ptr);
}

PUBLIC int no_call(task_nr, m_ptr)
int task_nr; /* which task */
message *m_ptr; /* message pointer */
{
    /* Null operation always succeeds. */
    m_ptr->REP_STATUS = OK;
}
/* This file contains a few general purpose utility routines.

The entry points into this file are:

- clock_time: ask the clock task for the real time
- cmp_string: compare two strings (e.g., while searching directory)
- copy: copy a string
- fetch_name: go get a path name from user space
- no_sys: reject a system call that FS does not handle
- panic: something awful has occurred; MINIX cannot continue */

PRIVATE int panicking;            /* inhibits recursive panics during sync */
PRIVATE message clock_mess;

PUBLIC real_time clock_time()
{
/* This routine returns the time in seconds since 1.1.1970. */

register int k;
register struct super_block *sp;
extern struct super_block *get_super();

clock_mess.m_type = GET_TIME;
if ( (k = sendrec(CLOCK, &clock_mess)) != OK) panic("clock_time err", k);

/* Since we now have the time, update the super block. It is almost free. */
sp = get_super(ROOT_DEV);
sp->s_time = clock_mess.NEW_TIME;    /* update super block time */
sp->s_dirt = DIRTY;

return (real_time) clock_mess.NEW_TIME;
12451    /*==========================================================*/
12452    *  cmp_string                                          *
12453    *==========================================================*/
12454    PUBLIC int cmp_string(rspl, rsp2, n)
12455    register char *rspl, *rsp2; /* pointers to the two strings */
12456    register int n; /* string length */
12457    {
12458    /* Compare two strings of length 'n'. If they are the same, return 1.  *
12459    * If they differ, return 0. */
12460    * /
12461    do {
12462    if (*rspl++ != *rsp2++) return(0);
12463    } while (--n);
12464    /* The strings are identical. */
12465    return(1);
12466    }
12467    #/r
12468

12472    /*==========================================================*/
12473    *  copy                                               *
12474    *==========================================================*/
12475    PUBLIC copy(dest, source, bytes)
12476    char *dest; /* destination pointer */
12477    char *source; /* source pointer */
12478    int bytes; /* how much data to move */
12479    {
12480    /* Copy a byte string of length 'bytes' from 'source' to 'dest'. *
12481    * If all three parameters are exactly divisible by the integer size, copy them  *
12482    * an integer at a time. Otherwise copy character-by-character. */
12483    */
12484    if (bytes <= 0) return; /* makes test-at-the-end possible */
12485    if (bytes % sizeof(int) == 0 && (int) dest % sizeof(int) == 0 &&
12486    (int) source % sizeof(int) == 0) {
12487    /* Copy the string an integer at a time. */
12488    register int n = bytes/sizeof(int);
12489    register int *dpi = (int *) dest;
12490    register int *spi = (int *) source;
12491    do { *dpi++ = *spi++; } while (--n);
12492    } else {
12493    /* Copy the string character-by-character. */
12494    register int n = bytes;
```
register char *dpc = (char *) dest;
register char *spc = (char *) source;
do { *dpc++ = *spc++; } while (--n);

PUBLIC int fetch_name(path, len, flag)
char *path; /* pointer to the path in user space */
int len; /* path length, including 0 byte */
int flag; /* M3 means path may be in message */
{
    /* Go get path and put it in 'user_path'. */
    register char *rpu, *rpm;
    vir_bytes vpath;
    if (flag == M3 && len <= M3_STRING) {
        /* Just copy the path from the message to 'user_path'. */
        rpu = &user_path[0];
        rpm = pathname; /* contained in input message */
        do { *rpu++ = *rpm++; } while (--len);
        return(OK);
    }
    /* String is not contained in the message. Go get it from user space. */
    if (len > MAX_PATH) {
        err_code = E_LONG_STRING;
        return(ERROR);
    }
    vpath = (vir_bytes) path;
    err_code = rw_user(D, who, vpath, (vir_bytes) len, user_path, FROM_USER);
    return(err_code);
}

PUBLIC int no_sys()
{
    /* Somebody has used an illegal system call number */
    ```
return(EINVAL);
}

/*===========================================================================
* panic *=
/*===========================================================================
PUBLIC panic(format, num)
char *format; /* format string */
int num; /* number to go with format string */
{
  /* Something awful has happened. Panics are caused when an internal
   * inconsistency is detected, e.g., a programming error or illegal value of a
   * defined constant.
   */
  if (panicking) return; /* do not panic during a sync */
  panicking = TRUE; /* prevent another panic during the sync */
  printf("File system panic: %s ", format);
  if (num != NO_NUM) printf("%d", num);
  printf("\n");
  do_sync(); /* flush everything to the disk */
  sys_abort();
}
/* FS must occasionally print some message. It uses the standard library
   routine printf(), which calls putc() and flush(). Library
   versions of these routines do printing by sending messages to FS. Here
   we obviously can't do that, so FS calls the TTY task directly.
*/

#include "../h/com.h"
#include "../h/type.h"
#include "../h/const.h"

#define STD0UTPUT 1  /* file descriptor for standard output */
#define BUFSIZE 100  /* print buffer size */

PRIVATE int bufcount;  /* # characters in the buffer */
PRIVATE char printbuf [BUFSIZE];  /* output is buffered here */
PRIVATE message putchmsg;  /* used for message to TTY task */

/**
   * putc
   ***/
PUBLIC putc(c)
char c;
{
    if (c == 0) {
        flush();
        return;
    }
    printbuf[bufcount++] = c;
    if (bufcount == BUFSIZE) flush();
    if (c == '\n') flush();
}

/**
   * flush
   ***/
PRIVATE flush()
{
    /* Flush the print buffer. */
    if (bufcount == 0) return;
    putchmsg.m_type = TTY_WRITE;
    putchmsg.PROC_NR = 1;
    putchmsg.TTY_LINE = 0;
    putchmsg.ADDRESS = printbuf;
    putchmsg.COUNT = bufcount;
    sendrec(TTY, &putchmsg);
    bufcount = 0;
}
This appendix lists the principal procedure names, global variables, defined constants, and other macros present in the listing of Appendix E. Local variables and structure members are not listed, as this would have increased the length of this appendix substantially. The **boldface** entries show the lines on which the symbols are defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Lines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>0049 4941 4946 5716 6171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS</td>
<td>0130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDRESS</td>
<td>0211 2362 2597 3542 3550 3800 3918 4166 7391 12278 12645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALARM</td>
<td>0126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALARM_ON</td>
<td>5284 5799 6616 6617 6709 6711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL_MODES</td>
<td>0072 9495 9549 11704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANY</td>
<td>0154 1946 2002 2053 2078 2311 2551 3121 3509 4634 5001 5475 9042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT_SIGN</td>
<td>3373 3724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAD_CYL</td>
<td>2462 2822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAD_SECTOR</td>
<td>2461 2822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASE</td>
<td>0874 0903 0973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEEP_FREQ</td>
<td>4068 4244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIT_MAP_SHIFT</td>
<td>8626 8704 8705 8725 8756 8757</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLANK</td>
<td>4070 1697 1699 1744 4485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK_SIZE</td>
<td>0018 2387 2590 2599 2644 7540 7542 7543 7544 7546 7566 8310 8311 9097 9098 9138 9190 9216 9220 9862 9863 9864</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING

9904 9941 9962 9968 9974 10000 10156 10244 10246 10305 10306
10895 11405

BOOT_BLOCK 7532
BOOT_DEV 0062 9184 9214
BOTH 0153 1179 1950
BRK 0117
BRK2 0147 9196
BSSB 5928 6076
BUFSIZE 12611 12614 12629
BUF_SIZE 7360 7363 7375
BUSY 3439
BYTE 0044 2673 2674 2675 2676 2677 2685 2857 2970 3279 3280
3719 3956 3957 3963 3964 3965 3966 3967 3972 3973 3980
3981 3982 3983 3984 4418 4420 4440 4441 6088 8260 8261
8315 8431 8466 8467 9029 9030 9811 9812 10524 10594 11291
11609 11611 12275 12333 12334 12381 12383
BYTE_AVAIL 4095
B_TIME 4069 4444
CALIBRATED 2523 2936
CANCEL 0246 3516 10596
CBREAK 0374 3564 3597 3605 3829
CHANGE 2464 2971
CHDIR 0112 5965 5967 5968 6790 6806 6840
CHILD_STIME 0236 4860
CHILD_UTIME 0235 4859
CHMOD 0115
CHOWN 0116
CHROOT 0142
CLEAN 7529 8319 8572 8847
CLICK_SHIFT 0035 0903 1054 1996 1997 2302 2303 5038 5048 5051 5053
5710 5714 5715 5971 5996 6081 6082 6083 6124 6125 6126
6127 6161 6164 6165 6236 6302 6335 6399 6400 6401 6812
6823 6824 9136 9207
CLICK_SIZE 0034 5426 5564 5971 6083 6124 6125 6126 6127 6302 9190
CLICK_TO_K 5426 5563 5564 5565
CLOCK 0170 1220 1222 1896 2733 2996 6714 11929 12440
CLOCK_PROC_NR 0203 2993 3156
CLOCK_TICK 0172 1219 3128 3134
CLOCK_VECTOR 0671 0967
CLOSE 0107
COLOR_BASE 4060 4475
CONSOLE 4075 4144 4145 4147 4161
COOKED 0375 3605 3607
COPY_BYTES 0230 4938 7291 10073
COPY_UNIT 4617
CORE_MODE 0777 6480 6805
COUNT 0209 2351 2357 2387 2596 3801 3919 7392 9208 12279 12646
CREAT 0109
APPENDIX F  MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING  689

CRMOD  0372 3655 4264 4462
CS_REG  0664 0941 4730
CTL_ACCEPTING 2452 2889
CTL_BUSY  2451 2860
CTRL_S  4073 4146
CURSOR  4091 4336 4355
CUR_SIZE  4089 4487
C_6845  4086 4477
C_RETRACE  4064 4478
C_VID_MASK  4062 4476

D  0028 0924 0925 0934 0935 0937 0942 0943 0944 0960 1005
3835 3927 4722 4724 4731 4732 4733 4907 5042 5045 5580
5581 5608 5609 5610 5705 5708 5733 5734 5735 5963 5981
5999 6004 6151 6152 6153 6154 6156 6171 6329 6361 6362
6431 6662 6829 9817 10057 10068 11624 12539

DATA  4088 4418 4420
DATAB  5927 6068
DATA_CHANGED  6277 6348 6369
DELETE  7527 10910 11371
DELTA_TICKS 0200 2994 3157 6707
DELUXE  4097
DEL_CODE  3372 4154
DEVICE  0207 2349 2384 2585 9205 12275 12337 12383
DIRECTION  2450 2855 2888
DIRECTORY_BLO  7604 10916 10929 10950
DIRTY  7530 8139 8224 8439 8516 8568 8732 8764 8844 9217 9599
9892 9973 10153 10199 10213 10330 10912 10949 10952 11329 11375
11705 11735 11894 12036 12040 12044 12048 12445

DIR_ENTRY_SIZE  7539 7542 10892 10954
DISKINT  0185 1205
DISK_IOCTL  0188 2321 9204
DISK_READ  0186 2319 2351 2366 2559 2669 2804 12274
DISK_WRITE  0187 2320 2560 12274
DIVISOR  2503 2810
DMA_ADDR  2431 2692 2693
DMA_COUNT  2433 2695 2696
DMA_INIT  2436 2698
DMA_M1  2435 2691
DMA_M2  2434 2690
DMA_READ  2475 2669
DMA_TOP  2432 2694
DMA_WRITE  2476 2669
dOR  2428 2725 2748 2959 2960
DST_BUFFER  0229 4937 4947 7289 10062 10070
DST_PROC_NR  0228 4933 7288 10061 10069
DST_SPACE  0227 4935 7287 10060 10068
DS_REG  0663 0942 4731
<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTL</td>
<td>2483</td>
<td>2813</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUMPED</td>
<td>6481</td>
<td>6808</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUMP_SIZE</td>
<td>6479</td>
<td>6780</td>
<td>6828</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUP</td>
<td>0133</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUP_MASK</td>
<td>7523</td>
<td>11992</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2BIG</td>
<td>0263</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EACCES</td>
<td>0269</td>
<td>5968</td>
<td>5984</td>
<td>7245</td>
<td>7260</td>
<td>11811</td>
<td>11815</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAGAIN</td>
<td>0267</td>
<td>5701</td>
<td>5702</td>
<td>5711</td>
<td>6135</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>0265</td>
<td>8921</td>
<td>9825</td>
<td>12002</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBUSY</td>
<td>0272</td>
<td>11050</td>
<td>11077</td>
<td>11150</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECHILD</td>
<td>0266</td>
<td>5842</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECHO</td>
<td>0373</td>
<td>3752</td>
<td>4462</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDOM</td>
<td>0289</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEXIST</td>
<td>0273</td>
<td>9498</td>
<td>9504</td>
<td>9608</td>
<td>11314</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFAULT</td>
<td>0270</td>
<td>4951</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFBIG</td>
<td>0283</td>
<td>9847</td>
<td>10187</td>
<td>10940</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>0260</td>
<td>3661</td>
<td>4025</td>
<td>6753</td>
<td>6760</td>
<td>10602</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>0278</td>
<td>2322</td>
<td>2561</td>
<td>2590</td>
<td>2599</td>
<td>3519</td>
<td>3990</td>
<td>5958</td>
<td>6496</td>
<td>6592</td>
<td>7302</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIO</td>
<td>0261</td>
<td>2586</td>
<td>2644</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EISDIR</td>
<td>0277</td>
<td>9512</td>
<td>9655</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMFILE</td>
<td>0280</td>
<td>8896</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMFILE</td>
<td>0287</td>
<td>11291</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENABLE</td>
<td>0680</td>
<td>1888</td>
<td>4134</td>
<td>4148</td>
<td>4170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENABLE_INT</td>
<td>2454</td>
<td>2641</td>
<td>2722</td>
<td>2960</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENFILE</td>
<td>0279</td>
<td>8404</td>
<td>8465</td>
<td>8909</td>
<td>11051</td>
<td>11091</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENODEV</td>
<td>0275</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOENT</td>
<td>0258</td>
<td>6803</td>
<td>9579</td>
<td>10933</td>
<td>11311</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOEXEC</td>
<td>0264</td>
<td>5975</td>
<td>6062</td>
<td>6063</td>
<td>6078</td>
<td>6084</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>0268</td>
<td>5957</td>
<td>6129</td>
<td>6336</td>
<td>6342</td>
<td>6375</td>
<td>6404</td>
<td>6406</td>
<td>6409</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOSPC</td>
<td>0284</td>
<td>8259</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOTBLK</td>
<td>0271</td>
<td>11196</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOTDIR</td>
<td>0276</td>
<td>10886</td>
<td>11081</td>
<td>11104</td>
<td>11532</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOTTY</td>
<td>0281</td>
<td>12304</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOUGH</td>
<td>5425</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>7526</td>
<td>9596</td>
<td>10904</td>
<td>10907</td>
<td>10921</td>
<td>10933</td>
<td>11324</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENXIO</td>
<td>0262</td>
<td>2350</td>
<td>2354</td>
<td>2385</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EOT_CHAR</td>
<td>3370</td>
<td>4470</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPERM</td>
<td>0257</td>
<td>5550</td>
<td>6544</td>
<td>6895</td>
<td>6904</td>
<td>9547</td>
<td>10584</td>
<td>11037</td>
<td>11138</td>
<td>11295</td>
<td>11369</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPERM</td>
<td>11506</td>
<td>11693</td>
<td>11724</td>
<td>11891</td>
<td>11926</td>
<td>12161</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPipe</td>
<td>0288</td>
<td>10469</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERANGE</td>
<td>0290</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERASE_CHAR</td>
<td>3364</td>
<td>4464</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EROFS</td>
<td>0286</td>
<td>11841</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERROR</td>
<td>0256</td>
<td>8644</td>
<td>12070</td>
<td>12100</td>
<td>12131</td>
<td>12536</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_DRIVE</td>
<td>2496</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_RECALIBRA</td>
<td>2494</td>
<td>2933</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_SEEK</td>
<td>2491</td>
<td>2768</td>
<td>2775</td>
<td>2781</td>
<td>2782</td>
<td>2784</td>
<td>2921</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX F</td>
<td>MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_STATUS</td>
<td>2493 2853 2855 2865</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_TRANSFER</td>
<td>2492 2800 2801 2816 2828 2829 2835</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_WR_PROTEC</td>
<td>2495 2636 2826</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESCAPED</td>
<td>3435 3630</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESPIPE</td>
<td>0285 9733</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESRC</td>
<td>0259 6633</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES_REG</td>
<td>0662 0944 4733</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETXTBSY</td>
<td>0282</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDEV</td>
<td>0274 11320</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXEC</td>
<td>0140 5462</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXIT</td>
<td>0102 5873</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERN</td>
<td>0009 7409 9312</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_ADDR</td>
<td>0306 1998 2363 3834 3929</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_BUF</td>
<td>0301</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_CALL</td>
<td>0293 5456 9001</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_DEST</td>
<td>0297 1988 1991</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_FCN</td>
<td>0305 4646</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_PROC</td>
<td>0307 4674 4715 4757 4784 4834 4853 4896</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_BAD_SRC</td>
<td>0298 1947</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_LOCKED</td>
<td>0292</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_LONG_STRING</td>
<td>0294 10782 12535</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_NO_MESSAGE</td>
<td>0303</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_NO_PERM</td>
<td>0304 1951</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_OVERRUN</td>
<td>0300 2010</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_TASK</td>
<td>0302</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_TRY_AGAIN</td>
<td>0299 3793</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1</td>
<td>3375 3592 4526</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F10</td>
<td>3377 3592</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2</td>
<td>3376 4527</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>0015 2955 3708 5451 6605 6606 6607 6608 6620 8803 8996 8997 9700 9882 10167 10168 10894 10938 11045</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_DATA</td>
<td>2430 2856 2890</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_READ</td>
<td>2468 2804</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_RECALIBRA</td>
<td>2471 2919</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_SEEK</td>
<td>2467 2772</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_SENSE</td>
<td>2470 2779 2925 2967</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_SPECIFY</td>
<td>2472 2975</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_STATUS</td>
<td>2429 2852 2854 2859 2887</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC_WRITE</td>
<td>2469 2804</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD_MASK</td>
<td>9777 9814</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOPPY</td>
<td>0183 1206 1208 2993 3008 9421</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOPPY_VECTOR</td>
<td>0673 0969</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORK</td>
<td>0103 5753</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORWARD</td>
<td>0012</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FROM_USER</td>
<td>0046 9971 12539</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSTAT</td>
<td>0127</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS_PROC_NR</td>
<td>0039 1987 5522 5550 6544 8311 10058 10069</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS_STACK_BYTES</td>
<td>7511 7819 9332</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULL_DATA_BLO</td>
<td>7609 9191 9974 10257</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNC</td>
<td>0244 4895</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUNC_TO_CALL</td>
<td>0201 2995 3158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F_L_u_s_h</td>
<td>7383 7375 7376</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAP</td>
<td>2482 2812</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GETGID</td>
<td>0137 6883</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GETPID</td>
<td>0120 6888</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GETUID</td>
<td>0124 6878</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GET_TIME</td>
<td>0173 3126 12439</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GET_TYPE</td>
<td>4098</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GO_BACKWARD</td>
<td>4077 4392</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GO_FORWARD</td>
<td>4076 4266 4310 4312</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HANGING</td>
<td>5282 5497 5796 5828 5881 5892 6548 6607 6632</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARDWARE</td>
<td>0157 0948 0949 0950 0951 0960 0975 1893 1914 2010 2114</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDR_SIZE</td>
<td>5166 6044 6062 6089</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGHEST_ZONE</td>
<td>0516</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZ</td>
<td>0017 1114 2487 2488 3090 3160 3180 3192 3278 6707</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM_FREQ</td>
<td>3095 3278</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDLE</td>
<td>0687 1289 1921 2113</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INACTIVE</td>
<td>3438</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td>4087 4417 4419</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDIRECT_BLOCK</td>
<td>7605 10024 10033 10201 10205 10214 11426</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>8975 9175 9179 9180 9181</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INIT_PROC_NR</td>
<td>0040 5141 5523 5577 5676 5742 5887 5891 6602</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INIT_PSW</td>
<td>0655 0916</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INIT_SP</td>
<td>0656 0910 0912</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INODES_PER_BLK</td>
<td>7540 7569 8558 8561</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INODE_BLOCK</td>
<td>7603 8571</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INODE_SIZE</td>
<td>7541 7540 8565 8567 9098</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTR_CHAR</td>
<td>3366 4466</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTS_PER_BLOCK</td>
<td>7544 7570 8717 10326</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT_BITS</td>
<td>8625 8706 8722 8724 8758 8759</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT_CTL</td>
<td>0678 1888 4134 4148 4170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT_CTLMASK</td>
<td>0679 0979</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN_USE</td>
<td>5280 5497 5521 5522 5523 5721 5826 5883 6548 6603 6632 6655</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOCTL</td>
<td>0139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISEEK</td>
<td>7887 9744</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_BLOCK_SPECIAL</td>
<td>0067 9516 9665 9696 9697 9844 9888 9939 11081 11195</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_CHAR_SPECIAL</td>
<td>0069 9515 9659 9696 9836 9888 11081 12304</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_DIRECTORY</td>
<td>0068 9249 9511 9652 9905 10886 11103 11104 11295 11368 11531</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_MAP_BLOCK</td>
<td>7606 8680 9218 9219</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_MAP_SLOTS</td>
<td>7506 7982 8645</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_MOUNT</td>
<td>7885 10841 11115</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_NOTALLOC</td>
<td>0077 8434</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_PIPE</td>
<td>7883 9733 10419 11406 11614</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX F  
MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L_REGULAR</td>
<td>0066 7243 9495 9507 9905 9909 10411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_SET_GID_BIT</td>
<td>0071 6012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_SET_UID_BIT</td>
<td>0070 6008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_TYPE</td>
<td>0065 7242 9249 9506 9549 9651 9695 9833 9939 10886 11080 11103 11104 11195 11295 11368 11531 12304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KBIT</td>
<td>4082 4123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KB_BUSY</td>
<td>4096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KB_STATUS</td>
<td>4094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYBD</td>
<td>4080 4121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYBOARD_VEC</td>
<td>0672 0968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KILL</td>
<td>0132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KILL_CHAR</td>
<td>3365 4465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KMEM_DEV</td>
<td>0180 2302 2303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K_SIG</td>
<td>0145 5006 10465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K_STACK_BYTES</td>
<td>0684 0717 0949 1164 1278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST_FEW</td>
<td>5674 5702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINE_WIDTH</td>
<td>4071 4292 4310 4313 4318 4351 4354 4382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINK</td>
<td>0119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOOK_UP</td>
<td>7525 10812 10887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW_USER</td>
<td>0041 0907 0953 1950 1987 2110 2137 2163 3261 3663 4896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSEEK</td>
<td>0119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>0542 9548 11040 11066 11286 11304 11564 11727 11886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M3</td>
<td>0543 9491 9638 11141 11353 11527 11686 11769 12525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M3_STRING</td>
<td>0545 0549 12525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M4</td>
<td>0544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M64K</td>
<td>8974 9139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGIC</td>
<td>5924 6063</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJOR</td>
<td>0021 8260 8315 8466 12333 12381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MARKER</td>
<td>3371 3639 3682 3753 3854 3856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASTER</td>
<td>2449 2853 2888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX</td>
<td>0501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_BLOCK_NR</td>
<td>0508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_ERRORS</td>
<td>2500 2604 2611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_FDC_RETR</td>
<td>2504 2883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_FILE_POS</td>
<td>0531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_INODE_NR</td>
<td>0512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_INSTACK_BY</td>
<td>0058 5156 5158 5943 5957 6184 6200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_LINKS</td>
<td>0527 11291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_OVERRUN</td>
<td>3362 3445 3446 4486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_PAGES</td>
<td>5165 6404 6406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_PATH</td>
<td>0056 5155 5158 5945 5958 7814 10770 10776 10781 12534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_P_LONG</td>
<td>0031 3165 3215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_RESULTS</td>
<td>2501 2518 2851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_ZONES</td>
<td>7547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEM</td>
<td>0177 9209 9420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEM_BYTES</td>
<td>0668 2304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEM_DEV</td>
<td>0179 2304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEM_PTR</td>
<td>0245 4714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Value Range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESS_SIZE</td>
<td>0567 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MILLSEC</td>
<td>3089 3090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>0502 3842 3843 4385 6170 6828 9863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINIX</td>
<td>1153 1100 1151 1166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINOR</td>
<td>0022 8261 8315 8467 10594 12275 12334 12383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MKNOD</td>
<td>0114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM_PROC_NR</td>
<td>0038 1987 2078 4980 5521 5963 5981 5999 6171 6829 9201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM_STACK_BYT</td>
<td>5156 5158 5216 7421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONOCHROME</td>
<td>4074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONO_BASE</td>
<td>4061 4480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOTOR_MASK</td>
<td>2453 2747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOTOR_OFF</td>
<td>2487 2642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOTOR_RUNNIN</td>
<td>2499 3007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOTOR_START</td>
<td>2488 2732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOUNT</td>
<td>0121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M_6845</td>
<td>4085 4482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M_RETRACE</td>
<td>4065 4483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M_VID_MASK</td>
<td>4063 4481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME_SIZE</td>
<td>7510 8004 9571 10683 10705 10751 10771 10779 10794 10863 10908 10947 11281 11349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCALLS</td>
<td>0100 5455 7427 8987 9000 9334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NERROR</td>
<td>0254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEW_TIME</td>
<td>0202 3180 3192 11928 12444 12447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_BUF</td>
<td>7585 8101 8120 8121 8129 8172 8181 8186 8200 8202 8212 8213 9130 9131 9142 9145 9955 10154 10199 10294 10298 10941 10414 10452 10463 10464 11565 11583 11615 11994 12081 12302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_FILP</td>
<td>7711 8888 8922 8948 9691 9714 9730 9823 9898 10402 10412 10414 10452 10463 11566 11583 11615 11994 12081 12302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_HOLE</td>
<td>6972 7001 7038 7048 7057 7109 7120 7140 7169 7170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_INODE</td>
<td>7879 8390 8403 8405 8429 8472 8477 9008 9575 9579 9581 9584 9602 9607 9643 10092 10411 10687 10688 10730 10737 10814 10818 11070 11084 11086 11171 11192 11287 11305 11309 11354 11359 11528 11565 11687 11728 11770 11887 11928 12444 12447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_MESS</td>
<td>0568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_PROC</td>
<td>0788 1921 2016 2019 2023 2051 2092 2093 2106 2140 2145 2164 2174 2176 2194 2203 4799 4807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_PTR</td>
<td>0053 4318 4386 5759 5872 6201 6753 6760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIL_SUPER</td>
<td>7992 11044 11051 11153 11160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>7518 8149 8560 8650 8837 9184 9214 9951 9962 10022 10031 10094 10189 10209 10899 11420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_ESCAPED</td>
<td>3434 3609 3618 3626 3642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_REVIVING</td>
<td>7776 9034</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_SUSPENDED</td>
<td>7774 9033 10549 10562 10588 12116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_WAITING</td>
<td>3442 3894 3898 4023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_BIT</td>
<td>7522 8258 8464 8741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_BLOCK</td>
<td>0507 9125 9156 9948 9951 10006 10019 10029 10034 10093 10250 10286 11410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_DEV</td>
<td>0524 8100 8139 8149 8224 8228 8309 8334 8412 8477 9126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_ENTRY</td>
<td>0511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_MAP</td>
<td>0783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_MEM</td>
<td>5161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_MOUNT</td>
<td>7884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_NUM</td>
<td>0055</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_PIPE</td>
<td>7882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_READ</td>
<td>7519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_SEEK</td>
<td>7886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO_ZONE</td>
<td>0515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NQ</td>
<td>0690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_BLOCKS</td>
<td>2505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_BUFS</td>
<td>7502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_BUF_HASH</td>
<td>7503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_DIR_ENTRIES</td>
<td>7542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_DRIVES</td>
<td>2502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_DZONE_NUM</td>
<td>7538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_FDS</td>
<td>7504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_FILPS</td>
<td>7505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_HEADS</td>
<td>2481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_HOLES</td>
<td>6971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_INDIRECTS</td>
<td>7543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_INODES</td>
<td>7508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_PROCS</td>
<td>0025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_REGS</td>
<td>0654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_SECTORS</td>
<td>2480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_SEGS</td>
<td>0026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_SIGS</td>
<td>0400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_SUPERS</td>
<td>7509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR.Tasks</td>
<td>0024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_TTYs</td>
<td>3356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR_ZONE_NUMS</td>
<td>7501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL_DEV</td>
<td>0181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF_MASK</td>
<td>4067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>0255</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**APPENDIX F**

**MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING**

9240 9951 11041 11048 11061 11067 11071 11096 11108 11142 11172
11192 11198 12044 12048

0511
0783 4683 4737
5161 5711 6147 7019
7884 11168
0055 1024 2613 4723 4725 4873 4909 5011 5475 5501 5572
6000 6147 6172 6714 7038 7239 7319 8121 8646 9038 9042
9096 9097 9098 9099 9100 9101 9188 9201 9209 9251 9258
10597 10600 11163 12356 12570
7882 8435
7519 8842 9215 9963 10189 10209 10255 10309
7886 9904 9909
0515 8266 8284 8518 9496 10006 10019 10029 10034 10175 10177
10195 10200 10294 11418
0690 0792 0793
2505 2592
7502 7581 8117 8333 8643 9100 9122 9124 9131 9135 9143
9144 9145 9155 12047
7503 7594 8099 8124 8126 8145 8146 9156
7542 7567 10902
2502 2520 2586 2979
7538 7546 7547 10005 10012 10016 10019 10159 10166 10172 10175
10179 11417 11418
7504 7759 8887 8922 9099 12002 12080 12106
7505 7709 8899 8942
2481 2593 2595 2832
6971 6978 7168 7170
7543 7547 7568 10014 10020 10023 10025 10170 10184 10185 10186
10187 11421
7508 7876 8391 11148 12039
0025 0154 0779 0953 1946 3166 3216 4674 4715 4757 4783
4798 4834 4853 4896 5004 5277 5477 5701 5702 5720 5743
5825 5888 6602 7771 9026 9708 10523 10547 10586
2283 2286 2287 2350 2385
0654 0758 0908
2480 2593 2594 2595 2811 2832 2833
0026 0762 4718 5258 6811 6822
0400 6496 6564 6592
7509 7990 8778 8800 9239 10823 10843 11046 11154 12043
0024 0715 0779 0787 0796 0907 0909 0910 0914 0931 0948
0949 0950 0951 1910 1946 2052 2108 2136 2162 3104 3166
3216 3224 4715 4798 5007 5141
3356 3431 4459
7501 7538 7866 8015 8517
0181 2351
4067 4192
0255 1893 1915 1958 1959 2025 2063 2079 2388 2631 2635 2643
OLIVETTLEQUA 4099 4495
ONE_INT 3440
ONE_SHOT 7602 7606 7607 7608 8196
OPEN 0106
PAGE_SIZE 5164 6399 6400 6401
PARTIAL_DATA 7610 9974 10095
PAUSE 0128
PAUSED 5283 6727 6751 6752
PID 0240 4672
PIPE 0134
PIPE_SIZE 7546 10472 11406
PORT_B 4081 4122 4123 4124 4442 4443 4445
POSITION 0210 2354 2355 2386 2387 2590 2591 9206 9207 12276
PR 0242 4893
PRINTER 0191 9425
PRINTER_VECT 0674 0970
PRIVATE 0010
PROC1 0238 4670 4713 4755 4781 4833 4852 5007 6546 10466
PROC2 0239 4671 4782
PROC_NR 0208 2315 2361 2555 2598 3519 3793 3799 3917 3994 4025
6706 7389 10595 12277 12308 12354 12643
PUBLIC 0011
P_SLOT_FREE 0782 0954 1991 4817
QUIT_CHAR 3367 4467
RAM_DEV 0178 9205
RAW 0371 3564 3597 3601 3829 4144
READ 0104 9707 10478
READING 0047 8149 8412 8564 8835 9245 9786 9824 9866 9904 9949
9971 10449 11055 12274
REAL_TIME 0175 3179
RECEIVE 0152 1179 1962
RECEIVING 0785 2001 2006 2072 4762 5001
REP_PROC_NR 0220 2327 2566 4044 10598 10599 12162 12357 12361
REP_STATUS 0221 2328 2567 4045 10599 12162 12241 12285 12287 12321 12361
APPENDIX F  MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING

12397
RET_REG  0686  1947  1951  1958  1964  4685
REVIVE   0148  3571
REVIVING  7777  9027  10558
ROOT_DEV  0061  8262  8468  8798  9084  9215  9244  9246  9257  12034  12443
ROOT_INODE  7534  9084  9246  10820  10821  10849  11086
RUNNING   3436  3660  3675  4024  4196
RWX_MODES  0073  11752
R_BIT     0074  9474  9707  9824  10398  10463  11616
S         0029  0926  0927  0928  0931  0936  0937  3466  3488  4908  5042
          5045  5582  5583  5611  5612  5613  5706  5708  5734  5735  5876
          5996  6139  6154  6155  6156  6330  6362
SAFETY    0872  0913  0951
SCHED_RATE  3090  3101  3244
SCR_LINES  4072  4313  4351  4354
SECONDS_LEFT  0204  3160  6715
SECTOR_SIZE  2479  2591  2810  2835
SEEK_STO    2460  2781  2929
SEND       0151  1179  1956  1958
SENDING    0784  2012  2057  4796
SEP        5925  6064
SEPARATE   5285  5584  5877  6019  6064  6069  6085  6140  6360  6403
SERVER_Q    0692  2093  2137  2163
SETGID     0136  6014  6902  6907  12138
SETUID     0123  6010  6893  6898  12134
SET_ALARM   0171  2992  3125  6705
SET_TIME    0174  3127  11927
SIGALRM    0415  3226  6615
SIGBUS     0411
SIGEMT     0408
SIGFPE     0409
SIGHUP     0402
SIGILL     0405
SIGINT     0403  3659  6565
SIGIOT     0407
SIGKILL    0410  6497
SIGNAL     0138
SIGNUM     0243  4894
SIGPIPE    0414  10467
SIGQUIT    0404  3659  6565
SIGSEGV    0412  6436
SIGSYS     0413
SIGTERM    0416
SIGTRAP    0406
SIG_DFL    0421  6504
SIG_IGN    0422  6501
SIG_MAP    0247  5008  6550  10467
SIG_PUSH_BYTES  0057  4622  4905  6661
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELEMENT</th>
<th>VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIZES</td>
<td>0875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPEC1</td>
<td>2484 2976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPEC2</td>
<td>2485 2977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQUARE_WAVE</td>
<td>3096 3281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRC_BUFFER</td>
<td>0226 4936 4942 7285 10059 10067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRC_PROC_NR</td>
<td>0225 4932 7284 10058 10066</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRC_SPACE</td>
<td>0224 4934 7283 10057 10065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS_REG</td>
<td>0665 0943 4732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST0</td>
<td>2439 2781 2828 2929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST0_BITS</td>
<td>2455 2781 2828 2929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST1</td>
<td>2440 2782 2822 2824 2829</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST2</td>
<td>2441 2822 2829</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST3</td>
<td>2442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST3_FAULT</td>
<td>2456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST3_READY</td>
<td>2458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST3_WR_PROTEC</td>
<td>2457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STACK_CHANGE</td>
<td>6278 6356 6370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STACK_FAULT</td>
<td>0418 6554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STACK_PTR</td>
<td>0241 4756 4836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT</td>
<td>0118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STDOUT_PUT</td>
<td>12610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD_OUTPUT</td>
<td>7359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STIME</td>
<td>0125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOPPED</td>
<td>3437 3669 4147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST_CYL</td>
<td>2443 2832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST_HEAD</td>
<td>2444 2833</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST_PCN</td>
<td>2446 2929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST_SEC</td>
<td>2445 2834</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPER_BLOCK</td>
<td>7533 8650 8653 8837 8842 9184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPER_MAGIC</td>
<td>7514 9187 9250 11059</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPER_SIZE</td>
<td>7545 8838 8843 9097</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPER_USER</td>
<td>0019 6566 6605 6609 6801 6894 6903 11488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSPEND</td>
<td>0197 3830 12285 12318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSPENDED</td>
<td>7775 10498 10524 12115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SU_UID</td>
<td>7515 8996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC</td>
<td>0131 7321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTASK</td>
<td>0159 4724 4907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTEM_TIME</td>
<td>0234 4858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_ABORT</td>
<td>0168 4643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_COPY</td>
<td>0165 4645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_EXEC</td>
<td>0166 4639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_FORKED</td>
<td>0163 4637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_GETSP</td>
<td>0161 4641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_GID</td>
<td>7517 9090 9091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_NEWMAP</td>
<td>0164 4638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_SIG</td>
<td>0162 4644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_TIMES</td>
<td>0167 4642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_UID</td>
<td>7516 9088 9089</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minix Symbol</td>
<td>Cross Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS VECTOR</td>
<td>0675 0966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS XIT</td>
<td>0160 4640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IEXEC</td>
<td>0475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IFBLK</td>
<td>0468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IFCHR</td>
<td>0467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IFDIR</td>
<td>0466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IFMT</td>
<td>0465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IFREG</td>
<td>0469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IREAD</td>
<td>0473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S ISGID</td>
<td>0471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S ISUID</td>
<td>0470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S ISVTX</td>
<td>0472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S IWRITE</td>
<td>0474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>0027 0922 0923 0932 0933 0935 0941 3466 3488 4730 5041 5044 5578 5579 5605 5606 5607 5705 5715 5732 5733 5877 5878 6003 6140 6141 6148 6150 6163 6361 6574 6604 6609 6632 6728 8798 8801 8992 8996 9832 10180 10198 10503 10726 10904 10922 11047 12163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAB MASK</td>
<td>3361 4280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAB SIZE</td>
<td>3360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASK Q</td>
<td>0691 1921 2092 2137 2163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASK REPLY</td>
<td>0149 2326 2565 3518 3793 3806 3897 3994 4025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASK STACK BY</td>
<td>06830714 0913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEXTB</td>
<td>5926 6067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>0113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER0</td>
<td>3093 3282 3283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER2</td>
<td>4078 4440 4441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER3</td>
<td>4079 4439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER MODE</td>
<td>3094 3281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMES</td>
<td>0135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI OCGETC</td>
<td>0379 3978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI OCGETP</td>
<td>0377 3970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI OCSETC</td>
<td>0380 3961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI OCSETP</td>
<td>0378 3954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOP ROW</td>
<td>3378 3711 3716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTB</td>
<td>5929 6077</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO USER</td>
<td>0045 9971 10055 11624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANS STO</td>
<td>2459 2828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>0014 2309 2549 2864 2895 2931 3120 3508 4495 4633 5444 5774 5830 5839 5639 6604 6609 6632 6728 8798 8801 8992 8996 9832 10180 10198 10503 10726 10904 10922 11047 12163 12568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY</td>
<td>0190 3835 4167 7393 9423 9424 12647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY BUF SIZE</td>
<td>3359 3447 3835 3843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY CHAR INT</td>
<td>0192 3512 4165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY FLAGS</td>
<td>0217 3958 3967 4046 12312 12320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY IN BYTES</td>
<td>3357 3382 3596 3649 3684 3773 3850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY IOCTL</td>
<td>0196 3515 12307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY LINE</td>
<td>0214 3510 7390 10594 12309 12644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY O DONE</td>
<td>0193 3517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTY RAM WOR</td>
<td>3358 3389 4293</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TTY_READ  0194  3513
TTY_REQUEST  0215  3953  12310
TTY_SPEK  0216  3956  3957  3963  3964  3965  3966  4047  12311  12319
TTY_WRITE  0195  3514  7388  12642
TWO_INTS  3441  4473
UMASK  0141
UMOUNT  0122
UNCALIBRATED  2522  2767  2800  2823  2932  2979
UNLINK  0111
UNPAUSE  0146
USER_Q  0693
USER_TIME  0233
UTIME  0129
VECTOR_BYTES  0667  0960  0961
VERY_BIG  0873  0922  0924  0926
VID_ORG  4090
WAIT  0108
WAITING  3443  5281  3920  5793  5838  5882  5887  6758  6759
WINCHESTER  0184  9422
WORDS  1484
WORD_MASK  4066
WORD_SIZE  0051
WRITE  0105
WRITE_IMMED  7601  7603  7604  7605  7606  7607  7608  8224
WRITE_PROTECT  2463  2824
WRITING  0048  8139  8225  8439  9593  9844  9887  9962  9963  9968  9973
  10128  10423  12044
W_BIT  0045  6796  6797  7243  7248  7249  8457  8463
XOFF_CHAR  3368  4146  4469
XON_CHAR  3369  4468
XPIPE  7521  10454  10473  10497  10556  10591  12115
XTABS  0370  4277  4462
X_BIT  0076  5966  7243  7248  7249  10887  11534  11814  11815
ZEROBUF_SIZE  5152  5155  5156  5946  5989  6103
ZMAP_BLOCK  7507  7983  8645
ZMAP_SLOTS  7507  7983  8645
ZONE_NUM_SIZE  7537  7543  9096
ZUPER_BLOCK  7608  8228  8848
acc_time  7901
accounting  3253  3239
addr  5301  7902  1036  1038  1049  1250  1254  6301  6305  9550
adjust  6313  6304  6431  6662
advance  10792  9572  9578  10684  10694  10718  10735  10831  11283  11309  11350
  11359
alloc_bit  8689  8244  8256  8457  8463
alloc_inode  8446  9572  9581  10394  10411
alloc_mem  6987  5512  5560  5694  5711  6116  6146
alloc_zone 8235 10149 10177 10197 10283 10294
allowed 7224 5966 6796 6797
alt 3449 3722 3734 4154
b_data 7588 8311 8838 8843 9137 9185 9216 9972
b_dir 7589 10902 10943
b_ind 7590 10023 10032 10191 10211 11421
b_inode 7591 8561
b_int 7592 8658 8659 8716 8717 8724 8761 8763 10327
beep 4427 4244
begbss 1339
block 1384 2582 2591 2592 2593 2594 2595 8079 8081 8099 8102 8143
boot_time 3099 3180 3192
buf_count 7362 7374 7375 7387 7392 7394
buf_pool 9107 9077
bufcount 12613 12628 12629 12641 12646 12648
buffer 7903 1502 1691 1693 1697 9031 9838 9874 9878 10500 11585
bufs_in_use 7598 8104 8117 8118 8178 8643 8660 8679 9120
build_sig 1612 1360 1371 1594 1605 1612 4902
busy_map 0795 1895 1899 1904 1905 1915
caplock 3448 3710 3715 3735
cause_sig 4960 3226 3663
cd_flag 7904 11486 11488
change 11515 11493 11507
check_sig 6577 6523 6566
child 7905 5849 5850 5866 5867 5870 5871 5872 5876 5877 5878
  5881 5883 12074 12079
chuck 3761 3610 3619
cleanup 5849 5794 5829 5894
clear_zone 10222 9853 10302
clock_int 1217 0989 0967 1114 1124 1215 1217
clock_mess 2986 2642 2732 11872 11927 11928 11929 12426 12439 12440 12444
  12447
clock_task 3109 5134 5143
clock_time 12431 8512 8515 9808 9891 10151 10161 10212 10883 10913 10951
  11910 11912 12025 12035
cmp_string 12454 10908
cm_mode 7906 11752
color 4102 0890 0957 1363 1364 1378 1671 1675 1679 1688
  1694 1699 1712 1714 1717 4474
console 4178 4463
count 3449 1602 3711 3716 3723 3733 4146 4154
copy 12475 1364 1405 1413 1433 1435 1436 1439 1440 1441 1477
  1507 1508 1509 1511 1512 1647 1695 1696 1711 1717 1732
  1745 8565 8567 8838 8843 9185 9216 10947
copy_mess 7219 7283 7284 7285 7287 7288 7289 7291 7292 7293
cp_mess 1490 1354 1370 1475 1481 1490 2004 2055
cret 1660 1362 1371 1634 1637
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Addresses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>csv</td>
<td>1638 1361 1371 1634 1636 1646 1649 1650 1657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cur_proc</td>
<td>0707 0990 1132 1178 1289 1378 1653 1921 2105 2108 2110 2113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>del_slot</td>
<td>7072 7012 7112 7123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dev_close</td>
<td>12248 9702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dev_io</td>
<td>12261 8311 9837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dev_mess</td>
<td>12226 12240 12241 12254 12274 12275 12276 12277 12278 12279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12282 12285 12287 12307 12308 12309 12310 12311 12312 12315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12318 12319 12320 12321 12337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dev_open</td>
<td>12233 9518 9662 9666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disk_int</td>
<td>1203 0891 0969 1113 1124 1201 1203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dma_setup</td>
<td>2653 2624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_abort</td>
<td>4868 4643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_access</td>
<td>11760 9324 9368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_alarm</td>
<td>6679 7424 7455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_brk</td>
<td>6283 7423 7445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_brk2</td>
<td>5534 7425 7495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_cancel</td>
<td>4003 3516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_charint</td>
<td>3528 3512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_chdir</td>
<td>11475 9324 9347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_chmod</td>
<td>11677 9324 9350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_chown</td>
<td>11715 9324 9351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_chroot</td>
<td>11500 9324 9396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_clocktick</td>
<td>3199 3128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_close</td>
<td>9680 9325 9341 12005 12108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_copy</td>
<td>4922 4645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_creat</td>
<td>9479 9325 9343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_dup</td>
<td>11981 9325 9376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_exec</td>
<td>4746 5934 4639 7423 7487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_exit</td>
<td>12093 9325 9336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_fork</td>
<td>4658 5683 12057 4637 7423 7430 9325 9337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_fstat</td>
<td>11575 9325 9363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_get_time</td>
<td>3175 3126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_getset</td>
<td>6867 7423 7448 7451 7452 7474 7475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_getsp</td>
<td>4825 4641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_ioctl</td>
<td>3941 12294 3515 9326 9389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_kill</td>
<td>6519 7424 7465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_ksig</td>
<td>6530 7425 7493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_link</td>
<td>11275 9326 9344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_lseek</td>
<td>9721 9326 9354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_mem</td>
<td>2337 2319 2320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_mknod</td>
<td>9541 9326 9349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_mm_exit</td>
<td>5767 7423 7429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_mount</td>
<td>11023 9326 9356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_newmap</td>
<td>4698 4638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_open</td>
<td>9622 9326 9340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_pause</td>
<td>6723 7424 7457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_pipe</td>
<td>10384 9327 9377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do_rdwtx</td>
<td>2576 2559 2560</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
do_read  3784 9784 3513 9327 9338
do_revive 12149 9327 9403
do_set  12124 9327 9358 9381
do_set_time 3187 3127
do_setalarm 3142 3125
do_setup  2377 2321
do_sig     4880 4644
do_signal  6488 7424 7476
do_stat    11553 9327 9353
do_stime   11920 9327 9360
do_sync    12018 9328 9378 9403
195 9327 9358 9381
12124 9327 9358 9381
11920 9327 9360
12018 9328 9378 9403
11920 9327 9360
12018 9328 9378 9403
11920 9327 9360
do_time   11905 9328 9348
do_times   4844 4642
do_tims     11937 9328 9378
do_umask    11746 9328 9395
do_umount   11126 9328 9357
do_unlink   11342 9328 9345
do_unpause  10572 9329 9401
do_utime    11877 9329 9365
do_wait     5809 7423 7435
do_write    3905 10125 3514 9329 9339
do_xit      4771 4640
dont_reply  5202 7803 5451 5461 5774 5830 5839 6569 6632 6728 8997
9006 10503 12163
dump_core   6774 6672
dup_inode   8579 9086 9254 10421 10723 11487 12084 12085
eat_path   10675 9631 9643 11033 11070 11189 11192 11283 11287 11524 11528
11559 11565 11683 11687 11721 11728 11766 11770 11883 11887
echo      3746 3611 3612 3613 3620 3621 3631 3662 3687
eff_grp_id 7907 12139
eff_user_id 7908 12136
erkli      7909 3947 3952 3974 3985 3994
err_code   5212 7817 5452 8259 8404 8465 8921 9491 9497 9548 9551 9579
9601 9610 9615 9638 9643 9691 9730 9823 9955 10178 10202 10297
10416 10782 10813 10942 11040 11041 11068 11072 11086 11141
11142 11196 11286 11287 11304 11305 11310 11313 11335 11359
11527 11528 11564 11565 11583 11686 11687 11727 11728 11769
11770 11886 11887 11994 12302 12535 12539 12540
escape     4362 4236
exec_len   5303 5958 5963
exec_name  5302 5961
fd         7910 5942 5966 5968 5972 5974 5983 5991 6003 6004 6005
6030 6031 6062 6089 6216 6217 6235 7233 7238 7239 7244
7249 7257 7259 9030 9691 9714 9811 9812 9813 9814 9823
10499 11583 11992 11997 12004 12107
fd2        7911 11999 12002 12003 12004 12009 12010 12011
fdc_out    2872 2772 2773 2774 2779 2805 2806 2807 2808 2809 2810
2811 2812 2813 2919 2920 2925 2926 2975 2976 2977
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fdc_results</td>
<td>2843 2780 2820 2926 2968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetch_name</td>
<td>12512 9491 9548 9638 11040 11066 11141 11286 11304 11353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11527 11564 11686 11727 11769 11886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find_dev</td>
<td>12328 12239 12253 12271 12305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find_filp</td>
<td>8930 9807 9898 10446 10452 10463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>3884 3661 4210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floppy</td>
<td>2508 1203 2520 2587 2654 2704 2758 2793 2844 2904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2952 2965 2979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floppy_task</td>
<td>2540 5134 5142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flush</td>
<td>4326 12637 3754 4202 4243 4287 4293 4350 12625 12629 12630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbidden</td>
<td>11782 9508 9517 9645 10888 11534 11773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_bit</td>
<td>8747 8288 8479 8536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_inode</td>
<td>8525 8436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_mem</td>
<td>7026 5878 6141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_slots</td>
<td>6982 7038 7041 7087 7088 7172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free_zone</td>
<td>8275 10296 11412 11417 11422 11427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fs_call</td>
<td>7813 9000 9003 9029 9045 10499 12134 12138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fs_init</td>
<td>9069 8989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fstack</td>
<td>7819 9331 9332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>func</td>
<td>5304 2986 2889 2995 6501 6504 6510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>func_key</td>
<td>4519 3593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_block</td>
<td>8079 8553 8560 8639 8650 8655 8832 8837 8842 9176 9184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9214 9215 9936 9951 9964 9997 10022 10031 10089 10094 10150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10189 10209 10237 10255 10280 10309 10881 10899 11400 11420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_byte</td>
<td>1759 1365 1371 1751 1755 1759 4197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_chrome</td>
<td>1673 0890 0957 1363 1371 1668 1673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_fd</td>
<td>8871 9492 9640 10398 10401 11999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_filp</td>
<td>8916 9688 9691 9727 9730 9807 9823 10582 10592 11580 11583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11989 11994 12300 12302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_inode</td>
<td>8379 8458 8477 9075 9084 9235 9246 10806 10809 10818 10830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10849 11033 11086</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_name</td>
<td>10749 10719 10728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_super</td>
<td>8771 8245 8254 8282 8287 8459 8462 8532 8535 8554 8557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8640 8642 8676 8678 8815 8817 9806 9846 10281 10289 11838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11840 12026 12034 12437 12443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get_work</td>
<td>5471 9016 5446 8993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>7913 11734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grpid</td>
<td>5305 6903 6905 6906 6907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hole_head</td>
<td>6981 7000 7042 7051 7082 7083 7138 7171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idle</td>
<td>1319 1289 1290 1317 1321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in_char</td>
<td>3581 3559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform</td>
<td>4987 2078 4980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initialized</td>
<td>2529 2611 2643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int_mess</td>
<td>0710 1132 1205 1206 1219 1220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interleave</td>
<td>2535 2594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrupt</td>
<td>1878 1103 1105 1106 1111 1112 1113 1114 1128 1189 1198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1206 1210 1220 1224 1263 1321 1322 1603 1604 1782 1789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1796 1810 4167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX F

MINIX CROSS REFERENCE LISTING

invalidate 8326 9700 11165
ioflags 7912
k_stack 0717 0948 0950 1132 1163 1277 1279
keyboard 4103 4165 4166 4167
keyboard 4113 1128 1189
kill_sig 5306 6523
last_dir 10703 9572 9575 10684 10687 11283 11305 11350 11354
len 2534 1984 1994 1998 2810 6783 6812 6813 11515 11518 11527 12512 12514 12525 12529 12534 12539
load_bit_maps 8631 9257 11091
load_ram 9163 9078
load_seg 6216 6003 6004
load_super 9231 9079
lock 1567 0902 1357 1359 1370 1564 1586 1588 1730 1731
lost_ticks 0704 1897 3209 3211
lpr_int 196 0892 0970 1124 1194 1196
ls_fd 7915 9730 12302
m24 3486 3715 3717
m Sig 6483 6705 6706 6707 6714 6715
main 0880 5435 8980 128 166
major 12227 8243 8260 8265 8454 8466 8471 12240 12254 12282 12315 12333 12335 12336
make_break 3695 3589 3599
max_hole 7131 6117 6135
mc 3103 3121 3122 3125 3127 3129 3133 3134 3160 3179 3180
mem_copy 7268 5716 5963 5981 5999 6171 6829
mem_init 7153 5518
mem_task 2292 5134 5142
merge 7095 7052 7065
mess 2285 2532 10379 2311 2312 2313 2314 2315 2318 2319 2320 2321 2326 2327 2328 2329 2551 2552 2553 2554 2555 2558 2559 2560 2565 2566 2567 2568 2733 2776 2817 2922 2962 2992 2993 2994 2995 2996 3007 3008 10465 10466 10467 10468 10594 10595 10596 10597 10598 10599
mini_rec 2032 1963
mini_send 1971 1893 1914 1957 5010
minor 12227 8243 8260 8265 8454 8467 8471 12309 12334 12337
mk_mode 7916
mm_call 5209 5455 5458 5462 5478 6877
mm_callvec 5429 5458 7427
mm_exit 5782 5773 6671
mm_in 5206 5304 5310 5475 5476 5478 6546 6550
mm_init 5508 5441 5508
mm_out 5207 5317 5318 5319 5501
mm_stack 5216 5527 7420 7421
mode 7917 2664 2699 2690 2691 3588 3597 3601 3605 3607 7234 7242 7243 9495 9549 9637 9639 11704 11773
mode_map 9474 9639
motor_goal 2526 2641 2722 2723 2725 2726 2747 2748 2749 2958
motor_status 2525 2723 2724 2726 2747 2749 2801 2957
mounted 8789 9700
move_to 4343 4248 4252 4256 4260 4269 4273 4398 4489
name 7918 9491 9638 11141 11353 11493 11507 11686 11769
name1 7919 9548 11040 11286 11564 11727
name1_length 7922 9548 11040 11286 11564 11727
name2 7920 11066 11304 11566
name2_length 7923 11066 11304
name_length 7921 9491 9638 11141 11353 11493 11507 11686 11769
name_to_dev 11180 11034 11041 11134 11142
namelen 5307
nbytes 7924 9032 9821 9822 9838 9846 9858 9861 9863 9879 10501
need_reset 2528 2621 2775 2816 2864 2882 2895 2921 2931 2955
new_block 10265 9936 9955 10881 10941
new_mem 6097 5988
new_node 9557 9488 9496 9550
next_alarm 3100 3165 3167 3213 3215 3233 3234
next_pid 5676 5742 5744 5748 5760
no_call 12391 9329 9420 9421 9422 9423 9424 9425
no_sys 7298 12547 7425 7428 7431 7432 7433 7434 7436 7437 7438
7439 7440 7441 7442 7443 7444 7446 7447 7449 7450 7453
7454 7456 7458 7459 7460 7461 7462 7463 7464 7466 7467
7468 7469 7470 7471 7472 7473 7477 7478 7479 7480 7481
7482 7483 7484 7485 7486 7487 7488 7489 7490 7491 7494 7496
7497 9329 9335 9342 9346 9352 9355 9359 9361 9362 9364
9366 9367 9369 9370 9372 9373 9374 9375 9379 9380 9382
9383 9384 9385 9386 9387 9388 9390 9391 9392 9393 9394
9397 9398 9400 9402 9404
numlock 3448 3712 3717 3736
offset 7925 1418 1420 1502 1504 1691 1695 1710 1758 1764 4188
4192 4193 4197 4199 4205 4308 4313 4315 4318 9737 9738
9739
olivetti 3450 3708 4495
out_char 4217 3753 4198 4264 4279 4512
owner 7926 11733
panic 1012 7309 12558 0990 1128 1233 1375 1646 1650 1656 2313
2553 2613 2684 2686 2969 2972 3129 4723 4725 4873 4909
5011 5475 5475 5501 5717 6000 6147 6172 6714 7038 7239
8117 8121 8646 8762 8782 9038 9042 9096 9097 9098 9099
9100 9101 9188 9201 9209 9251 9258 10547 10586 10597 10600
11163 11929 12335 12356 12440
panicking 12425 12567 12568
parent 7927 4778 4781 4783 4785 5861 5867 5882 12073
patch_ptr 6183 5997
pathname 7928 12528
phys_copy 1387 0961 1056 1353 1370 1382 1385 1387 2367 2369 3868
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pick_proc</td>
<td>4726 4910 4952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pid</td>
<td>2086 0976 1922 2168 2204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pipe_check</td>
<td>5308 4667 4672 4684 6523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port_in</td>
<td>10433 9857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port_out</td>
<td>1547 1356 1370 1544 1546 1547 2852 2854 2856 2859 2887 4121 4122 4442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev_ptr</td>
<td>1529 0979 1355 1370 1525 1527 1529 1888 2690 2691 2692 2693 2694 2695 2696 2698 2725 2748 2890 2959 2960 3281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev_proc</td>
<td>3282 3283 4123 4124 4134 4148 4170 4417 4418 4419 4420 4439 4440 4441 4443 4445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev_motor</td>
<td>2527 2723 2727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev_proc</td>
<td>2086 0976 1922 2168 2204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prev_ptr</td>
<td>3102 2044 2062 2065 3243 3245 6997 7012 7016 7036 7058 7063 7064 7065 7072 7073 7085 8096 8124 8125 8129 8130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>print_buf</td>
<td>8131 8134 8170 8180 8181 8182 8187 8189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>printbuf</td>
<td>7363 7374 7391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>printf</td>
<td>12614 12628 12645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro</td>
<td>0695 5169 7549 1001 1002 1003 1004 1023 1024 1025 1027 2825 5566 5567 5568 5569 5570 5572 7318 7319 7320 8263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proc_addr</td>
<td>8265 8314 8469 8471 9212 9221 9224 12569 12570 12571 7929 6736 6737 6748 6753 6760 6765 10585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procs_in_use</td>
<td>9794 9786 10128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put_block</td>
<td>10082 9008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put_inode</td>
<td>6030 5972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putc</td>
<td>11830 11695 11731 11821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putch_msg</td>
<td>9794 9786 10128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ram_limit</td>
<td>2122 0915 2007 2058 4738 4763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ram_origin</td>
<td>7914 12140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rd_chars</td>
<td>7931 12135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
realtime
reboot
recalibrate
release
reply
reply_i1
reply_i2
reply_i4
reply_t1
reply_t2
reply_t3
reply_t4
reply_type
request
res_ptr
reset
restart
restore
result2
resvec
revive
reviving
rw_block
rw_chunk
rw_dev
rw_dev2
rw_inode
rw_super
rw_user
s_call
save
scale_factor
scan_code
sched
sched_ticks
scroll_screen
<p>| search_dir | 10861 9596 10812 11324 11371 |
| seconds | 5309 6686 |
| seek | 2757 2630 |
| send_mess | 3003 2718 2732 |
| set_6845 | 4403 4319 4336 4355 4487 4488 |
| set_alarm | 6695 5799 6687 |
| set_map | 5593 |
| set_vec | 1036 0964 0965 0966 0967 0968 0969 0970 0973 |
| sh | 3464 3710 3711 3712 3716 |
| shift1 | 3448 3710 3715 3731 |
| shift2 | 3448 3710 3715 3732 |
| sig | 5310 7933 1605 3588 3659 3663 4889 4984 4902 6496 6497 6498 |
| sig_proc | 6640 6436 6627 |
| sig_procs | 0709 2078 4978 5009 |
| sig_stuff | 4622 1605 1617 1620 1622 1624 1626 4898 4902 |
| size_ok | 6382 6087 6361 |
| sizes | 1330 0889 0904 0925 0927 0928 0932 0934 0935 0936 0937 |
| slot1 | 7934 11484 12103 12133 |
| stack_bytes | 5311 5956 |
| stack_fault | 6418 6555 |
| stack_ptr | 5312 5979 |
| start_motor | 2703 2627 2918 |
| stat_inode | 11592 11566 11585 |
| status | 5313 2848 2852 2853 2854 2855 2856 2857 2859 2860 2951 |
| steps_per_cyl | 2530 2612 2615 2774 2782 |
| stop_motor | 2740 2581 2642 |
| super_user | 7802 8996 9547 11037 11138 11295 11368 11506 11692 11724 11800 |
| | 11891 11926 |
| surprise | 1231 0892 0964 1115 1125 1229 1231 |
| susp_count | 7804 10457 10497 10527 12115 |
| suspend | 10488 10454 10473 12285 12318 |
| sys_call | 1929 1128 1180 |
| sys_task | 4627 5134 5143 |
| task | 12227 0890 0914 1107 1110 1117 1181 1205 1219 1264 1288 |
| | 1313 1653 1808 1878 1879 1892 1893 1896 1900 5141 10488 |
| | 10489 10497 10502 10579 10589 10591 10597 10600 12240 12254 |
| | 12282 12285 12315 12318 12336 |
| task_mess | 0796 1900 1914 |
| tot_mem | 5428 5517 5518 5563 |
| tp | 7935 11928 |
| transfer | 2792 2634 |
| trap | 0997 1103 1105 1128 1242 |
| trp | 1240 0892 0965 1116 1125 1238 1240 |
| truncate | 11388 8433 9508 |
| tty_buf | 3447 3835 3845 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Line Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tty_copy_buf</td>
<td>3446 3543 3555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tty_driver_buf</td>
<td>3445 4157 4160 4161 4162 4166 4486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tty_init</td>
<td>4453 3507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tty_int</td>
<td>1187 0891 0968 1111 1124 1185 1187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tty_reply</td>
<td>4031 3518 3571 3793 3806 3897 3994 4025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tty_struct</td>
<td>3380 3431 3505 3510 3539 3562 3587 3590 3747 3762 3785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3814 3885 3906 3942 4004 4144 4145 4147 4179 4218 4305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4327 4344 4363 4457 4459 4473 4485 4489 4512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tty_task</td>
<td>3500 5135 5142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umap</td>
<td>5021 0893 0960 2346 2362 2667 2672 3827 3834 3835 3913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3927 4619 4722 4724 4907 4908 4944 4949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umess</td>
<td>9779 10057 10058 10059 10060 10061 10062 10065 10066 10067 10068</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10069 10070 10073 10074 10075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unexpected_int</td>
<td>0987 1128 1233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unload_bit_maps</td>
<td>8669 11163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unlock</td>
<td>1578 1358 1370 1575 1578 2697 2728 2961 3552 4446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unm24</td>
<td>3475 3715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unpause</td>
<td>6736 6623 7425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unread</td>
<td>2153 2013 2073 4789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsh</td>
<td>3454 3710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>update_time</td>
<td>7936 11893</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_path</td>
<td>7814 9496 9550 9643 10770 10776 10781 11041 11070 11142 11287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11305 11354 11528 11565 11687 11728 11770 11887 12527 12539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usr_id</td>
<td>5314 6894 6896 6897 6898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utime_file</td>
<td>7937 11886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utime_length</td>
<td>7938 11886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid_base</td>
<td>4105 4318 4332 4386 4475 4480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid_copy</td>
<td>1701 1364 1371 1685 1691 1701 4318 4332 4386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid_mask</td>
<td>4106 4311 4313 4476 4481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid_port</td>
<td>4107 4417 4418 4419 4420 4477 4482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vid_retrace</td>
<td>4104 4385 4478 4483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whence</td>
<td>7939 9736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>5208 7812 5447 5463 5476 5477 5550 5731 5752 5753 5826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5963 5965 5991 5999 6010 6014 6022 6157 6235 6303 6544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6687 6889 6898 6907 8995 9007 9028 9044 9811 9816 9822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9838 10584 11483 11624 11943 12070 12100 12131 12161 12308 12539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whom</td>
<td>9053 9054</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wipe_inode</td>
<td>8503 8493 11434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wreboot</td>
<td>1787 1028 1367 1372 1776 1787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write_map</td>
<td>10135 10295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zero_block</td>
<td>10318 9952 9970 10190 10210 10256 10310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute path name, 255</td>
<td>Bad disk blocks, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract data type, 289</td>
<td>Banker’s algorithm, 132-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access control list, 292-293</td>
<td>Bare hardware, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access matrix, 291-292</td>
<td>Base register, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC: SS system call, 329</td>
<td>Batch system, 6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACK (see Amsterdam Compiler Kit)</td>
<td>Belady’s anomaly, 215-216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgement, 67</td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACL (see Access control list)</td>
<td>alphabetical, 342-349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acyclic graph (see Directed acyclic graph)</td>
<td>suggested readings, 337-342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address, virtual, 207</td>
<td>Binary semaphore, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging, algorithm, 218-219</td>
<td>BIOS, 192, 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALARM system call, 245</td>
<td>Bit map, 302-304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplification, rights, 295</td>
<td>Block bit map, 302-304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amsterdam Compiler Kit, 14</td>
<td>Block cache, 270-272, 305-306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architecture, computer, 3</td>
<td>Block device, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly language, MINIX, 99-102</td>
<td>Boot block, 300-301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least once execution, 70</td>
<td>Bounded buffer, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At most once execution, 70</td>
<td>BRK system call, 237, 243-244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT&amp;T, 13</td>
<td>Buddy system, 203-205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atomic action, 60</td>
<td>Buffer cache (see Block cache)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atomic update, 274-276</td>
<td>Buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atomicity failure, 275</td>
<td>bounded, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication, 68, 285-289</td>
<td>cache, 270-272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoidance of deadlock, 130-135</td>
<td>I/O, 119-120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Bus, 369
Busy waiting, 55

C

C programming language, 350-362
C-list (see Capability list)
Cache
    buffer, 270-272
    track, 148
    write-through, 271
Caching algorithms, 148
Capability, 293-295
Capability list, 293
Cats, identification method, 288
Cbreak mode, 30
Challenge-response, 287
Channel
    covert, 297-298
    I/O, 112
Character device, 111
CHDIR system call, 328-329
Checkerboarding, 205
Child process, 15
CHMOD system call, 329
CHOWN system call, 329
CHROOT system call, 328-329
Circular wait condition, 124
Click, 366
Client-server model, 40-42
Clock
    154-160
    paging algorithm, 215
    software, 155-160
    tick, 154
CLOSK system call, 321
CMS (see Conversational monitor system)
Command interpreter, 15
Commit operation, 277-278
Compaction, memory, 199
Concurrency control, 276-277
Condition variable, 65
Confinement problem, 297-298
Context switch, 81
Controller, 369
Conversational monitor system, 40
Cooked mode, 30, 165
Core image, 15
Covert channel, 297-298
CP/M, directory structure, 261
CREAT system call, 319-320

Critical section
    TSL instruction, 57
    busy waiting solution, 53
    definition, 53
    disabling interrupts, 54
    equivalence of solutions, 72-75
    event counters, 62-63
    lock variable, 54
    message passing, 72
    monitors, 63-67
    Peterson's solution, 55-56
    semaphores, 60-62
    sleep and wakeup, 58-60
    strict alternation, 54-55
CTSS, 10
Current directory (see working directory)

D

Daemon, 121
printer, 52
DAG (see Directed acyclic graph)
Deadlock, 63, 122-135
    avoidance, 130-135
    banker's algorithm, 132-135
    detection, 128
    models, 124-127
    necessary conditions, 124
    prevention, 128-130
    trajectory, 132
Deadly embrace (see deadlock)
Degree of multiprogramming, 193
Demand paging, 219
Descriptor, file, 308-309
Device
    block, 111
    character, 11
    controller, 112
    driver, 118-119
    independence, 116, 119-120
    register, 2
Dialup line, protection, 289
Dining philosophers, 75-78
Direct memory access, 114-116
Directed acyclic graph
    deadlocks, 124-125
    shared files, 263
Directory, 17, 254-256, 306-308
    root, 17
    structure, 261-263
    working, 18, 255
INDEX

Disk
scheduling algorithms, 144-146
errors, 146-148
I/O, 143-153
space management, 256-258
Diskette (see Floppy disk)
Dispatching (see scheduling)
Distributed operating system, 12, 41, 68-70
DMA (see Direct memory access)
Domain, 68
switching, 291-292
Dump, incremental, 267
DUP system call, 330

E
Echoing, 166
Electronic mail, 121
Elevator algorithm, 145-146
Error, I/O, 146-148
Escape sequences, 170
Event counter, 62-63
EXEC system call, 234-237, 242-243
EXIT system call, 233, 241-242
Extended machine, 4
External fragmentation, 205

F
Failure atomicity, 275
FAT (see File allocation table)
Fault tolerance, 275
FIFO (see First-in first-out algorithm)
Fifty-percent rule, 206
File, 16-20, 252
allocation table, 259-261
descriptor, 18, 308-309
indexed sequential, 252
multiversion, 276
position, 308
random access, 254
replicated, 279
server, 273-279
shared, 263-265
storage, 258-261
File system, 251-336
backup, 266-267
consistency, 267-270
design, 256-273
performance, 270-273
File system (continued)
reliability, 266-270
root, 33
user view, 251-256
Finger length identification, 287-288
Fingerprint identification, 287
First-in first-out algorithm, 215-216
Fixed partitions, 196-198
Flags, 366
Floppy disk driver, 149-153
FORK system call, 233, 241-242
Fragmentation
external, 205
internal, 205
FSTAT system call, 328-329

G
GE-645, 11
GETGID system call, 246
GETPID system call, 246
GETUID system call, 246
Global replacement algorithm, 221-222

H
Handler, interrupt, 117-118
Hold and wait condition, 124

I
I-node, 260-261, 301-302, 304
I-bit map, 302-304
I/O software, 116-122
IBM 1401, 6-10
IBM 360, 8-9
IBM 7094, 7-10
IBM PC, 12, 14, 363-370
system architecture, 369-370
Incremental dump, 267
Input/Output, 110-190
Intel 8088, 363-368
Intentions list, 278
Interdata 7/32, 11
Interleaving, 115
Internal fragmentation, 205
Interprocess communication, 51-75
Interrupt handler, 117-118
Interrupt vector, 50, 369
IOCTL system call, 331
IPC (see Interprocess communication)

J
Job, 6

K
Kernel
call, 36
mode, 3, 37
MINIX, 88, 90-105
minimal, 40
KILL system call, 237-238, 244-246

L
Layered operating system, 37-39, 87-88
Least recently used algorithm, 216-219
Limit register, 197
LINK system call, 328
Link to a file, 263-265
Local replacement algorithm, 221-222
Locality of reference, 219
Lock variable, 54
Locking, 277
Locking pages in memory, 225
LRU (see Least recently used algorithm)
LSEEK system call, 321

M
Machine language, 2
Mail, 121
Mailbox, 70
Major device number, 19
Maybe execution, 70
Memory compaction, 199
Memory management, 191-250
MINIX, 226-247
monoprogramming, 192-193
multiprogramming, 193-198
paging, 207-226
swapping, 198-206
Memory management algorithms, 202-205, 213-222
aging, 218-219

INDEX
best fit, 202
buddy system, 203-205
first fit, 202
first-in, first-out, 215-216
least recently used, 216-219
next fit, 202
not frequently used, 217-218
not recently used, 214
optimal, 213
page fault frequency, 222
quick fit, 203
worst fit, 202
Memory management unit, 207-212
Message passing, 67-71, 74-75
design issues, 67-68
remote procedure call, 68-70
Messages
MINIX file system, 299-300
MINIX memory management, 229-230
Microprogram, 2
MINIX
assembly code, 101-102
Block cache, 304-305
booting, 300-301
clock driver, 158-160
deadlock handling, 139
device drivers, 135-138
directories, 306-308
file descriptors, 308-309
file system consistency, 267-270
file system design, 299-311
file system implementation, 311-332
floppy disk driver, 149-153
header files, 92-95
history, 13-14
i-node, 267-270, 301-302, 304-305
implementation of processes, 90-105
initialization, 98
input/output, 135-139
internal structure, 87-88
interprocess communication, 89-90, 102-104
interrupt handling, 99-101
pipes, 309-311
process data structures, 95-97
process management, 88-89
processes, 87-90
RAM disk driver, 141-143
scheduling, 90, 104-105
signals, 237-238
source code, 91-92
special files, 309-311
super-block, 301-302
MINIX (continued)
  system call handling, 233-247, 241-247
  system task, 182-186
  terminal driver, 171-182
  zombie, 233
  zone map, 302
MINIX file system design
  299-311
  bit maps, 302-304
  block cache, 305-306
  directories and paths, 306-308
  file descriptors, 308-309
  file system layout, 300-302
  file system messages, 299-300
  i-nodes, 304-305
  pipes and special files, 309-311
MINIX file system implementation
  block management, 313-315
  changing directories, 328-329
  closing a file, 321
  creating a file, 319-320
  directories and paths, 325-328
  dispatch table, 319
  file descriptor management, 317-318
  file status, 328-329
  header files, 312-313
  i-node management, 315-316
  I/O device interface, 331
  main program, 318-319
  mounted file systems, 327-328
  opening a file, 321
  operations on files, 319-325
  pipes, 325
  reading a file, 321-323
  super-block management, 316-317
  table management, 313-318
  time, 330
  utility procedures, 332
  writing a file, 324-325
MINIX I/O design
  clock driver, 158-159
  design, floppy disk driver, 149-150
  design, RAM disk driver, 141-142
  design, terminal driver, 171-177
MINIX I/O implementation
  clock driver, 159-160
  floppy disk driver, 151-153
  RAM disk driver, 142-143
  terminal driver, 177-182
  kernel design, 87-90
MINIX kernel design
  87-90
  internal structure, 87-88
  interprocess communication, 89-90
MINIX kernel design (continued)
  process management, 88-89
  design, scheduling, 90
MINIX kernel implementation, 90-105
  assembly code utilities, 101-102
  data structures, 95-97
  header files, 92-95
  interprocess communication, 102-103
  interrupt handling, 99-101
  scheduling, 104-105
  source code organization, 91-92
  system initialization, 98
MINIX memory management design, 226-239
  BRK system call, 237
  data structures, 230-233
  EXEC system call, 234-237
  EXIT system call, 233-234
  FORK system call, 233-234
  memory layout, 227-229
  messages, 229-230
  signal handling, 237-239
  WAIT system call, 233-234
MINIX memory management implementation, 240-247
  BRK system call, 243-244
  EXEC system call, 242-243
  EXIT system call, 241-242
  FORK system call, 241-242
  header files, 239-240
  main program, 240
  signal handling, 244-246
  utility procedures, 246-247
  WAIT system call, 241-242
MINIX source code files.
  alloc.c, 246
  break.c, 243-244
  buf.h, 312
  cache.c, 313-315
  callnr.h, 94
  clock.c, 158-160
  com.h, 94
  const.h, 92, 95-96, 239, 312
  dev.h, 312
  device.c, 331
  error.h, 94
  exec.c, 242-243
  file.h, 312
  filedes.c, 317-318
  floppy.c, 149-153
  floppyexit.c, 241-242
  fiproc.h, 313
  getset.c, 246
  glo.h, 96, 239, 313
INDEX

MULTICS
  history, 10-11
  protection domain, 291
  ring mechanism, 291
  security flaw, 282
  virtual memory, 210-211, 212
Multilevel scheduling, 83-84
Multiprogramming, 8-11, 46, 193-198
  analysis, 194-195
  degree, 193
  fixed partitions, 196-198
  model, 193-194
  variable partitions, 198-200
Multiversion file, 276
Murphy’s law, 52
Mutual exclusion, 53-57
Mutual exclusion condition, 124

N

Network operating system, 12
NFU (see Not frequently used algorithm)
No pre-emption condition, 124
Not frequently used algorithm, 214
Not recently used algorithm, 214
NRU (see Not Recently Used algorithm)

O

Object, 289
OPEN system call, 319-321
Operating system
  (see also specific systems)
  file system, 251-336
  function, 3-5
  history, 5-14
  I/O, 110-191
  memory management, 191-250
  processes, 45-109
  structure, 36-42
Optimal paging algorithm, 214
OS/360, 9
  memory management, 196-197
  security flaw, 283
Ostrich algorithm, 127-128
Overlapped seek, 143
Overlay, 206

MINIX source code files (continued)
  inode.c, 315-316
  inode.h, 313
  klib88.s, 101-102
  link.c, 328
  main.c, 98, 240, 318-319
  memory.c, 142-143
  misc.c, 330-331
  mount.c, 327-328
  mproc.h, 239-240
  mpix88.s, 99-101
  open.c, 319-321
  param.h, 240, 313
  path.c, 325-326
  pipe.c, 325
  proc.c, 102-105
  proc.h, 96-97
  protect.c, 329
  putc.c, 247
  read.c, 321-323
  sgty.h, 94
  signal.c, 244-246
  signal.h, 94
  stadir.c, 328-329
  super.c, 316-317
  super.h, 313
  system.c, 182-186
  table.c, 93, 247, 312, 319
  time.c, 330
  trv.c, 171-185
  type.h, 94-95, 97, 240, 313
  utility.c, 246-247, 332
  write.c, 323-324
Minor device number, 19
Minor device, 33
Missing block, 268
Mkfs, 302, 303
MKNOD system call, 319-321
MMU (see Memory management unit)
  Modified bit, 214
Monitor, 63-67
  producer-consumer problem, 65-66
  used to implement semaphore, 74-74
Monolithic operating system, 36-37
Monoprogramming, 192-193
Motorola 68000, 11, 12
MOUNT system call, 327-328
Mounted file system, 307-308
MS-DOS
  cache, 271
  directory structure, 262
  file allocation table, 259-261
INDEX

P

Page fault, 209
Page fault frequency algorithm, 222
Page frame, 208
Page replacement algorithms, 213-222
  aging, 218-219
  first-in, first-out, 215-216
  least recently used, 216-219
  not frequently used, 217-218
  not recently used, 214
  optimal, 213
  page fault frequency, 222
Page size, 222-223
Paging, 207-226
  allocation policy, 221-222
  implementation issues, 224-226
  thrashing, 220
  working set model, 219-220
Password, 285-287
  security, 286
  one time, 286
Path expression, 72
Path, 17, 306-308
  absolute, 255
  relative, 255
PAUSE system call, 245-246
PDP-11, 11
Penetration team, 283
Performance, multiprogramming, 194-195
Personal computers, 11-13
Peterson’s algorithm, 55-56
PFF (see Page fault frequency algorithm)
Physical identification, 287-288
Pipe, 19-20, 309-311
PIPE system call, 325
Pixel, 163
Policy vs. mechanism, 41-42, 227
Policy-driven scheduling, 85-86
Preamble, 112
Preemptive scheduling, 81
Prepaging, 220
Preprocessor, C, 360-362
Prevention of deadlocks, 128-135
Priority scheduling, priority, 82-83
Privacy, 281
Process, 15, 45-109
  communication, 51-75
  hierarchy, 47-48
  implementation, 50-51
  model, 46-47
  scheduling, 80-87
Process (continued)
  server, 40, 273-279
  state, 48-49
  switch, 81
  table, 15, 50
Producer-consumer problem
  definition, 58-59
  solution with event counters, 62-63
  solution with message passing, 70-71
  solution with monitors, 65-66
  solution with semaphores, 60-61
Program status word, 366
Protection
  commands, 295
  covert channel, 297-298
  domain, 289-291
  mechanism, 289-298
  memory, 197-198
  models, 295-297
  unauthorized state, 296
Protection matrix, 291-292
Protection mechanism, 280
Pseudoparallelism, 45
PSW (see Program status word)

Q

Quantum, 81
Queue
  input, 196
  scheduling, 83-84

R

Race condition, 51-53
RAM disk, 139-143
Raw mode, 30, 165
READ system call, 311, 321-323
Readers and Writers, 77-80
Real time, 155
Reference bit, 214
Relative path name, 255
Relocation, 197-198
Remote disk, 273
Remote procedure call, 68-70
Rendezvous, 71
Replicated file, 279
Resource, 123
Resource trajectories, 132-133
INDEX

Rights, 290
  amplification, 295
  generic, 294
  revocation, 295
Ring mechanism, MULTICS, 291
Root file system, 33
Round robin, 81
Run to completion, 81

S
Scheduling, 80-87
  multiple queues, 83-84
  policy-driven, 85-86
  priority, 82-83
  round robin, 81
  shortest job first, 84-85
  two-level, 86-87
Second chance, 215
Security, 279-298
  countermeasures, 288-289
  design principles, 284-285
  famous flaws, 281-283
  generic attacks, 283-284
  policy, military, 296-297
  Trojan horse attack, 282
Seek
disk, 143-146
overlapped, 143
Segment
data, 24
stack, 24
text, 24
Segmentation, 209-212
Semaphore, 60-62
  binary, 61
  to implement monitors, 72-74
Separate I & D space, 365-366
Sequencer, 72
Serializability, 277
Serializer, 72
Server process, 40, 273-279
SETGID system call, 246
SETUID system call, 246
Shell, 15, 20-21
Shortest job first, 84-85
Shortest seek first algorithm, 144-145
Signal, 16
SIGNAL system call, 237-238, 244-246
Signature analysis, 287
Sleep and wakeup, 58-60
Special file, 18, 309-311
Spooler directory, 52
Spooling, 10, 121
Stable storage, 275
Standard error, 19
Standard input, 19
Standard output, 19
Starvation, 76
STAT system call, 328-329
STIME system call, 330
Storage (see memory)
Super-block, 301-302
Super-user, 16
Supervisor call, 36
Supervisor mode, 3, 37
Swapping, 198-206
  analysis, 205-206
  space allocation, 205
Symbolic linking, 264-265
SYNC system call, 331
System bus, 369
System call, 14, 21-36
System calls in MINIX
  ACCESS, 329
  ALARM, 245
  BRK, 237, 243-244
  CHDIR, 328-329
  CHMOD, 329
  CHOWN, 329
  CHROOT, 328-329
  CLOSE, 321
  CREATE, 319-320
  DUP, 330
  EXEC, 234-237, 242-243
  EXIT, 233, 241-242
  FORK, 233, 241-242
  FSTAT, 328-329
  GETGID, 246
  GETPID, 246
  GETUID, 246
  IOCTL, 331
  KILL, 237-238, 244-246
  LINK, 328
  LSEEK, 321
  MKDIR, 319-321
  MOUNT, 327-328
  OPEN, 319-321
  PAUSE, 245-246
  PIPE, 325
  READ, 311, 321-323
  SETGID, 246
System calls in MINIX (continued)
  SETUID, 246
  SIGNAL, 237-238, 244-246
  STAT, 328-329
  STIME, 330
  SYNC, 331
  TIME, 330
  TIMES, 330
  UMASK, 329
  U Mount, 327-328
  UNLINK, 328
  UTIM E, 330
  WAIT, 233, 241-242
  WRITE, 324-325

T

Tagged architecture, 294
TENEX, security flaw, 282-283
Terminal, 160-182
  input software, 164-169
  memory-mapped, 162-164
  output software, 169-170
  RS-232, 160-162
Thrashing, 220
Tiger team, 283
Time-of-day, 155-156
Time-sharing, 10
TIME system call, 330
Timers (see Clocks)
TIMES system call, 330
Transaction, 277-278
Trapdoor attack, 284
Trojan horse attack, 282
TSL instruction, 57
Two-level scheduling, 86-87
Two-phase locking, 134
Type manager module, 294

U

UART (see Universal asynch. receiver transm.)
Uid, 16
UMASK system call, 329
UMOUNT system call, 327-328
UNICS, 11
Universal asynchronous receiver transmitter, 161
UNIX, 13-14
  basic concepts, 14-20
  Berkeley, 14

directory structure, 262-263
file system consistency, 267-270
history, 11
i-node, 267-270
password protection, 285-286
protection domain, 290-291
security flaws, 281-283
shell, 20-21
system calls, 21-36
System V, 14
UNLINK system call, 328
Unused memory rule, 206
USENET, 121
User authentication, 285-289
User id, 16
User mode, 37
UTIME system call, 330

V

Variable partition, 198-200
VAX, 11
Video RAM, 162
Virtual machine, 1-2, 4
Virtual memory, 206-226
Voiceprint identification, 287

W

WAIT system call, 233, 241-242
Wakeup waiting bit, 59
Watchdog timer, 157
Working directory, 255
Working set model, 219-220
WRITE system call, 324-325

X

XENIX, 12, 14

Z

Zombie, 233
Zone, 303-304
Zone bit map, 302-304
These are unabridged paperback reprints of established titles widely used by universities throughout the world. Prentice-Hall International publishes these lower-priced editions for the benefit of students.

Prentice-Hall International Editions

This edition may be sold only in those countries to which it is consigned by Prentice-Hall International. It is not to be re-exported, and is not for sale in the U.S.A., Mexico, or Canada.

Prentice-Hall International